F-4E Manual

Contents

This document is available online, as PDF version, embedded in-game as offline website and can be contributed to as open-source project at GitHub.

💡 The PDF version has limited support and might be outdated. For the full experience, prefer using the online version.

Introduction

Dear Reader,

we are proud to present to you the **Heatblur Simulations F-4E Phantom II** for Digital Combat Simulator. We've spent years of development and countless hours of research to bring you the most in-depth recreation of this legendary aircraft ever made. You will be able to fly your Phantom both as a pilot and WSO, alone with the **JESTER-AI** - your own WSO AI - or in multiplayer together with a friend.

But not only did we recreate the Phantom's flight model, systems, avionics, radar, RWR and weapons delivery faithfully, we also tried to innovate our approach to flight simulation in general with the module, laying important groundwork for our future modules and as always trying to push the boundaries of flight simulation just a little bit further. From small **quality of life improvements** like being able to write on your canopy, to an **interactive crew chief**, our Phantom also utilizes our next-gen components based simulation framework - the aircraft is simulated as a connection of **thousands of individual components**. From an instrument needle to control surfaces, each component influences the state of the aircraft and even comes with its own **wear and tear**. From simulating accurate power draw from the power source to the smallest light bulb and all the nodes along the way, from hydraulic fluid which moves the hydraulics which in turn move the flight surfaces all the way to a mass physics based model - things now happen naturally, influenced by

each other, and not *scripted* anymore. Whether that means that unstable power draw may cause a lamp to flicker, or that you can deploy your landing gear in case of a failure using gravity, or that correct and incorrect use of the aircraft influences the wear and tear of each single component individually - we never before attempted a simulation as deep as with the F-4E Phantom II. The DCS: F-4 represents some of the most immersive **cold war fighter jet simulation** available!

Such innovation and in depth simulation will present an increased learning curve for users. This is why it was important for us to also innovate on the side of learning tools available to you, starting with this manual, so that our modules are accessible to the casual simmer and aficionado alike. You can **open the manual in flight**, and read along, but better still, you can click any switch (with an input combo) in flight and the manual will open in the correct chapter, **explaining the switch** or system in the cockpit, all while you are bolting through the air in your thunderous jet. We also changed the underlying structure of the manual to move to an **open source** model. This will allow the community to easily contribute via GitHub, as two heads (or thousands of them) think better than one. As an added benefit, readability for the mobile version will be greatly improved as well. We have hyperlinked many items for you, providing easy **navigation** between cockpit diagrams and system overviews. Also featured in the manual are numerous checklists and procedures, and a **"Lessons" section**, which is planned to be featured with the Early Access Release of the Phantom. The fully written out lessons will complement the flyable training missions. The training missions are now tailored to be learned together with the written lesson

in the manual, you will be able to revert steps in the training mission, able to read along and pause (no more restarting for missed items). With all of these features at your disposal, you will be able to adequately prepare yourself for your training. And best of all, during your training you will be instructed by real life F-4 pilots and a real life F-4 WSO Instructor! Who else could teach you better?

We hope you will enjoy both learning and flying the F-4E Phantom II - dive as deep as your heart desires. For this exciting journey we wish you **good luck and many fun adventures**, and of course: always check six!

In the name of the entire Heatblur Team,
Nicholas Dackard, Heatblur Simulations, CEO and Founder

Definitions

Should an acronym, such as DSCG be unclear at any point, look it up in the exhaustive list provided at the Abbreviations chapter.

The following symbology is used throughout this manual.

General

Symbol	Meaning	Description
💡	Note	Item that is given special emphasize
🟡	Caution	Should be followed to prevent **damage to equipment**
🔴	Warning	Ignoring might lead to **personal injury or loss of life**
🚧	Under Construction	A section is **work in progress** and will be improved still

Checklists

Symbol	Description
Bold	Step is necessary to be performed OR it's a bold face procedure (crewmembers should be able to accomplish bold face procedures without reference to the checklist)
🔧	Step involves or may involve crew chief interaction
⚡	Step **cannot** be performed when **battery start** is made, external power is necessary

Historical Background

1953-1958: Development Phase (F3H to AH-1 and F4H)

Mockup of the F-4 with AIM-7 Missiles

The developmental onset of the **F-4 Phantom II** began in the aftermath of McDonnell's loss in the US Navy's 1953 **Day Fighter Competition** - the victor of which was the **Vought F8U**. Choosing not to rest on failure, McDonnell representatives canvased the Navy Bureau of Aeronautics, a number of operational commands, the office of the Chief of Naval Operations, and any pilot or maintainer willing to discuss the state of current naval aviation.

After nearly a year of analysis and design work - including a full scale mockup, the design of what they would classify as a **general fighter** took shape. The potential of a general fighter aircraft, rather than the specialized focus preferred by the Navy at the time, was rooted in the success of the **F3H-1 Demon** in threading of that very needle.

F3H-1 Demon

The Demon had been built as design in opposition of the **F4D Skyray** in the interceptor role. As the Skyray proved its supersonic superiority during the development cycle, McDonnell expanded the F3H Demon's capabilities to include respectable air to ground armament to justify its place in the limited carrier compliment when compared to the **F10F Jaguar** and **F7U Cutlass**, which were also undergoing development at the time.

Ultimately outfitted with the AIM-9 Sidewinder and AIM-7 Sparrow - the latter giving the F3H a beyond visual range capability the Skyray could never boast, and topping out with the ability to carry and deliver 6,000 lbs of air to ground ordnance, the Demon out-measured its competitors in combat potential, even when it came in second on paper for raw performance.

Beginning with the intention to grow out the Demon as the baseline airframe, a set of engineering evaluations were performed including both single and twin engine configurations with different wings. The two most promising data sets- twin-engine builds of the type designated the **F3H-G** and **F3H-H** powered the General Electric J65 and J79 respectively, replaced the original Demon wing with a 45 degree swept wing.

Particular focus was paid towards making the new aircraft **multi-mission capable**, running a wide gamut of potential operations: day or all-weather attack, photo recon, day or all-weather interception with a Sparrow-compatible radar, electronic warfare, and a two seat strike coordination configuration. Experimentation with this wide-ranging design intent went so far as to include a novel interchangeable nose and cockpit arrangement, allowing airframes to be reconfigured within a matter of hours for a given mission set with the necessary systems fit for the crew.

While the Navy showed little interest in the nose replacement capability, the bottom line numbers from the F3H-G and -H investigations got their attention. On paper, they were capable of reaching Mach 1.52, and an eye-watering Mach 1.97 at 35,000 feet, respectively.

By October of 1954, Navy Bureau of Aeronautics (BuAer) had evaluated similar unsolicited proposals from Grumman, Douglas, and North American, and provided McDonnell with a $38 million dollar contract for two flying examples of the Demon follow on - internally designated as the **AH-1**.

McDonnell F3H-G mockup; US Navy photo

AH-1

Two months later, the Navy threw McDonnell a curveball, directing the type to be **stripped of the air to ground fitment**, and focusing on the all-weather interceptor role in a single seat configuration, with the finalization for this change in role being formally announced in April of 1955.

The changeover was, in some quarters, considered catastrophic - over time forcing the removal of the planned internal gun, and stripping all of the hard-points, save for the recessed Sparrow fuselage wells and a centerline tank position. At this point, the determination of the **J79** as the power plant was finalized with the Navy's desire for a Mach 2 interceptor. Further, the determination of a two-man crew as also put in

place by the Navy - like McDonnell's own research, success in the faster, longer ranged interception environment showed the utility of a second man to handle the scope.

However, it wasn't a done deal. BuAero had been keeping conversation with Vought at the same time, and in mid-1955 detailed a fly-off between the two competing firms for the new interceptor role; this time pitting McDonnell's AH-1 contender with an outgrowth of the already in-service **Crusader**: the **F8U-3**.

F4H (F-4A)

Redesignated the **F4H** (or also **F-4A**) in the intervening two and a half years leading into the late 1958 fly-off, McDonnell's Phantom II would trade substantial blows with Vought's Crusader III during the Navy Preliminary Evaluation. Whereas McDonnell's design entered the flight testing phase a month prior (and nominally entered engineering almost a year ahead of Vought's entry), the benefits of Vought carrying over much of the prior Crusader's aerodynamic profile appeared early in the comparison. The Crusader III was first to reach Mach 2 in flight testing, shown capable of reaching higher top speeds during the Navy preliminary evaluation, and noted for having more refined airframe handling in most regimes.

F-4H aboard the USS Independence in 1960; US Navy photo

But as the Evaluation continued, it was found that McDonnell's Phantom II countered the Crusader III where it mattered: in **combat capability**.

The Navy wanted a Mach 2 interceptor, not an overgrown daylight fighter.

The F8U-3's integration of the Sparrow was found lacking versus that of the Phantom, having surrendered an AIM-7 against the F4H due to aerodynamic performance concerns. Of even greater concern for the interceptor role - as McDonnell had previously found internally, the pilot overhead to manage the AN/APG-74 radar installation in the Crusader III while in combat was found to be too high to maintain effectiveness, whereas the back-seater in the Phantom II could reliably acquire situational awareness on the radar and maintain track locks for engagement while maneuvering.

McDonnell's F4H, while having more raw flying qualities, could fight as the Navy needed it to. Further, as the firm had continued developing its air to ground potential at the request of the Navy, even as they repeatedly altered the program goals - the Phantom II, like the Demon before it, justified its existence in the carrier compliment in all fights, not just the long range interception role. And so on December 17th, 1958, the Navy Preliminary Evaluation board announced its findings and the **winner of the fly-off: McDonnell's Phantom II**.

1958-1963: A Navy Interceptor with Multi-role Pedigree (F4H to F-110 and F-4)

The US Air Force was not oblivious to the Phantom II's development, as the Navy having asked for the air to ground capability be revisited gave McDonnell a point of entry. While the Air Force entertained McDonnell representatives in discussion about a new ground attack airframe, the service actually had interest in the Sparrow-dealing F4H as a replacement for the **F-106**.

The Air Defense Command requested an evaluation in 1961 known as *Project High Speed*, which once again proved the Phantom II superior to a challenger in the interceptor role. In light of the findings, Navy offered a bombing demonstration for Air Force representatives of the Tactical Air Command, making special note of the successful air to ground trials with

the Phantom's multiple ejector racks - a capability the USAF lacked. With Air Force policymakers, members of Congress, and even General Curtis LeMay in attendance during this demonstration series - with a VX-5 F4H-1 accurately delivering twenty-two 500 lb bombs in spectacular fashion, the stage was set for a Navy/McDonnell tactical aviation coup.

F-4E Phantom II of the 347th Tactical Fighter Wing airdropping six 500-lb Mark 82s

The inauguration of the Kennedy administration in January 1961 didn't hurt matters; Kennedy brought in former Ford Motor Company president Robert McNamara as Secretary of Defense. With an eye for optimization - sometimes to a fault, the performance of McDonnell's F4H was seen as a standout to capitalize upon in light of the administration's new conventional doctrine of "*Flexible Response*"; no longer would nuclear deterrence be the primary backstop of the US' promise to NATO.

While McNamara desired for the Navy's **A-7** and the Air Force's **F-111** to fulfill tactical bombing roles for both services, the two airframes were at least five years out to operational capability; the Phantom existed, provided outstanding performance immediately, and could quickly raise the desired 50% increase in conventional force structure the White House expected for the Air Force. Pressure from all sides - the White

House, Congress, McDonnell, and foreign interest, ultimately defeated the USAF's resistance to an airframe *"not made here"*, and by January 1962 the USAF's budget had **Phantoms on order from the Tactical Air Command**; the Air Defense Command, which had started the Air Force's investigation into the Phantom, would be left with the **F-106**.

F-110 Spectre

Designated for a time as the **F-110** to fit in with the Air Force's Century Series as a matter of service pride, McDonnell's Air Force Phantom went into motion. An initial delivery of Navy-configured F4Hs were provided for training and evaluation later that year, with the first flight of a true **F-4C** taking place on May 27th, 1963 - the universal service designation system converting the F4H-1 to the **F-4B** in September of 1962.

F-4B and -C

Reconfiguration of the Phantom II for the USAF was expedient, with the focus being on service-compliant alterations. These included altering of the landing gear system for higher speed field operations, the addition of dual flight controls, an anti-skid implementation, and conversion to boom refueling compatibility.

Further changes included the addition of the LN-12 inertial navigation system, conversion to the APQ-100 radar with air to ground specific functionality, and a cartridge starting system for field use without a compressed air cart in combination with an internal battery.

This F-4C configuration would be the first Phantom used during the USAF's involvement in **Vietnam**, beginning in December of 1964.

1965-1974: Backtracking with Haste - Vietnam (F-4D and F-4E)

F-4B dropping bombs over Vietnam; US Navy Photo

The Phantom's initial deployments to Southeast Asia delivered a number of firsts - the first officially **confirmed MiG-17 kill** with the AIM-9 Sidewinder (on July 10th, 1965), and the first US air-to-air **shootdown of a MiG-21** (April 26th, 1966). Unfortunately, the Phantom was also the victim of the **first US loss to a SAM** in Vietnam (July 24th, 1965), and the first US air-to-air **loss from a MiG-21** (October 5th, 1966).

With the initial teething problems of the type out of the way - including alterations to the wing fuel cells and internal wiring, the Phantom was found to be a capable, reliable airframe for the Air Force. Even the missing gun had been worked around to some degree, with the integration of the SUU-16 and SUU-23 **external cannon pods**.

F-4D

The in-production upgrade to the Air Force's first Phantom - the **F-4D**, would include a multitude of quality of life improvements: the APQ-109 radar with air to ground modes, the ASN-63 internal navigation system, the ASQ-92 release computer, and the APX-80 "Combat Tree" IFF system. Further additions would include automatic fuel transfer and a new sight, the ASG-22. Combat survivability would be reinforced with the APS-107 RHAW and ECM pod compatibility, along with new ejection seats. Yet, the service's desire to put its own *"made here"* flourish on the type continued, inauspiciously culminating in the integration of the **AIM-4 Falcon** with the F-4D model.

AIM-9 vs AIM-4

Used on the **F-102 Delta Dagger** and **F-106 Delta Dart**, and considered by some to be a reasonable competitor to the **AIM-9 Sidewinder**, Air Force leadership believed the AIM-4 Falcon could be installed in replacement of the Navy's short range round with no loss of capability; this was quickly found to be a mistaken premise.

While the AIM-9B had limited maneuvering restrictions for launch and acquisition like other short range infrared missiles of its generation, it was substantially more reliable in use; the Falcon's cooling implementation could only maintain the required seeker temperature for a short time once activated, and could not be turned back on once the cooler timed out, while the un-cooled 9B could remain available indefinitely.

Sidewinder acquired far more rapidly - in many instances in less than two seconds, versus the six to seven seconds required for the Falcon.

Worse still, the AIM-4 was a hittile - its fin-contact triggered fuzing required direct target impact for the missile's warhead to detonate, whereas the AIM-9 carried a proximity fuze; any Sidewinder that got close to its target was a threat to kill.

F-4D of the 435th TFS over Vietnam

With initial F-4D deliveries to the 8th TFW in May of 1967, the performance of the new configuration was quickly met with derision. The employment envelope was too small compared to the Sidewinder, the lead time too long, and the weapon far too unreliable to put into practice in the dynamic maneuvering environment of air combat as it was waged in Southeast Asia.

The failure of the Falcon to succeed not only served to reaffirm the quality of the Sidewinder in comparison - and also highlighting the need for the service to upgrade the round as the Navy was doing, but reinforced the concern held by aircrews about the lack of an internal gun. SUU installations by this point had scored multiple victories over North Vietnamese MiGs (ultimately ending the war with **9 confirmed kills**), and it was decided to rectify what many had considered the Phantom's original sin with further revision to the F-4.

F-4E

By this time McDonnell was laying down the program update plan for the F-4E, and the jet was intended to carry the M61A1 gun internally, and

with it - the Hughes CORDS (Coherent On Receive Doppler System) radar. Hughes was unable to successfully deliver their CORDS system, and the Westinghouse APQ-120 radar would be selected in January 1968 as its replacement. The APQ-120 was a full solid state conversion of the APQ-109/117, re-engineered to meet the requirements of the internal cannon installation. The radar would receive changes to its mount, additional dampening, and a reduction antenna's height to fit in the smaller cavity directly above the cannon barrel assembly.

Further adjustments to the F-4E were made to improve the Phantom's lethality. Hardware deleted for Sidewinder compatibility in the F-4D was updated and returned. The ASG-26A Lead Computing Optical Sighting System was installed along with updated aircrew in-range and shoot warning cues, providing pilots with a clearer picture of the weapons envelopes of the Sparrow and Sidewinder. The updates to the Echo Phantom would not stop there; compatibility with multi-ejection racks and updates to the Weapon Release Computer to match provided further bombing capabilities, the **AGM-65 Maverick** was made available in both IR and electro-optical variants, the leading edge of the wings were fitted with slats for increased maneuvering potential, and the Digital Scan Converter Group interface for the APQ-120 was installed.

Unfortunately, the F-4E's initial deliveries from October of 1967 would align its operational entry with the drawdown of the US' Rolling Thunder bombing campaign over North Vietnam. The type would have to wait until 1972 to put the true extent of the jet's upgrades to the test. With the resumption of the air campaign in February of that year, the E-model Phantom II would fly thousands of missions, and in the span of seventeen months score **21 air to air kills**.

Training Program Rivet Haste

Also of note was Rivet Haste - a late Vietnam training initiative in 1972 heavily influenced by two midlife updates - modification "556" and TISEO.

Prior to "556", weapons mode changes required the pilot to go hands off the throttle and look down to the release panel, cycling a number of

switches to disarm various pylons and arm others; in the event of a lucky North Vietnamese bounce, or the need to swap between weapons on the fly - looking away from the threat was time-consuming and dangerous.

With the modification, a pair of override switches were added to the outboard throttle grip. The first, the *"pinky"* switch, placed control of the gun, Sidewinder, and Sparrow in one of three positions, while the second, on the forward face of the grip, switched weapons modes immediately between air-to-air and air to ground; the pilot would now have immediate access to his air-to-air weapons, and could swap them on the fly - never once looking down in the cockpit. This modification gave birth to the concept called HOTAS - hands on throttle and stick.

556 also included modifications to the armament panel for air to ground munitions, adding ripple release capability while reducing the number of controls required to access full ARBCS programming.

TISEO Upgrade

Further reinforcement of crew initiative was the installation of TISEO - the Target Identification System Electro-Optical, in 1974.

An F-4E Phantom II with a TISEO mounted on left wing above the blue practice bombs

Consisting of a 4x/10x camera installed in the left wing, TISEO provided visual identification of distant, radar-locked targets, enabling the AIM-7

Sparrow to be used to its full extent when combined with the APX-80 IFF system. Crews could now independently confirm two ID factors before the merge, entering the fight with more of an advantage - even if they would not be cleared to fire beyond visual range.

Coupled with the Rivet Haste training - which put experienced aircrews through a program to codify them as systems and tactics instructors (not unlike the NFWS education being given to USN crews at the same time), the students championed the modification program of the Phantom, and pushed for Double Attack (a parallel development of Loose Deuce as had been used by the Navy in Vietnam since the resumption of the bombing campaign) to become the standard for air-to-air methodology across the Air Force.

While this training was ultimately too late to have real effect, with the final halt on US bombing coming just weeks after the first Haste student crews returned to Vietnam, they would set the tone for USAF Phantom crews going forward.

1975-1991: A Cold Warrior

As the Vietnam War drew to a close, the F-4E transitioned from active combatant to cold warrior. While the F-15 and F-16 both stood on the horizon to take the premiere positions in tactical air to air and air to ground roles, the sheer depth of the Phantom's numbers across the USAF and its allies meant the F-4E would remain at the tip of the spear for another two decades.

Keeping the F-4 effective as a strike platform and air to air combatant was vital, and the E's capabilities continued to be expanded into the 1980s. Provision for the all-aspect AIM-9L and M Sidewinders would be installed, as well as the improved AIM-7F, and later, the AIM-7M Sparrow. The television-guided GBU-15, with its required **data-link system**, would be integrated in the Phantom beginning in 1975. To deliver additional guided munitions the F-4E would receive not one, but two targeting pod options - **Pave Spike** and **Pave Tack**.

Of particular note is the installation of the Digital Modular Avionics System, or **DMAS**. DMAS was a complete replacement of the Phantom's navigation computer, inertial navigation set, and the WRCS, which used LORAN (**Lo**ng **Ra**nge **N**avigation) radio signals to accurately define the aircraft's position anywhere in the world. The inclusion of DMAS provided a substantial improvement in the F-4E's navigation options and weapon release precision, and an expansion of the Phantom's delivery mode capabilities.

The F-4E would see its front line service end in the United States Air Force immediately following Operation Desert Storm, with the last remaining users of the type withdrawn from active duty service. US Air National Guard units would maintain the type until the mid-90s, with various units seeing them replaced by other types as appropriate for their respective missions and locations.

The F-4E Phantom II Today

Of all Phantom models, the F-4E was the most numerous version that has been built totalling at **1370 units**.

The F-4E Phantom II is still in service at some operators across NATO including the Hellenic Air Force, the South Korean Air Force and the Turkish Air Force.

They are expected to fly at least **until 2030**.

Variant Overview

Beyond the F-4E, several Phantom variants have been build for various purposes.

Variant	Description	Base Variant	First Flight
A	Prototype and pre-production model		1958

Variant	Description	Base Variant	First Flight
B	First production ready model for the US Navy	A	1961
C	Several improvements for more effective use by the USAF	B	1963
D	Modernization and improved air to ground capabilities	C	1965
E	Further improvements, better radar and nose gun	D	1965
F	Slimmed down export variation used by Germany	E	1973
G	*Wild Weasel* upgrade to locate and fight SAM systems	E	1976
J	US Navy variation for carrier operation	B	1966
K	Royal Navy variation with a different engine	J	1966
M	Royal Air Force variation with a different engine	J	1966
N	Modernized systems and structural improvements	B	1970
S	Modernized systems and smoke-free engines	J	1977
RF	Several Phantom variants modified for reconnaissance	B, C, E	
QF-4	Retrofitted as remote-controlled target drones for research	many	

Foreign Service: The Legacy of a Phantom

The F-4's legacy did not stop at the US border. Its performance made it of interest to many US allies of its era, and the Phantom II remains in limited service as of this writing. With the F-4E being the most numerous of the type, it was natural it would be the model with the furthest reach.

Amidst the ever-evolving landscape of military technology, foreign operators of the F-4E undertook comprehensive upgrades and modernization efforts. These initiatives were aimed at extending the aircraft's service life and enhancing its combat capabilities. The F-4E, with its powerful engines, evolved to meet the demands of contemporary warfare, solidifying its place as a venerable platform in the arsenals of its adoptive nations.

The F-4E Phantom II's foreign service was not merely a chapter in the history of military aviation but a saga that unfolded across continents and through the corridors of geopolitical power. Its adaptability, longevity, and combat prowess etched the Phantom into the collective memory of the nations that flew it, leaving an enduring legacy in the skies it once dominated.

Hellenic Air Force RF-4E Phantom II lands at RIAT 2008, UK

Israel

The first nation to receive the F-4E on export, Israel, designated it **Kurnass (Sledgehammer)**.

Phantom would see combat with the IAF within months of delivery, seeing multiple kills in the war of attrition against Egypt and skirmishes with Syria. The 1973 Yom Kippur War would see the Phantom acquit itself spectacularly, downing 85 Arab aircraft in exchange for 5 lost in air combat. But it was the Phantoms performance as an air to ground asset that would draw the most focus from the IAF, seeing the F-4E specializing in that role as the F-15 and F-16 were made available to the nation for export purchase.

The Kurnass would ultimately receive a number of vital upgrades to keep the type viable beginning in 1987, with the installation of the APG-76 radar, a new mission computer and HUD, and the ability to deliver the Popeye air to surface missile. The IAF would ultimately receive between 212 and 222 F-4Es.

Australia

Australia would be the second import customer for the F-4E, but only on a limited time basis. Twenty-four F-4Es were provided to the RAAF on a lease basis by the United States as a stopgap measure due to delays in deliveries of the F-111C.

The F-4E would operate in Australian service for just three years, beginning in September of 1970 to 1973. Australian aircrews were impressed with the Phantom's performance for their needs, and while the US offered to let the RAAF buy the leased airframes outright, this offer was ultimately rejected.

Japan

F-4EJ Kais of the JASDF of the 8th Hikōtai taking off in 2002, US Navy Photo

With permission of the US State Department and license terms with McDonnell Douglas, Mitsubishi Heavy Industries would build the F-4E locally, designated as the F-4EJ. The -4EJ would be provided compatibility with Japanese built weapons, but the omission of the refueling probe and AJB-7 bombing computer due to treaty restrictions on the JASDF.

The -4EJ was updated as the 'Kai' in 1984, receiving the APG-66J radar and ASM-1 and - 2 anti-shipping missiles. The F-4EJ would serve Japan over 40 years, with the final examples being withdrawn in March of 2021.

Iran

First receiving the F-4E in 1971, the IIAF received 177 F-4Es through various delivered batches into the late 1970s. In the aftermath of the Iranian Revolution, now-IRIAF F-4Es saw extensive use - and numerous successes, against the forces of Saddam Hussein.

The first raid on the Osirak Nuclear Plant in September of 1980 was performed by four F-4Es, damaging the reactor and control facilities; this raid preempted the more famous IAF attack on the same facility that destroyed it permanently. In like fashion, April of 1981 saw F-4E's as the primary strike aircraft during the raid on all three airfields of the H-3 complex in western Iraq.

The conflict with Iraq came at substantial cost to both airframes and crews, with western weapons embargoes severely limiting the ability of the IRIAF to maintain the Phantom II effectively. By the end of the war, even local estimates put the available number of flyable F-4s below four dozen. While local industry attempted to revitalize the Phantom in the aftermath of the conflict, current evaluations put their total F-4 force near 60, between their remaining F-4D, F-4E, and RF-4Es.

Greece

The Hellenic Air Force's initial F-4E deliveries began in 1974, with annual deliveries stopped due to politics in 1981. The HAF's combined Phantom II force topped out at 121 airframes purchased (F-4E and RF-4E), with reinforcement stocks of former USAF jets bringing that number to is final value in the post-Desert Storm drawdown.

Upgrades by DASA to Greek Phantoms has been extensive, and was built around a similar model to the Lutfwaffe's F-4F ICE. Most notably, the

HAF F-4E has received the APG-65 for AMRAAM (including a replacement digital BUS), HUD, and LITENING pod compatibility.

The HAF Phantoms have also received specific upgrades based on their intended squadron roles, with inertial navigation replacement and GPS inclusion for those specializing in the air to surface role. Greece currently retains over 30 Phantoms on active duty.

Turkey

Turkey's Phantom service has been extensive, with over 160 F-4Es procured (along with an additional 60+ RF-4Es), beginning in 1974. Deliveries of Phantoms have been both new build and former USAF, and in the mid-90s, Israeli Aerospace Industries (IAI) was tapped to bring them into the next century.

Based around a proposed upgrade program for the IAF, the F-4E Terminator 2020 deleted over 1600 lbs of excess weight from the aircraft by wiring and hydraulic system replacements, integrated the Elta M-2032 radar, a full HOTAS implementation, MFDs, a true HUD, and extensive weapons systems updates, Popeye and GBU integration, as well as the LITENING II targeting pod. The Turkish Air Force intends to maintain the remaining 30 or so airframes in service until the mid-2030s.

Germany

F-4Fs of the German Air Force in 1998, USAF Photo

Primarily an F-4F and RF-4E customer - the largest F-4 export recipient with 263 delivered overseas, Germany would purchase 10 F-4Es to be based in the United States for the type conversion of their aircrews training alongside USAF units.

South Korea

A korean air force crew chief helps a 497th tactical fighter squadron pilot into the cockpit of his F-4E during Exercise TEAM SPIRIT 1986

A long time F-4 recipient, South Korea supplanted its force of F-4Ds with brand new F-4Es beginning in 1977, ultimately purchasing a total of 103.

South Korea was the recipient of the final US built F-4 Phantom, 78-0744, in October of 1979. As of this writing, the RoKAF retains the F-4E in service, with the intention of withdrawing it in 2024.

Egypt

The final F-4E export customer, Egypt, received purchasing rights through its peace treaty with Israel and the Peace Pharaoh agreement; rather than new build airframes, Egypt received 35 former USAF aircraft.

The Phantom was ultimately a precursor towards the nation's purchase of the F-16, and went through initial difficulties in servicing by their maintenance crews. McDonnell Douglas advisors aided the Egyptian

squadrons to get their operational ready rates back up to standard, and the Phantom II went on to serve the EAF into the late 90s.

F-4E Air to Air Kills

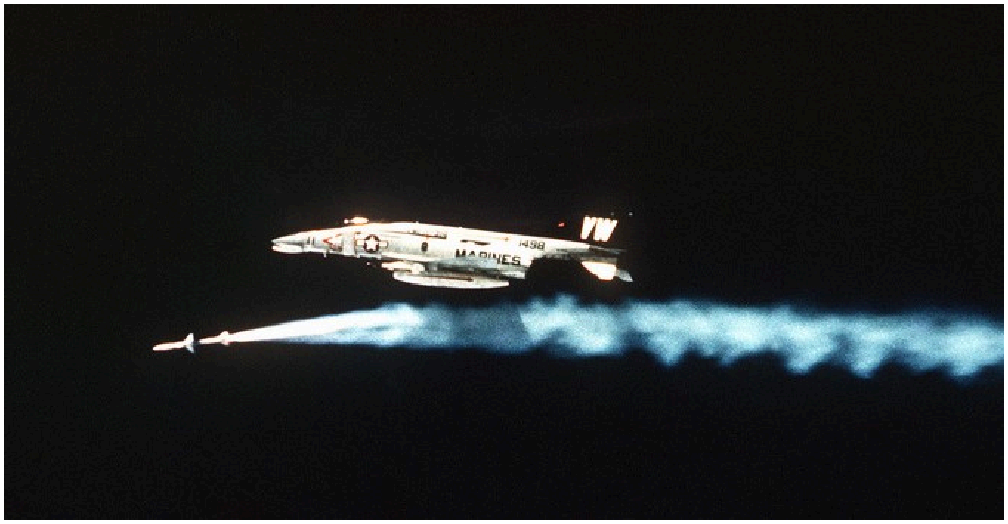
The F-4E Phantom II, an upgraded version of the F-4 Phantom series, played a significant role in air-to-air combat during the Vietnam War. Equipped with the AIM-7 Sparrow missile, a radar-guided weapon with beyond-visual-range capabilities, the F-4E had a notable advantage in engagements.

In Vietnam, F-4E pilots engaged in dogfights against various enemy aircraft. The Sparrow missile allowed them to target adversaries from a distance, contributing to the aircraft's success. Key USAF pilots, such as Steve Ritchie and Chuck DeBellevue, achieved ace status by securing five or more air-to-air victories.

The total number of air-to-air kills attributed to the F-4E Phantom II, combining both the USAF and USN, is estimated to be around 21 during the Vietnam War, including 4 MiG-19s and 17 MiG-21s. However, this figure may vary across sources. In total, F-4C/D/E Variants shot down 107 MiG jets, rewarding it the nickname *"Biggest distributor of MiG parts"*.

Despite its effectiveness, the F-4E faced challenges in close-quarters combat due to the initial absence of an internal cannon. Modifications, including the addition of an M61 Vulcan cannon, addressed this limitation and improved the aircraft's performance in close-range engagements.

The success of the F-4E Phantom II in Vietnam solidified its reputation as a versatile and formidable fighter, and it continued to serve in air forces worldwide for many years.



a Marine F-4 Phantom II from Marine Fighter/Attack Squadron 314 firing an AIM-7 Missile

USAF

In detail, the USAF confirmed 21 kills.

Kills	Aircraft
17	MiG-21
4	MiG-19

Scored with the following weapons:

Kills	Weapon
10	AIM-7
5	AIM-9
5	Gun
1	Maneuver

IAF

In combat, the Israeli Air Force downed 116 jets.

Kills	Aircraft
81	MiG-21
14	MiG-17
14	Mi-8
5	Su-7
1	AS-5
1	IL-28

Scored with the following weapons:

Kills	Weapon
44	AIM-9
33	Gun
32	Maneuver or Unspecified
7	AIM-7

IRIAF

The IRIAF shot down 83 aircraft.

Kills	Aircraft
29	MiG-21
21	MiG-23
19	Su-20/22
2	An-24
2	Mi-25
2	Mirage F1
1	Hunter
1	Tu-22
1	Mirage 5
1	Bell 412
1	SA 321
1	Unidentified

Scored with the following weapons:

Kills	Weapon
46	AIM-9
22	Maneuver or Unspecified
9	Gun
6	AIM-7

F-4E First Flights by Nation

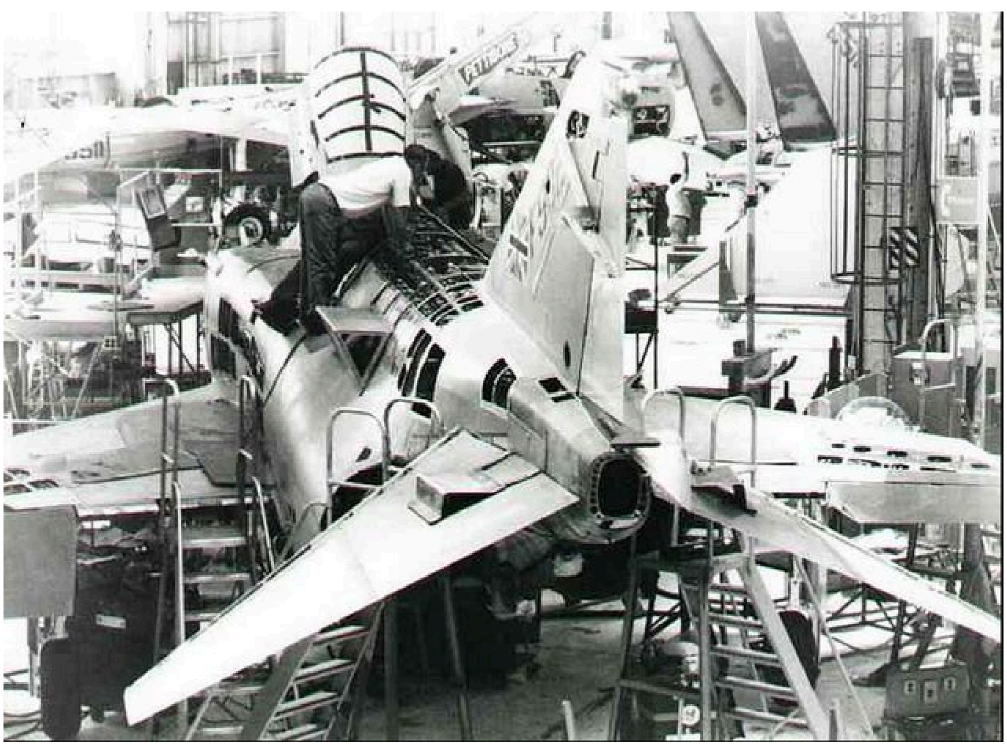
The F-4 was used widely by several NATO and allied countries. Because of that it reached many *first flight* milestones in the various countries.

Nation	McDonnell Number	BuNo/USAF Serial	Date
United States	2234	66-284	June 30th, 1967
Israel	3492	68-396	May 26th, 1969
Australia	3847	69-0304	June 26th, 1970
Japan	4037	69-7463	January 14th, 1971
Iran	4093	69-7711	March 2nd, 1971
Greece	4439	72-01500	January 29th, 1974
Turkey	4525	73-01016	June 17th, 1974
Germany	4946	75-00628	May 5th, 1977
South Korea	4966	76-0493	July 28th, 1977

The crew of an F-4 Phantom II aircraft completes a post-flight inspection

Technical Specifications: F-4E

Item	Description
Wingspan	38' 5" (11.7 meters)
Wingspan (Folded)	27' 7" (8.4 meters)
Length	63' (19.2 meters)
Height	16' 5" (5 meters)
Wing Area	530 sqft (49.2 m^2)
Wing Loading	78 lb/sqft (380 kg/m^2)
Empty Weight	30,328 lb (13,757 kg)
Maximum Takeoff Weight	61,795 lb (28,030 kg)
Thrust (Dry)	23,810 lbf (105.92 kN)
Thrust (Afterburner)	35,690 lbf (158.76 kN)
Combat Ceiling	~56,000' (~17,070 m)
Maximum Speed	Mach 2.23; 1,280 kn (2,370 km/h)
Range (Ferry)	1,457 nmi (2,699 km)



US F-4J airframes undergoing modification and upgrade to F-4J(UK) standard at NARF (Naval Air Rework Facility) at NORIS (North Island) San Diego, California

Cockpit Overview

Greetings, *phabulous* Crewmen! Get ready for an in-depth look into the cockpit of the F-4E Phantom II by Heatblur.

The following chapter gives a detailed overview of the Pilots cockpit, as well as the Weapons Systems Officer (WSO) Pit. Each single switch will be outlined and explained briefly, while giving context to the functions.

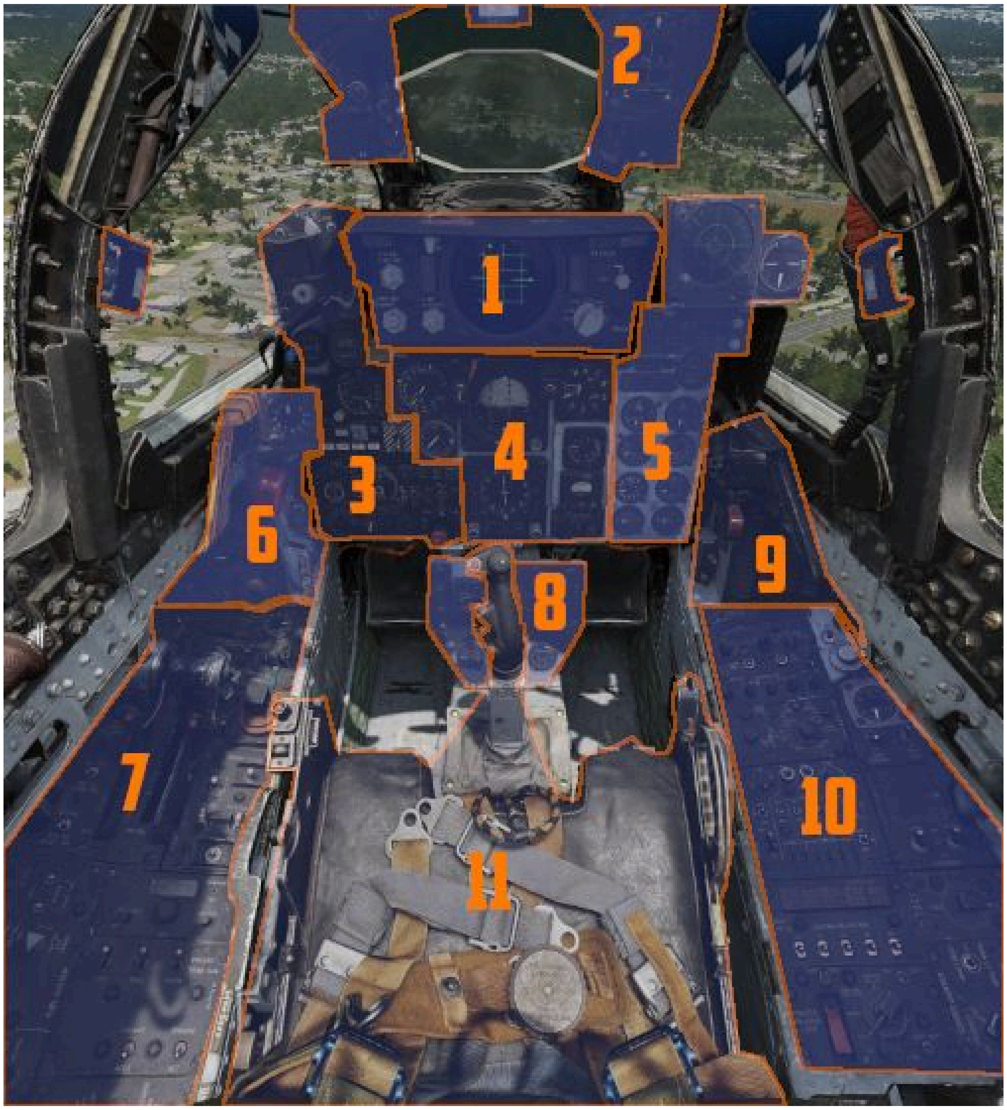
More in-depth details on the various systems and consequences of using a switch beyond their brief explanation are available in the 3. Systems Overview Chapter.

"Step right up there and take a look. We got all kinds of amenities on these babies."

Pilot Cockpit Overview

The pilot cockpit is divided into a front section, containing all instruments and weapon controls, as well as the radar screen; the left console area with engine, control surfaces and navigation related settings; the pedestal group holding auxiliary information; and the right console area with communication and lighting controls.

Layout



Section	Name
1.	DSCG Controls
2.	Overhead Indicators
3.	Weapon Management
4.	Flight Director Group
5.	Right Main Panel
6.	Left Sub-Panel
7.	Left Console
8.	Pedestal Group
9.	Right Sub-Panel
10.	Right Console
11.	Stick and Seat

DSCG Controls

The Digital Scan Converter Group (DSCG) refers to the screen used to display radar data and video feed of TV weapons or targeting pods. The DSCG replaces the Direct View Storage Tube radar scopes which could not interact with the digital interfaces.

Reticle Intensity/Scale Knob

The reticle intensity/scale knob (2) provides brightness control for the reticle and the radar repeater.

Name	Description
RET INT	Controls the brightness of the gun reticle.

Name	Description
SCALE	Controls the light intensity of the range scale at the edges of the front radar scope.

Sight Shutter Lever

The lever (4) changes the optical sight light source to prevent damage to the optics from high sunlight. Is used after landing to prevent damage to the sight when parked.

Reticle Depression Knob

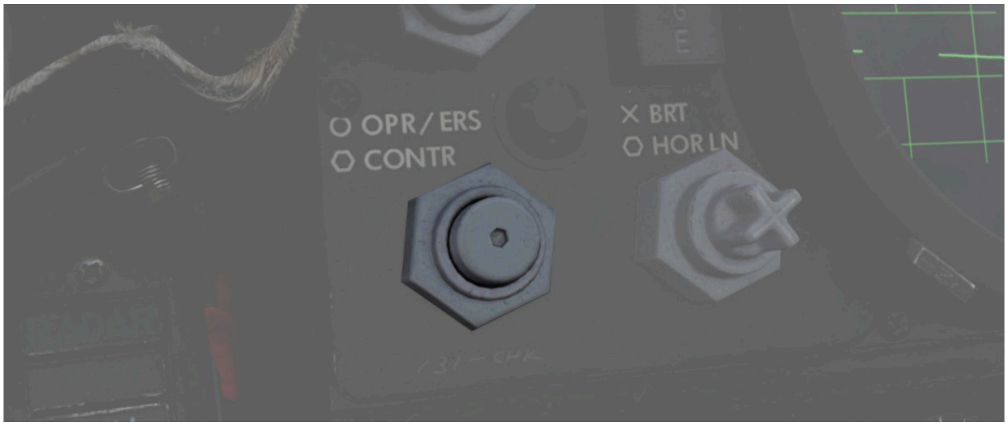
The reticle depression knob (11) controls manual depression in 1 mil increments from 0 to 245 mil. The manual depression is used for direct delivery bombing and delivery of the AGM-65 Maverick.

Sight Mode Knob

The rotary knob (12) selects the mode of operation for the gun-sight.

Name	Description
OFF	Turns the system off.
STBY	Warms up the system. Reticle remains off.
CAGE	Reticle is displayed and caged at the radar boresight line (RBL). This is used for takeoff and landing.
A/G	Selects air to ground mode. Manual set depression is referenced from the fuselage reference line (FRL).
A/A	Selects air to air lead computing mode. Position is set by the gyro, range, and CADC, and can be caged.
BIT 1	System self test mode 1.
BIT 2	System self test mode 2.

OPR ERS/Contrast Knob



Two function (pushbutton inside of knob) control (3) of the front scope display.

Name	Description
OPR/ERS	Button activates or erases display in aircraft with DVST. No function with DSCG scope.
CONTR	Controls the displayed video/background contrast on the front scope.

Brightness Knob/Horizon Line Knob

Dual knob control (6) of the front scope display settings.

Name	Description
BRT	Controls relative brightness of the front scope display.
HOR LN	Adjusts relative horizon line shown on radar scopes in both cockpits.

INT Tab

The INT tab (7) rotates around the display to alter the relative darkness of the radar display, permitting the pilot to adjust the scope relative to ambient light. With the INT tab a polarization filter is rotated over the scope.

Red Tab

The red tab (8) is rotated to provide a red scope display for night flying.

In Range Light

The IN RANGE light (**5**) illuminates to alert the pilot that the current locked target is within range parameters.

Hold Altitude Light

The HOLD ALT light (**10**) illuminates as an instruction to the pilot from the fire control system to maintain current altitude to assist in a snap-up intercept situation against a target above the fighter. The predicates are:

- A range greater than the weapon can make,
- Altitude in excess than 32,000 feet, and
- The locked target is greater than 8,000 feet above the fighter.

When the HOLD ALT light is on, the fighter should be flown to center the steering dot relative to azimuth of the ASE circle. When the HOLD ALT

light turns off, the fighter should then snap up in pitch to fully center the steering dot in the ASE circle. See the 3.10 Radar System for more.

Wheels Light

The WHEELS light (1) illuminates when the aircraft slows below flaps blow-up speed (roughly 230 knots, dependent on altitude) with the gear still raised. In this situation, the aircraft assumes the intention is to land and the light illuminates to suggest lowering the gear.

Range Lights

The Range Lights (9) illuminate relative to range settings selected by the WSO. Range is provided in the upper right corner of the DSCG scope.

Overhead Indicators

The overhead indicators offer information directly in the pilots view and aid in situations where the pilot is focused and looking outside, such as during combat, landing or refueling with a tanker.

SHOOT Lights

A group of 5 lights arranged around the canopy bow, illuminating when missile firing parameters are met. These lights do not illuminate when in visual intercept (VI) or Air-to-Ground modes.

Air Refueling Lights

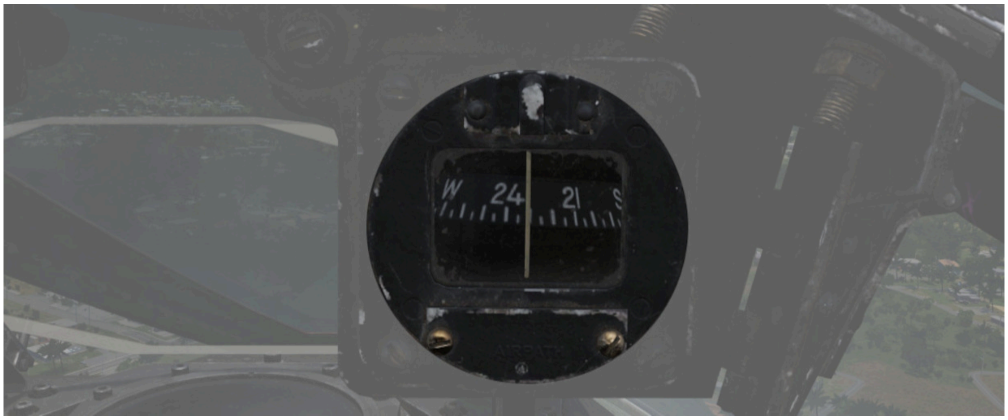
Provide status of the Air Refueling System while in use.

Name	Description
READY	Illuminates when air refuel receptacle is fully extended. Turns off when boom is locked or receptacle retracted.
DISENGAGED	Illuminates when boom disengages during cycle, and remains lit until refueling system is reset.
L.H. FULL	Indicates left hand external tank is full (also while refueling on ground).
CTR. FULL	Indicates centerline external tank is full (also while refueling on ground).
R.H. FULL	Indicates right hand external tank is full (also while refueling on ground).

Labs Pull Up Light

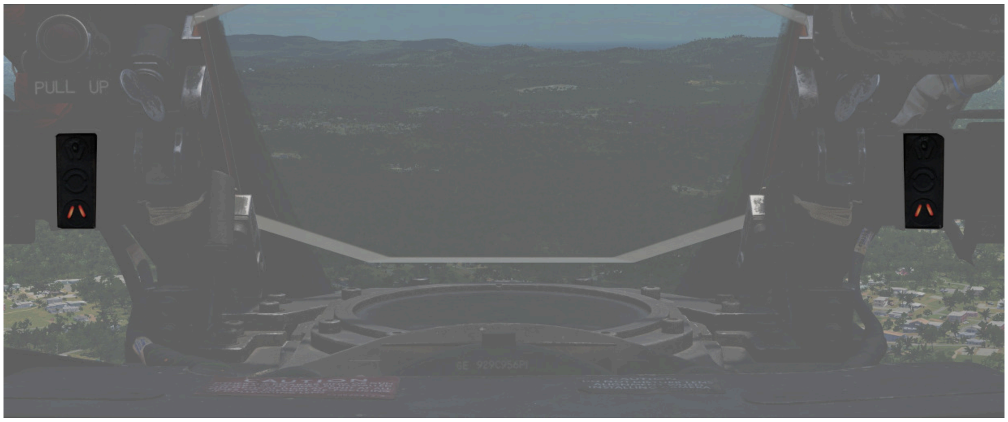
Illuminates and disengages during Loft and LABS bombing runs to provide timing sequence information to the pilot.

Standby Magnetic Compass

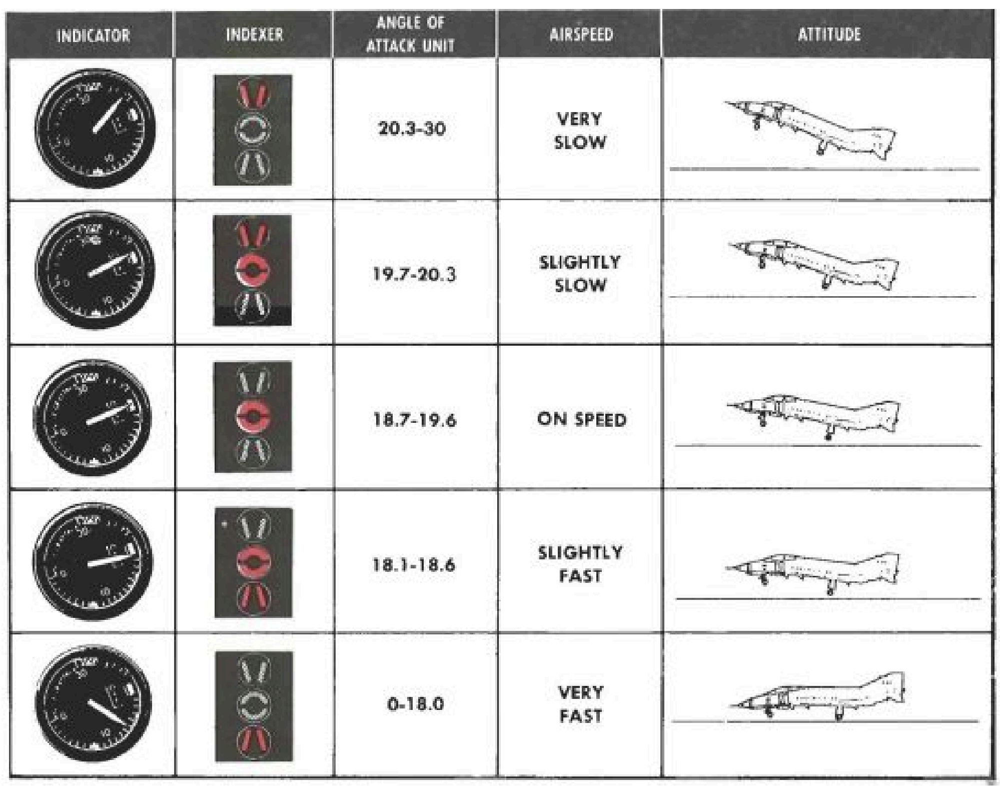


A standard magnetic compass for backup navigation assistance should the primary flight director systems fail. The compass should only be used in level flight. Compass deviation cards are found above the right canopy sill on each cockpit.

Angle of Attack Indexer Lights



A pair of indicators to the left and right of the HUD that provide quick confirmation of current aircraft AoA state based on illuminated position and color.



INDICATOR	INDEXER	ANGLE OF ATTACK UNIT	AIRSPEED	ATTITUDE
		20.3-30	VERY SLOW	
		19.7-20.3	SLIGHTLY SLOW	
		18.7-19.6	ON SPEED	
		18.1-18.6	SLIGHTLY FAST	
		0-18.0	VERY FAST	

Can also indicate weapon steering cues and an aural tone system backs up the indication with audible cues. See 3.1.2 Flight Controls, Angle of Attack System section for details.

💡 The AoA Indexers are only lit with the right gear down.

Weapon Management

This group on the left area of the main panel provides all weapon related settings, such as arming missiles or selecting the bomb delivery mode. It features a true airspeed indicator (1), a Head Up Display Indicator (2), a flight instrument brightness knob (3), the nose/tail arming switch (4), the station select buttons (5), the master arm switch (6), the delivery mode knob (7), the weapon selector knob (8), the missile status lights (9), the radar missile power switch (10), the centerline tank aboard light (11), the interlock switch (12), the selective jettison control (16) and the AWRU controls (13, 14 and 15).

Range Indicator

This panel provides the pilot with a readout of the slant range measured by the Pave Spike Targeting Pod (x100 ft).

When the Test-Button (3) is pressed, the display shows 888. The knob underneath (5) the test button controls the brightness of the readout (2).

The Mode-Knob (1) allows the pilot to select one of two weapon delivery modes available with the pod:

- WRCS - Automatic Delivery
- ROR - Release on Range

In the SET position, the display shows the desired release range used in the ROR mode. The knob below the readout (4) can be used to adjust this range.

Head Up Display Indicators

The Head Up Display indicator panel provides weapon status for the Master Arm control as well as the current selected air-to-air weapon based on the position of the pinky switch on the left throttle handle.

Name	Description
RADAR	Illuminates when a radar-guided air to air missile is selected.
HEAT	Illuminates when an IR-guided air to air missile is selected.

Name	Description
GUN	Illuminates when the nose gun is selected.
ARM	Illuminates when the Master Arm switch is selected to ARM.

UHF Remote Channel Indicator

Provides the current selected channel value when the radio is set to PRESET. Otherwise, the indicator displays M if the radio is set to Manual, G when the COMM function is set as GUARD/ADF, or A when the A-3-2-T switch is in A.

True Airspeed Indicator

Provides the aircraft's true Airspeed in knots, and is calibrated from 150 to 1500 knots; airspeeds below this range are thus not reliable.

Flight Instrument Brightness Knob

Controls edge lighting of the main flight instruments of **both cockpits**.

Rotating clockwise will increase their brightness, but at the same time also dim most warning and indication lamps in the aircraft.

> 💡 When dimmed, SHOOT lamps are turned off entirely.

Flight instrument lights can additionally be controlled individually with knobs on the Flight Instrument Lights Intensity Panel, located on the right wall.

See 3.9. Interior Lighting for details.

> 🚧 The flight instrument lighting is currently linked to the Instrument Panel Knob on the right console instead. The correct controls will be made available later during Early-Access.

Nose/Tail Arming Switch

Controls the arming solenoids of the MER and TER racks, selecting what MER/TER position(s) arming lanyards are pulled from released bomb fuzes upon separation, thus making them live. This function also controls selective low/high drag capability for retarded bombs.

Name	Description
SAFE	No arming solenoids activate; bombs release without fuzing enabled.
NOSE	Forward and center position solenoids activate to hold arming lanyards.
TAIL	Aft position solenoids activate to hold arming lanyards.
NOSE/TAIL	Forward, center, and aft position solenoids all activate to hold arming lanyards.

For example, MK-82 Air or Snakeye variants will only detonate if the nose fuze is selected and switch between high drag configuration with the tail fuze set and low drag if not set.

Station Select Buttons

The Station Select Buttons are used to activate air to ground munition stations and the nose gun. Upon selection of a station, the upper half denoting the position will illuminate green to confirm the station is active. The lower half will illuminate amber once the necessary mode is selected, the weapon is compatible with the weapon select knob option, the Master Arm is in the ARM position, and any necessary warm up period for the selected weapon type is completed. L and R positions are left and right, respectively, with O denoting outboard and I denoting inboard stations. The centerline weapon position is CL, and the nose gun is armed with the GUN station selector button.

Dimmer Knob

A dimmer knob is also provided to raise or lower the lighting of the station select buttons relative to current cockpit conditions.

If the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob above it is set to the full CCW position, it overrides the dimmer knob and Station Select Buttons are always illuminated at full brightness.

> 💡 The dimmer knob can control brightness only within a limited range.

Master Arm Switch

Provides master arming function for all aircraft weapons.

Delivery Mode Knob

The Delivery Mode Knob sets the fire control system to the desired air to ground weapon release type. Split into two halves, the left side of the dial

references ARBCS (Altitude Reference and Bombing Computer Set) delivery modes, while the right side provides automated release functions using the WRCS (Weapon Release Computer Set) with possible tie-in to the navigation computer, depending on mode. At the 11 o'clock position is the OFF position, which is utilized for air-to-air weapons (including the gun). The next mode, DIRECT, is used for video-directed weapons such as the AGM-65 and as a direct delivery bombing mode. The full series of positions is as follows, clockwise from the left:

Name	Description
INST O/S	Instantaneous Over the Shoulder
LOFT	Loft
O/S	(Timed) Over the Shoulder
T LAD	Timed LADD (Low Angle Drogue Delivery)
TL	Timed Level
OFF	Off (Air-to-Air)
DIRECT	Manual Direct
TGT FIND	Target Find (Nav mode and Pave Spike only)
DT	Dive Toss
DL	Dive Laydown
L	Laydown
OFF SET	Offset Bomb
AGM-45	AGM-45 Shrike

For further information see 4.3 Air-to-Ground weaponry chapter.

Weapon Selector Knob

Used to select the appropriate type of weapon, providing release signals to the AWRU (Aircraft Weapons Release Unit). ARM and TV positions inhibit air-to-air weapon firing unless a CAGE signal is active. ARM and TV positions do not affect tuning status of radar guided weapons. Positions are as follows:

Name	Description
AGM-12	AGM-12 Bullpup
BOMBS	Bombs (all types including CBUs).
RKTS & DISP	Rockets and dispensers.
ARM	Anti-Radiation Missile (AGM-45 Shrike).
TV	Electro-optical weapons (AGM-65 Maverick).
C	Not used; may be utilized as an OFF position.
B	Like AIR TO AIR switch in rear cockpit, cancels CAGE requirement.
A	Backup mode that simultaneously releases CBUs, rockets, or dispensers; bombs do not release.

Aircraft Weapons Release Unit

Provides timed interval release scheduling of single or multiple bombs or rockets and dispensed munitions based on the selections made between the interval knob, the QTY (quantity) knob and the INTRVL switch.

For further information see 3.11.2 Aircraft Weapons release unit (AWRU).

Interval Knob

The interval knob (1) provides release pulse sequences between 0.05 second and 1 second.

Interval Switch

The INTRVL switch (2) provides the option of a 10x multiplier of the set value of the interval knob. In the NORM position, the interval knob value is the trigger timer.

Quantity Knob

The quantity knob (3) controls how many stores are released per impulse.

Selecting "1" places the AWRU into single manual bombing mode; one push of the bomb release button releases one bomb.

Selecting a value from "2" to "18" sets the AWRU into single ripple mode; in this mode, the AWRU will release bombs according to the programmed

interval until the set number of rounds is dropped, or the bomb button is released. Upon release, the count is reset, and a subsequent press and hold will drop the programmed number of bombs.

Selecting "C" sets the AWRU into single continuous mode; pressing the bomb release button drops rounds according to the programmed interval until the bomb button is released, or all munitions from the selected pylons are expended.

The "P" setting is for pairs manual mode. With at least two stations selected, each push of the bomb button will release two bombs; like single manual mode, this does not include an interval function.

Lastly, the "S" setting, for salvo, releases bombs in accordance to the chosen interval from all selected stations simultaneously, until the bomb button is released. Ergo, if four stations are selected with a 2 second interval (0.2 on the interval dial, X10 INTRVL switch setting), four bombs will be released every two seconds the bomb button is held down.

Missile Status Lights

The Missile Status Light window provides confirmation of currently installed and configured 4.2 air-to-air missiles chapter.

Radar Lights

The RDR lights (2) illuminate once AIM-7 missiles are properly tuned with the fire control system; any station that does not carry a Sparrow,

does not correctly sync up during tuning, or is launched, will turn off.

The left pair of lights indicates stations 4 and 3 from top to bottom, while the right pair links to stations 6 and 7 respectively.

Heat Lights

The HEAT lights (1) illuminate one at a time, rather than all up upon circuit configuration. The light of the currently selected station will illuminate beginning at the raising of the gear handle, and remain in that position until the weapon is either cycled using the throttle's Gun/Missile Switch reject option, or is launched. The HEAT light arrangement corresponds with the launch sequence of the AIM-9.

The left pair of lights represent station 2L and 2R respectively, while the right pair is linked to stations 8L and 8R.

Radar Missile Power Switch

The Radar Missile Power Switch provides power to the klystron continuous wave (CW) emitter responsible for guidance signals. This also powers the Sparrow tuning drive which is responsible for tuning the Sparrows to the correct continuous wave carrier frequency for guidance.

When switched out of the OFF position, power is applied to the circuit 30 seconds after this selection.

The STBY position maintains warmup power to the missiles and continuous wave tuning drive once the missiles have been tuned. This keeps the Sparrows and Tuning Drive warm, but the Sparrows not tuned.

The CW ON position allows for constant tuning and missile state monitoring with the radar mode not in TV. This also causes the radar klystron to begin continuous wave emission.

Tuning can be performed on the ground with the radar in TEST mode to preclude emissions endangering ground crew.

Centerline Tank Aboard Light

Illuminates when a stores condition exists that precludes ejection or launch of an AIM-7 missile installed in one of the two forward positions. To use the Sparrows on these stations the centerline store must be first jettisoned.

Interlock Switch

A two position switch that determines whether the fire control system launch parameter interlocks can prevent an AIM-7 from being launched when the trigger is pulled.

Name	Description
IN	Interlocks engaged; range limits, ASE limits, or radar not in visual intercept inhibits launch.
OUT	Interlocks override; AIM-7 will fire when trigger is pulled even when no launch condition is met.

Selective Jettison Control

The Selective Jettison Control knob provides the pilot direct access to dump stores on a position by position basis.

The pilot selects the desired position by rotating the knob and then presses the button on its front to jettison the selected stores.

Name	Description
OFF	Safes PUSH TO JETT button on the Selective Jettison Control Panel.
STORES	Releases all MER/TER, single carried, LAU-88 mounted rounds, or drop tanks currently selected on the station buttons upon PUSH TO JETT.
L/R FWD	Jettisons AIM-7 from respective position on PUSH TO JETT. Inhibited if CL TK ON.
L/R AFT	Jettisons AIM-7 from respective position on PUSH TO JETT.
L/R WING	In conjunction with TV or ARM, jettisons single AGM-65 Maverick or AGM-45 Shrike from wing on PUSH TO JETT.

As example, to jettison the right and left external fuel tanks, the pilot must select *STORES* on the knob, press the corresponding station select buttons *LO*, *RO* and then push the jettison button.

Recorder Lamp

This dimmable lamp is lit to indicate operation of the Airborne-Video-Tape-Recorder (AVTR).

The AVTR system is controlled by the WSO and records the intercom sound, as well as the rear radar screen.

Flight Director Group

The flight director group provides the pilot with all necessary instruments to fly the aircraft even in a bad weather situation. It contains the Radar Altimeter (1), the Airspeed and Mach Indicator (2), the Reference System Selector Switch (3), the Attitude Director Indicator (4), the Marker Beacon Lamp (5), the Barometric Altimeter (6), the Angle of Attack Indicator (7), the Horizontal Situation Indicator (8), the Vertical Velocity Indicator (9), the Standby Attitude Indicator (10) and the Navigation Function Selector Panel (11).

Radar Altimeter

Terrain relative accurate height information up to 5000 ft, functions to 30 degrees of bank angle or 35 degrees of pitch. Clockwise rotation of the

function control switch (1) on the lower left of the indicator powers the device; continued rotation sets the low altitude warning pointer to the desired height. Below the set altitude, the warning light (2) on the lower right activates. A self-test, initiated by pressing the function control switch, shows 35ft.

Airspeed and Mach Indicator

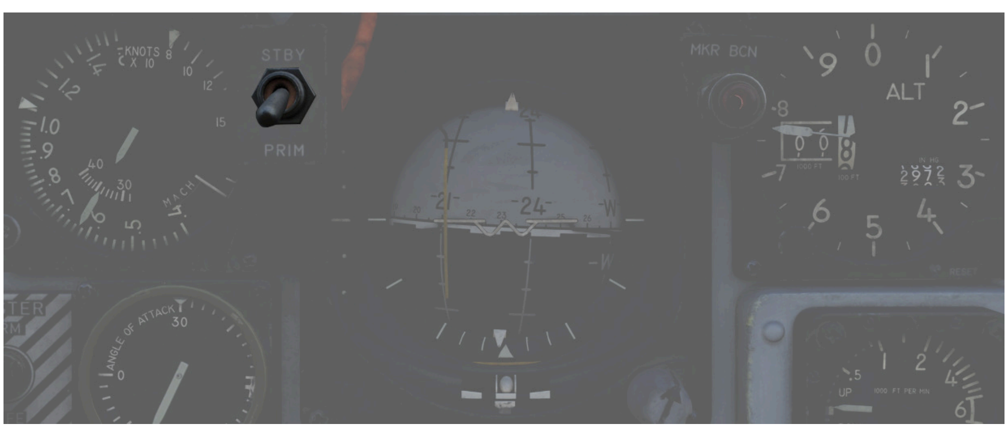
The combination airspeed and mach number indicator shows airspeed readings below 200 knots, and include Mach numbers on the outer ring at high speed. The indicator uses a single pointer over a fixed airspeed scale, marked from 80 to 850 knots, with a moving Mach scale (2) presenting from Mach 0.4 to 2.5. A pair of movable reference markers is available with the knob (4) on the face of the gauge, with speed reference available between 80 and 195 knots, and the Mach index pointer being able to be set between the 225 knot and 850 knot regions relative to the airspeed gauge. The (1) needle and the inner ring refers to the airspeed in knots. The (2) needle and the respective outer ring refers to the Mach scale. Both move along dynamically according to the Airspeed. The (3) area refers to the airspeed scale before the mach scale starts.

Angle of Attack Indicator

Drawing relative wind information from the landing-gear adjacent AoA probe, the AoA indicator offers conditional reference for cruise (7.9 units), approach (19.2 units), and stall (30 units). Because of the AoA probe to the nose gear door and subsequent airflow disturbance when the gear is lowered, actual aircraft AoA is approximately 1 unit higher than indicated, and ON SPEED AoA is roughly 5 knots slower than the given value.

When indicator power is offline due to electrical system configuration or damage, an OFF flag will appear in the window on the face of the gauge. The AoA indicator contains switches that light the indexer lights and actuate the stall warning vibrator.

Reference System Selector Switch



Toggles between the inertial navigation set and AN/AJB-7 displacement gyroscope for attitude information. When set to PRIM, the inertial navigation set provides azimuth and attitude data to the ADI; when on STBY, AN/AJB-7 supplies this information. Azimuth data also feeds into the HSI and BDHI (rear cockpit). Additionally, attitude details are sent to the fire control system.

> 💡 Inertial information requires the inertial navigator control panel's switch to be on NAV.

When transitioning between STBY and PRIM, immediate attitude information may show unusual gyrations on the attitude director indicator due to initial erection. Rapid turns (above 15° per minute) may temporarily disrupt accurate heading information and automatic synchronization of heading information. If the heading information doesn't resync itself after flying straight and level again for approximately 20 seconds a manual synchronization is required. This can be done by flying in a straight and level flight for about 20 seconds and turning the Mode Selector Knob to the spring-loaded SYNC position for approximately 3 seconds.

Attitude Director Indicator

Includes an attitude sphere, turn indicator, steering bars, miniature aircraft, glide-slope pointer, flags, and pitch trim knob. It displays pitch,

bank, and heading from the selected reference system and allows pitch adjustment via the trim knob. The turn indicator relies on a gyro from the AN/AJB-7 system. The steering bars offer Flight Director guidance for heading interception, navigation, and ILS approaches. The glide-slope pointer provides vertical guidance information during an ILS approach.

Marker Beacon Lamp

This lamp illuminates whenever flying over a marker beacon station, provided the VOR/ILS system has been activated. Additionally, an audio cue is played through the intercom system.

The lamp can be rotated to dim and pushed to test.

Horizontal Situation Indicator

Presents a horizontal view of the navigation situation relative to the aircraft, indicated by an aircraft symbol and a lubber line showing the current aircraft heading.

Knobs

The knob on the lower left (**1**) is available to input desired magnetic heading, and the Course Set knob (**4**) on the lower right is used to enter VOR radial or inbound localizer course for accurate deviation display.

Compass Card

A rotating element (**5**), dependent on the AJB-7 heading input, displays a compass rose.

It provides a reference for the aircraft's heading relative to magnetic north.

Bearing Pointer

Indicates the magnetic bearing to a selected navigation aid (Nav Comp, VOR, TACAN, or ADF).

Course Arrow and Deviation Indicator

The direction towards which the arrow (**6**) points can be manually selected by the Course Knob in VOR/ILS and TAC modes (as seen on course rollers).

In HDG mode, it indicates the aircraft's magnetic heading, and in NAV COMP mode, it points to the aircraft's magnetic ground track.

The Deviation Indicator provides visual feedback on the aircraft's deviation from the selected course. It shows deviation from a TACAN course in TAC mode or deviation from a VOR radial in VOR/ILS mode when VOR is tuned, and deviation from an ILS localizer signal in VOR/ILS mode when ILS is tuned.

To-From Indicator

Reveals whether the current course will lead towards or away from the tuned station, functioning with TACAN and VOR inputs.

Heading Marker

The heading marker (3) can be manually set to the desired heading to provide the Flight Director with steering signals in all modes except NAV COMP.

In NAV COMP mode, it displays command steering towards the selected target, taking wind drift into account.

Range Indicator

Shows the distance (2) to the selected TACAN station or NAV COMP destination.

Mode Indicator Lights

Several lights (7) indicate the active navigation mode:

- VOR: Indicates that the VOR/ILS mode is selected and a VOR frequency selected.
- ILS: Indicates that the VOR/ILS mode is selected and an ILS frequency selected.
- TAC: Shows that TACAN mode is active.
- NAV: Illuminates when the Navigation Computer mode is in use.
- MAN: Indicates that the Heading Mode is selected.
- UHF: Signifies that the ADF mode is active.
- TGT: Illuminates during specific radar offset bombing operations.

Altimeter

A counter-pointer style altimeter, with thousandths in the counter window (4) and 100 foot increments around the face (5). The altimeter has an absolute range of 80,000 feet. The altimeter includes a barometric scale (3) for setting local pressure with the knob (1) on the indicator. Works in either electric (normal operation mode) or pneumatic (STBY) mode, switchable via a spring-loaded three position switch (2) labelled RESET and STBY. When held in RESET for more than 3 seconds the system will be reset and moved out of STBY.

Vertical Velocity Indicator

Provides rate of climb or descent via the static pressure system referenced in thousands of feet per minute.

Standby Attitude Indicator

The SAI functions independent of the Flight Director Group, providing reasonably accurate readings (within six degrees) for 9 minutes if power to the system is lost and the OFF flag is in view. Pitch markings are indicated every 5 degrees, while roll markings are in gradations of 10 degrees. Roll is illustrated through 360 degrees, while pitch is limited by stops at 92 degrees in climb and 78 degrees in dive to prevent gimbal lock. The SAI can be unlocked by pressing the knob and trimmed by turning it.

Navigation Function Selector Panel

Controls display presentation on the ADI and HDI based on the selected values on the two knobs; to the left is the Bearing/Distance Knob (1), and to the right the Mode Selector Knob (2 and 3). The Bearing/Distance

Knob determines the source of navigation information for the HSI and ADI. The Mode Selector Knob provides control over the presentation of various displayed information on the HSI and ADI. The Mode Selector Knob includes an inset switch marked FD, for Flight Director. This switch engages or deactivates the pitch and bank steering bars on the ADI; the OFF position has the switch aligned vertically.

Bearing/Distance Knob

Name	Description
VOR/TAC	Magnetic and relative bearing to VOR station and TACAN range displayed on HSI.
TAC	Magnetic and relative bearing and range to TACAN station displayed on the HSI.
ADF/TAC	Magnetic and relative bearing to ADF station and TACAN range displayed on HSI.
NAV COMP	Magnetic and relative bearing and range provided from navigation computer (i.e. waypoints) on HSI.

Mode Selector Knob Display Functions

ADI AND HSI DISPLAYS

(BEFORE TO 1F-4E-626)

INDICATOR		NAVIGATION MODE SELECTOR POSITION				
		VOR/ILS		HDG	TAC	NAV COMP
		VOR OPERATION	ILS OPERATION			
ADI	[1] BANK STEERING BAR	STEER TO VOR RADIAL	STEER TO ILS LOCALIZER	STEER TO HEADING (HSI HEADING SET KNOB)	STEER TO SELECTED TAC RADIAL (HSI HEADING SET KNOB)	STEERING TO DEST (NAV COMP)
	COURSE WARNING FLAG	IN VIEW WHEN VOR INFO UNRELIABLE	IN VIEW WHEN ILS LOCALIZER INFO UNRELIABLE	OUT OF VIEW	IN VIEW WHEN TAC SIGNAL UNRELIABLE	OUT OF VIEW
	GLIDE-SLOPE INDICATOR	OUT OF VIEW	INDICATES AIRCRAFT DEVIATION FROM ILS GLIDESCOPE	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW
	GLIDESLOPE WARNING FLAG	OUT OF VIEW	IN VIEW WHEN ILS GLIDESLOPE INFO UNRELIABLE	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW
	[1] PITCH STEERING BAR	OUT OF VIEW	STEER TO GLIDESLOPE CENTER AFTER GLIDESLOPE CAPTURE	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW
	SPHERE (AZIMUTH)	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING
HSI	HEADING MARKER [2]	SET TO DESIRED VOR COURSE FOR ADI BANK STEERING	INDEPENDENT OF ILS. SET TO ANY REFERENCE HEADING	SET TO DESIRED MAG HEADING FOR ADI BANK STEERING	SET TO DESIRED TACAN COURSE FOR ADI BANK STEERING	COMMAND HEADING STEERING TO DEST (NAV COMP)
	COURSE ARROW AND COURSE SELECTOR WINDOW	SET TO VOR RADIAL WITH COURSE SET KNOB	SET TO LOCALIZER COURSE WITH COURSE SET KNOB	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	SET TO TAC RADIAL WITH COURSE SET KNOB	AIRCRAFT MAG GROUND TRACK
	COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR	AIRCRAFT DEVIATION FROM VOR RADIAL	AIRCRAFT DEVIATION FROM LOCALIZER COURSE	CENTERED	AIRCRAFT DEVIATION FROM TAC RADIAL	CENTERED
	TO-FROM INDICATOR	IND WHETHER VOR RADIAL LEADS A/C TO OR FROM VOR STA	OUT OF VIEW	OUT OF VIEW	IND WHETHER COURSE WILL TAKE A/C TO OR AWAY FROM TAC STA	OUT VIEW
	MODE LIGHT	VOR (ON FRONT COCKPIT INST PANEL)	ILS	MAN	TAC	NAV
	COMPASS CARD	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING	AIRCRAFT MAG HEADING

[1] WITH THE FLIGHT DIRECTOR SWITCH IN THE OFF POSITION, THE PITCH AND BANK STEERING BARS ARE DRIVEN OUT OF VIEW.

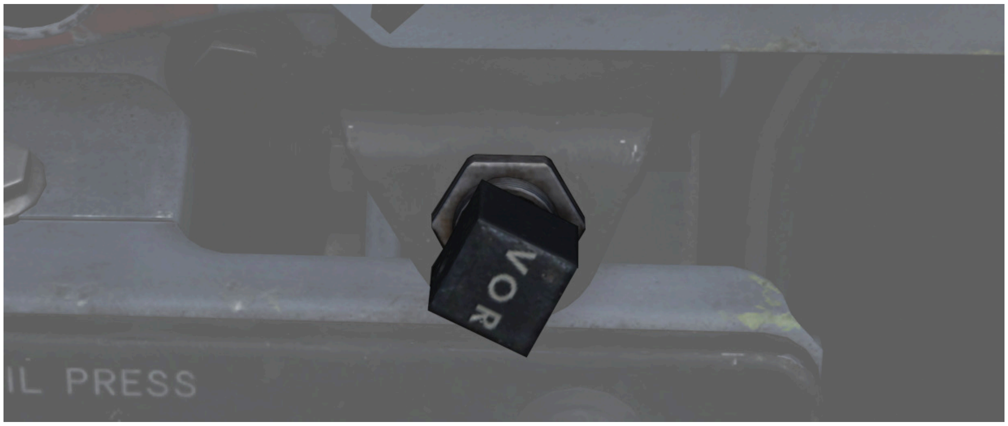
[2] WITH THE FLIGHT DIRECTOR OFF, THE HEADING SET MARKER OPERATES INDEPENDENTLY AND CAN BE SET TO ANY REFERENCE HEADING WITH THE HEADING SET KNOB.

INDICATOR		BEARING DISTANCE SWITCH POSITION			
		VOR/TAC	TAC	ADF/TAC	NAV COMP
HSI	BEARING POINTER	MAGNETIC BEARING TO VOR STATION	MAGNETIC BEARING TO TACAN STATION	RELATIVE BEARING TO SELECTED ADF STATION	MAGNETIC BEARING TO DESTINATION SELECTED ON NAVIGATION COMPUTER
	RANGE INDICATOR	RANGE TO TACAN STATION (TACAN IN T/R MODE)	RANGE TO TACAN STATION (TACAN IN T/R MODE)	RANGE TO TACAN STATION (TACAN IN T/R MODE)	RANGE TO DESTINATION SELECTED ON NAVIGATION COMPUTER
	MODE LIGHT	[3] VOR	TAC	UHF	NAV

[3] VOR LIGHT ON FRONT COCKPIT INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATED, IF VOR FREQUENCY IS SELECTED.

4E-1-1477F

VOR Lamp



Illuminates to indicate that the VOR system is ready and receiving.

That is, a valid VOR frequency has been selected, a signal is received and the navigation knobs have been turned to VOR navigation.

Right Main Panel

The right main panel offers a good overview of all needed engine data as well as of your defensive Radar warning receiver (RWR). There is also the fuel gauge (1) and the fire warning lights (4) located on it. Also found on the right main panel are the master caution light (3), the fire test switch (2), the fuel flow gauges (5), the engine rpm gauges (6), the exhaust gas temperature gauges (7) and the nozzle position indicators (8).

RWR Azimuth Indicator

The Radar warning receiver Azimuth Indicator shows all Radar sources that are visible to the Radar warning receiver. The knob controls the brightness of the display.

Below is a box with several knobs to operate the system.

For further information and button explanation see the Radar Warning Receiver chapter.

Azimuth-Elevation Indicator

The Azimuth-Elevation Indicator, or also Line-Of-Sight Indicator, is the main instrument for the pilot to assess the current attitude of the Pave Spike Targeting Pod in order to keep the line of sight within the operational limits.

The needle shows the pods roll position from -160° (CW) to +110° (CCW).

Three flags indicate the elevation:

- green: -120° to -155°

- yellow: -155° to -160°
- red: -160° or beyond

If the needle is kept within the green labelled range and neither the yellow or red flag are shown, the view will not be obstructed by the pod or the aircraft.

Master Caution Light

The Master Caution light illuminates to provide the pilot warning of a condition requiring attention, directing them to look at the telelight panel for additional information. The Master Caution lamp is reset by correcting the condition, or pressing the Master Caution Reset button on the generator control panel.

Fire Test Button

When pressed, this button tests for functionality of the FIRE and OVRHT lamps. Under normal conditions, all four lights should light up as long as the button is pressed down. If a lamp does not light up, it is likely broken and cannot be trusted on indicating a fire condition anymore.

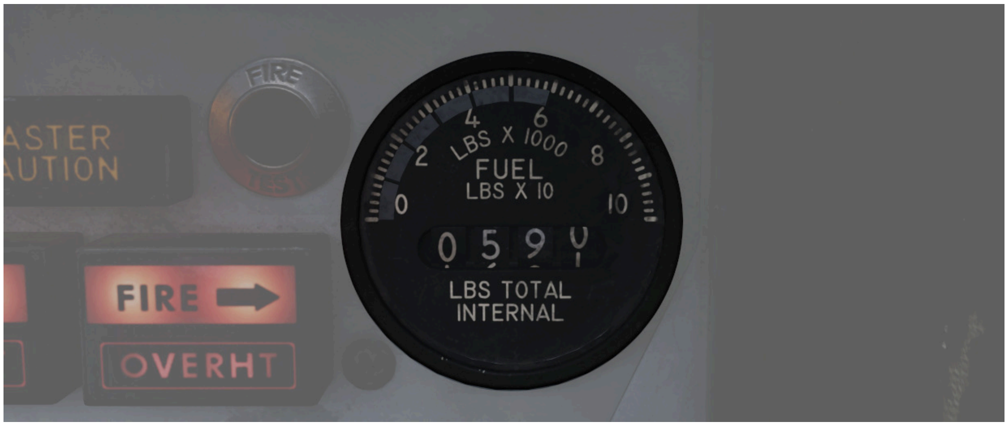
The button can also be used in conjunction with the Warning Lights Test switch to confirm detection and continuity performance of the fire and overheat warning systems.

Holding the Warning Lights Test switch in the WARN TEST position, then simultaneously pressing and releasing the Fire Test Button performs the test. Proper system function is confirmed with the four FIRE and OVRHT lamps off while the Fire Test Button is pressed, then illuminating when it is released.

Fire/Overheat Warning Lamps

The Fire and Overheat Warning Lamps, one for each engine, are a pair of two-position indicators that illuminate when a fire condition is detected in the engine compartment (FIRE), or an overheat condition is detected in the exhaust nozzle section (OVRHT).

Fuel Quantity Indicator



The Fuel Quantity Indicator provides two different indications of total usable internal fuel to confirm proper transfer function between the seven internal fuel cells, as well as any external loaded tanks.

On the upper half, it displays the total **fuselage fuel** with a white tape on a scale marked 0 to 10 (times 1000 lbs). This readout includes cells 1 through 6, while excluding the reserve tank 7, both internal wing tanks and also any externally loaded tanks. The image shows the tape around label 6, indicating a total internal fuel of around 6000 lbs.

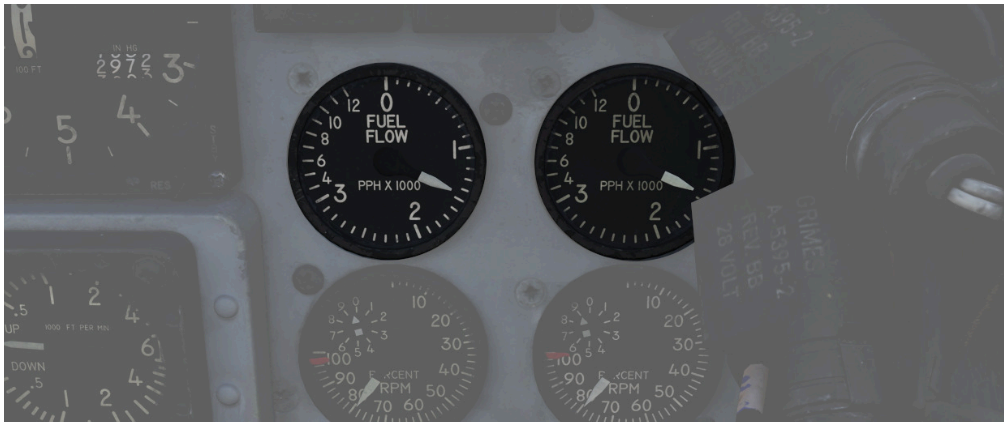
Additionally, a counter displays the entire **internal fuel** in 10 lb increments. That is, cells 1 through 7 and also the two internal wing tanks. Any external tanks are excluded as well. The example has the counter reading 0590, indicating 5900 lb of internal fuel.

> 💡 External tank fuel quantity can not be checked. See 3.2.2. External Tanks Fuel Lights to check if they are empty.

As a general guidance, Bingo fuel is around 4000 pounds, while Joker fuel is at 6000 lb.

For more detailed information see 3.2.2 Fuel system chapter.

Fuel Flow Gauges



A pair of fuel flow indicators is provided, one for each engine, presenting pounds per hour rate from 0 to 12, in 1000 lb increments. Flow indications are for basic, non-afterburning thrust. In afterburner, the flow rate is roughly four times the displayed flow rate.

Tachometers

A percentage-noting Tachometer is provided for each engine, including an inset wheel for accurate display of single digits. Normal values are 65% for idle, 95% in full MIL power and 105% for full afterburner.

Exhaust Gas Temperature Gauges

Exhaust Gas Temperature gauges are provided for each engine. The gauges have two needles - a large needle providing increments of 0 to 12 in multiples of 100 degrees Celsius, and a smaller needle presenting increments of 0-10 in multiples of 10 degrees Celsius. Temperatures are measured at the exit of the turbine unit.

Exhaust Nozzle Position Indicators

A combined Nozzle Position Indicator is provided with two needles, one for each engine on their respective side, to confirm balanced nozzle position and scheduling relative to throttle position. The gauge provides four zones relative to the nozzles being in their fully open configuration (needle fully left), or their maximum closed configuration (needle fully right). At idle, the indication will be roughly 7/8ths open, and schedules

down as throttle is increased. Position in the afterburner region will moderate to maintain safe EGT levels.

Left Sub-Panel

The left sub-panel features most of the gear indicators (1), Slats and Flaps indicators (2), the external lights switch (6), the Aileron-Rudder Interconnect fuse (8), a recorder lamp (3), the landing gear lever (9) as well as the fuel boost pump gauges (4). Also found on it is the stabilator trim gauge (5) and the emergency release of the external stores (7).

8-Day Clock

A clock is provided for the pilot, including a stopwatch function. The watch features a hour and minute hand, and can be set by turning the knob (1) on the left lower corner. The stopwatch function is activated by pressing the top right button (2), it features a minute and second hand. The stopwatch needles are reset by pressing the top right button again.

Landing Gear Handle

Actuates the landing gear; raised for gear up, down for gear down.

Pulling the handle out will actuate the Emergency Mode and release the gear by using a pair of compressed air bottles.

💡 The gear can not be retracted on ground.

Landing Gear Position Indicators

The Landing Gear Position Indicators provide visual confirmation of current gear state, displaying UP when retracted, showing a barber pole while in transition, or the illustration of a wheel in the respective window when fully down and locked.

Slats/Flaps Indicators

Visual indication of the Slat and Flap systems are provided through two window indicators. Slats will be displayed as IN (retracted) or OUT (extended). Flaps will display as UP (retracted) or DN (down), and will show a barber pole while in transition.

Boost Pump Pressure Indicators

A pair of indicators provide confirmation of fuel boost pump operation. Indicators are calibrated 0 to 5, which must be multiplied by 10 to read in current PSI.

Stabilator Trim Indicator

Provides current stabilator trim setting in units of trim (not equal to degrees). For Takeoff the trim should be between 1-3 units nose down.

Landing/Taxi Lights Switch

Control the external Landing and Taxi lamps. Left main gear must be down and locked for the switch to function

> 💡 Lights are turned off automatically when the gear is retracted.

External Stores Emergency Release

Also called the "*panic button*", the External Stores Emergency Release will immediately perform separation of all stores, without air-to-air weapons or special weapons.

Aileron Rudder Interconnect (ARI) Circuit Breaker

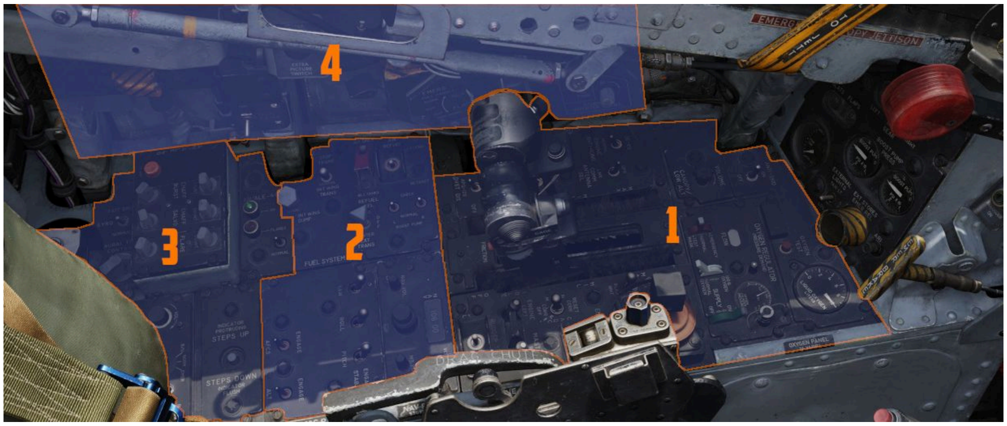
When pulled in conjunction with the Yaw ARI Stab Aug Switch disengaged, Yaw ARI will be fully removed. With the Yaw ARI Stab Aug Switch engaged, 5 degrees of ARI authority will be maintained.

See 3.1.2 Flight controls & AFCS for further information.

Emergency Brake Handle

Pulling this handle activates the Emergency Hydraulic Brake System, dumping the remaining pressure of the hydraulic accumulator in to the brake system for a limited number of brake applications. Note that differential braking will work as normal, but will also serve to exhaust hydraulic pressure more quickly.

Left Console



The left console is further divided into 4 sections.

Section	Name
1.	Front
2.	Center
3.	Aft
4.	Wall

Front Section

The front section of the left console houses the oxygen panel, throttle and engine related controls.

Left Utility Panel

Anti-Skid Switch

A two position switch (**1**) that activates the anti-skid system which provides an electronically controlled skid protection at wheel speeds over 30 knots.

Anti-Skid Inoperative Light

Illuminates when the Anti-Skid Switch is set to OFF, the Emergency Quick Release Lever is pressed, or there is an issue with the Anti-Skid System.

Canopy/Low Altitude Warning Volume

A rotary dial (2) that sets the audio level for canopy open and low altitude voice warnings.

This system is not installed on this variant of the F-4E.

Oxygen Regulator and Oxygen Quantity Gauge

Supply Lever

Two position switch (6) (ON and OFF) activating flow of oxygen to the mask. For further information see 3.7 Utility chapter, Oxygen section.

Diluter Lever

A two position (5) diluter lever, in the center of the regulator panel, controls the mixture of air and oxygen.

For a proportional amount of air to oxygen, the NORMAL OXYGEN position should be selected.

For pure oxygen, the 100% OXYGEN position should be selected. This setting is preferable if fire, toxic smoke or fumes occur in the cockpit.

Emergency Lever

Three position switch (4) which permits selection of NORMAL (standard supply), EMERGENCY pressure (100% oxygen with continuous positive pressure) or TEST MASK (positive pressure to test the face mask for leaks).

The lever should remain in the center (NORMAL) position at all times, unless an unscheduled pressure increase is required.

Flow Indicator

Alternates between black and white (**3**) with each aircrew member breath to indicate oxygen flow (white indicates inhalation).

Oxygen Pressure Gauge

The oxygen pressure gauge (**7**) indicates oxygen supply pressure from 0 to 500 psi.

For further information see 3.7 Utility chapter, Oxygen section.

Oxygen Quantity Gauge

The oxygen quantity gauge (**2**) has a range from 0 to 10 liters. Loss of electrical power is indicated by appearance of a power off flag on the instrument face.

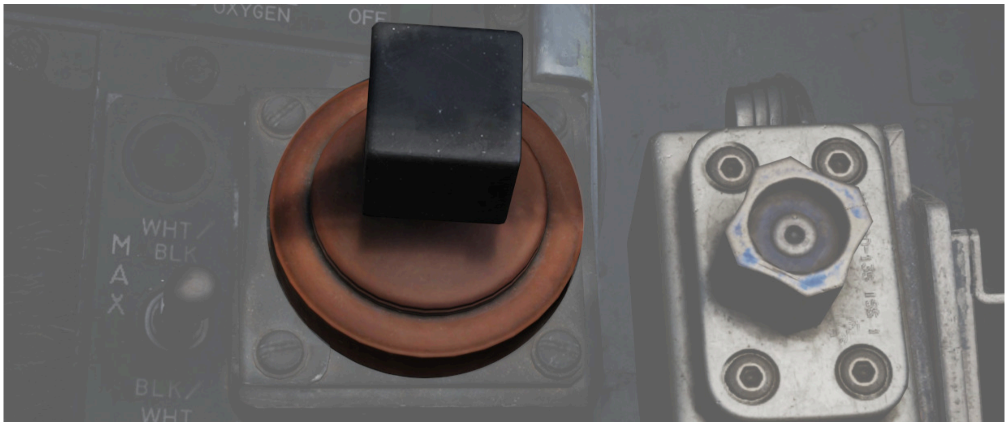
Oxygen Quantity Test Button

The button (**1**) is used to test operation of the front and rear cockpit gauges along with operation of the low-oxygen warning system.

With the button pressed, both gauge needles should move to an indication of zero.

As the needle in the front cockpit passes through the 1 liter indication, the OXYGEN LOW warning light on the front telelight panel should illuminate, and remain illuminated until the button is released and the needle moves above 1 liter again.

Forward Hand Control



Small joystick enabling the Pilot to control and steer guided Weapons such as Mavericks or Bullpups.

Outboard Engine Control Panel

Engine Anti-Icing Switch

Two position switch (1) (DE-ICE and NORMAL) controlling de-icing function. When in DE-ICE, the anti-icing air flow is enabled. In NORMAL, no anti-icing is provided.

The system should only be used below high-mach numbers. At high-mach speeds the compressor inlet temperature is enough to prevent ice from building up.

Communications Antenna Select Switch

Two position switch (2) commanding which antenna is being utilized for voice communication- UPR (upper) or LWR (lower).

The Upper position should be used for take-off and landing since the lower antenna could interfere with the anti-skid wheel speed sensor and thus create a malfunction in the anti-skid system. The lower antenna could also interfere with the nose gear steering whilst transmitting. This happens due to electromagnetic interference radiating from the lower UHF antenna.

LCOSS Switch

A two position switch (3) that selects which computer system is installed on this aircraft.

- ARS-107
- ASG-26

The switch is a leftover and not connected.

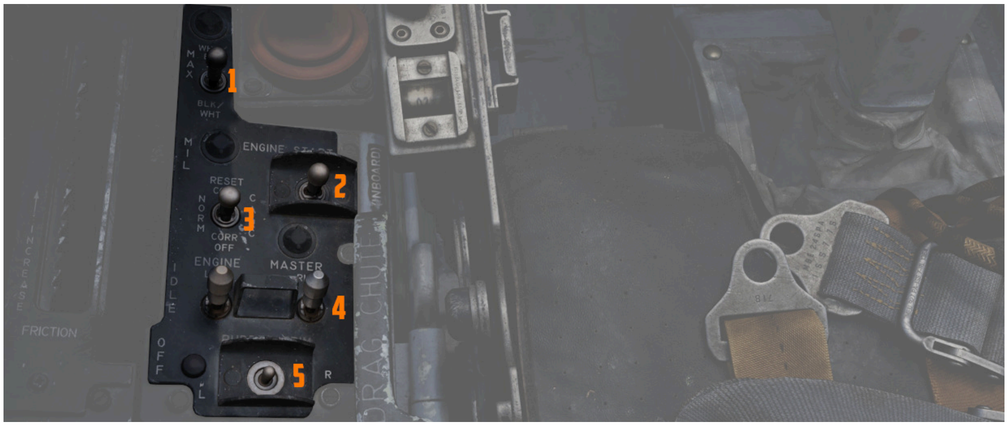
DVST Switch

A two position switch (4) that selects which radar system is installed on this aircraft.

- APS-107
- APQ-120

The switch is a leftover and not connected.

Inboard Engine Control Panel



The Inboard Engine Control Panel carries the following controls:

Target Contrast Switch

The three position switch (1) is used to select the appropriate contrast conditions for seeker acquisition with the AGM-65A Maverick and AGM-65B Maverick.

Name	Description
WHT/BLK	Programs the missile seeker to track a light target on a dark background.
AUTO	Programs the missile to use its automatic tracking mode.
BLK/WHT	Programs the missile seeker to track a dark target on a light background.

> 💡 This does not change the polarity of the video but the coding of the seeker itself.

Engine Start Switch

Three position switch (2) with automatic return to center used to start the respective engine using the cartridge (if loaded), left or right. See

engine system chapter for further detail on when to use the cartridge start.

CADC Static Pressure Compensator Correction Switch

Three position switch (3), momentary in the RESET CORR position, used to correct or disengage the Static Pressure Compensation of the altimeter, thus eliminating, or invoking, altimeter lag from rapid altitude changes.

Name	Description
RESET CORR	Actuated after engine startup, then in flight if a SPC warning is caused by transient conditions.
NORM	Regular operating position of switch upon release of RESET CORR or actuation out of CORR OFF.
CORR OFF	Manually disengages SPC altitude lag compensation.

Engine Master Switches

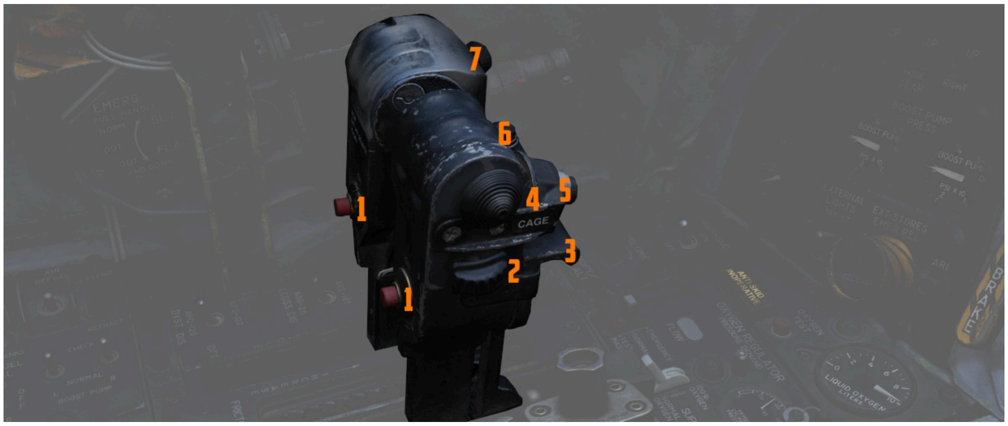
A pair of two position lever lock switches (4), separated by a guard to alleviate erroneous command of the wrong switch, connects electrical power to the engine boost and transfer pumps for the respective engine when placed in the ON (forward) position. The connection to electrical power is external if the aircraft is connected to a ground crew provided generator, or the aircraft's battery if no external power available. Switching them to OFF (aft) position will engage the fuel shutoff valves

so long as the aircraft is not solely running on the internal electrical bus; otherwise, the valves will remain open, unless the engine throttle is placed into the cutoff position. For further Information see 3.2.1 engines chapter.

Rudder Trim Switch

A three position switch with automatic return to center (5), used to apply rudder trim adjustment when pressed to the respective side, left or right.

Throttles



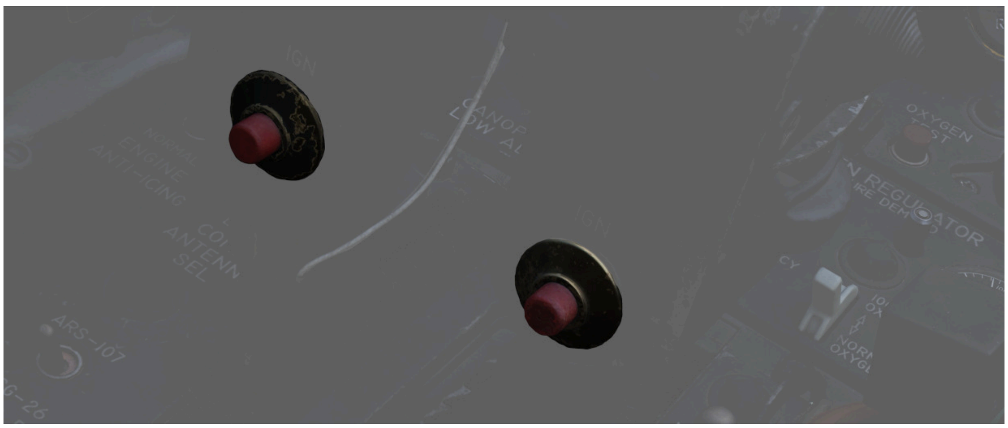
The throttle arrangement for each engine in the F-4E Phantom II is located on the front and rear cockpit left console. Mechanical linkage transmits throttle movement to the engine fuel control. A friction adjusting lever allows customization of throttle friction. Afterburner initiation occurs by shifting the throttles outboard and moving forward from the MIL position. The Afterburner gate can be adjusted in the special options of the module.

Throttle movement is smooth and continuous, with afterburner modulation possible throughout the range. Moving throttles from IDLE to OFF closes the fuel shutoff valve, stopping fuel flow. To transition from OFF to IDLE or MIL, advance the throttles straight forward. Shifting throttles outboard allows movement from MIL to MAX, enabling forward motion in the afterburner range. For further information see 3.1.2 Engines chapter.

Fingerlifts

Front cockpit throttles feature finger lifts (3) for quick chops to IDLE, preventing inadvertent shutoff. The lifts must be raised before retarding throttles to OFF. Rear cockpit throttles are linked to the front cockpit, allowing only the pilot to start engines or move throttles into afterburner range. Rear cockpit throttles can be moved from OFF without front seat assistance.

Ignition Buttons



Engine ignition for startup is performed using a pair of spark plugs on each engine, activated by pressing the red Ignition Button (1) found on the rear of both throttle levers. The button is depressed as part of the starting sequence to ignite the spark plugs, initiating combustion in chambers four and five of the engines.

Cage Button

A spring-loaded button (5) located on the backside of the throttle. In the event that an AIM-7, AIM-9, or the M61A1 must be employed against an airborne target with the sight in A/G mode (for example, the flight is bounced by opposing aircraft), the optical sight reticle can immediately be slewed to the Radar Boresight Line using the Cage Button, found on the inboard (right) throttle handle. Cage mode commands the radar into BST mode with a five mile range, and short pulse, and sets the firing circuit for the currently selected air-to-air weapon relative to the Pinky Switch. For the optical sight, the command activates the respective elevation and azimuth tracking, roll mark, and range functions of the reticle for the chosen weapon, without the pilot having to remove a hand from throttle or stick to swap the sight mode or weapon control panel functions.

Dispense Button

When pressing the dispense button (6) chaff/flare dispensing is initiated as set on the CCU and AN/ALE-40 programmer if the flaps and speed brakes are retracted and the flares select switch is set to NORMAL. Additionally single unit flare dispensing can be initiated by a single button press if the flares select switch is set to FLARES.

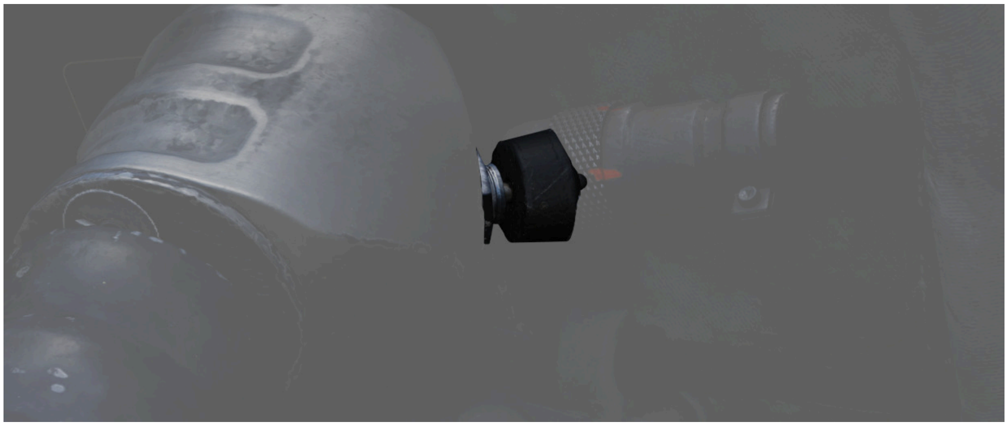
Speed Brake

The Speed Brakes are actuated by a three position switch (4) found on the inboard throttle in both cockpits. Either switch will actuate the brakes. The positions are Out, Stop, and In; the Out position is momentary and reverts back to Stop when released. For further information see 3.1.2 Flight Control Surfaces chapter.

Mic Switch

The microphone switch (2) for the Intercom System is the aft position on the inboard throttle grip in both cockpits. When using the intercom, all audio sans the pull-up tone, stall warning, and ECM are reduced (same as RADIO OVERRIDE). In the fwd position the switch will enable transmitting over radio.

Pinky Switch

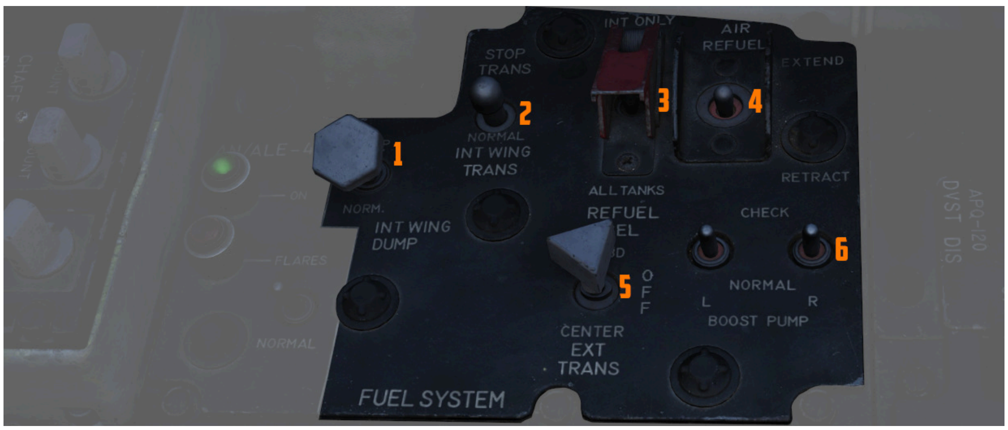


The guns/missile (pinky switch) is a four position switch (**7**) which performs the weapon select function for guns(aft), radar(fwd) and heat missiles(center) and performs station select functions(up) for the heat missile. The UP position is a spring-loaded position.

Center Section

The center section of the left console controls fuel and navigation related settings.

Fuel Control Panel



Internal Wing Dump Switch

Two position switch (1) which, when placed in DUMP, closes off the wing fuel cells from transfer into the fuselage fuel cells and dumps fuel from the valves at the wing fold trailing edge. Placing the switch back to the NORM position closes the dump valves and reconnects the wing cells for transfer to the fuselage.

The entire fuel is dumped in roughly 15 minutes.

Internal Wing Transfer Switch

A two position switch (2) which controls flow of wing cell stored fuel to the fuselage fuel tanks; NORMAL permits transfer, whereas STOP TRANS ceases flow from the wings to the fuselage feed tanks.

Transfer only occurs without weight on wheels and if the internal tanks have reached a certain fuel level already.

Refueling Select Switch

This covered switch (3) determines which tanks will be refuelled during an air-to-air refueling cycle: internal (INT ONLY) or all tanks (ALL).

Air Refueling Switch

Two position toggle switch (4) used for extending (EXTEND) and retracting (RETRACT) the air-to-air refueling door. Placing the switch into EXTEND also illuminates the air-to-air refueling receptacle lamp to assist the tanker boom operator.

If, during AAR, the boom disconnects and the DISENGAGED light illuminates, this switch has to be flipped to RETRACT and back to EXTEND to reset the system and allow the boom to connect again.

External Transfer Switch

A three position toggle switch (5) determining which externally mounted tanks are currently transferring fuel to the fuselage tanks: CENTER (centerline tank), OFF (none), or OUTBD (outboard wing tanks).

Transfer only occurs without weight on wheels and if the internal tanks have reached a certain fuel level already.

It is not possible to transfer from the wing tanks and external tanks at the same time. If both are selected, the external tanks will take priority.

Boost Pump Check Switches

A pair of two position spring-loaded switches (6) are provided to confirm function of the fuel boost pumps. Can only be checked with the engine master switches OFF. Holding either switch will energize the respective boost pump, thus showing a positive pressure value on the fuel pressure indicator.

VOR/ILS Control Panel

Nav Vol Knob

The nav vol knob (1) controls the volume of the VOR/ILS audio system that indicates being tuned to the desired frequency by repeating the morse code identifier of the selected station.

Must be moved out of the full CCW position to provide power to the VOR/ILS system.

MB Vol Knob

The MB vol knob (3) controls the volume of the tone played when flying over a marker-beacon transmitter, for example on the final approach during landing.

Frequency Knobs

A set of two knobs (2) for tuning the VOR/ILS frequency. The outer knob controls the first three digits, while the inner knob sets the two decimal digits.

Valid frequencies range from 108.00 to 117.95 MHz.

VOR/MKR Test

A button (4) to initiate a built-in test of the VOR system. See VOR/ILS Test for details.

AFCS Control Panel

Stability Augmentation Channel Switches (Yaw/Roll/Pitch)

Three two-position switches (**1**) enable individual channels of stability augmentation for Yaw, Roll, and Pitch. ENGAGE (forward) sets the respective chanel stability augmentation on.

See 3.1.2 Flight Controls & AFCS for further information.

AFCS Mode Switch

The two position switch (**2**) enables AFCS mode, which can maintain and hold maneuvers and attitudes at up to ±70 degrees of pitch, 70 degrees of bank, and in all 360 degrees of azimuth. If engaged when the airplane is less than ± 5° from wings level, then the airplane will maintain a **wings level attitude**, and will hold the engaged **heading**. Deactivated by selecting the switch aft, or with a rapid control input.

Altitude Hold Switch

The two position switch (**3**) activates the altitude hold function of the AFCS which will maintain current baromertic altitude.

Aft Section

The aft section of the left console has the intercom and countermeasure controls.

Boarding Steps Indicator

Used to visually confirm the integrated boarding steps state. With the white post up, steps are stowed, whereas steps are deployed if post is down and flush with panel recess. The boarding steps and ladder is moved by the crew chief.

Intercom System Control Panel

Volume Control Knob

The volume control knob (1) is turned clockwise to increase audio between cockpits, and counterclockwise to decrease audio between cockpits on the Intercom.

Amplifier Select Knob

The amplifier select knob (2) determines current amplifier for intercom function.

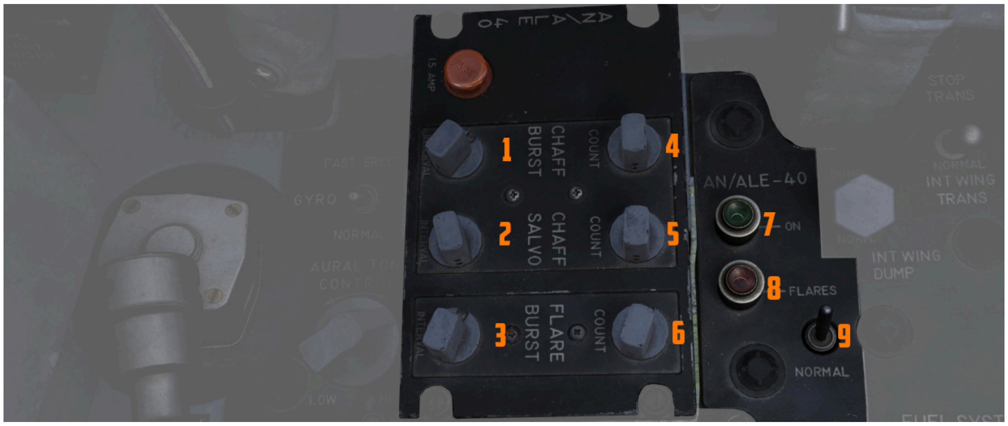
Name	Description
B/U	Backup headset amplifier provides audio.
NORM	Primary headset amplifier provides audio.
EMER	Uses the amplifier from opposite cockpit; all and only audio including radio received to that cockpit is heard.

Function Selector Switch

The function selector switch (3) has three positions:

Name	Description
COLD MIC	Mic switch on throttle must be held to activate intercom.
HOT MIC	Voice automatically transmitted on intercom.
RADIO OVERRIDE	Voice automatically transmitted on intercom. All volumes but Shrike tone and Stall Warning are reduced in volume.

AN/ALE-40 Programmer



The panel features 6 knobs to control chaff and flare programs, as well as two lamps and a switch to activate flares on its base.

Chaffs can be programmed to be released in Salvos and Bursts. A Salvo consists of multiple bursts, while a burst will release multiple chaffs.

Chaff Burst

The **count knob** (4) selects the quantity of chaffs released per burst; values of 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, or 8 from left to right.

The **interval knob** (1) selects the time interval of .1, .2, .3, or .4 seconds between each chaff released in that burst.

Chaff Salvo

The **count knob** (5) selects how many bursts the salvo consists of, values of 1, 2, 4, 8, or C (Continuous).

In the Continuous setting, the program is repeated as long as the dispense button is held down.

The **interval knob** (2) selects the time interval between each burst. Values of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, or a R (Random) number of seconds.

Flare Burst

The **count knob** (**6**) selects the quantity of flares released per burst. Values of 1, 2, 4, 8, or C (Continuous).

Continuous will repeat the program as long as the dispense button is held down.

The **interval knob** (**3**) selects time interval between each flare released. Values of 3, 4, 6, 8, 10 number of seconds.

Flares Select Switch

The flares select switch (**9**) controls which countermeasure will be released when the pilot presses the Dispense Button.

In the NORMAL setting, countermeasure are released according to what the WSO setup on their panel.

FLARES allows the pilot to activate the flares regardless of WSO selection. This can for example be used to react quickly to a threat.

Flares Indicator Light

The flares indicator light (**8**) illuminates when the *Flares Select* switch is in the Flares position and indicates they can be dispensed, if flaps and speed brakes are retracted.

Power On Indicator Light

The power on indicator light (**7**) illuminates when the *Flares Select* switch is in the Normal position and either the Chaff or Flare (or both) mode knobs in the WSO cockpit are in any position other than OFF.

Gyro Fast Erect Switch

Selects gyro operation. FAST ERECT can be used momentarily to correct gyro deviations.

See 3.11.4. ARBCS for details.

Aural Tone Control

Knob to control the volume for weapon tones, such as the Sidewinder seeker head.

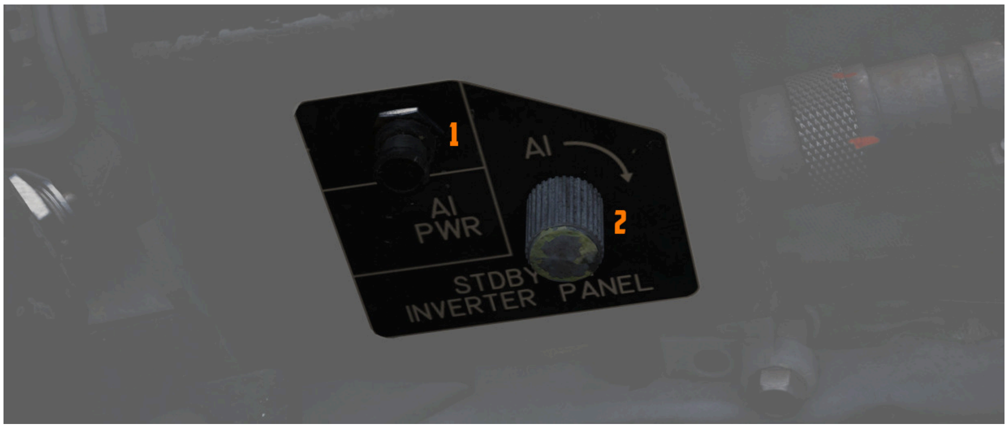
Anti-G Suit Control Valve

The anti-G system delivers low-pressure auxiliary air to the anti-G suits, with air passing through the anti-G suit control valve before reaching the suit. The suit remains deflated up to approximately 1.5 G, and as G forces reach or exceed this level, air flows into the suit proportionally. The suit stays inflated in relation to constant G forces and begins to deflate as G forces decrease.

A manual inflation button in the anti-G suit control valve enables the crew to manually inflate the suit for system checks or fatigue relief. A pressure relief valve within the system activates at approximately 11 psi, serving as a safety backup in case of malfunction. The system operates automatically whenever an engine is running, ensuring continuous support for the wearer during varying G-force conditions.

Left Wall

SAI Panel



The panel provides a circuit breaker (1) and a knob (2) to control the brightness for the Standby Attitude Indicator.

Eject Light/Switch

Pressed by the pilot in an emergency condition requiring ejection from the aircraft, which illuminates the EJECT lamp in the rear cockpit warning the WSO to prepare for immediate ejection.

Slats/Flaps Control Panel

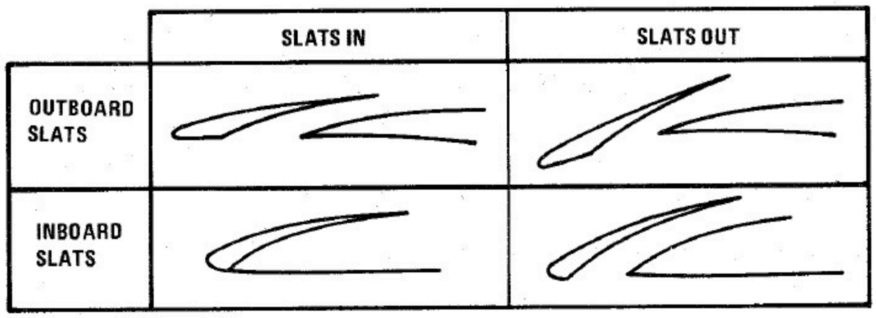
A three position switch (1) (NORM, OUT, OUT AND DOWN) to the rear of the panel provides normal operation functions of the Slats/Flaps System. These functions are relative to landing gear position, and are noted as follows:

Nose Gear UP

Name	Description
NORM	Flaps up, slats operate as function of AoA.
OUT	Slats extend.
OUT AND DOWN	Slats and flaps extend (wheels light flashing until the landing gear is down.

Nose Gear DOWN

Name	Description
NORM	Flaps up, slats operate as function of AoA.
OUT	Slats and flaps extend.
OUT AND DOWN	Slats and flaps extend.



Emergency Slats/Flaps Handle

Also included is the Emergency Slats/Flaps Extension handle (2), marked in yellow and black, at the top of the box. This handle is pulled to force high pressure air into the slats/flaps actuation system, causing them to deploy in event of control system failure.

Emergency Canopy Jettison Handle

Used for emergency ground extraction, the Emergency Canopy Jettison Handle releases a compressed oxygen cylinder to open the respective canopy immediately, shearing it off at its pivots.

Canopy Control Switch

Used to open (aft) or close (forward) the pilot canopy.

Extra Picture Switch

Provision to operate the KB-18 gun camera without the release of weapons, the Extra Picture switch starts the camera at the selected rate.

Gun Camera Switch

Activates the gun camera, which will run until the switch is placed to off, or actuation of bomb button or the second trigger detent once the pre-programmed overrun time is completed.

Slats Override Switch

Two-position guarded switch with IN and NORM positions. In NORM, slats operate normally as a function of the slats flaps switch or AoA. When IN selected, slats will retract and remain retracted. Selection of IN illuminates SLATS IN light on telelight panel and Master Caution lamp.

Armament Safety Override Switch

If pressed and the landing gear handle is placed down, overrides the armament safety.

This allows for example to fire the gun while on ground.

Pedestal Group

The pedestal group features the screen source switch (1), the rate of fire switch (2), the auto clear switch (3), a rounds counter (4), an accelerometer (5), engine oil pressure gauges (6), hydraulic pressure gauges (7), the TGT/MSL switch (9), a band selector switch (10) and a pneumatic pressure gauge (8).

Accelerometer

Calibrated from negative 4 to positive 10 in units of G, with three pointers - one for current applied load, the other two show maximum positive and negative G applied during the flight. Pressing the PUSH TO SET button will reset the maximum position indicators to 1 G.

Engine Oil Pressure Indicators

A pair of engine oil pressure indicators are provided, one for each engine, calibrated from 0 to 100 PSI. Engine oil is used for lubrication, variable nozzle positioning, and constant speed drive unit operation. Important values are:

- 12 PSI - Minimum at idle RPM
- 30-60 PSI - In-flight military
- 35 PSI - Static minimum at military thrust
- 60 PSI - Maximum

For further information see 3.2.1 Engines chapter.

Hydraulic pressure Indicators

Two hydraulic pressure indicators are installed. The one on the right, references the Utility Hydraulic System pressure, while the left one references the PC-1 and PC-2 Hydraulic Systems; the latter includes two needles, which are marked accordingly. Pressure transmitters, one for each system, convert pressure impulses to electrical impulses which, in turn, are supplied to the indicators. Nominal operating power for all three systems is 3000 ±250 PSI. Other important values are:

- 2000-2750 - Normal with rapid control movement
- 2750-3250 - Normal
- 3250-3400 - If pressure exceeds 3250 steady state, and entry must be logged on form 781
- 3400 - Maximum

For further information see 3.5 Hydraulics chapter.

Pneumatic Pressure Indicator

Shows manifold pressure of the pneumatic system measured by the pressure transmitter which supplies electrical inputs to the indicator. Keep in mind it doesn't show individual emergency pneumatic bottle pressures. Normal system pressure range is from 2650 to 3300 psi due to pressure transmitter and pressure gage tolerances.

Other important values are:

- 3300-3500 - Caution area

- 3500 - Maximum

For further information see the 3.6 Pneumatics chapter.

Screen Source Switch

Controls which video source is displayed on the DSCG screen. This is independent of the WSO, allowing the pilot to view a source different to the WSO.

In the Radar position, the radar will be displayed on the screen. TV will either display weapon feeds, such as Maverick, or the targeting pod camera; depending on the Video Select Button in the WSO cockpit.

The Off-position turns the screen off.

Rate of fire Switch

Used to switch the gun rate of fire between a HIGH setting (6000 rounds per minute) and a LOW setting (4000 rounds per minute).

Auto clear switch

The cannon will fire approximately between 5 and 11 rounds from the point the pilot has released the trigger to clear all bolt actions in the cannon. This spin-down takes approximately one second during which the gun cannot be fired again during this operation. This only applies to externally carried gun pods and not to the main gun.

The AUTO CLEAR option should be used whenever a gun pod is used.

Rounds Remaining Indicator

Shows the currently available number of nose gun rounds. The counter must be set manually by the pilot whenever rearming.

Shrike Controls

Two switches to control AGM-45 Shrikes settings.

TGT/MSL Reject Switch

Dual purpose switch to control Mavericks and Shrikes.

For Mavericks, the spring-loaded TGT/MSL REJ position cycles through the available Mavericks currently selected and armed. If six Mavericks are equipped the station with the uncaged and active Maverick is cycled. To

cycle the other station simply de-arm the active station, and select the other. The DF REJ position has no function.

For Shrikes, TGT/MSL REJ turns off the weapon seeker entirely until released. The DF REJ position selects the WRCS mode for receiving a solution, while the center position uses the weapons own, less accurate seeker system instead.

Band Switch

Allows to select the band range picked up by Shrikes.

> 💡 Not all variants support band switching.

Rudder Pedal Adjustment Crank

Used to adjust ergonomic position of the rudder pedals forward or back from the pilot.

Requires 38 full turns to move the pedals across the entire range.

Right Sub-Panel

The right sub-panel area is dominated by a group of warning lights. It also features the canopy manual unlock handle (**1**), the generator indicator lights (**2**), the telelight annunciator panel (**3**), the light circuit breakers (**4**) and the KY-28 Mode indicator lights (**5**).

Generator Indicator Lights

Indicating LH GEN OUT (Left), RH GEN OUT (Right), and BUS TIE OPEN, the indicator lights will illuminate when the specified generator is offline, or, in the event of BUS TIE OPEN, when the generators are not functioning in parallel. Indicators will trigger a Master Caution. In event of dual generator failure, neither will illuminate.

For further information see 3.8 Electrics chapter.

Feed Tank Check Switch

A two-position spring-loaded switch used to confirm nominal quantity in the engine feed tank (Cell 1), the positions being FEED TANK CHECK and NORM (default).

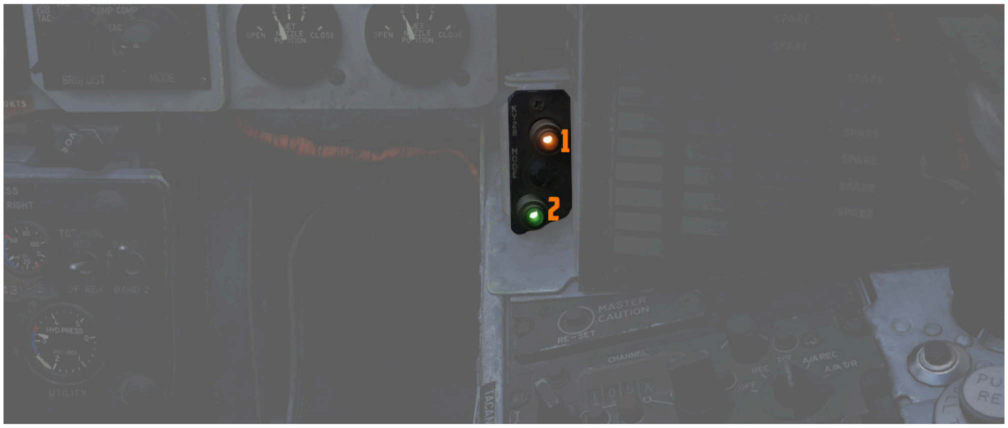
When FEED TANK CHECK is selected and held, the fuel quantity gauge will indicate solely the current fuel quantity in the engine feed tank on both the tape and counter. When the feed tank is full, the indicated value should read 1400 lbs, ±200 lbs on the counter, and the tape value should be 1400 lbs, ±150 lbs.

Arresting Hook Control Handle

Pulling the handle down extends the Tail Hook.

> 💡 The hook is utilized for field emergency arrestment. The F-4E does not support carrier operations.

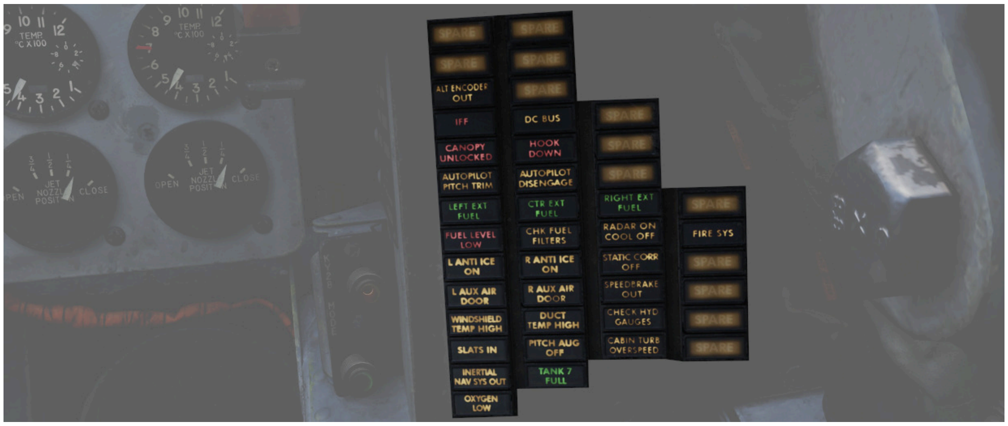
KY-28 Mode Light Panel



Dependent on mode, the illuminated display shows P for Plain mode (**1**), or C for Cipher mode (**2**).

> 💡 UHF communications require the system be in Plain mode, even with system power off, barring usage and monitoring of guard channel.

Telelight Annunciator Panel



Provides the majority of aircraft system warnings that can be rectified by the pilot. Most warnings on the panel will cause the Master Caution to illuminate; those that do not will be noted.

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
Alt Encoder out	The light will illuminate if there is an unreliable signal or no signal from the altitude encoder unit. It also may illuminate momentarily during high-rate climbs, dive maneuvers or during transonic flight		
IFF	The light will illuminate when the Mode 4 code is zeroed or no	DC Bus	The light will illuminate if both generators fail or if a voltage drop

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	code is inserted		occurs between the main dc bus and essential dc bus.
Canopy Unlocked	The light will illuminate in the front cockpit if any canopy is not locked and lowered. The rear light will only illuminate when the rear canopy is not fully locked and lowered.	Hook down	The light will illuminate if the arresting hook is not up and locked.
Autopilot Pitch Trim	The light will illuminate when the AFCS is engaged and the automatic pitch trim follow up is inoperative or lagging sufficiently behind the airplane maneuvering.	Autopilot Disengage	The light will illuminate when the autopilot is disengaged after initial engagement of the AFCS.
Left Ext Fuel	The light will illuminate if the left external fuel tank is selected but no fuel flow is detected.	CTR Ext Fuel	The light will illuminate if the center external fuel tank is selected but no fuel flow is detected.
Fuel Level Low	The light will illuminate	CHK Fuel Filters	The light will illuminate

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	when the Fuel level in cells 1 and 2 has reached a predetermined fuel state of 1650 ± 200 pounds.		when the fuel filter is clogged. The filter automatically opens to bypass, allowing normal fuel flow to the engine
L Anti Ice On	The light will illuminate when the anti-ice bleed air system is on.	R Anti Ice On	The light will illuminate when the anti-ice bleed air system is on.
L Aux Air Door	The light will illuminate when the left auxiliary air door operates out of phase with the landing gear handle.	R Aux Air Door	The light will illuminate when the right auxiliary air door operates out of phase with the landing gear handle.
Windshield Temp High	The light will illuminate when the windshield approaches a temperature which will cause optical distortion while the windshield rain removal is used. Windshield	Duct Temp High	The light will illuminate when the temperature within the engine intake duct is beyond allowable limits.

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	rain removal should be turned off immediately.		
Slats In	The light will illuminate if the Slats Override Switch is placed to the IN position, forcing the slats to stop moving as a function of the AOA.	Pitch Aug Off	The light will illuminate when power is on the airplane and the pitch stab aug switch is not engaged.
Inertial Nav Sys Out	The light will illuminate if the Inertial Navigation system is either out or off.	Tank 7 Fuel	The light will illuminate if Tank 7 fuel transfer valve fails to open.
Oxygen Low	The light will illuminate when the oxygen amount is below 1 litre.		

Light Circuit Breakers

Hidden behind a bundle of cables to the right of the telelight panel are two circuit breakers controlling lights.

The upper one (**1**) is responsible for powering the instrument panel and console backlighting, while the lower circuit breaker (**2**) powers all indicator and warning lights.

Right Console

The right console is further divided into 4 sections.

Section	Name
1.	Front
2.	Center
3.	Aft
4.	Wall

Front Section

The front section of the right console is dominated by communication and navigation controls.

Master Caution Reset

Used to extinguish telelight panel warnings and the Master Caution warning lamp once the necessary action has been taken. In the event a fault has not been effectively corrected, pressing the Master Caution Reset button will not turn the respective warning off.

TACAN Control Panel

The TACAN Control Panel is used to enter the desired TACAN channel, mode, and audible volume for the monitoring of said channel by the aircrew. The panel is duplicated in both cockpits, and the panel in command of the TACAN receiver is toggled by the NAV CMD button of the Communication Control Panel.

Channel Knobs

On the control panel there are two Navigation Channel Control knobs (7,4 and 3), with the left (**7**) controlling the first two digits of the channel value (hundreds and tens), and the right (4 and 3) controls the single unit (ones) values. The right knob also includes an outer ring (**3**) which sets the X or Y value for the desired TACAN channel.

Test Button and Lamp

Between these two knobs is the TEST button (**6**), which performs the ground testing cycle after warmup, and can also be used to perform an in-flight confidence test of the system's performance.

The lamp above the button illuminates to indicate test status.

See 7.19.4 Navigation test chapter for further information.

Volume Knob

To the upper right, the VOL knob (**2**) is available to set the desired audio level for the received TACAN station.

Function Selector

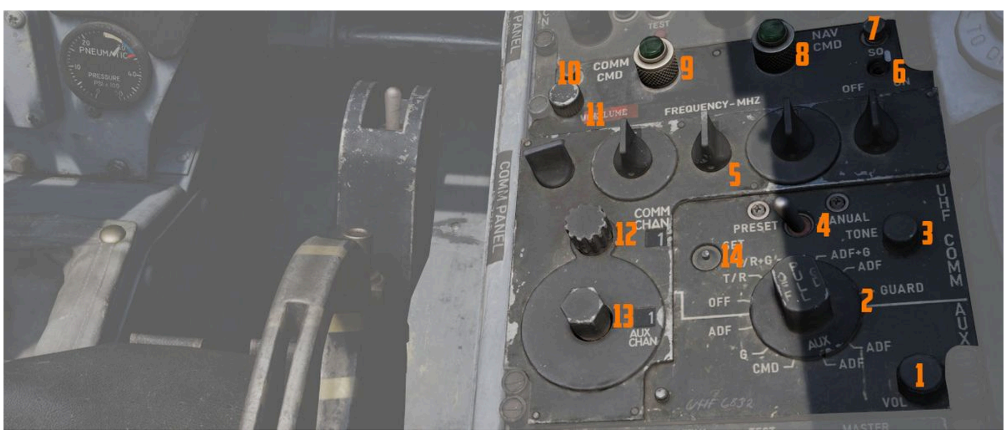
The TACAN Function Selector Knob (**1**) determines the presentation and type of information provided on the HSI, ADI, and BDHI, respectively.

Name	Description
OFF	The TACAN receiver is de-energized and offline.
REC	The TACAN receiver is active, providing bearing information on the HSI, BDHI, and ADI.

Name	Description
T/R	Both the receive and transmit functions of the TACAN are active, which provide bearing and nautical mile range information for the HSI and BDHI.
A/A REC	The TACAN receiver decodes bearing information from compliant aircraft for the HSI, BDHI, and ADI steering display.
A/A TR	The TACAN receiver receives both bearing and slant range information in nautical miles from the transmitting aircraft, providing this on the HSI and BDHI.

💡 Air to Air TACAN functionality requires the channel to be set 63 channels above or below the cooperating aircraft, but on the same range- X or Y. So a tanker on 123Y should be set to 60Y in the F-4.

Communication Control Panel



The Communication Control Panel provides selection and mode of the UHF radio in the aircraft.

Command Buttons

The panel is duplicated in both cockpits, and control over the radio is changed by pushing the COMM CMD Button (**10**) in the respective seat; the button will illuminate green (**9**) in the seat in priority. In the same fashion, the NAV CMD button (**7**) dictates which seat has control of the TACAN settings; its button will also illuminate (**8**) on the panel of the seat that has command (control) of the system. Each press of a command button will toggle who is in command of the system.

Radio Volume

Beneath the COMM CMD button is the radio volume (**11**) for the respective seat.

Squelch Switch

Close to the NAV CMD button is the Squelch switch (**6**), which enables or disables receiver squelch.

Frequency and Channels

The A-3-2-T Selector knob (**5**) sets the first digit of the manually selected frequency (3 or 2) of the UHF radio.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, modes A and T, belonging to the HAVE-Quick functionality, are not simulated.

The four Frequency Selection Knobs work in concert with the A-3-2-T knob and Preset/Manual switch. Frequencies are entered beginning with the 3 or 2 selection on the A-3-2-T Selector, and can be entered from 225.00 to 399.975 MHz in increments of 0.025. With Preset/Manual in the Manual position, the UHF radio is directly set to the displayed channel. In the Preset position, the set channels can be entered into the COMM CHAN memory, with the desired position selected with the Comm Channel Control knob - the smaller knob to the left of the Preset/Manual switch, and displayed in the COMM CHAN window.

Channels are stored in the displayed channel preset with the SET pushbutton. Once stored, channels are directly selected using the Comm Channel Control knob with the Preset/Manual switch in the Preset position.

Directly underneath the Comm Channel Control Knob is the Aux Channel Knob (4) and Indicator. This knob is used to access 20 common preset channels that cannot be changed from in the cockpit.

The Aux Volume Control knob (1) on the lower right of the panel raises and lowers the volume of the Aux receiver channel (12 and 13).

The Set button (14) can be used to save the channel frequency that is currently selected by the Frequency knobs. The frequency will be saved as the currently selected channel.

Tone Button

The Tone Pushbutton (3) is used for transmission of a Time of Day (TOD) signal along with a tone to friendly aircraft requiring a Time of Day update for proper HAVE-Quick functionality.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, the tone button, belonging to the HAVE-Quick functionality, is not simulated.

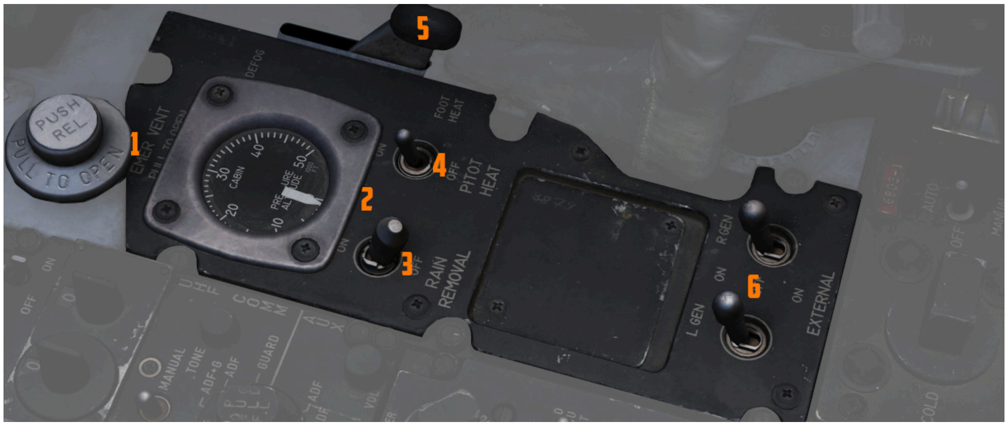
Comm Function Selector

The Comm Function Selector Knob (2) determines the current configuration of the radio system.

Name	Description
OFF	All UHF Radios off.
T/R ADF	Comm receiver - comm reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.

Name	Description
T/R+G ADF	Comm receiver - comm reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - guard reception.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.
ADF+G CMD	Comm receiver - ADF reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission. ADF interrupted during transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - guard reception on ADF antenna.
	Aux receiver - comm reception.
ADF+G	Comm receiver - ADF reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission. ADF interrupted during transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.
	Aux receiver - guard reception.
Guard ADF	Comm receiver - guard reception.
	Comm transmitter - guard transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.

Utility Panel (Right)



The utility panel features an emergency vent handle for releasing over pressure in the cockpit. Furthermore, it features the Defog/Foot Heat Lever as well as the Generator control switches.

Cooling Reset Button

Resets the CNI cooling system.

Cockpit Pressure

Cockpit Altitude Gauge

Displays the current pressure inside the cockpit as a means of equivalent effective cabin altitude above mean sea level in 1000 of feet.

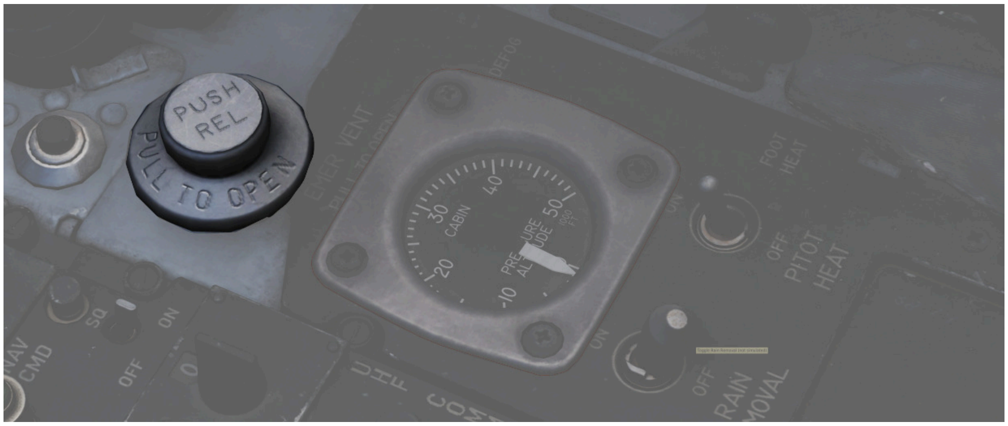
That is, if the gauge (2) reads 5, the pressure inside the cabin is equivalent to an altitude of 5000 ft altitude MSL.

To prevent sickness and hypoxia, the pressure should be observed and oxygen supply adjusted accordingly:

Pressure Range	Description
below 13000 ft	Breath regular air
13000 ft - 40000 ft	Breath Oxygen through mask
40000 ft - 62000 ft	Breath pressurized Oxygen through mask
above 62000 ft	Need to wear a pressure suit (not available)

See Oxygen Chapter for more information.

Emergency Vent Handle



A plug (**1**) that can be pulled to release cockpit pressure. Putting it back in will seal the cabin again.

Without pressurization, the effective cabin altitude will be identical to the current altitude. Which, if flying at high altitudes, can result in hypoxia.

Should only be used if the pressurization system is malfunctioning and reads abnormal values, or to eliminate smoke and fumes from the cockpit. Descend to safe altitudes before activating.

Defog/Foot Heat Lever

The Defog/Foot Heat lever (**5**) provides pilot selectable volume of warm air to the windshield for de-icing purposes or footwell recesses for

comfort or visibility.

It is possible, through selection of cold temperature settings, particularly on humid days, for the air conditioning system to deliver air at temperatures well below the dew-point, with resultant cockpit fogging. This fog can be dissipated by selecting a slightly warmer temperature.

When operating in high humidity conditions, it is recommended that a warmer than normal temperature be selected, prior to starting the takeoff run, to preclude the possibility of cockpit fogging as thrust is increased. Should cockpit fogging occur, the quickest means of eliminating this condition is by activating the emergency vent knob.

During cruise operations, prior to letdown, place the temperature control knob in the 2 o'clock position and the Defog/Foot Heat Lever to defog, to increase the defog temperature for windshield and canopy preheating. For airplanes without slats, if the flaps are lowered for letdown and fogging persists, retract the flaps or increase power (use speed brakes as necessary to maintain airspeed) to provide higher defogging air flow.

Rain Removal Switch

If the two position switch (**3**) is activated, bleed air from the engine is rerouted around the canopy to blow away any rain drops.

The system should not be used during dry conditions, as the hot air will heat up the windshield. If the glass reaches critical temperatures, the *WINDSHIELD TEMP HI* warning on the telelight panel will illuminate. In this case, the switch should be turned OFF immediately.

Pitot Heat Switch

With the pitot heat switch (**4**) to ON, the pitot tube on the nose of the aircraft will be heated to prevent icing and thus erroneous sensor readings for all major flight instruments.

For normal operations, this should always be activated prior to takeoff. But not left ON while on the ground for longer than one minute to prevent damage due to overheating.

See 3.1.1 Pitot-Static System for details.

Generator Control Switches

The 2 two position switches (6) Control of each engine's respective electrical generator is provided by an individual switch.

Name	Description
ON	Generator is driven by the constant speed drive unit and applied to electrical bus.
OFF	Generator is offline.
ON (EXTERNAL)	External power is supplied through generator bus connection for pre-startup needs.

For further information see the 3.8 Electrics chapter.

Center Section

The center area of the right console contains IFF and lighting controls.

IFF Control Panel

As opposed to the Interrogator panel in the WSO cockpit, this panel provides the pilot with the ability to adjust the IFF transponder of the own aircraft. Which would then be picked up by interrogators in other aircraft.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, the settings on the panel have no effect for DCS. However, they are exposed to external tools, such as SRS.

For further explanation see the IFF System controls chapter.

Master switch

The master switch (**1**) is a five position rotary with following controls:

Position	Operation
Off	Identification system de-energized.

Position	Operation
STBY	Full Power supplied to the system but with interrogations blocked.
LOW	System operates with reduced sensitivity.
NORM	System operates at full sensitivity.
EMER	Allows the system to respond to interrogations in Modes 1, 2 and 3/A. The reply for Modes 1 and 2 is a special emergency signal of the codes selected on the applicable dials, while Mode 3/A replies are special emergency signals of code 7700.

Mode 1 Selector Switch

The three position Mode 1 Selector switch (6) controls the mode 1 operation:

Position	Operation
M-1	Self test position (Inoperative)
ON	Enables Mode 1 for operation.
Out	Disables Mode 1

Mode 2 Selector Switch

The three position Mode 2 Selector switch (6) controls the mode 2 operation:

Position	Operation
M-2	Self test position. Light illuminates if mode is operating properly.
ON	Enables Mode 2 for operation.
Out	Disables Mode 2

Mode 3/A Selector Switch

The three position Mode 3/A Selector switch (6) controls the mode 3/A operation:

Position	Operation
M-3/A	Self test position. Light illuminates if mode is operating properly.
ON	Enables Mode 3/A for operation.
Out	Disables Mode 3/A

Mode C Selector Switch

The three position Mode C Selector switch (6) controls the mode C operation:

Position	Operation
M-C	Self test position (Inoperative)
ON	Enables Mode C for operation.
Out	Disables Mode C

Mode 1 and Mode 3/A Code selectors

The Mode 1 code selector (10) is used to select Mode 1 codes from 00 to 73. The Mode 3/A code selector is used to select Mode 3/A codes from 0000 to 7777.

Mode 4 Selector Switch

The two position Mode 4 Selector switch (8) controls the mode 4 operation:

Position	Operation
ON	Enables Mode 4 for Operation.
Out	Inhibits Mode 4 from replying. If Mode 4 code is inserted, an interrogation will cause the IFF warning light and the MASTER CAUTION light to come on momentarily.

Mode 4 Indication Switch

The Mode 4 indication switch (7) features positions for AUDIO, OUT, and LIGHT.

In the AUDIO position, an audio signal indicates reception of Mode 4 interrogations, and the Mode 4 REPLY light illuminates during transmissions. In the LIGHT position, the Mode 4 REPLY light illuminates when Mode 4 replies are transmitted, and audio is not present. In the OUT position, both light and audio indications are inactive.

To test the press-to-test Mode 4 reply indicator light, the indication switch must be in the AUDIO or LIGHT position.

Mode 4 Function Switch

The Mode 4 function switch (4) has positions of ZERO, B, A, and HOLD.

In the A position, the transponder responds to Mode 4 interrogations with the same setting as set into the A position, and in the B position, it responds to interrogations with the same code setting as set into the B position. If the switch is in the wrong position for the code being interrogated (e.g., in A with B interrogation), the IFF warning light and MASTER CAUTION light will not activate.

> 💡 Code settings for A and B positions are inserted before flight and can be zeroed by placing the switch to ZERO.

The HOLD position is not used in flight but retains the code setting if another flight is anticipated during the code period. Momentarily positioning the switch to HOLD after landing, waiting 15 seconds, and then turning off the IFF master switch and radar power knob retains the code with the power off.

Illumination of the IFF warning light and MASTER CAUTION light can be caused by internal component failure, failure to respond to a valid interrogation, or a zeroized code.

Monitor-Radiation Test Switch

This switch (5) has three positions, RAD TEST, MON and OUT. It is intended for tests by the ground crew and should be set to OUT and not

used during flight.

Identification of Position Switch

The Identification switch (9) is a three position toggle switch used to provide momentary identification of position.

Position	Operation
IDENT	Allows the system to respond with identification of position replies in all modes that are being used. The response is continued for a 15 to 30 second duration after the switch is released.
OUT	Disables identification of position capability.
MIC	Same as positioning the switch to IDENT, except that the UHF microphone button must be used to trigger the identification.

DCU-94A Stores Control-Monitor Panel

This panel is used to control and test the separate release circuit system for nuclear stores.

Nuclear stores are separated from the regular release system to prevent accidental release.

💡 This is not simulated in-game.

Temperature Control

The knob (1) can be used with the switch (2) in the AUTO position and allows the pilot to set the temperature inside both cockpits from COLD to HOT for crew comfort.

Should the AUTO system fail, the switch can be placed in either a manual mode.

The center position of the switch turns the system off.

Cockpit Lighting Control Panel

The Cockpit Lighting Control Panel provides control of all panel edge lighting, flight instrument panel lighting, the console floodlights, the white floodlights found under the canopy sill over each console, and also includes the Warning Light Test/Standby Compass Light switch.

For further information about lighting see the lighting chapter.

White Floodlight

The White Floodlight switch (**1**) acts independent of all other controls on the panel, and is either ON or OFF. It activates a separate emergency floodlight (also called Thunderstorm Light) that illuminates the cockpit in white.

Instrument Panel Knob

This knob (**2**) controls the background illumination of the instrument panel, as well as edge lighting for most of its gauges.

> 💡 The main flight instruments are controlled via the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob instead.

Console Knob

The Console Light Control Knob (**5**), with range from OFF to BRT, controls the illumination level for the left and right console.

Console Floodlight

This switch (**3**) controls the lighting level of red floodlights providing general lighting for the consoles. Three settings are available: DIM, MED and BRT.

> 💡 To turn them off, place the switch in DIM and the Console Knob in OFF.

> 💡 Floodlights for the Instrument Panel are found on the right wall.

Warning Light Test Switch

The Warning Light Test Switch (4) (Marked WARN LT TEST) is a three-position switch; in the WARN LT TEST position, confirms function of the various emergency indicators in the cockpit.

In the STBY COMP position, it illuminates the light for the Standby Compass.

Both functions are deactivated when the switch is placed in the OFF position.

Aft Section

The aft section of the right console has navigation equipment and controls for exterior lighting.

Compass Control Panel

Manages essential controls for the proper operation of the AJB-7 azimuth system. Essential for accurate azimuth output to instruments like ADI, HSI, BDHI, but also to the rear seat attitude indicator, autopilot, and bombing computer.

Mode Selector Knob

Switches (2) between different operating modes — Compass, DG (directional gyro), and Slaved. It also has a spring-loaded SYNC position for fast synchronization of the azimuth system based on the compass flux valve signal. The flux valve is an electronic sensor in the aircraft's left wing that detects magnetic fields to provide the primary reference for magnetic heading. However, it is very sensitive to changes in the aircraft's attitude and even minor accelerations.

Name	Description
COMP (Compass)	Used in emergencies when the reference systems fail. Supplies

Name	Description
	magnetic heading directly from the flux valve
DG (Directional Gyro)	Used in extreme latitudes and regions with magnetic distortion, the initial magnetic heading needs manual adjustment. If the reference system is set to STBY, the aircraft's latitude must be adjusted on the latitude knob.
Slaved	Primary operational mode under typical conditions, it depends on signals from the flux valve for a gradual synchronization of the system.
SYNC	Spring-loaded to return to SLAVED, facilitates fast synchronization between the compass flux valve and azimuth reference.

Hemisphere Switch and Latitude Control Knob

Adjusted to set the aircraft's hemisphere and latitude in the DG Compass System mode, when operating with the STBY reference system. The hemisphere is determined by rotating the screw (**6**) above the latitude knob. When the PRIM reference system mode is active, setting a latitude other than zero will cause errors by doubling drift compensation due to INS corrections.

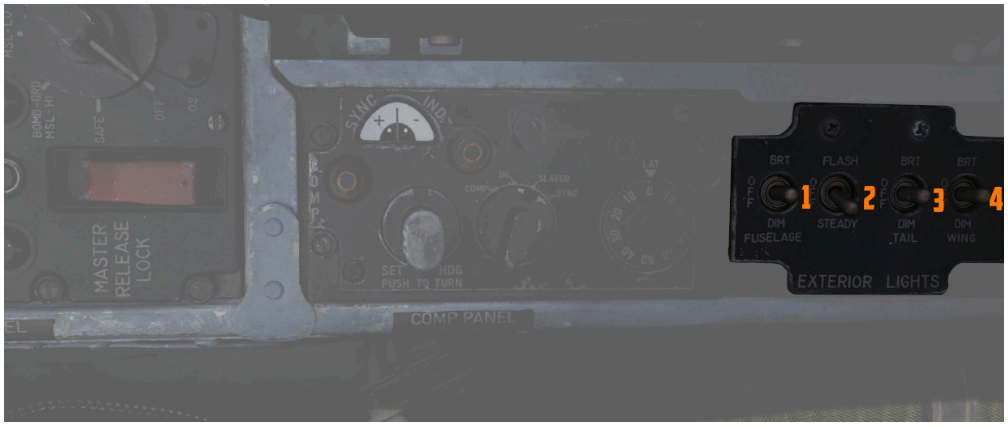
Set Heading Control Knob

Push-to-turn knob (**1**), spring-loaded to return to the center, permits manual adjustment of the azimuth, crucial when operating in the DG mode.

Sync Indicator

Displays (**4**) the azimuth deviation between the flux valve signal and the internal reference system.

Exterior Lights Control Panel



This panel contains controls connected to most of the exterior lighting:

- 3 position lights (green, red, white)
- 2 wingtip join-up lights (green, red)
- 3 fuselage lights (white)
- anti-collision tail light with 2 lamps (red)

Three switches labelled Fuselage, Tail and Wing control brightness of the lights between BRT (Bright), DIM and OFF.

To ensure lights are available even in case of power failure conditions, the BRT and DIM selections are routed through different buses:

Lamp	Bus
Bright	Right Main 28V DC Bus
Dim	Left Main 14V AC Bus
Anti-Col 1	Right Main 14V AC Bus
Anti-Col 2	Left Main 14V AC Bus

For further information about the lighting see the 3.9 lighting chapter.

Fuselage Switch

The three position switch (**1**) controls the three white fuselage lights.

Additionally, if set to BRT and the Flasher Switch is set to FLASH, both anti-collision lights illuminate.

Tail Switch

The three position switch (3) controls the position light on the tail.

Wing Switch

The three position switch (4) controls two of the three position and the two join-up lights on the wingtips.

Flasher Switch

A three position switch (2) that can be set to OFF, STEADY or FLASH to additionally control the setting for:

- one of the two anti-collision lamps
- tail position light
- fuselage lights

If set to OFF, the controlled lights are OFF regardless of their respective switches. In the STEADY position, they light up corresponding to the selected brightness. The FLASH position lets the controlled lights phase from the set brightness to a low brightness and back.

Airborne Video Tape Recorder

The AVTR system is installed in the rear section to the right of the seat. It is primarily controlled by the WSO and records the intercom sound, as well as the rear radar screen.

Footage is recorded on a standard u-matic S cassette, which can be removed and replaced using the EJECT Button (**1**) on the top left of the box. The UNTHREAD button (**2**) next to it is used to unthread the tape of the cassette back to the start, causing it to overwrite previously recorded footage.

The cassette can record up to 20 minutes, indicated on the small display labelled ELAPSED TIME (**3**).

See 9.6 DCS Recorders for details on how to access the footage.

> 💡 Our simulation of the AVTR also doubles as music player, see Tape Player for details.

Right Wall

The right wall features the main circuit breakers and lighting controls.

Canopy Manual Unlock Handle

The manual unlock handle is used in the event of pneumatic system failure.

The handle, when pulled aft, unlocks the canopy so that it may be pushed open. Before manual unlocking of the canopy, the normal control lever must be placed in the OPEN position.

For normal operation, the handle should be left in the forward position.

If the canopy is not properly locked, the *CANOPY UNLOCKED* warning light on the telelight panel illuminates.

Flight Instrument Lights Intensity Panel

The Instrument Lights Intensity Panel has six knobs that allow to independently change illumination intensity on the following indicators for **both cockpits**:

- Airspeed/Mach Indicator (2)
- Attitude Director Indicator (4)
- Angle of Attack Indicator (1)
- Vertical Velocity Indicator ((5))
- Altimeter (6)
- Horizontal Situation Indicator (3)

The base intensity of all indicators is controlled with the Flight Instrument Light knob.

> 🚧 These knobs will be made available later during Early-Access.

Formation and Indexer Lights Control Panel

Control of the formation lights, which are found on the wing tips, both sides of the vertical stabilizer, and along the fuselage forward and amidship, is performed using the three position switch (2) and rotary knob (3) on this panel. The switch has positions for MOM (momentary), OFF, and ON. The variable control knob provides relative illumination levels at five positions: OFF, DIM, MED (medium), BRT (bright), and JOIN UP.

Also on this panel is the Indexer Lights brightness knob (4), which controls relative illumination of the AoA indexers on both sides of the windscreen. Marked positions are DIM and BRT (bright), with the highest level to the right of the knob.

The fuze cap (1) contains the fuze.

For further information on the lighting see the 3.9 Lighting chapter.

Circuit Breaker Panel

Contains seven circuit breakers responsible for flight control surfaces and other systems important for safe operation of the aircraft.

- AIL Feel-Trim (**1**)
- STAB Feel-Trim (**2**)
- Speed Brake (**3**)
- Landing Gear (**4**)
- Flaps (**5**)
- Trim Controls (**6**)
- Rudder Trim (**7**)

If a circuit breaker is popped, the corresponding system does not receive power and cannot be operated anymore.

Emergency Floodlights Panel

This auxiliary panel has various controls for lights and also audio.

Stall Warning

The Stall Warning knob (**1**) controls the volume of the AoA tones that play when flying at certain angles.

Under certain conditions, the system can override the volume to ensure the cue is always audible in dangerous situations.

Standby AI

This knob (**2**) used to control the brightness of the Standby Attitude Indicator (SAI) lights, but has been replaced by the SAI Panel on the left wall.

Instrument Flood

The three position switch (**3**) controls the lamps illuminating the instrument panels in **both cockpits** simultaneously in red light.

For further information on the lighting see the 3.9 Lighting chapter.

ML Audio

This knob (**4**) controls the volume of the Missile Launch System that plays tones to warn the pilot about being under attack.

Stick and Seat

Stick

A control stick is provided in both cockpits, with near-uniform switchology between the two.

The stick can be hidden by clicking on its base.

Trim Hat

A Trim Control (**1**) is found on both sticks to provide force reduction and minor flight path correction in the pitch and roll axis.

Trigger and Bomb Button

Weapons are deliverable through both a trigger switch (**3**) (for air-to-air missiles and the gun) and a Bomb Release Button (**2**).

The first stage of the trigger activates the gun camera for recording forward footage.

Air Refueling Release Button

Unique to the front cockpit control stick is the Air Refueling Release (ARR) Button (**4**) located on the left side of the stick. It is a dual-role

control that performs the boom disconnect function its name implies, as well as a number of weapon selection functions.

See 3.2.2. Fuel System for details.

Nose Wheel Steering Button

Both sticks carry a Nose Wheel Steering (NWS or also NGS) button (**5**) that doubles as a radar auto-acquisition control for the radar in visual range combat, and sensor focus control for video-directed air to ground weapons.

Holding the button down permits the crew member to steer the aircraft using the rudder pedals. See 3.1.3 Gear & Ground handling, Nose Gear Steering section for details.

Emergency Quick Release Lever

An Emergency Quick Release lever (**6**) on each stick is available to immediately deactivate the anti-skid system, the automatic flight control system (AFCS), stability augmentation (STAB AUG) and the aileron-rudder interconnect (ARI).

See 3.1.3 Gear & Ground handling, Anti-Skid section for details.

Seat

The seat allows the crew to eject out of the plane by pulling either the cord between the legs or above the head.

See the 3.13 Emergency system section for details on the seat and ejection mechanism.

Drag Chute Handle

Additionally, it features a handle on the left side to control the drag chute.

The chute is applied to reduce landing rollout, or as an aid in spin recovery, the drag chute handle is pulled back to deploy the chute, and, once deployed, a button on the handle is pressed while pulling the handle back further to jettison the chute.

Once jettisoned, the handle is released back into its normal position.

See 3.1.3 Gear & Ground handling, Drag Chute System section for details.

Seat Position

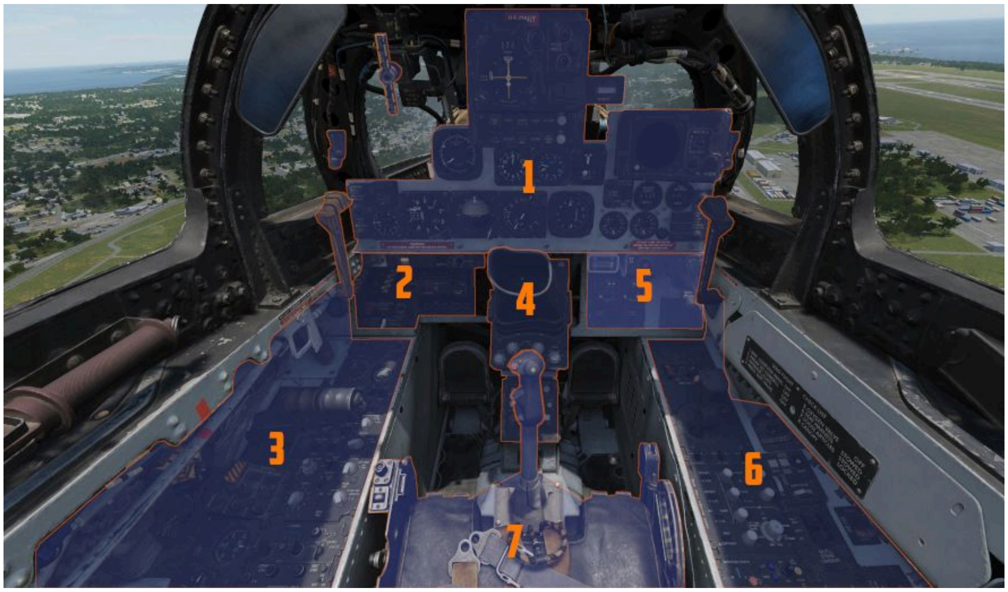
The vertical position of the seat can be changed in either direction for about 5cm using this spring-loaded switch on the right side of the seat.

For landing, it is advisable to put the seat in the most upward position for better visibility.

Operation of the motor must be limited to 30 seconds within 10 minutes to prevent it from overheating and breaking.

WSO Cockpit Overview

Layout

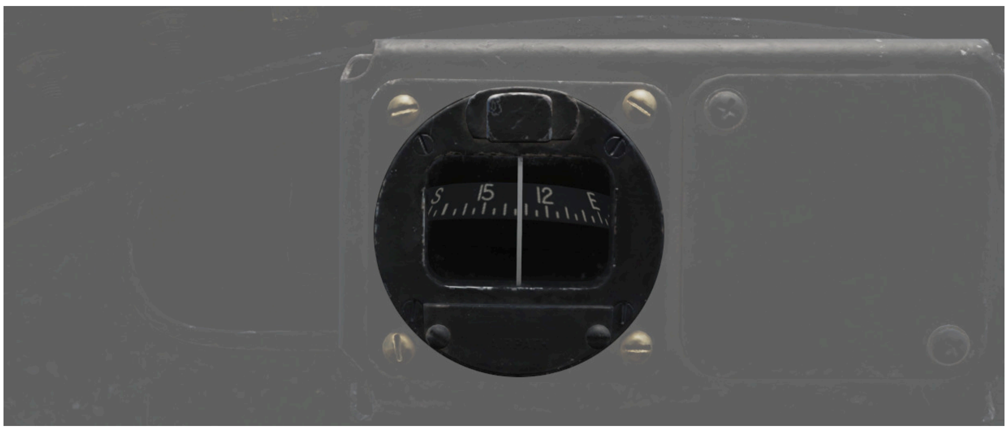


Section	Name
1.	Upfront Indicators
2.	Left Sub-Panel
3.	Left Console
4.	Pedestal Group
5.	Right Sub-Panel
6.	Right Console
7.	Stick and Seat

Upfront Indicators

The front of the canopy provides the WSO with all relevant flight instruments and gauges.

Standby Magnetic Compass



A standard magnetic compass for backup navigation assistance should the primary flight director systems fail.

The compass should only be used in level flight. Compass deviation cards are found above the right canopy sill on each cockpit.

Command Ejection Select Handle

Used to select single or dual ejection as commanded by the WSO. In the vertical position (valve closed), initiation of ejection by the WSO ejects only the rear seat. With the valve handle in the horizontal (open) position, a WSO initiating ejection will extract both crew members.

Course Indicator

Used during an ILS approach, displays localizer and glide slope deviations represented dots (3) — 1 dot equals 1 1/4 degrees for course and 1/4 degree for glide slope.

The heading pointer (1) indicates the aircraft's heading relative to the selected course set by the knob (4) on the lower left.

Does not function with TACAN or VOR. OFF flags display on signal loss.

Marker Beacon Lamp

The lamp on the top right (2) illuminates whenever flying over a marker beacon station, provided the VOR/ILS system has been activated. Additionally, an audio cue is played through the intercom system.

The lamp can be rotated to dim and pushed to test.

See VOR/ILS System for details.

KY-28 Mode Indicator

Two lamp indicator illustrating current KY-28 operating mode- P (1) indicates plain (unencrypted) mode transmission, whereas C (2) indicates cipher (encrypted) mode transmission.

> 💡 UHF communications require the system be in Plain mode, even with system power off, barring usage and monitoring of guard channel.

Master Caution Light

A repeater of the front cockpit Master Caution light, provides warning to the WSO that a caution condition exists and the telelight panel needs to be checked for cause to rectify the situation.

> 💡 There is no separate reset button for the WSO. The Pilot has to reset the Master Caution if it occurs.

Shoot Light

Illuminates when missile firing parameters are met. Does not illuminate when in Visual Intercept (VI) or Air-to-Ground modes.

RWR Azimuth Indicator

The Radar warning receiver Azimuth Indicator shows all Radar sources that are visible to the Radar warning receiver. The knob on the lower left controls the brightness of the display.

Left to it is a box with several knobs to operate the system.

For further information and button explanation see the Radar Warning Receiver chapter.

Target Contrast Switch

Used to select the appropriate contrast conditions for seeker acquisition with the AGM-65A Maverick and AGM-65B Maverick.

Name	Description
WHT/BLK	Programs the missile seeker to track a light target on a dark background.
AUTO	Programs the missile to use its automatic tracking mode.
BLK/WHT	Programs the missile seeker to track a dark target on a light background.

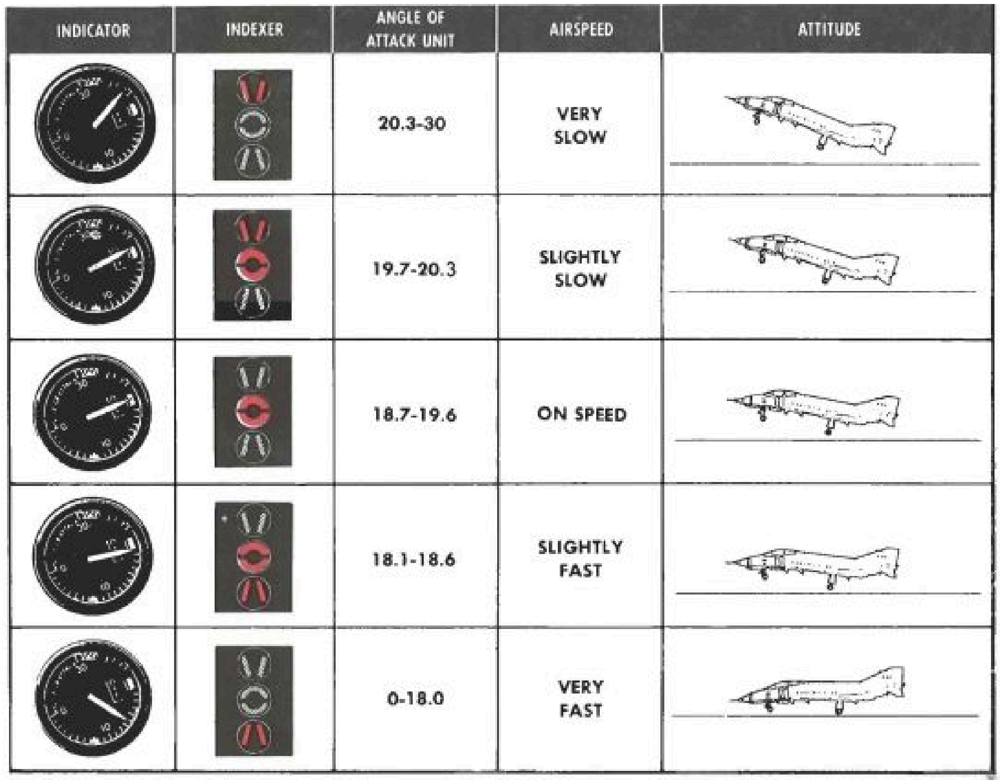
This does not change the polarity of the video but the coding of the seeker itself.

ML Audio Knob

Controls the volume of the Missile Launch System that plays tones to warn the WSO about being under attack.

Angle of Attack Indexer

A pair of indicators to the left and right that provide quick confirmation of current aircraft AoA state based on illuminated position and color.



INDICATOR	INDEXER	ANGLE OF ATTACK UNIT	AIRSPEED	ATTITUDE
		20.3-30	VERY SLOW	
		19.7-20.3	SLIGHTLY SLOW	
		18.7-19.6	ON SPEED	
		18.1-18.6	SLIGHTLY FAST	
		0-18.0	VERY FAST	

Can also indicate weapon steering cues and an aural tone system backs up the indication with audible cues. See Angle of Attack System for details.

> 💡 The AoA Indexers are only lit with the right gear down.

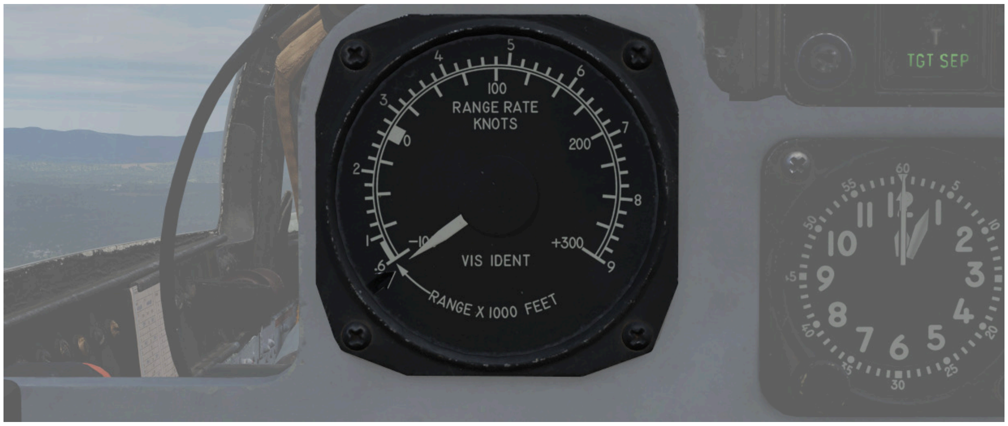
APX-81A Activity Lights

Right next to either AoA Indexer is a light that indicates activity detected by the APX-81A Combat Tree system.

Illuminated each time the system detects being interrogated by other aircraft.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, this is not simulated in-game.

Range (VISIDENT) Indicator



Displays accurate radar range information inside 2 miles (12000ft) and range/rate information inside 9000ft, when lock-on exists in Visual Intercept, B NAR, or B WIDE mode. When AIR-GRD is selected, the indicator is disabled.

8-Day Clock

A clock is provided for the WSO, including a stopwatch function. The watch features a hour and minute hand, and can be set by turning the knob (**1**) on the left lower corner. The stopwatch function is activated by pressing the top right button (**2**), it features a minute and second hand. The stopwatch needles are reset by pressing the top right button again.

Accelerometer

Calibrated from negative 4 to positive 10 in units of G, with three pointers - one for current applied load, the other two show maximum positive and negative G applied during the flight. Pressing the PUSH TO SET button will reset the maximum position indicators to 1 G.

Turn Indicator

A 4-minute turn indicator, utilizing a conventional horizontally mounted gyro, accurately displays standard turn rates, resembling a conventional turn and slip indicator.

To execute a controlled turn (360° in 4 minutes), place the vertical needle over one of the indicators on either side (turn rate of 1.5 degrees per second) and ensure the slip indicator at the bottom is centered to prevent over- or under-turning due to incorrect bank.

Navigation Mode Selector Switch

Selects the respective mode for the two BDHI needles.

Name	Needle 1	Needle 2
Up	UHF/Automatic Direction Finding	TACAN station
Center	VOR Station	TACAN station
Down	Nav Computer mode: Bearing	Nav Computer mode: Ground track

Ground Speed Indicator

Provides the aircraft's ground speed in knots, and is calibrated from 0 to 1999 knots. Requires INS for accurate presentation. If INS off, can register any value of up to 150 knots when motionless on ground.

True Airspeed Indicator

Provides the aircraft's true Airspeed in knots, and is calibrated from 150 to 1500 knots; airspeeds below this range are thus not reliable.

UHF Remote Channel Indicator

Provides the current selected channel value when the radio is set to PRESET. Otherwise, the indicator displays M if the radio is set to Manual, G when the COMM function is set as GUARD/ADF, or A when the A-3-2-T switch is in A.

Vertical Velocity Indicator

Provides rate of climb or descent via the static pressure system referenced in thousands of feet per minute.

Altimeter

A counter-pointer style altimeter, with thousandths in the counter window (4) and 100 foot increments around the face (5). The altimeter has an absolute range of 80,000 feet. The altimeter includes a barometric scale (3) for setting local pressure with the knob (1) on the indicator.

Works in either electric (normal operation mode) or pneumatic (STBY) mode, switchable via a spring-loaded three position switch (2) labelled RESET and STBY.

When held in RESET for more than 3 seconds the system will be reset and moved out of STBY.

Attitude Indicator

The AJB-7 provides attitude information to the Attitude Indicator found on the rear cockpit instrument panel regardless of the Reference System Selector Switch position.

A trim knob provides the ability to adjust the attitude sphere to reference the aircraft correctly.

Should power be disconnected from the indicator or AHRS, the OFF flag will display.

Airspeed and Mach Indicator

The combination airspeed and mach number indicator shows airspeed readings below 200 knots, and include Mach numbers on the outer ring at high speed. The indicator uses a single pointer over a fixed airspeed scale, marked from 80 to 850 knots, with a moving Mach scale presenting from Mach 0.4 to 2.5.

A pair of movable reference markers is available with the knob (4) on the face of the gauge, with speed reference available between 80 and 195 knots, and the Mach index pointer being able to be set between the 225 knot and 850 knot regions relative to the airspeed gauge.

The (1) needle and the inner ring refers to the airspeed in knots. The (2) needle and the respective outer ring refers to the Mach scale. Both move along dynamically according to the Airspeed. The (3) area refers to the airspeed scale before the mach scale starts.

Bearing Distance Heading Indicator (BDHI)

The Bearing Distance Heading Indicator, or BDHI, presents navigation information as entered by the WSO, provided with two needles (termed the No 1 and No 2 pointers). See Navigation Mode Selector Switch for Needle Explanation.

When the upper position of the Navigation Mode Selector Switch is selected by the WSO to TACAN/ADF/UHF, the no. 1 pointer indicates UHF bearing, and the no. 2 pointer indicates the TACAN bearing. If there is no TACAN signal, both pointers indicate the ADF bearing.

With the middle position selected - VOR/TAC, the no. 1 pointer indicates the VOR bearing, the no. 2 pointer indicates the TACAN bearing, and the range indicator provides distance to the TACAN station. In the absence of a TACAN signal, both pointers indicate the VOR station.

In the lower position, NAV COMP, the no. 1 pointer indicates bearing to the navigation computer target coordinates, and the no. 2 pointer indicates magnetic ground track.

A vertical readout (3), the range indicator notes distance to the selected target depending on the Navigation Mode Selector Switch.

Tachometers

A percentage-noting Tachometer is provided for each engine, including an inset wheel for accurate display of single digits. Normal values are 65% for idle, 95% in full MIL power and 105% for full afterburner.

Canopy Unlocked Warning Lamp

Illuminates when canopy is unlocked. To reset the lamp close and lock the rear canopy.

Inertial Nav Sys Out Lamp

Illuminates when INS system is in a failure state. To reset the INS refer to the 3.3.2 Inertial Navigation System chapter.

Radar CNI Cool Off Lamp

Illuminates to indicate an over-temperature situation in the avionics cooling system, most likely caused by a bleed air duct failure.

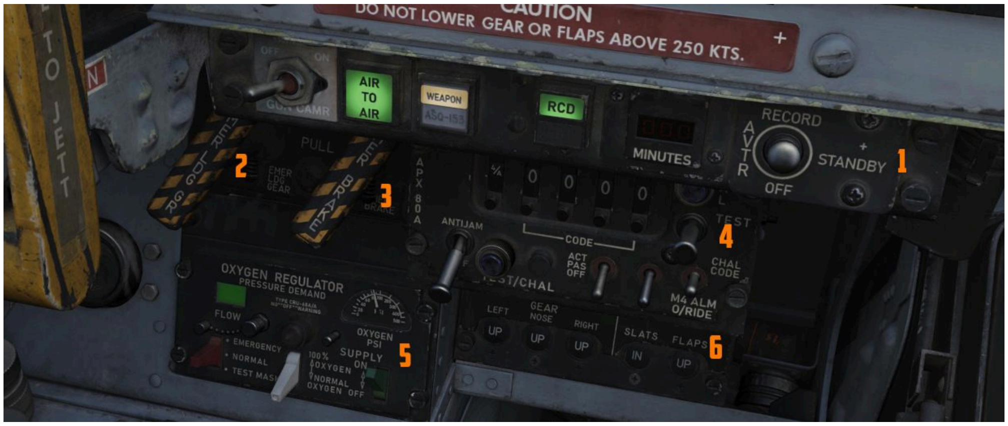
If the light is illuminated, reduce the airspeed and wait 15 seconds. Then press the CNI cooling reset button next to it.

Should the light stay illuminated remain at reduced power and speed and land as soon as practical.

Cooling Reset Button

Resets the CNI cooling system.

Left Sub-Panel



The left sub-panel contains the AVTR, Gun Camera, air-to-air indicators (1), the emergency landing gear handle (2), the emergency brake handle (3), the APX-80A control panel (4), the WSO oxygen regulator panel (5) and the slats and flaps indicators for the WSO (6).

Gun Camera Switch

The two position switch (1) activates recording of gun camera footage.

Air to Air Light

Illuminates (2) when CAGE mode activated; pressing the light reverts the radar to the original operating condition prior to CAGE entry.

Video Select Button

Push button (3) that alternates between WEAPON, such as AGM-65 Mavericks, and ASQ-153 (targeting pod) television video on the radar scope display when in TV mode.

AVTR Control

Controls the Airborne Video Tape recorder system which records the intercom sound, as well as the rear radar screen.

For further information about the Recorder system see 9.6 Recorder.

AVTR Switch

With the switch (6) in the RECORD position, footage is recorded on the cassette and the RCD light illuminates. The STANDBY position pauses recording, while the OFF position will additionally automatically unthread the tape back to the beginning after 10 seconds.

AVTR Tape Timer

The cassette can record up to 20 minutes of footage, indicated in the small display (5) labelled MINUTES.

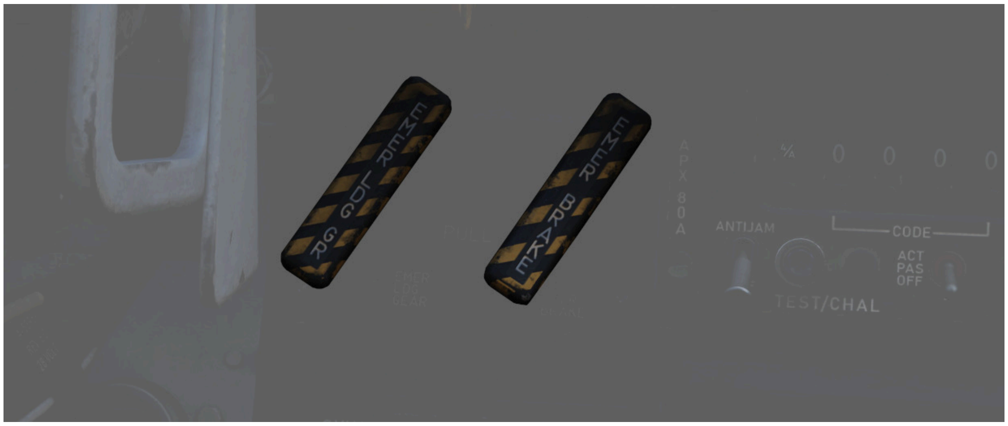
EOT Light

Once the end of the tape has been reached, the EOT light (4 lower half) illuminates and the tape must be unthreaded before it can record again.

RCD Light

Lit (4 upper half) to indicate the AVTR system currently recording.

Emergency Landing Gear Handle



Deploys the landing gear using a pair of compressed air bottles; handle cannot retract gear, only deploy in an emergency.

Emergency Brake Handle

In an emergency, discharges a portion of the brake system hydraulic accumulator to provide emergency braking. Contains a limited number of applications.

APX-80 Control Panel

The AN/APX-80 combines the IFF Interrogator System APX-76 and the Combat-Tree system APX-81A. It is used to identify whether an aircraft is friendly or hostile.

See Interrogator Systems for details.

Code Buttons

The first digit of the code display (3) indicates the current IFF mode, which can be either of:

- Off (white square)
- Mode 1
- Mode 2
- Mode 3
- Mode 4/A
- Mode 4/B

> 💡 In DCS, only Mode 4 (either A or B) is effective and can be used for interrogation.

The other four digits are used to set the IFF code to interrogate for Modes 1 to 3.

The buttons below and above the display are used to decrement and increment the corresponding setting respectively.

Challenge Lamp

This dimmable push-to-test lamp (**1**) illuminates to indicate IFF active interrogation with the APX-76 system.

Test/Challenge Code

Switch (**2**) that, if set to OFF, turns off the APX-76 interrogation system. In the CHALLENGE position, it can be used to interrogate.

TEST is used to test the system. If the lamp above lights up, the test was successful.

Anti-Jam

This switch (**7**) could be used for anti jammer measurements on some systems, but was never installed and connected on this variant of the F-4E.

Test/Challenge Lamp

This dimmable push-to-test lamp (**6**) illuminates to indicate active interrogation with the APX-81A Combat-Tree system.

Test Button

The push button starts the built-in test of the APX-81A Combat-Tree system.

Mode 2

This switch (**5**) is used to set Combat-Tree Mode 2 either in ACTIVE, PASSIVE or OFF types.

Mode 3

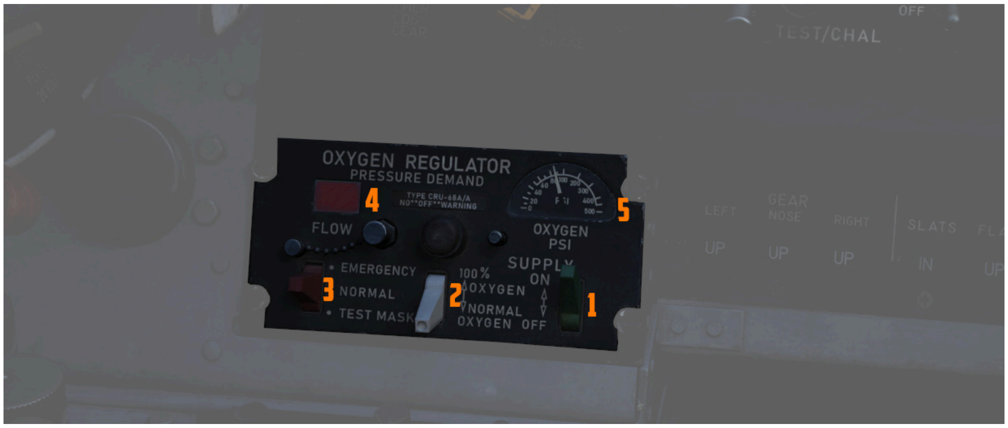
This switch (5) is used to set Combat-Tree Mode 3 either in ACTIVE, PASSIVE or OFF types.

Mode 4

This switch (4) is used to set Combat-Tree Mode 4 into ALARM or OVERRIDE types.

This functionality was never installed and connected on this variant of the F-4E.

WSO Oxygen Regulator Panel



Supply Lever

Two position switch (1) (ON and OFF) activating flow of oxygen to the mask. For further information see 3.7 Utility chapter, Oxygen section.

Diluter Lever

A two position (2) diluter lever, in the center of the regulator panel, controls the mixture of air and oxygen.

For a proportional amount of air to oxygen, the NORMAL OXYGEN position should be selected.

For pure oxygen, the 100% OXYGEN position should be selected. This setting is preferable if fire, toxic smoke or fumes occur in the cockpit.

Emergency Flow Control Switch

Three position switch (3) which permits selection of NORMAL (standard supply), EMERGENCY pressure (100% oxygen with continuous positive pressure) or TEST MASK (positive pressure to test the face mask for leaks).

The Emergency Lever should remain in the center (NORMAL) position at all times, unless an unscheduled pressure increase is required.

Flow Indicator

Alternates (4) between black and white with each aircrew member breath to indicate oxygen flow (white indicates inhalation).

Oxygen Pressure Gauge

Indicates (5) oxygen supply pressure from 0 to 500 psi.

For further information see 3.7 Utility chapter, Oxygen section.

Landing Gear/Flap Indicator Panel

Displays current status of landing gear, flaps, and slat position.

Landing Gear

Status noted with the word UP (up), a barber pole illustration (in transition), or an icon of a wheel (down) relative to current position.

See the 3.1.3 Landing gear chapter for more information.

Slats

Status noted with the word IN and OUT.

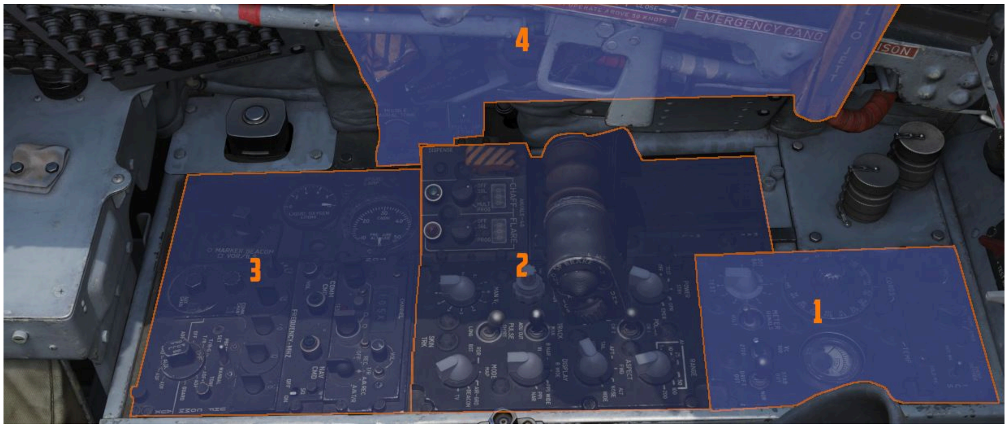
Flaps

Status noted with the word UP (flaps up) or (DN) (down). When transitioning, may show a barber pole illustration. When transitioning back to the UP position, the indicator does not change until the flaps are fully retracted.

See the 3.1.2 FLight Controls & AFCS, Slats and Flaps section for more information.

Left Console

The left console is further divided into 4 sections.



Section	Name
1.	Front
2.	Center
3.	Aft
4.	Wall

Front Section

Intercom Control Panel

Volume Control Knob

Turned clockwise (1) to increase audio between cockpits, and counterclockwise to decrease audio between cockpits on the intercom.

Function Selector Switch

A three position switch (3) used to set the mode of the intercom.

Name	Description
COLD MIC	Mic switch on throttle must be held to activate intercom.
HOT MIC	Voice automatically transmitted on intercom.
RADIO OVERRIDE	Voice automatically transmitted on intercom. All volumes but Shrike tone and Stall Warning are reduced in volume.

Amplifier Select Knob

Determines current amplifier (2) for intercom function.

Name	Description
B/U	Backup headset amplifier provides audio.
NORM	Primary headset amplifier provides audio.
EMER	Uses the amplifier from opposite cockpit; all and only audio including radio received to that cockpit is heard.

Control Monitor Panel

Tests and monitors the APQ-120 Radar.

Cords Light

Not used in the F-4E.

Temp Light

Illuminates (7) amber to indicate an over-temperature situation in the nose radar avionics bay. Under normal circumstances, an overheat condition requires setting the radar power to OFF. If circumstances require continued use, the light should be monitored regularly.

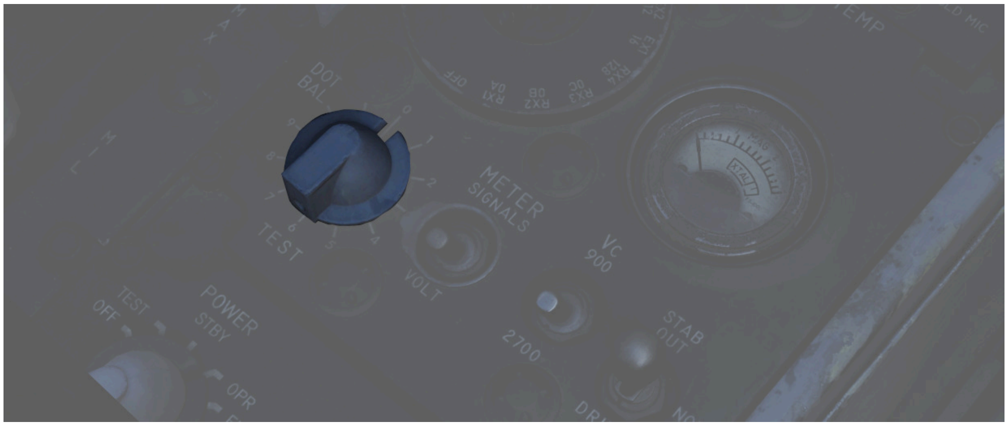
Meter Selector Knob

A sixteen position rotary knob (**1**) used in conjunction with the Test Knob, with each position having two values- an outer SIGNAL value, and an inner VOLT value. Selection of which value determined by the Meter Switch.

Monitor Meter

Provides voltage, current, and signal indications (**2**) based on current Meter Switch and Meter Selector Knob settings.

Test Knob



An eleven position rotary knob (**3**) used with the radar power knob in TEST to perform system BIT checks of the APQ-120 Radar. Basic test function noted below; procedural functionality is found in the applicable BIT test section (Air-To-Air Bits, Air-To-Ground Bits).

Name	Description
0	Displays standard B scope presentation to confirm all elements functioning correctly.
1	Confirms break lock timing delay, AIM-7 tuning status, and Range lamp status function.
2	Confirms proper AIM-7 head position aim and SHORT pulse function against two targets.
3	Confirms angle tracking performance against a locked target that rotates inside ASE circle.
4	Used while lock achieved in another mode, confirms HOJ and AOJ functionality.
5	Checks range rate, lead angle, CAA, and PLMS function.
6	Confirms proper AIM-7 attack display and interlock function.
7	not available
8	not available
9	not available
10	not available
DOT BAL	Confirms AIM dot centering calibration. Also used for TIRS data transfer.

Meter Switch

A two position switch (4) that determines which set of values are utilized from the Meter Selector Knob for the applicable test sequences; VOLT selects the inner ring of Voltage referencing values, whereas SIGNALS uses the outer ring of SIGNAL reference values.

Vc Switch

A two position switch (5) that changes the scale factor of the range rate presentation. DSCG aircraft must leave the switch in 2700, else the Vc presentation will be in error.

Stab Switch

A three position switch (6) that changes the antenna stabilization mode.

Name	Description
NOR	Normal operation; inputs of pitch and roll are fed to the antenna stabilization circuit.
STAB OUT	Horizon line removed from scopes and stabilization drift servos are zeroed.
DRIFT OUT	INS drift compensation is removed; antenna uses direct pitch and roll input tracking.

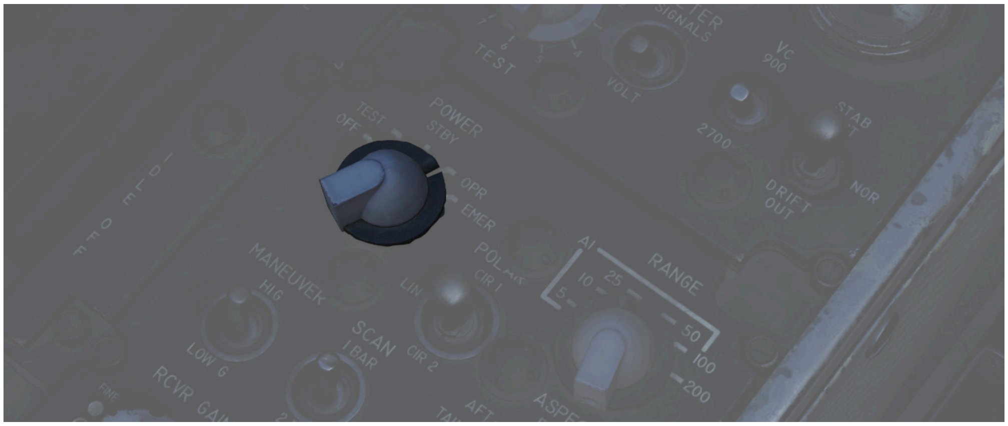
Center Section

The center area of the left console features the radar control and countermeasure panel.

Radar Set Control Panel

See Radar Set Control Panel section for more detailed description of all the functions below.

Power Knob



Five position rotary switch (**1**) controlling power state of the APQ-120 Radar.

Name	Description
OFF	Powers radar off.
TEST	Applies voltage to control monitor power and provides BIT-test functions 1 through 6.
STBY	Power applied to radar, remains in a non-transmitting standby state.
OPR	System is fully operational.
EMER	Overrides the time delay, pressure, and temperature restrictions to allow radar operation.

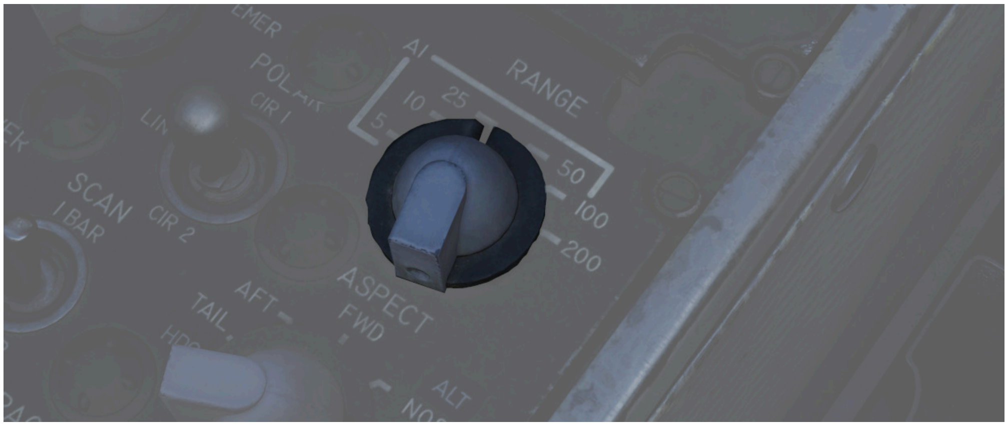
See the Radar Power Section for more details.

Polar Switch

The three position switch (3) controls polarization of transmitted radio frequency energy. LIN should be used in normal conditions, CIR 1 and CIR 2 can be used to reduce precipitation clutter at the expense of increased ground clutter.

See Radar Polarization Knob Section for more details.

Range Knob



The rotary switch (2) is used to select range sweep of 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, or 200 mile ranges on both radar displays. Ranges up to 50 are displayed on the range lamp.

See the Radar Range Knob Section for more details.

Maneuver Switch

The two position switch (4) controls radar tracking acceleration response. LOW sets a limit on antenna acceleration and HI removes acceleration limit.

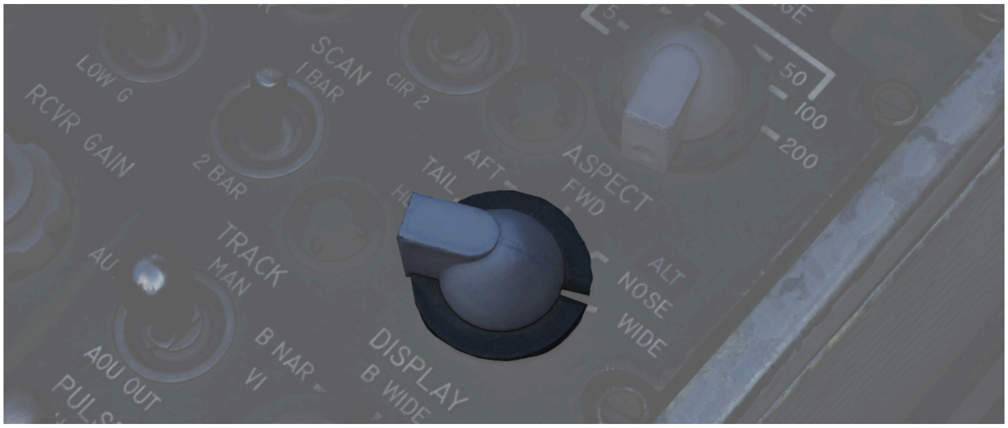
See Radar Maneuver Knob Section

Bar Scan Switch

The two position switch (**5**) selects elevation scan pattern between 1 and 2 bars. Only RDR-B modes can make use of 2 bars.

See Radar Scan Switch Section for more details

Aspect Knob



The rotary switch (**6**) is used to program the AIM-7 with a predetermined simulated Doppler instead of actual received Doppler, so that the WSO can provide an estimated correct speed-gate for the Sparrow when not tracking.

See Aspect Knob Section for more details

Receiver Gain Knobs (RCVR GAIN)

Coarse (outer ring, **8**) and Fine (inner knob, **7**) gain control for the radar receiver. Larger values result in more noise and can cause display to become saturated. Lower values may result in lower detection ranges.

See Receiver Gain Knob Section for more details

Track Switch

The three position switch (**9**) selects range tracking type for use in heavy clutter environments, or automatic tracking under normal circumstances.

See Radar Track Switch Section for more details

Display Knob

The rotary switch (10) sets the display type of the radar scope to access specific mode functionality in conjunction with the Mode knob. The types are as follows:

Name	Description
B WIDE	Selects 120 degree B-sweep for search. Half-action places the sweep under manual Antenna Hand Control stick.
B NAR	Selects a 45 degree B-sweep sector for search, which is manually shifted with the Antenna Hand Control stick.
PPI WIDE	Selects a 120 degree wide plan position indicator sweep for MAP mode.
PPI NAR	Selects a 45 degree plan position indicator sweep that can be shifted with the Antenna Hand Control stick.
VI	Provides pure pursuit guidance to a locked target for Visual Intercept; a break X will appear at 1000' range.

Manual Vc Knob

A 12 position switch (**12**) used to apply estimated range rate of closure (clockwise, 0-9), or estimated opening of range (counterclockwise, 0-2) against a target in manual track mode.

The numbers are multiplied by 100 knots while closure means closing in to the F-4 and opening means the target is flying away from the F-4.

See MAN Vc Knob Section for more details

Pulse Switch

Three position switch (**11**) controlling radar pulse width and pulse repetition frequency (PRF).

Name	Description
AUTO	Uses Power Level Mode Switching to determine best Pulse selection.

Name	Description
	Selects short pulse is used for acquire and track.
LONG	Wide pulse width and low PRF, allowing maximum range detection; no track automatic pulse adjustment.
SHORT	Narrow pulse width with high PRF for increased close range performance.

See Pulse Switch Section for more details

Mode Knob

A six position rotary switch (**14**) that determines the current base mode of operation of the radar.

Name	Description
BST	Air-to-Air boresight with antenna aligned radar boresight line and optical sight with sight in A/A.
RDR	Search Mode with Feedhorn Nutation (wider beam-width) mode.
MAP	Search Mode without Feedhorn Nutation (narrower beam-width)
AIR-GRD	Air-to-Ground boresight, Tracks range of illuminated ground, radar is

Name	Description
	boresighted to the radar boresight line with drift compensation.
BEACON	Radar receives and displays signals from ground or airborne beacon transponders for navigation.
TV	Not used with DSCG. De-tunes AIM-7 if selected, preventing Sparrows from guiding.

💡 Beacons are currently not implemented in DCS and thus can't be used

See Mode Knob Section for more details

Skin Track Light

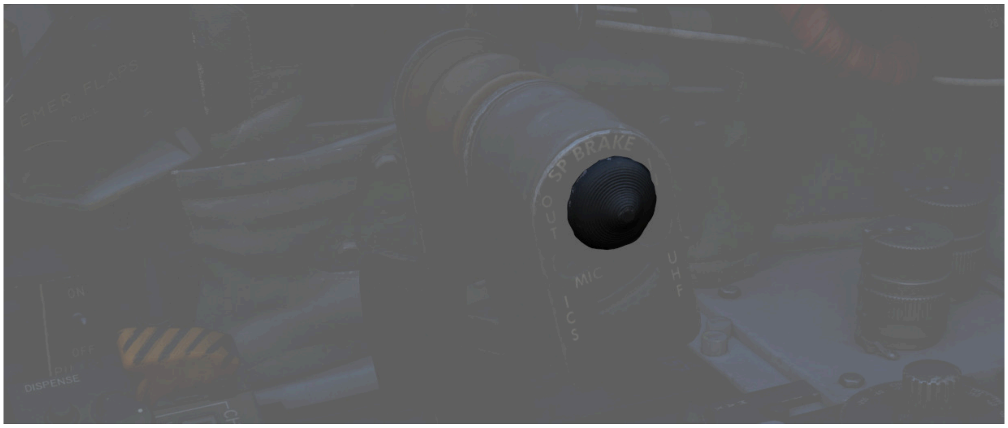
Lamp (13) that illuminates when a track is attained with range data. In the event of HOJ or a range memory situation, the light will go off. Accompanied on the rear DSCG radar scope with the T symbol that illuminates under the same circumstances.

Throttles

The throttle arrangement for each engine in the F-4E Phantom II is located on the front and rear cockpit left console. Mechanical linkage

transmits throttle movement to the engine fuel control. The rear cockpit throttle does not enable the afterburner. Located on the rear throttle is a speed brake switch and a mic switch.

Speed Brake



The Speed Brakes are actuated by a three position switch (**1**) found on the inboard throttle in both cockpits. Either switch will actuate the brakes. The positions are Out, Stop, and In; the Out position is momentary and reverts back to Stop when released.

For further information see the 3.1.2 Flight Control Surfaces chapter.

Mic Switch

The microphone switch (**2**) for the Intercom System is the aft position on the inboard throttle grip in both cockpits. When using the intercom, all audio sans the pull-up tone, stall warning, and ECM are reduced (same as

RADIO OVERRIDE). In the fwd position the switch will enable transmitting over radio.

AN/ALE-40 Cockpit Control Unit (CCU)

The CCU is a primary control panel of the Countermeasures System.

It is used to select different modes of operation and gives the WSO the ability to dispense countermeasures.

For further information see CCU.

Dispense Button

The push button (1) initiates chaff/flare dispensing as selected by Cockpit control unit and AN/ALE-40 programmer

Ripple Switch

Guarded by a cover (2), when positioned ON, dispenses flares at rate of ten per second until dispensers are empty, so long as flaps and speed brakes are retracted.

> 💡 After around 10 seconds, all flares have been dispensed.

Counters

Indicate quantity of chaff (3) and flare (6) cartridges remaining, respectively.

They are automatically set by the ground crew when rearming.

Chaff Mode Knob

A rotary switch knob (7) that controls the amount of dispensed chaff.

Name	Description
OFF	Chaff system inactive.
SGL	A single **burst** commanded when dispense button pressed.
MULT	A **salvo** commanded according to programmer when either dispense button pressed.
PROG	Multiple **salvos** commanded according to programmer when either dispense button pressed.

Flare Mode Knob

A rotary switch knob (4) that controls the amount of dispensed flares.

Name	Description
OFF	Flare system inactive.
SGL	A single **burst** commanded when dispense button pressed.
PROG	A **salvo** commanded according to programmer when either dispense button pressed.

Indicator Lights

Illuminates (5 and 8) whenever a mode is selected on the respective countermeasure mode knob.

Can be rotated to dim and pressed to test.

Aft Section

The aft section of the left console holds communication and navigation controls.

TACAN Control Panel

The TACAN Control Panel is used to enter the desired TACAN channel, mode, and audible volume for the monitoring of said channel by the aircrew. The panel is duplicated in both cockpits, and the panel in command of the TACAN receiver is selected with the NAV CMD button of the Communication Control Panel.

Channel Knobs

On the control panel there are two Navigation Channel Control knobs (7, 4 and 3), with the left (7) controlling the first two digits of the channel value (hundreds and tens), and the right (4 and 3) controls the single unit (ones) values. The right knob also includes an outer ring which sets the X or Y value for the desired TACAN channel.

Test Button and Lamp

Between these two knobs is the TEST button (6), which performs the ground testing cycle after warmup, and can also be used to perform an in-

flight confidence test of the system's performance.

The lamp above the button illuminates to indicate test status.

See 7.19.4 Navigation test procedures chapter for further information.

Volume Knob

To the upper right, the VOL knob (**2**) is available to set the desired audio level for the received TACAN station.

Function Selector

The TACAN Function Selector Knob (**1**) determines the presentation and type of information provided on the HSI, ADI, and BDHI, respectively.

Name	Description
OFF	The TACAN receiver is de-energized and offline.
REC	The TACAN receiver is active, providing bearing information on the HSI, BDHI, and ADI.
T/R	Both the receive and transmit functions of the TACAN are active, which provide bearing and nautical mile range information for the HSI and BDHI.
A/A REC	The TACAN receiver decodes bearing information from compliant aircraft for the HSI, BDHI, and ADI steering display.
A/A TR	The TACAN receiver receives both bearing and slant range information in nautical miles from the transmitting aircraft, providing this on the HSI and BDHI.

💡 Air to Air TACAN functionality requires the channel to be set 63 channels above or below the cooperating aircraft, but on the same

range- X or Y. So a tanker on 123Y should be set to 60Y in the F-4.

Communication Control Panel

The Communication Control Panel provides selection and mode of the UHF radio in the aircraft.

Command Buttons

The panel is duplicated in both cockpits, and control over the radio is determined through pushing the COMM CMD Button (**10**) in the respective seat; the button will illuminate green (**9**) in the seat in priority. In the same fashion, the NAV CMD button (**7**) dictates which seat has control of the TACAN settings; its button will also illuminate (**8**) on the panel of the seat that has command (control) of the system. Each press of a command button will toggle who is in command of the system.

Radio Volume

Beneath the COMM CMD button is the radio volume (**11**) for the respective seat.

Squelch Switch

Close to the NAV CMD button is the Squelch switch (**6**), which enables or disables receiver squelch.

Frequency and Channels

The A-3-2-T Selector knob (5) sets the first digit of the manually selected frequency (3 or 2) of the UHF radio.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, modes A and T, belonging to the HAVE-Quick functionality, are not simulated.

The four Frequency Selection Knobs work in concert with the A-3-2-T knob and Preset/Manual switch. Frequencies are entered beginning with the 3 or 2 selection on the A-3-2-T Selector, and can be entered from 225.00 to 399.975 MHz in increments of 0.025. With Preset/Manual in the Manual position, the UHF radio is directly set to the displayed channel. In the Preset position, the set channels can be entered into the COMM CHAN memory, with the desired position selected with the Comm Channel Control knob - the smaller knob to the left of the Preset/Manual switch, and displayed in the COMM CHAN window. Channels are stored in the displayed channel preset with the SET pushbutton. Once stored, channels are directly selected using the Comm Channel Control knob with the Preset/Manual switch in the Preset position.

Directly underneath the Comm Channel Control Knob is the Aux Channel Knob (4) and Indicator. This knob is used to access 20 common preset channels that cannot be changed from in the cockpit.

The Aux Volume Control knob (1) on the lower right of the panel raises and lowers the volume of the Aux receiver channel (12 and 13).

The Set button (14) can be used to save the channel frequency that is currently selected by the Frequency knobs. The frequency will be saved as the currently selected channel.

Tone Button

The Tone Pushbutton (3) is used for transmission of a Time of Day (TOD) signal along with a tone to friendly aircraft requiring a Time of Day

update for proper HAVE-Quick functionality.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, the tone button, belonging to the HAVE-Quick functionality, is not simulated.

Comm Function Selector

The Comm Function Selector Knob (2) determines the current configuration of the radio system.

Name	Description
OFF	All UHF Radios off.
T/R ADF	Comm receiver - comm reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.
T/R+G ADF	Comm receiver - comm reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - guard reception.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.
ADF+G CMD	Comm receiver - ADF reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission. ADF interrupted during transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - guard reception on ADF antenna.
	Aux receiver- comm reception.
ADF+G	Comm receiver - ADF reception.
	Comm transmitter - comm transmission. ADF interrupted during transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.

Name	Description
	Aux receiver- guard reception.
Guard ADF	Comm receiver - guard reception.
	Comm transmitter - guard transmission.
	Comm guard receiver - standby.
	Aux receiver - ADF reception.

Cockpit Altitude Gauge

Displays the current pressure inside the cockpit as a means of equivalent effective cabin altitude above mean sea level in 1000 of feet.

That is, if the gauge reads 5, the pressure inside the cabin is equivalent to an altitude of 5000 ft altitude MSL.

To prevent sickness and hypoxia, the pressure should be observed and oxygen supply adjusted accordingly:

Pressure Range	Description
below 13000 ft	Breath regular air
13000 ft - 40000 ft	Breath Oxygen through mask
40000 ft - 62000 ft	Breath pressurized Oxygen through mask
above 62000 ft	Need to wear a pressure suit (not available)

See 3.7 Utility chapter, Oxygen section for further information.

Oxygen Quantity Gauge

It has a range from 0 to 10 liters. Loss of electrical power is indicated by appearance of a power-OFF flag on the instrument face.

VOR/ILS Volume Control

The volume control consists of two knobs: one square knob (**1**) adjusts VOR and localizer audio, while the round knob (**2**) controls the marker beacon audio.

See 3.3.4 VOR/ILS Chapter for further information.

Left Wall

Emergency Canopy Jettison Handle

Used for emergency ground extraction, the Emergency Canopy Jettison Handle releases a compressed oxygen cylinder to open the respective canopy immediately, shearing it off at its pivots.

Canopy Control Switch

Used to open (aft) or close (forward) the WSO canopy.

Emergency Flaps Handle

Used for emergency deployment of the slats and flaps from the rear cockpit, and is activated by pulling the handle aft. Pneumatic system powering extension of the slats flaps system only functions one time. Extend regardless of airspeed; however, flaps will not fully deploy above 230 knots due to air loads on control surfaces. Will deploy fully when slower.

LABS Panel

Aural Tone Volume

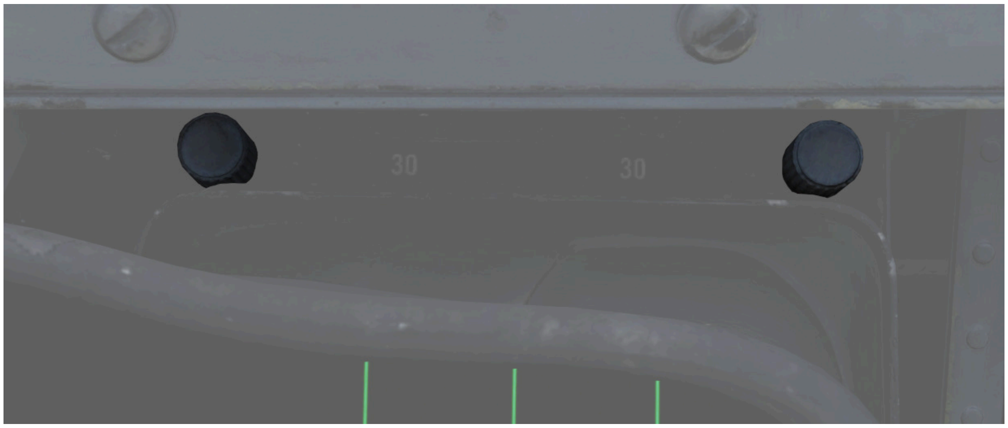
Knob (1) to control the volume for weapon tones, such as the Sidewinder seeker head.

Pull Up Tone

Switch (2) to toggle the tone played by the Pull-Up system.

Pedestal Group

This area behind the stick contains the radar screen (1), the DSCG controls (2) as well as the controls for the targeting pod (3).



Digital Scan Converter Group (DSCG)

The DSCG displays radar, weapon and targeting pod video footage.

The glare shield cover can be removed by clicking on it.

Grid Knob

This knob, located on the top left above the glare shield, controls brightness of the display grid on the visual field of the DSCG display; clockwise increases brightness, counterclockwise decreases.

Scale Knob

Located on the top right, above the glare shield, controls brightness of the bezel range scales surrounding the DSCG display; clockwise increases brightness, counterclockwise decreases.

H - Home on Jam Lamp

Light inside the top left corner of the glare shield, illuminates when the radar has achieved angle tracking in Home on Jam mode.

T - Track Lamp

Light inside the top right corner of the glare shield, illuminates when a standard radar lock on is achieved. Will go out in the event the radar falls back to memorized range and rate information should the lock be lost.

Cursor RNG (Range)

The Cursor RNG knob (2) increases (clockwise) and decreases (counterclockwise) the relative brightness of the hemispherical Along Track range cursor in MAP PPI and Beacon PPI modes on both displays (WSO and Pilot).

Cursor OFS (Offset)

The Cursor OFS knob (4) increases (clockwise) and decreases (counterclockwise) the relative brightness of the Cross Track cursor in the MAP PPI and Beacon PPI modes on both displays (WSO and Pilot).

Contrast Knob - CONTR

The Contrast knob (1) controls relative contrast level of DSCG display; clockwise increases contrast, counterclockwise reduces contrast.

Brightness Knob

The Brightness knob (3) increases (clockwise) and decreases (counterclockwise) the brightness of the overall scope display.

Mode Knob

The rotary mode knob (5) sets the current mode of the DSCG components.

Name	Description
OFF	Turns off DSCG display and de-powers all DSCG components.
STBY	Powers DSCG components, DSCG display remains off. Used for takeoff and landing.
DSCG TEST	Displays a test search display image with 8 shades of grey to confirm normal operation. Select Range 10 for proper sizing.
RDR BIT	Provides BIT sequence test grids for calibration of radar performance.

Name	Description
RDR	Used for radar display functionality in all employment modes.
TV	Used for TV raster imagery with EO weapons, as well as targeting pods.

Target Designator Control Set

This is the main panel to interact with the Pave Spike Targeting Pod.

Reticle brightness

The knob (1) controls contrast of the TV reticle from black (full counter-clockwise) to green (full clockwise). Should be set to attain maximum contrast in the display window during the designation and attack procedure.

Boresight knobs

Three knobs (2,3 and 4) to control the boresight position of the pod in azimuth, elevation and roll within 2.5 degrees in either direction.

Azimuth and Elevation can best be calibrated in the 12-VIS mode, while roll is best calibrated in 9-VIS.

> 💡 Normally the Pod is correctly calibrated by the ground crew before getting into the plane, but can drift due to combat damage

> or high G maneuvers in which case a recalibration by the WSO is needed.

See 3.11.5.6. Boresight Procedure for details.

Stow Button

Alternating presses (**5**) un-stows and stows the Pave Spike pod head. The head is stowed when the button is illuminated.

When un-stowed, the pod will move accordingly to the selected acquisition mode.

To prevent damage to the system, the pod must be stowed during takeoff, landing and any High-G maneuvers.

> 🟡 CAUTION: The stowed position is held electrically only and without power, the pod swings freely and gets damaged when forcefully bumped into its gimbal limits.

Laser Ready Select Button

Pushing the button (**6**) enables designator laser firing if illuminated after pressing.

Light remains off if interlocks (nose gear up and all pod functions working) inhibit use. Subsequent press deactivates laser system.

Power On Button

Applies (**7**) power to the targeting pod when pressed and released. Selected again to power off targeting pod. Button lamp will turn off once head is stowed.

To prevent damage to the system, whenever equipped, power to the system should be turned on even when not using the pod.

BIT Selector Button

Pressed (8) to advance to the desired BIT mode as displayed in the adjacent window.

BIT 1 is the regular mode of the pod and must be selected for normal operations.

Light Brightness Knob

The rotary knob (9) controls brightness of all lamps on this panel, except the Overheat lamp.

Reject/Override Button

When the pod detects a too huge discrepancy between the laser measured slant range and the INS based computed ranged, it automatically rejects former and prefers latter.

In this case, the button (10) can be used to force the use of the laser measured slant range instead.

Acquisition Mode Selector Switch

Three position switch (11) determining the pods main operation mode.

Name	Description
12-VIS	Slaves LOS parallel to the optical sight pipper.
WRCS	Slaves LOS to the WRCS cursors unless WRCS integration is deactivated; reverts to 12-VIS otherwise.
9-VIS	Slaves LOS to 90 degrees below FRL and rolled 90 degrees left.

WRCS Out

If lit (12), the WRCS is not integrated into the pod and functionalities requiring its integration are not available.

Can be pressed to manually disengage or engage integration, unless it was disintegrated by other means.

BIT Status Indicator

Illuminates (13) based on completion of the selected BIT process; GO confirms functionality, MALF shows BIT failure for a given test cycle.

Overheat Lamp

The OVHT lamp illuminates (14, upper half) to indicate an overheat condition in the pod.

To prevent damage, turn off the pod and give it some time to cool before further use. Ignoring the lamp will cause parts of the pod to melt, damaging it irreparably.

To prolong use of the pod and prevent overheating, limit slow and low-level flight, as well as continuous use of the laser. As a rule-of-thumb, do not use the laser for longer than 15 minutes without allowing for cooling between uses. Limit continued slow and low level flight while operating the pod to 30 minutes. For extreme outside temperatures, adjust the limits accordingly.

INS Out

If lit (14, lower half), the INS is not integrated into the pod and functionalities requiring its integration are not available.

Can be pressed to manually disengage or engage integration, unless it was disintegrated by other means.

Rudder Pedal Adjustment Crank

Used to adjust ergonomic position of the rudder pedals forward or back from the WSO.

Requires 12 full turns to move the pedals across the entire range.

Right Sub-Panel

The right sub panel contains controls for jamming, encryption and various settings for manual bomb delivery.

Eject Light/Switch

The EJECT light provides a positive visual command from the pilot to the WSO to prepare for ejection. The light is controlled only from the front cockpit. If the EJECT lamp in the front cockpit is pressed it signals the WSO to prepare for immediate ejection.

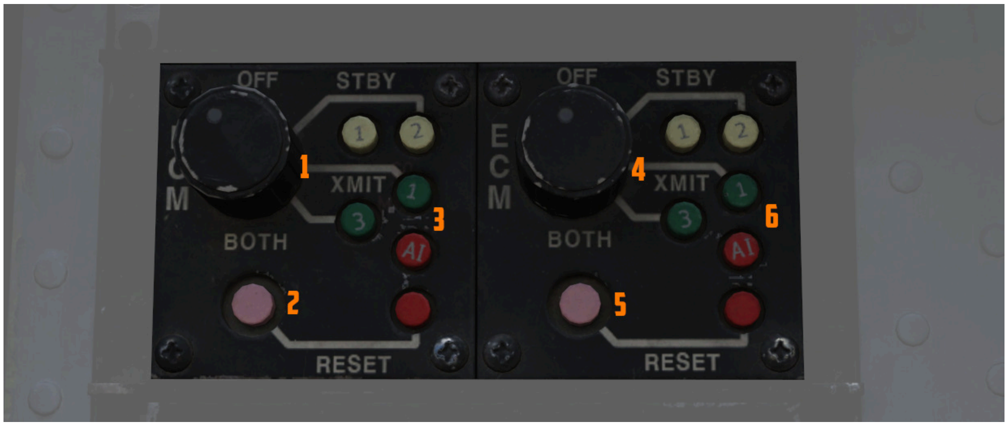
> 💡 Only the pilot can signal ejection. If the WSO presses the light, it serves as a lamp test only and does not trigger the pilots lamp as

well.

KY-28 Controls

Controls for the KY-28 encryption system. For further information see the Encryption chapter.

ECM Controls



Controls for the electronic counter-measurement and jamming system.

The left panel is connected to any pods carried on left stations, the right panel to stations on the right.

Interpretation of the modes, techniques and exact operation of the lights depend on the loaded jammer model. See the ECM section for details.

Mode Knob

The rotary dial (1, 4) the mode of the jammer to operate in:

Mode	Description
OFF	Turned off, no transmission
STBY	Starting the warmup, no transmission (200s for ALQ-131)
XMIT 1	Transmitting and jamming using technique 1
XMIT 2	Transmitting and jamming using technique 2
BOTH	Transmitting and jamming using technique 1 and 2

Use on the ground is prohibited since it could otherwise endanger personnel.

STBY Lights

The two lights (3 and 6, upper white ones) indicate that the corresponding jammer technique is done warming up and can now be used by switching to XMIT.

The warmup period is roughly 200s for the ALQ-131 pod.

XMIT Lights

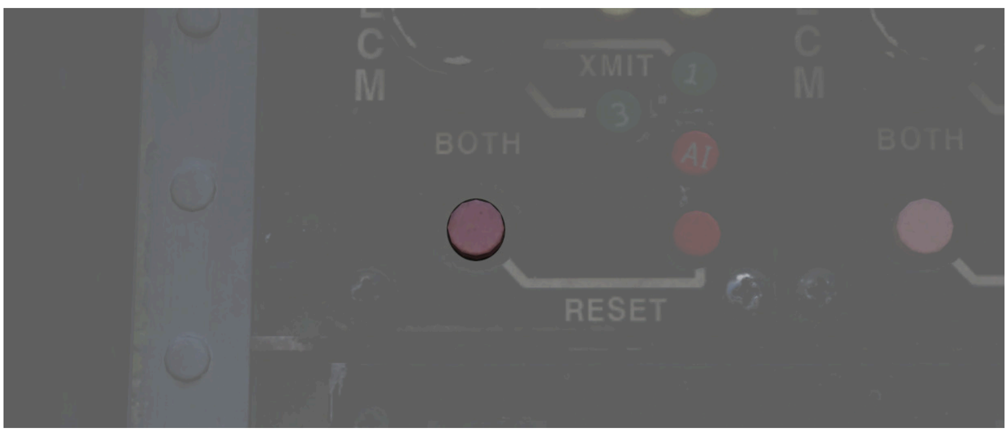
The two lights (3 and 6, middle green ones) indicate that the corresponding jammer technique is currently active and transmitting.

AI Light

Indicates (3 and 6, lower red ones) that a radar has been detected and is actively jammed.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, this is currently not simulated in-game.

Reset Button and Lamp



The reset lamp (2 and 5), if lit, indicates a fault in the jammer system. Flashing indicates an overheating condition, in which case the pod should be turned off to prevent damage.

In case of a fault, the reset button can be pressed to reset the jammer system (similar to turning it OFF and back ON), in which case it will run through the warmup period again. If the fault could be cleared, the light will go off.

Bomb Release Angle Computer

Used to enter the required angle values for ARBCS/LABS bombing modes; the Low Angle control (1) may be set from 0 to 89.9 degrees, and the High Angle control (2) may be set from 70 to 179.9 degrees.

The high Angle control is used for over-the-shoulder bombing, whilst low angle is used for LOFT bombing. For calculations of the angles see the bombing calculator.

Bombing Timers

Entry of applicable timing for pull-up signal or release are performed with the Bombing Timers.

The Pull-up timer (1) may be set from 0 to 60 seconds, and the Release timer (2) may be set from 0 to 30 seconds. Minimum increment for each

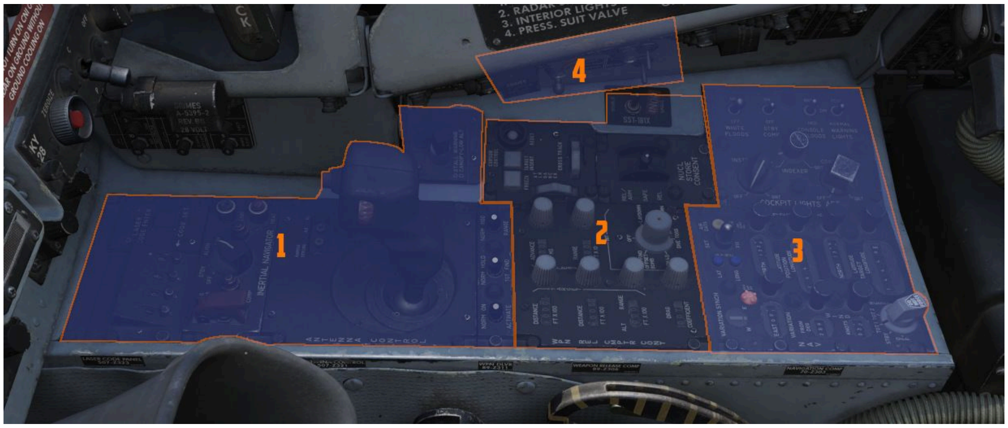
timer is 0.1 seconds. Both values are shown by two three digit rollers (**3**) above the knobs.

The Bombing timers may be used for every timed employment method.

See 9.4 bombing calculator chapter for how to calculate the number.

Right Console

The right console is further divided into 4 sections.



Section	Name
1.	Front
2.	Center
3.	Aft
4.	Wall

Front Section

The front area contains controls for weapon delivery and the INS.

Laser Coder Control

The WSO can set the laser code used by the targeting pod by using the four small push-buttons on this panel.

Code Buttons

Each press (1) will advance the corresponding digit by one.

Codes directly relate to laser frequencies, resulting in them having to be between 1111 and 1788 and not use digits 0 or 9 in order to be valid.

> 💡 Weapon laser codes can be adjusted in the Mission Editor or during rearming, the default code used is 1688.

Enter Button

Once a code has been set, it can be transferred to the Pave Spike by pressing the ENTER button (2) to the right.

When power is applied to the system, it automatically initiates a transfer of the currently set code.

No Go Lamp

Validation of an entered code takes about 5 seconds. If the NO-GO lamp is lit, the code is invalid.

Inertial Navigation Control Panel

The Inertial Navigation Control Panel provides the rear pilot mode selection and system alignment command selection.

See 3.3.2 INS Navigation for further information.

Mode Selector Switch

The HDG MEM-GYRO COMP switch (1), located under a cover, primarily stays in the GYRO COMP position for Gyro Compass type of alignment. Switching it to HDG MEM, before turning on the INS, allows, if previously stored, heading memory alignment.

> 💡 Heading can be stored in the mission editor.

Power Control Knob

Knob positions (2) are:

Name	Description
OFF	System off.
STBY	Standby- power is applied to the heaters and temperature control system, and initiates Coarse alignment (if GYRO COMP is selected on the toggle).
ALIGN	Performs fine platform and gyro leveling and BATH (or HDG MEM) alignment. Then, if available, performs Gyro-compassing (Fine) Alignment.
NAV	Activates the INS for navigation function, performance of which is based on the alignment quality.

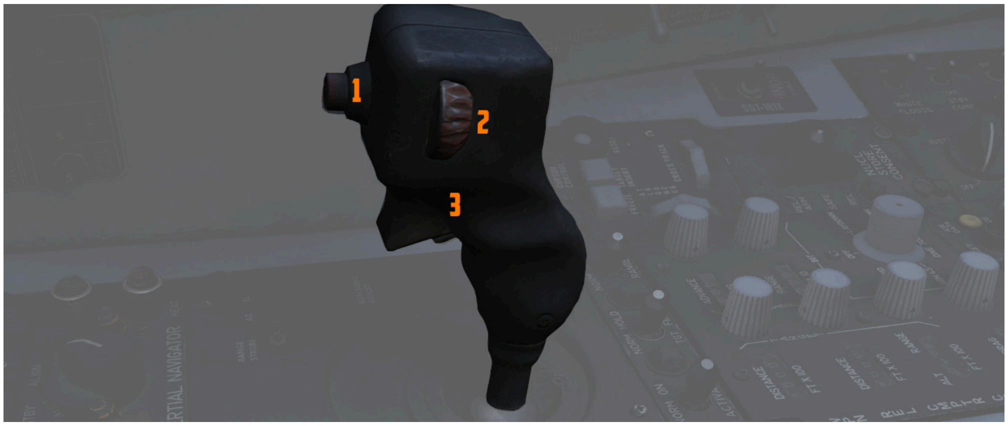
HEAT Lamp

The HEAT lamp (4) illuminates when the system is placed into STBY mode, and remains illuminated for 2 minutes after the gyros have reached operating temperature. The system will not allow Gyro-compassing alignment if switched out of STBY before this lamp has shut off.

ALIGN Lamp

The ALIGN lamp (3) provides current INS alignment through illuminating steady (BATH alignment complete), or flashing at the completion of GYRO COMP or HDG MEM alignment.

Antenna Hand Control



Joystick which integrates with the radar to perform range (fore and aft) and azimuth (left and right) positional control of the acquisition symbol on the radar display in the air-to-air modes, as well as seeker/EO sensor direction with AGM-65 Maverick and Pave Spike.

Antenna Elevation Control

A thumbwheel (2) on the left side of the stick controls the elevation angle of the radar antenna, displayed via the EL strobe on the DSCG display.

Challenge Button

If controlling the radar the button (1) initiates an IFF interrogation.

For the Pave Spike targeting pod, it instead toggles the field of view between WIDE and NARROW.

Action Switch (Trigger)

A 2-stage trigger (3) to lock targets. Exact behavior depends on whether currently controlling the radar, weapons or the targeting pod.

Boresight Adjustment

The boresight position of the antenna stick can be adjusted at its base using a screwdriver. Once set, the new values can be loaded by pressing the button below.

This is only accessible to ground crew personnel.

Weapon Delivery Panel

ACTIVATE Switch

The two position switch (1) is only available after the Target Insert button is pressed, placing the switch to ON provides power to the weapon release computer's circuits for a LABS release using the WRCS release range data.

TGT FIND Switch

The two position switch (2) is Used to combine the delivery functionality of the ARBCS/LABS system with the WRCS TGT FIND mode. NORM is selected for the standard function of the WRCS without LABS delivery capability. Selecting HOLD and an ARBCS setting from the pilot's Delivery Mode Knob provides WRCS Target Offset search capability, and the attack is completed using the normal ARBCS procedures from the IP.

RANGE Switch

Selecting x100 on the two position switch (3) changes the release range multiplier on the WRCS panel to a factor of 100; in NORM, the standard factor of 10 is applied to the release range.

Volume Panel

A small panel to the right of the antenna hand control stick contains two combined knobs to control volume.

Canopy/Low Altitude Warning

The cubic knob (1) sets audio level for canopy open and low altitude voice warnings.

This system is not installed on this variant of the F-4E.

Stall Warning

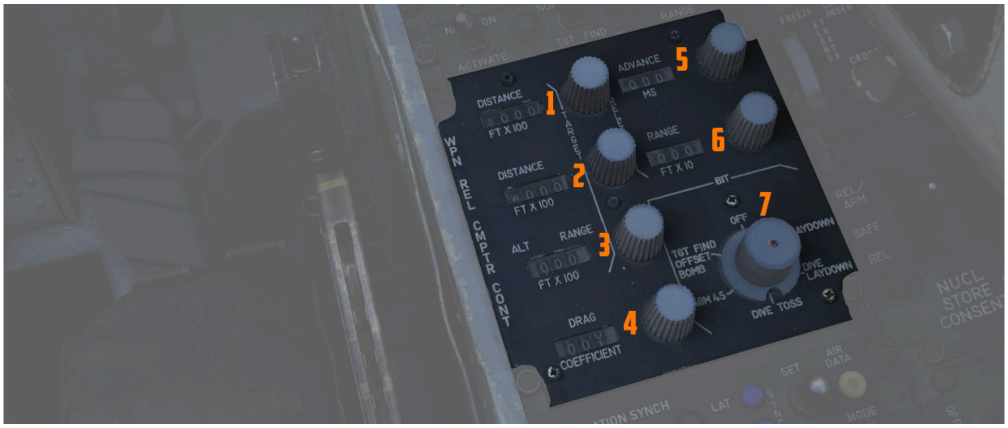
The Stall Warning knob (**2**) controls the volume of the AoA tones that play when flying at certain angles.

Under certain conditions, the system can override the volume to ensure the cue is always audible in dangerous situations.

Center Section

The center section of the right console is dominated by the WRCS panel for weapon delivery. For more detailed information see the WRCS chapter.

Weapon Release Computer Set (WRCS) Panel



Target Distance Controls

A pair of four position drum roller windows with matching analog knobs. The top window (1) references distances in the North-South orientation (with the first roller marked N/S), and the lower window (2) references distances in the East-West orientation (with the first roller marked E/W).

The rollers reference the distance shown in increments of 100 feet, thus a distance of offset in the East direction for 4000' would be entered as E0040.

The rollers do function in an analog fashion, thus fractions of 100' can be attained by moderating the last roller accordingly; as an example, a value of 250 feet would be attained with the space between the 2 and 3 value halfway in the window in the last digit position.

Target/IP Altitude Control

A three position drum roller window (3) with matching analog knob used to enter the altitude of either the Radar initial Point or the actual target itself, and is referenced in increments of 100'. Fractional values can be entered as described previously. This value can be changed once Radar Identification Point (RIP) or Visual Identification Point (VIP) is properly defined to increase release system accuracy.

Drag Coefficient Control

A three position drum roller window (4) with matching analog knob used to enter the drag coefficient value for the weapon being used from the bombing tables for the intended release mode.

> 🚧 Lookup tables will soon be provided. However, the bombing calculator provides working solutions for all weapons regardless.

Release Advance Control

A three position drum roller window (5) with matching analog knob used to advance the release signal given from the WRCS to the fire control system relative to the WRCS target point, in any duration from 0 to 999 milliseconds. Also functions in conjunction with ARBCS/LABS programmed release timing.

This can be used to spread out a bombing run over a target area, for example to place the 3-th bomb of a 10-bomb salvo on the target.

The release advance control can be calculated with the bombing calculator.

Release Range Control

A three position drum roller window (6) with matching analog knob used to manually set bomb range in accordance with the weapon's bomb release schedule entry in the bomb tables.

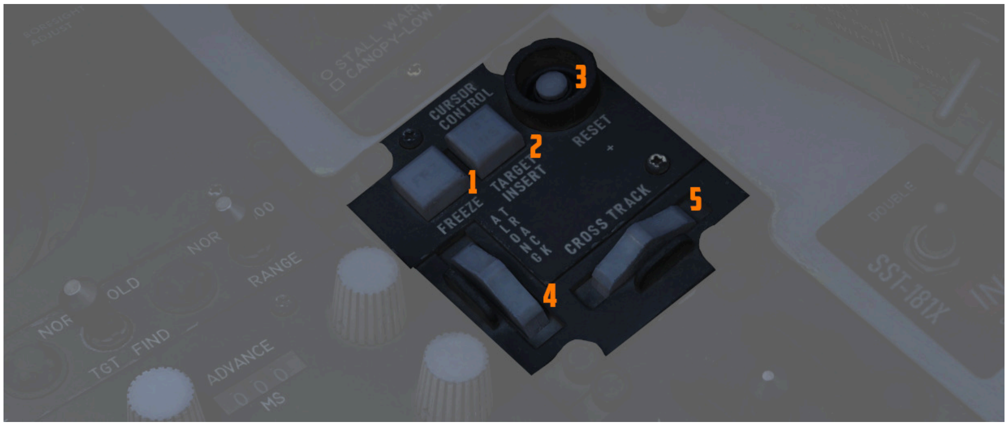
The range can be calculated with the bombing calculator.

WRCS BIT Knob

A six position knob (7) utilized to perform BIT checks against the individual WRCS delivery modes. The BIT check is performed by selecting the desired mode for testing, pressing the knob for five seconds, then pressing the Freeze button on the Cursor Control Panel while keeping the BIT knob held down to confirm function.

See WRCS BITs for details.

Cursor Control Panel



Used for WRCS radar bombing mode target entry. Functions only with MAP-PPI mode selected and applicable bombing mode selected on the Delivery Mode Knob.

Freeze Button

A push button (1) used in air to ground bombing with the WRCS to initiate velocity tracking of the aircraft from the INS, as well as maintain a hold of the target position defined by the Along Track and Cross Track cursor gates, thus defining the Radar initial Point. The button illuminates, and remains lit, until the reset button is pressed, or another delivery mode is selected.

Target Insert Button

A push button (2) that inserts the North-South and East-West offset values entered into the WRCS control panel into the WRCS computer, performing the offset against the Radar initial Point defined by the Along Track and Cross Track cursor gates and currently tracked with the Freeze Button. This offset inclusion performs a shift of the Along Track and Cross Track cursors to define the actual target defined by the WRCS offsets on the radar scope. This action initiates target steering information from the WRCS to the navigational displays.

The Pave Spike system also utilizes the Target Insert functionality for its Memory Mode.

Reset Button

Pressing the Reset Button (3) drops the currently tracked ground target location from WRCS computer memory, returns the Along and Cross Track cursors to their default positions, and resets the velocity tracking system values to zero.

Along Track Wheel

The Along Track wheel (4) is used to define relative range of the aircraft to the Radar initial Point, using an expanding/contracting hemisphere cursor on the radar display. This hemisphere presents true range to the target via the hemispherical PPI projection, thus allowing the Radar initial Point to be detected in an offset approach to the target. Close approximation of range to the Radar initial Point should be prepared first with the Along Track wheel prior to using the Cross Track Wheel for best system accuracy- ie, the cursor should be placed below the intended Radar initial Point return on the radar scope, and the Cross Track wheel brought to the return point.

Cross Track Wheel

The Cross Track wheel (5) is used to define the heading to the Radar initial Point on the radar display in PPI mode, presented as a vertical line.

The intersection of the Along Track and Cross Track cursors defines the Radar initial Point when the Freeze button is pressed.

Nuclear Stores Consent Switch

Used to arm nuclear stores. In the SAFE position, release is inhibited. REL allows releasing stores unarmed, while REL/ARM allows dropping nuclear stores armed.

Skyspot Mode

On the outer right side of the right console is a switch which would allow to select the mode of the Combat Skyspot system used for ground-directed bombing.

The system was never installed on this variant of the F-4E.

Aft Section

The aft section of the right console features the navigation and lighting panel.

Navigation Panel

The Navigation Computer Control Panel serves as an interface for managing the aircraft's navigation, including its position and targets for navigation instruments like the HSI and BDHI. It can operate in two modes: INERTIAL and AIR DATA.

See Navigation Computer for details.

The panel is equipped with a range of control knobs and switches essential for the operation of the Navigation Computer.

Function Selector Knob

A five position rotary switch ((**1**)) used to set the function of the navigation system.

Position	Description
OFF	System powered down.
STBY	System is powered but the latitude and longitude position integration is off.
TARGET 1	Computes range and bearing to the selected coordinates set on the TARGET rollers.
TARGET 2	Computes range and bearing to the memorized coordinates.
RESET	Clears the memorized coordinates. When moved back to TARGET 2, the selected coordinates set on the TARGET rollers are memorized.

Wind Control Knobs and Counters

Two rotary knobs (2) that enable manual setting of wind velocity (in knots) and direction (in degrees, from), displayed on the counters. Utilized by the Navigation Computer in AIR DATA mode.

Magnetic Variation Knob and Counters

A rotary knob (3) that allows manual setting of magnetic variation (in degrees). Essential for navigation computations in AIR DATA mode and for initial (BATH) INS Alignment.

Position Control Knobs and Counters

These knobs (**9**) are used to manually change the current aircraft position in terms of latitude and longitude, as displayed on the counters (in degrees and minutes). They must be pressed in to be effective.

> 💡 In INERTIAL mode, the Position Update Switch must be used in conjunction with these knobs to update the position coordinates.

Target Control Knobs and Counters

The target controls (**10**) enable the setting of target latitude and longitude counters, which can be used either as direct waypoint targets (when the Function Selector Knob is set to TARGET 1) or to memorize TARGET 2 coordinates (after the RESET position has been selected).

Position Update Switch

A three position switch (7) to set the position updating.

Position	Description
SET	Disengages the updating mechanism of position counters, allowing them to be freely rotated to the desired position.
NORMAL	Position counters are updated based on the INS signal in Inertial Mode, or by the system's own computations in Air Data Mode.
FIX	Updates the INS position at a rate of approximately 3 minutes of arc per second.

💡 The switch features an approximate 0.5-second delay when set to NORM, designed to prevent unwanted updates of the counters during the transition from SET to FIX.

Variation Sync Meter

In Inertial mode, this meter (5) displays the discrepancy between the INS-computed and manually set magnetic variation. In AIR DATA mode, the manually set variation does not affect this indicator.

Test Cap Off Light

Illuminates (4) when there is a failure in the true airspeed circuit from the Air Data Computer, indicating an open circuit condition.

Latitude and Longitude Sync Lights

Illuminate (6) when the position counters for latitude or longitude do not match the coordinates provided by the INS (difference above 1.5 arc minutes).

Air Data Mode Light

Illumination (8) indicates that the Navigation Computer is operating in AIR DATA Mode.

Cockpit Lighting Control Panel

The Cockpit Lighting Control Panel provides control of all panel edge lighting, flight instrument panel lighting, the console floodlights, the white floodlights found under the canopy sill over each console, and also includes the Warning Light Test and Standby Compass Light switch.

White Floodlight

The White Floodlight switch (4) acts independent of all other controls on the panel, and is either ON or OFF. It activates a separate emergency floodlight (also called Thunderstorm Light) that illuminates the cockpit in white.

Standby Compass Switch

The STBY COMP switch (5) illuminates the light for the Standby Compass.

Console Floodlight

This switch (6) controls the lighting level of red floodlights providing general lighting for the consoles. Three settings are available: DIM, MED and BRT.

> 💡 To turn them off, place the switch in DIM and the Console Knob in OFF.

💡 Floodlights for the Instrument Panel are controlled by the pilot, see the Instrument Flood Switch.

Warning Light Test Switch

The Warning Light Test Switch (**7**) if set to the TEST position, confirms function of the various emergency indicators in the cockpit.

Instrument Panel Knob

This knob (**2**) controls the background illumination of the instrument panel, as well as edge lighting for most of its gauges.

💡 The main flight instruments are controlled by the pilot via the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob instead.

Indexer Knob

Controls the brightness (**3**) of the AoA Indexer lights to the left and right of the canopy bow.

Console Knob

The Console Light Control Knob (**1**), with range from OFF to BRT, controls the illumination level for the left and right console.

Right Wall

The right wall has auxiliary switches for testing and starting the aircraft.

Canopy Manual Unlock Handle

The manual unlock handle is used in the event of pneumatic system failure.

The handle, when pulled aft, unlocks the canopy so that it may be pushed open. Before manual unlocking of the canopy, the normal control lever must be placed in the OPEN position.

For normal operation, the handle should be left in the forward position.

If the canopy is not properly locked, the *CANOPY UNLOCKED* warning light on the telelight panel illuminates.

Ground Test Panel

Battery Bypass

When toggled ON (1), de-energizes the battery relay, disconnecting the battery from the essential 28-volt DC bus and ceasing charging. Particularly used in suspected cases of thermal runaway.

Autopilot Ground Test

The autopilot ground test switch (2), located on the No. 2 circuit breaker panel, connects external electrical power to the AFCS circuits. It disengages if there's a loss of external power or when a generator comes online. When operating on external power, the AFCS circuit can be de-energized by placing the switch in the NORM (down) position.

Instrument Ground Power

In the TEST position (3), connects external electrical power to the instrument buses (115/200 volt ac, 28 volt ac, and 14 volt ac), contingent upon the generator switches being set to EXT ON.

This can be used during a cold-start after applying ground power and before starting the engines, to already setup the aircraft and operate some systems that require power on these buses.

Stick and Seat

Stick

A control stick is provided in both cockpits, with near-uniform switchology between the two.

The stick can be hidden by clicking on its base.

Trim Hat

A Trim Control (1) is found on both sticks to provide force reduction and minor flight path correction in the pitch and roll axis.

Trigger and Bomb Button

Weapons are deliverable through both a 2-stage Trigger (3) (for air-to-air missiles and the gun) and a Bomb Release Button (2).

The first stage of the trigger activates the gun camera for recording forward footage.

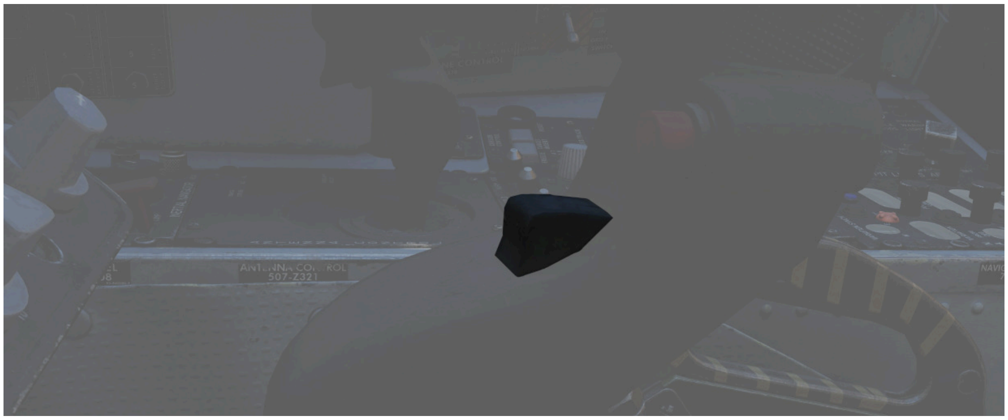
Nose Wheel Steering Button

Both sticks carry a Nose Wheel Steering (NWS or also NGS) button (4) that doubles as a radar auto-acquisition control for the radar in visual

range combat, and sensor focus control for video-directed air to ground weapons.

Holding the button down permits the crew member to steer the aircraft using the rudder pedals. See 3.1.3 Gear & Ground handling, Nose Gear Steering section for details.

Emergency Quick Release Lever



An Emergency Quick Release lever on each stick is available to immediately deactivate the anti-skid system, the automatic flight control system (AFCS), stability augmentation (STAB AUG) and the aileron-rudder interconnect (ARI).

See 3.1.3 Gear & Ground handling, Anti-Skid section for details.

Seat

The seat allows the crew to eject out of the plane by pulling either the cord between the legs or above the head.

See the 3.13 Emergency system section for details on the seat and ejection mechanism.

Seat Position

The vertical position of the seat can be changed in either direction for about 5cm using this spring-loaded switch on the right side of the seat.

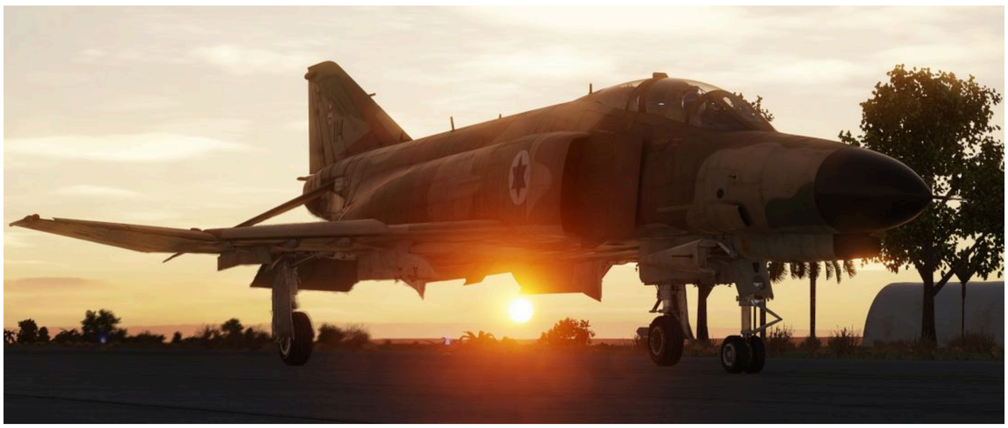
For landing, it is advisable to put the seat in the most upward position for better visibility.

Operation of the motor must be limited to 30 seconds within 10 minutes to prevent it from overheating and breaking.

Systems Overview

This chapter gives detailed in-sights and explanations into all major systems of the Phantom.

From the engine system to fuel flow, control surfaces, how to navigate, use the radar and weapons effectively, or the insights of INS alignments and its gyro system.



Flight Control System

This chapter contains all necessary information about the flight controls, tricycle landing gear and primary flight instruments of the F-4E.

Primary Flight Instruments

The Primary flight instruments include every instrument needed for basic flight of the F-4E. Included are the True Airspeed Indicator (TAS), the ground speed indicator, Accelerometers, combined Airspeed and Mach Indicators, radar and barometric Altimeters, a backup magnetic compass, vertical velocity indicators, different turn and slip indicators as well as cockpit attitude indicators.

True Airspeed Indicators

True Airspeed Indicators are provided in both cockpits, and carry a calibrated range from 150 to 1500 knots. The velocity signal is calculated in the Air Data Computer, based on the temperature and pressures input. While the indicators can read as low as 0 knots, the lack of calibration below the stated range means values less than 150 knots are inaccurate. At high rates of airspeed change, there may be a lag of up to ±10 knots in measurement. During normal operation, an error up to ±5 knots may be present. If failed, the rollers will be stuck on their position.

The rear True Airspeed Indicator is removed for DMAS equipment in aircraft so configured; however, TAS is provided as a DMAS function.

Ground Speed Indicator

A ground speed indicator is provided in the rear cockpit, with a range from 0 to 1999 knots. Ground speed signal is provided by the Navigation Computer, with the source dependent on INS function. If the INS is online, the ground speed value calculated is based on the provided velocity, and can display correct information as low as 0 knots. When the INS is offline, the air data computer performs a calculation using crew-entered wind information, which can cause errors of up to 150 displaying while the aircraft is on the ground with the parking brake set. If failed, the rollers will be stuck on their position.

With DMAS installed, the rear ground speed indicator is removed, as GS is a DMAS function.

Accelerometers

Both cockpits retain accelerometers for monitoring G load; the accelerometers carry 3 needles - one for current G loading, and a positive and negative G loading needle for the highest load G-load detected since the accelerometer was reset. To reset the gauge, the PUSH TO SET button will return the recording pointers to positive 1 G.

Airspeed/Mach Indicators

Purely mechanical instruments that use total pressure from the Pitot-Static system and static pressure from the Air Data Computer, previously corrected by the Static Pressure Compensator before displaying in the gauge.

The airspeed indicator component of this instrument functions by measuring the dynamic air pressure, which is the difference between the total and the static pressure. This dynamic pressure is closely related to the square of the aircraft's airspeed. Inside the indicator, there is a diaphragm or aneroid capsule that reacts to changes in this dynamic pressure. As the aircraft's speed varies, this diaphragm expands or contracts accordingly. These mechanical movements are then converted into a reading displayed on the airspeed dial, showing the aircraft's velocity relative to the air around it.

The Mach number is determined in a manner akin to measuring airspeed, primarily through the comparison of dynamic and static air pressures. This comparison reveals the aircraft's speed relative to the speed of sound.

Found in both cockpits is a combination Airspeed/Mach indicator. The indicators provide a fixed airspeed scale at the middle of the indicator (1), reading values from 80 to 850 knots, and a rotating Mach number scale to the outside (2), with readings from 0.4 to 2.5 Mach. A two position push-and-rotate knob (4) offers both an airspeed index with a functional range between 80 and 195 knots (3), and a Mach index pointer with a range between 225 knots and 850 knots. A small friction error of the needle, up to 5 kts might sometimes be noticed.

If failed, both the airspeed needle and the mach scale will be stuck in their remaining position. Mean time to failure is 1000 hours.

Altimeter

An AAU-19 Type of altimeter, may operate in both electric - based on corrected electric static pressure signal from the Altitude Encoder, or mechanical (STBY) mode - from Air Data Computer, previously corrected by the Static Pressure Compensator. The errors tolerance of the instrument is ±3 feet below 80kts and ±5 feet above that airspeed.

In STBY mode, the altimeter operates based on an aneroid barometer, featuring a flexible metal capsule known as an aneroid wafer. This wafer expands or contracts with changes in external air pressure. As the aircraft ascends, the decrease in air pressure causes the wafer to expand. Conversely, during descent, the increased air pressure leads to the wafer's contraction. These mechanical movements are translated via a system of springs and levers, resulting in the movement of the altimeter's

needle and rollers. The altimeter can be calibrated to the current sea level pressure for accurate altitude readings.

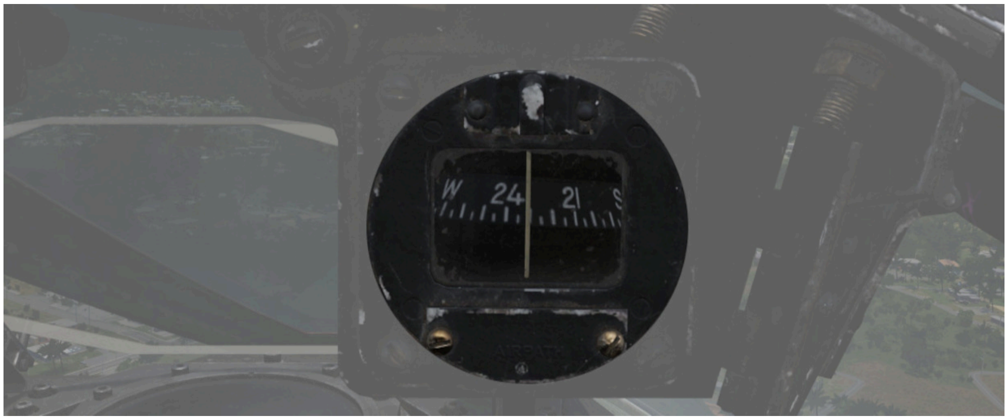
In the primary mode of operation, the altimeter utilizes an electric servo mechanism to achieve a precise indication.

Devices in both cockpits provide a functional range from 0 to 80,000 feet. To the outside of the indicator is a pointer scale (**5**), gradation in 50 foot units with markings every 100 feet (from 1 to 10). Left of center is the counter, increasing and decreasing in value in thousand foot increments on the black pair of rollers, hundred foot increments on the white (**4**). Barometric scale (**3**) adjustment can be performed using a dial (**1**). A three position switch (**2**) provides the RESET function for the altimeter to draw signals from the air data computer for normal operation, and the STBY (standby) option to only use the pneumatic pressure to determine altitude. Standby mode is noted with a red flag in the indicator. In the event of an altimeter or air data computer failure in normal operation, the STBY flag will appear, and cannot be reset. This can also be followed by warnings on the telelight panel.

Common failures of the device include:

- Altimeter Stuck: total damage, all indications are frozen
- Electric Servo Failed: the device is forced to turn to the STBY (pressure) mode of operation.
- Needle Stuck: needle remains in its position
- Altitude Rollers Stuck: altitude rollers remain in their position
- Reference Pressure Rollers Stuck: reference pressure rollers remain in their position
- Reference Pressure Knob Broken: rotating the knob has no effect on the device
- Three Position Switch Broken: rotating the switch has no effect on the device

Magnetic Compass



A magnetic compass is provided in each cockpit for use in the event of a navigation or electrical system failure.

Due to its design, the compass is subject to several errors. Firstly, it exhibits a degree of inertia, which often results in a lagging indication. As a result, oscillations of the needle and its swinging movements may frequently be observed.

To maintain alignment with the Earth's gravity field, it can rotate about 10 degrees in both the pitch and roll axes. However, because the Earth's magnetic field lines are not parallel to its surface, the needle tends to 'dip' slightly upward or downward towards the magnetic poles. This 'dipping' effect causes errors, particularly noticeable during turns and acceleration.

In the northern hemisphere, the compass will lag when turning from north and lead when turning towards north. The opposite is true in the southern hemisphere.

When accelerating on east or west headings in the northern hemisphere, the compass will erroneously turn towards the north, and while decelerating, it will turn towards the south. In the southern hemisphere, the opposite effects occur during acceleration and deceleration.

Vertical Velocity Indicators (VVI)

VVI Indicators are provided in both cockpits, and show the rate of climb or descent (in feet per minute) of the aircraft, calculated via atmospheric pressure change using the pneumatically corrected static pressure from the Air Data Computer.

The device consists of a diaphragm housed within a sealed case. Both the diaphragm and the space surrounding it are connected to the aircraft's static pressure source. However, the diaphragm is designed with a calibrated leak, causing the pressure inside it to change more slowly than that of the surrounding area. This intentional delay results in a pressure differential between the inside and outside of the diaphragm. The VVI translates this pressure difference into mechanical movement of a needle, which then displays the aircraft's rate of climb or descent.

Due to its design, the rate of climb or descent displayed on the indicator is subject to a slight delay compared to the aircraft's actual vertical movement. This lag in the F-4 ranges between 4 and 7 seconds. The gauge, which measures between -6,000 and 6,000 feet per minute, can have a positional error of up to 50 fpm, scale errors of up to 300 fpm for rates nearing 5,000 fpm, and friction errors of a maximum of ±150 fpm. In case of failure, the indicator may become stuck, or one of its leaks may become clogged. If the Static Pressure Leak is blocked, the needle will gradually move to a 0 fpm indication as the pressures equalize and remain constant. Conversely, if the calibrated leak is clogged, the delayed pressure will not change, causing the needle to move with altitude

changes, similar to an altimeter, but quickly reaching its operational limits. The mean time between failures for this instrument is 1,000 hours.

Radar Altimeter

Found in the front cockpit, the Radar Altimeter has a functional range of 0 to 5000 feet above ground level. The radar altimeter functions from 0 to 30 degrees in bank angle, or 0 to 35 degrees angle in pitch. The dial scale reads from 0 to 5000 feet, and the system includes a red low altitude warning light (**2**) that illuminates when the aircraft is detected below a pilot-set altitude.

Activation and setting of the radar altimeter warning height is done with the same knob (**1**); turning the knob clockwise initially activates the indicator, removing the displayed OFF flag; continuing to rotate the knob moves the reference marker that will determine the altitude which triggers the low altitude warning. A self-test, initiated by pressing the function control switch, shows 35 ±15 feet. Above 5000 feet or with unreliable signals, the pointer hides behind a mask, showing the OFF flag. The OFF appears also when power is lost; the indicator will then present the last altitude detected above ground level at the time of this occurring.

Turn and Slip Indicators

Pilot	WSO
	

In the front cockpit, a turn and slip indicator is added to the ADI on the instrument panel; while the needle provides correct direction of turn, based on the signal from a Rate Gyroscope in the AJB-7 system, it does not provide proper turn rate information.

A conventional 4-minute turn and slip indicator with its own conventional horizontally mounted gyro is found on the rear cockpit panel.

To execute a controlled turn (360° in 4 minutes), place the vertical needle of the rear turn indicator over one of the marks on either side (turn rate of 1.5 degrees per second) and ensure the slip indicator at the bottom is centered to prevent over- or under-turning due to incorrect bank.

Rear Cockpit Attitude Indicator

The AJB-7 provides attitude information to the Attitude Indicator found on the rear cockpit instrument panel regardless of the Reference System Selector Switch position. A trim knob provides the ability to adjust the

attitude sphere to reference the aircraft correctly. Should power be disconnected from the indicator or AJB-7, the OFF flag will display.

The device operates electronically and features two servos: a pitch servo and a roll servo. The pitch indication is limited to a range of ±90 degrees, while the roll indication allows for continuous movement throughout the entire 360-degree circle. In the event of a servo failure (with a mean time between failures of 800 hours), the affected servo will become stuck in its last position or direction.

Pitot-Static System

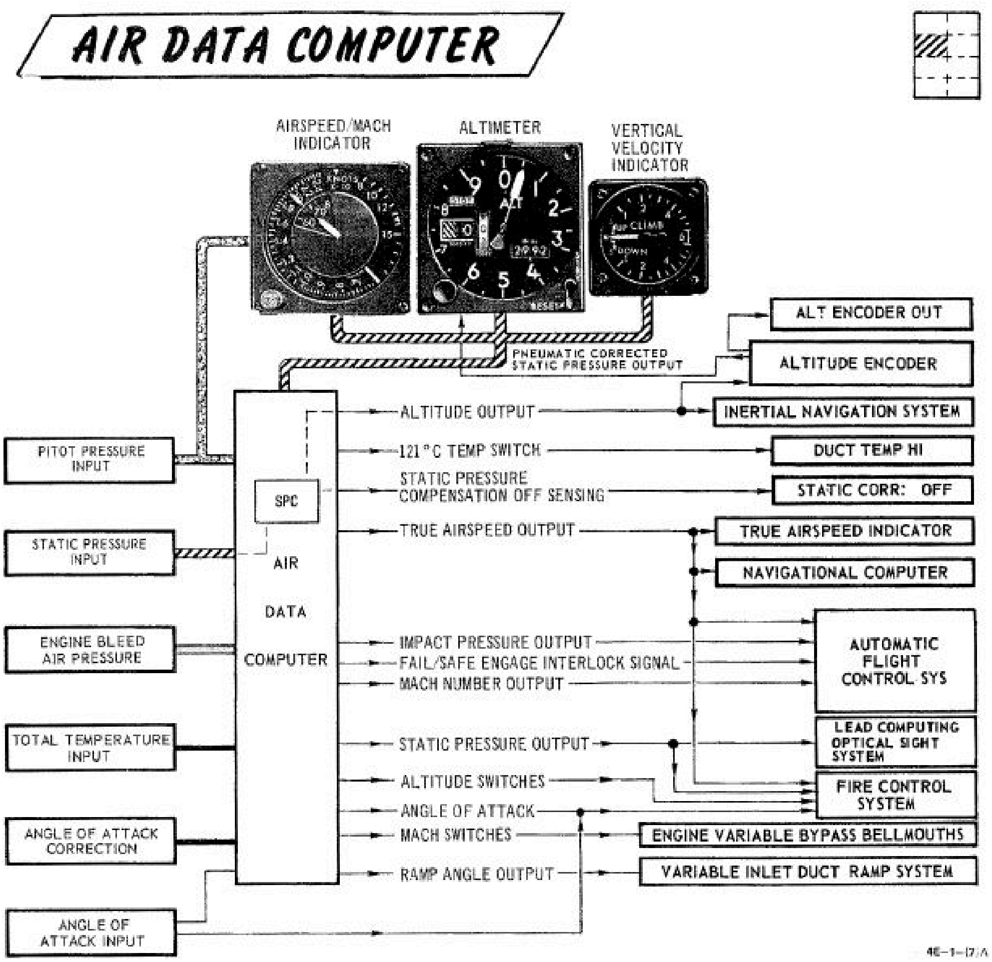
The Pitot-Static system provides impact and static pressure to flight instrumentation, the Air Data Computer, and airspeed-driven switches. A single pitot tube, mounted on the aircraft, provides the total pressure reading, while static pressure is measured by two static ports situated on a single boom on the aircraft's nose. Both the pitot tube and static ports are prone to blockages caused by ice accumulation. To alleviate icing of the pitot head, a Pitot Heat Switch is found in the front cockpit right console.

> 🟡 CAUTION: The Pitot Heat switch should always be turned on before takeoff but not for longer than one minute as it could

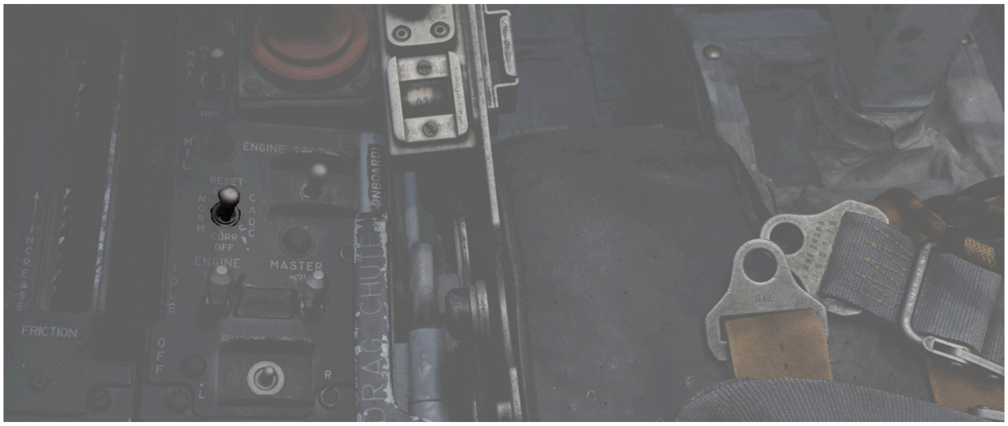
damage the instrument.

Air Data Computer System

Using a variety of static, attitude, and environmental inputs, the Air Data Computer (ADC) provides the pneumatic and electrical inputs to primary flight instruments, AFCS, Fire Control System, Air Induction System, the INS, the LCOSS, navigational computer, and manages the variable bypass bell mouth system for the engines. Flight through weather such as ice or rain can induce errors in the performance of these systems until the condition has cleared, and this should be taken into account.



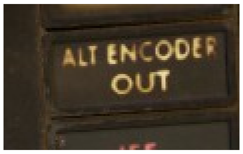
Static Pressure Compensator



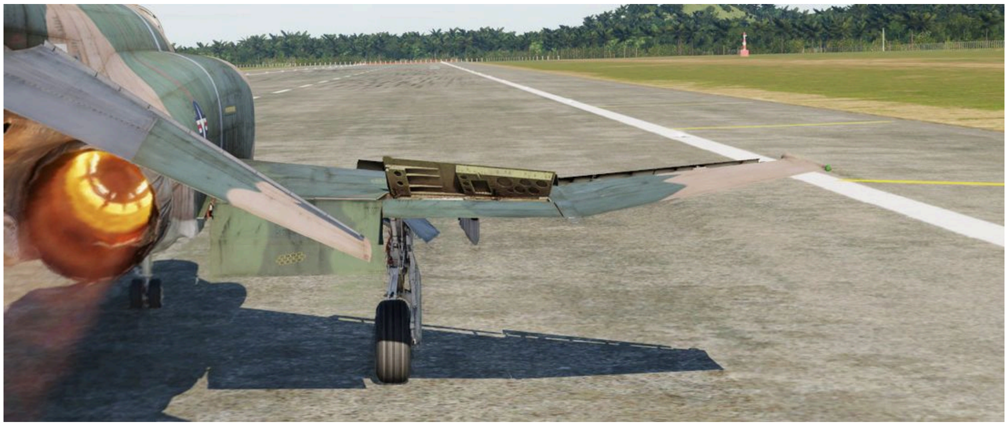
The Static Pressure Compensator (SPC) performs correction of altimeter lag caused by rapid altitude change. The SPC must be reset after engine startup on each flight; this is performed using the CADC switch near the throttles by selecting RESET CORR, then selecting NORM. Should an issue occur during flight causing a STATIC CORR OFF warning, an attempt to reset the SPC can be performed with RESET CORR. Should the STATIC CORR OFF warning fail to clear, care must be taken in all diving maneuvers, as substantial altimeter lag will occur.

ALT ENCODER OUT Light

The Altitude Encoder Unit provides precise (to 100 feet) altitude data to the IFF for Mode C traffic control, as well as performs the correction relative to the pneumatic input at the altimeter. Should the SPC be offline, the ALT ENCODER OUT light will also illuminate to confirm lagged altimeter performance, and potential Mode C issues.



Flight Control System



The primary flight controls of the aircraft consist of the stabilator, rudder, ailerons, and spoilers. Artificial feel systems provide simulated aerodynamic forces to the control stick and rudder pedals. Secondary controls are leading edge flaps/slats, trailing edge flaps, and wing mounted speed brakes.

Bobweights vs. Bellows

Linkages between stick, control surfaces and interactions with the trim system, as well as the AFCS are a complex combination of forces that balance out each other.

Bobweights connected to the stick increase the force required to move it depending on the current G-force by pushing the stick forward. For example, when pulling the stick and generating positive G's, the bobweights get heavier, making it harder to pull more and naturally leading to the stick wanting to move back to neutral.

The bobweights are countered from the opposing direction by the bellows system operated by ram air pressure sensed at the bellows inlet on the vertical fin.

The bellows pull the stick aft depending on the relative airspeed. For example, when going hands of stick and the aircraft unintentionally departing nose down, airspeed increases and the bellows system pulls the stick aft, naturally causing the aircraft to pitch up and stabilize in level flight again.

Trimming the aircraft results in changing the length of the lever arm connecting the bellows system with the stick, changing the effective force they can apply.

> 🟡 Blockage or freezing of the bellows inlet cause the system to malfunction. In this case, trim can be rendered ineffective and sudden pitch up or down movements can occur, depending on how the bellows and bobweight forces balance out. To prevent another sudden change in pitch once the blockage is resolved, trim should be kept neutral.

The two opposing forces are carefully balanced out to keep the stick in a neutral position during level flight at normal airspeeds. However, due to the dynamic nature of the system, the aircraft constantly has to be retrimmed after even the smallest flight condition changes. Especially under G's or when changing airspeed, the feel of the stick behavior changes drastically.

Control Sticks

A control stick is provided in both cockpits, with near-uniform switchology between the two. A Trim Control (1) is found on both sticks to provide force reduction and minor flight path correction in the pitch and roll axis. Weapons are deliverable through both a Trigger (3) (for air-to-air missiles and the gun) and a Bomb Release Switch (2). Both sticks carry a Nose Wheel Steering button (5) that doubles as a radar auto-acquisition control for the radar in visual range combat, and sensor focus control for video-directed air to ground weapons. An Emergency Quick Release lever (6) on each stick is available to immediately deactivate the anti-skid system, the automatic flight control system, stability augmentation and the aileron-rudder interconnect. Unique to the front cockpit control stick is the Air Refueling Release Button (4), a dual-role control that performs the boom disconnect function its name implies, as well as a number of weapon selection functions.

Also, unique to the front cockpit stick is a force transducer, to allow the pilot fine adjustment control of the AFCS with the autopilot functionality engaged. In the event the force applied to the stick exceeds the AFCS breakout limit, autopilot will be temporarily turned off.

Aileron-Spoiler Control and Stabilator Control Feel and Trim Systems

The Aileron-Spoiler Control System and the Stabilator Control System both offer trim following; the former through a screw jack actuator, the latter using a servo directed by the AFCS. These functions cause the stick to position relative to the current trim and autopilot position when the crew member in control goes "hands off". It is therefore advisable to maneuver the stick to the same position, or to gently move the stick to "breakout force" prior to disengaging the autopilot system to reduce the chance for an abrupt return to pilot control.

To confirm current state of the stabilator trim, a Stabilator Trim Position Indicator is provided on the front cockpit left vertical panel .

Rudder Control System

Yaw axis control is directed by the rudder pedals found in both cockpits. To offset any relative skidding due to wind effect, stores imbalance, or minor engine output deviation, a Rudder Trim Switch is found on the engine control panel in the front cockpit. On the ground, the pedals themselves can be pressed independently for differential braking, and the rudder axis itself functions as the nose wheel steering directional control when the Nose Wheel Steering button on either control stick is pressed.

Aileron-Rudder Interconnect (ARI)

The aileron-rudder interconnect system causes rudder displacement proportional to aileron displacement to provide coordinated turns at low airspeeds. It is engaged automatically with the Slats Flap Switch in the OUT AND DOWN position, and the airspeed below the flap blowup speed (230 knots).

The limits of the system are 15° of rudder displacement when the automatic flight control system is in the stability augmentation or autopilot mode, and 10° rudder displacement when the yaw stab aug switch is disengaged.

The circuit breaker for the ARI is located right of the Emergency stores release.

💡 To permanently disengage the ARI, the circuit breaker on the left sub panel must be pulled and the Yaw STAB AUG switch must be disengaged. Pulling the circuit breaker with the switch still engaged will still provide 5° of ARI rudder authority. When the ARI circuit breaker is pulled, the anti-skid system is disabled as well.

💡 Rudder jump will occur when the ARI system cuts in or out with a lateral control stick input. This will normally occur when the flaps are raised or lowered during a turn.

Emergency Disconnect

In the event either seat in command requires the ARI deactivated, the system can be disconnected by pulling the Emergency Quick Release Lever on their respective control stick. When the switch is released, the ARI (10°) and the Yaw STAB AUG (5°) rudder authority is regained. Function of the ARI can always be overridden through the rudder pedals.

Automatic Flight Control System (AFCS) - AN/ASA-32

The automatic flight control system (AFCS) is an electro-hydraulic system designed to provide stable, accurate, and coordinated flight maneuvers without interfering with manual control. The automatic flight control system is capable of performing two modes of operation, **stability augmentation** and **AFCS**.

> 💡 The term "AFCS" is the name of the whole system but also its sub-mode in which the aircraft attitude and/or heading is held and altitude hold can be activated.

Stability augmentation improves airplane stability in pitch, roll, and yaw. It opposes any change of attitude but does not return the airplane to a given attitude or ground track. This mode of operation may be used while the aircraft is under manual control. Stability augmentation can be engaged individually or in any combination for pitch, roll, or yaw axis.

The **AFCS mode** of operation maintains any aircraft heading and/or attitude selected within the AFCS limits and corrects for any deviation from the selected heading or attitude of the aircraft within the AFCS limits. The AFCS switch (2) can be engaged with only the Pitch STAB AUG switch engaged; however, to provide full AFCS operation, all three STAB AUG switches must be engaged.

The AFCS system can be engaged and hold maneuvers and attitudes within a range of ±70° pitch, 70° in bank and 360° in azimuth, providing the G limits are not being exceeded. Rapid stabilator movements, whether pilot induced or not, will cause the AFCS switch to disengage.

If the AFCS switch is engaged when the airplane is less than ± 5° from wings level, then the the airplane will maintain a **wings level attitude**, and will hold the engaged **heading**. When the nose gear steering button (on the stick grip) is pressed, heading hold drops out and **attitude** hold is available. Heading hold can be re-established by once again pressing the nose gear steering button. If the airplane attitude is greater than ± 5° from wings level when the AFCS switch is engaged, then the airplane will maintain the bank attitude at the time of engagement.

The **Altitude Hold mode** of operation (**3**) holds any altitude selected while in the **AFCS mode**.

> 💡 Altimeter fluctuations while accelerating through the transonic range (0.9 to 1.0 Mach) will produce transient fluctuations which, although not violent, may cause the reference altitude to slip. Engaging the altitude hold mode in climbs greater than 1000 feet per minute may result in a reference altitude other than the engage altitude.

Force Transducer

The force transducer senses the physical force applied to the control stick. This unit comprises the visible portion of the control stick with the stick grip mounted on top of it.

The force transducer contains pressure sensitive switches which react to longitudinal and lateral stick forces. A lateral stick force of approximately 1.5 pounds closes a force switch. When a roll force switch closes the roll rate gyro signal in STAB AUG and the roll rate and attitude gyro signals in AFCS mode are cut out so that pilot initiated maneuvers are not opposed while in the AFCS mode. The pilot maneuvers the aircraft by mechanical linkages until the lateral stick force is reduced to less than approximately

1.5 pounds. At this time the roll channel is returned to normal AFCS operation.

A forward stick force of 3.75 ±0.25 pounds or an aft stick force of 2.55 ±0.25 pounds closes switches to operate certain AFCS components, and cause a force sensing device to send a signal, proportional to the applied stick force, to the servo amplifier and stabilator position is controlled through the AFCS.

There is no stick force transducer in the rear cockpit. The AFCS and roll stab aug will oppose rear cockpit stick inputs. Do not fly the aircraft from the rear cockpit with AFCS engaged. Exercise care in transferring control between cockpits while rolling with roll stab aug engaged.

G-Limit Accelerometer

The normal load factor interlock (G-disengage) feature of the AFCS is designed to inhibit the system from commanding excessive load factors on the airplane. The system reverts automatically from whatever mode is engaged to stability augmentation in the event that +4 or -1 G is sensed by the G-disengage accelerometer switch.

This switch is mounted forward on the radar bulkhead so that if the airplane is rotated rapidly into a maneuver, disengagement occurs at lower values of normal load factor due to the anticipation resulting from the forward location sensing a component of pitching acceleration.

The G-disengage feature is inoperative outside the ±70° limits of the autopilot.

> 🔴 WARNING: The G switch does not disengage the autopilot under conditions of low airspeed or heavy gross weight before the aircraft stalls. If the autopilot remains engaged during a stall, the autopilot provides pro-spin controls.

Emergency Quick Release Lever

A spring-loaded emergency quick release lever is on each control stick. This lever operates in the same manner from both the front and the rear cockpits.

Depressing the lever causes the AFCS and altitude hold switch to return to OFF. The stability augmentation mode, ARI and anti-skid, are disengaged as long as the lever is held depressed. When the lever is released, the stability augmentation, anti-skid, and ARI are again in operation, but the AFCS is no longer engaged.

To permanently disengage the stability augmentation mode, the pitch, roll, and yaw STAB AUG switches must be placed off. To permanently disengage the ARI and anti-skid, the yaw STAB AUG switch must be off and the ARI circuit breaker, on the front cockpit left sub-panel, must be pulled.

Autopilot Disengage Indicator Light

An AUTOPILOT DISENGAGE indicator light is on the telelight panel. After initial engagement of the AFCS mode, the AUTOPILOT DISENGAGE indicator light and the MASTER CAUTION light illuminates when the AFCS is disengaged.

Both lights are extinguished by pressing the master caution reset switch. The lights remain extinguished until the AFCS is again engaged and disengaged.

Pitch Aug Off Indicator Light

The PITCH AUG OFF indicator light on the telelight panel illuminates together with the MASTER CAUTION light when the Pitch STAB AUG switch is not engaged and the aircraft being powered.

Depressing the master caution reset button extinguishes the MASTER CAUTION light. However, the PITCH AUG OFF light remains illuminated until the Pitch STAB AUG switch is engaged.

Automatic Pitch Trim

An automatic pitch-trim feature is included in the AFCS which attempts to keep the airplane longitudinally trimmed to the flight conditions experienced while in AFCS mode.

Thus, an out-of-trim condition (which would not be sensed while in autopilot mode) is prevented, ensuring against an excessive pitch transient when disengaging the autopilot.

The automatic pitch trim operates at approximately 40% the speed of the normal trim system, resulting in a slight delay after changing flight conditions before the basic airplane is properly trimmed. During control stick steering maneuvering, the auto-trim is inoperative. Auto-trim operation can be observed on the pitch trim indicator after changing flight conditions in the AFCS mode.

Autopilot Pitch Trim Light

The AUTOPILOT PITCH TRIM indicator light on the telelight panel illuminates during AFCS operation if the automatic pitch trim follow up is inoperative or lagging sufficiently behind airplane maneuvering to cause an out-of-trim condition in the basic airplane.

Normal Operation

1. To engage the stability augmentation mode, place the pitch, roll, and yaw STAB AUG switches to ENGAGE.
2. Trim aircraft in the stability augmentation mode before engaging AFCS mode.
3. To engage AFCS mode, establish an aircraft attitude within AFCS limits. Place the AFCS switch to ENGAGE.
4. When altitude hold mode is desired, place the Altitude Hold switch to ENGAGE.

> 🔴 WARNING: Do not attempt to change pitch attitude of the aircraft from the rear cockpit in the AFCS mode. Since no force-transducer is in the rear cockpit control stick, applying force will

cause pitch trim to run up and down depending on pressure applied. If the pilot attempts to take control at that point, violent transients may be encountered.

🔴 WARNING: When selecting the AFCS mode, have hand on control stick to counteract any abrupt control movements in the event of an AFCS malfunction.

💡 The AFCS is disengaged when the Emergency Quick Release Lever on the control stick is depressed. The stability augmentation and ARI are disengaged as long as the lever is held depressed but returns to operation when the lever is released.

Operational Precautions

Roll Reversal

There is a possibility of a condition called roll reversal occurring when operating the automatic flight control system in the AFCS mode. This condition occurs infrequently and is apparent only when attempting small changes in bank angle. Roll reversal is associated with a small out-of-trim condition in the lateral channel, and is apparent as a slow rolling of the airplane in the opposite direction of the stick force. If, for instance, the airplane is out of trim laterally to the left when the AFCS mode is engaged, roll reversal may occur when right stick forces are applied. A roll reversal situation may be caused by operating the manual lateral trim button while in the AFCS mode, followed by small stick forces being applied opposite to the direction of the trim. There is a possibility of roll reversal occurring even if the airplane has been trimmed prior to engaging the AFCS mode, and the manual trim button has not been touched. This condition is caused by changes in airplane trim accompanying changed flight conditions. In view of the above, the following instructions should be observed:

1. Trim airplane in stability augmentation mode before engaging AFCS mode.
2. Do not operate manual lateral trim while the AFCS mode is engaged. If roll reversal is encountered due to change in flight condition; disengage roll, retrim, then reengage.

Pitch oscilattions

When using the altitude hold mode, the aircraft may experience pitch oscillations in the transonic regions due to fluctuations in the air data computer airspeed system. The nature of these oscillations vary from stick pumping to divergent pitch oscillations. It is recommended that if pitch oscillations occur at transonic speeds, the following corrective steps be attempted:

1. AFCS switch – DISENGAGE
2. Static pressure compensator switch – OFF
3. AFCS switch – ENGAGE
4. Engage altitude hold mode

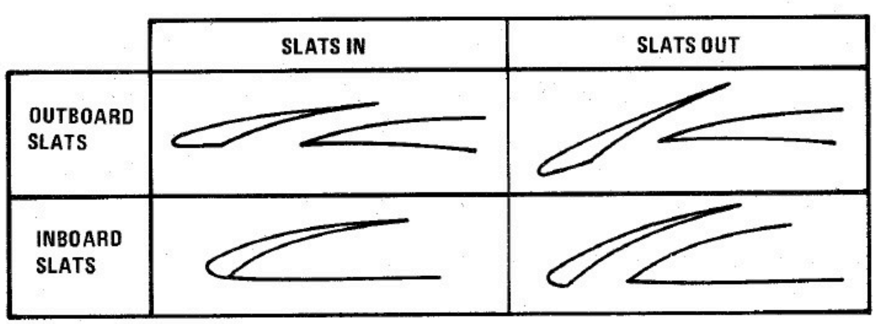
If the oscillations persist after the above action, or if they are encountered at supersonic speeds:

1. Disengage altitude hold mode.

> 🔴 WARNING: Divergent pitch oscillations should not be allowed to develop. If any divergent pitch activity is noted, corrective action should be taken immediately.

Slats Flap System

The Slats Flap system is manually selected for takeoff and landing, then automatically controlled relative to AoA for best handling performance in all other flight regimes. Control is through a three position switch found outboard of the left throttle handle in the front cockpit and driven by the aircraft hydraulic system. The three switch positions are Norm, Out, and Out and Down, and the resulting command can be moderated based on whether or not the landing gear is being deployed.



Norm is the standard in-flight position, locking the Flaps and automatically programming the Slat deployment as a function of AoA.

Out deploys the Slats to their fully deployed position. Should the landing gear be deployed, both the Slats and Flaps will deploy.

Out and Down fully deploys both the Slats and the Flaps. Should the landing gear not be down, the Wheels Light on the telelight Panel will

illuminate and flash.

Both cockpits have a Slats Flap Indicator, which read In and Out, along with a barber-pole reading when the surfaces are in transition.

In the Norm position, Maneuvering Slat deployment is a function of AoA; above 11.5 units they will extend, then retract when the aircraft is reduced below 10.5 units. Maneuvering Slat operation includes a speed-induced blowback; slats will retract due to air pressure between 568 and 602 knots.

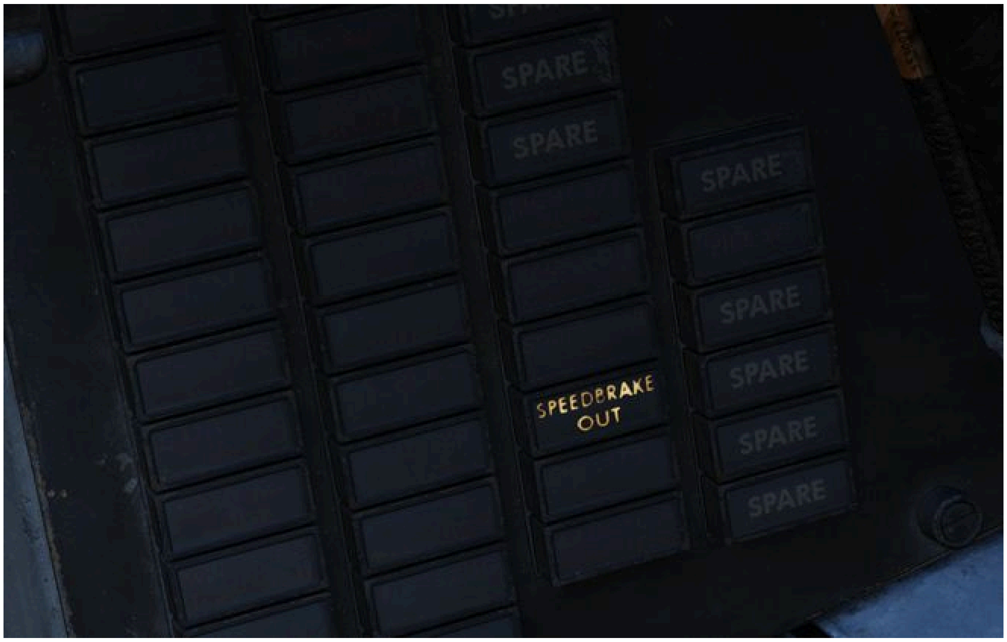
To the rear of the Fuel Control Panel in the front cockpit is the Slat Override Switch. Guarded, this switch has two positions: NORM and IN. Defaulted to NORM under the guard, switching to IN forces the retraction of the slats, no matter the current aircraft AoA or state of the Slats Flap Switch position; this action will trigger the SLATS IN warning on the telelight Panel and illuminate the Master Caution.

The Slats Flaps system also has an Emergency system; handles are found on the Slats Flaps control panel in the front cockpit, and next to the rear cockpit throttle pair. The emergency system uses pneumatic pressure, and does not require electrical power to force deployment. The emergency system can only function once, and can be actuated at any airspeed; however, above 230 knots, the Flaps will retract based on air pressure, and the normal Slat retraction speeds also apply.

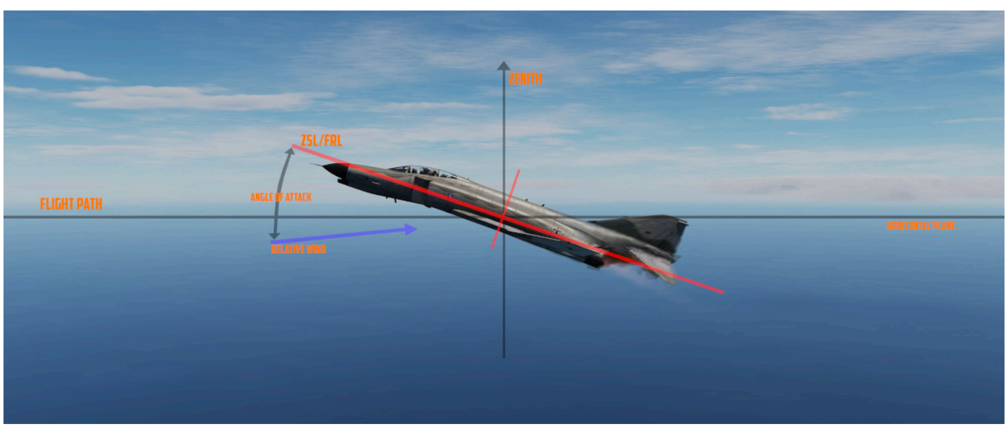
Speed Brakes

Underneath the aircraft and close to the rear Sparrow recesses are the speed brakes, installed on the wings. The speed brakes are driven by the aircraft's hydraulic system and actuated by a three position switch found on the inboard throttle in both cockpits. Either switch will actuate the brakes. The positions are Out, Stop, and In; the Out position is momentary and reverts back to Stop when released.

Brake actuation illuminates the Speed Brake Out Indicator Light found on the telelight Panel. Brake deployment and illumination of the Indicator does not trigger the Master Caution.



Angle of Attack System



To precisely monitor and control aircraft flight performance, the Angle of Attack System (AoA) provides visual and audio confirmation of current parameters. Included in the system are the Angle of Attack Indicators found in both cockpits, the illuminated Angle of Attack Indexers, as well as the AoA Aural Tone System.

The angle of attack is typically measured in degrees (°). It represents the deviation from the alignment of the chord line of the airplane with the oncoming air or relative wind.

Indicators

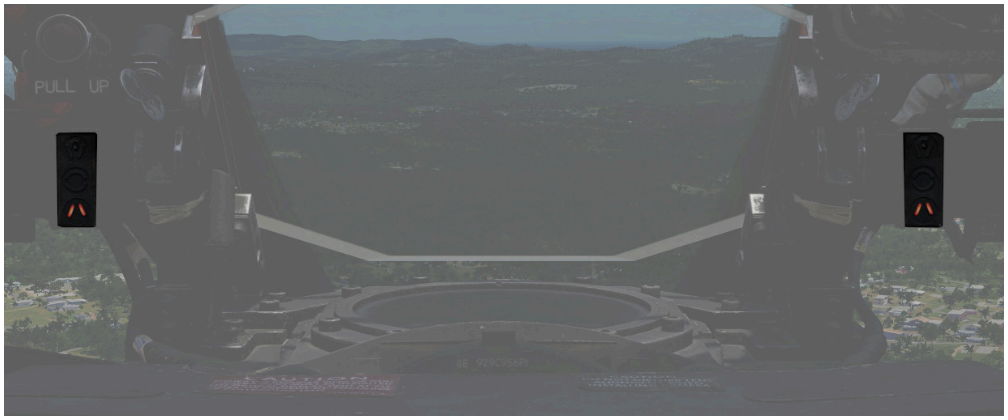
The Angle of Attack Indicator dials register AoA values from 0 to 30 units, with indications for weight-relative optimum altitude cruise (7.9 units), approach (19.2 units), and stall (30 units).

> 💡 The AoA Indexers are only lit with the right gear down.

AoA units do not directly translate to degrees, one unit of AoA is the same as roughly 0.95 degrees and the measured AoA is also offset by about 4 degrees. This way, the indicator displays a more natural and useful value to the crew.

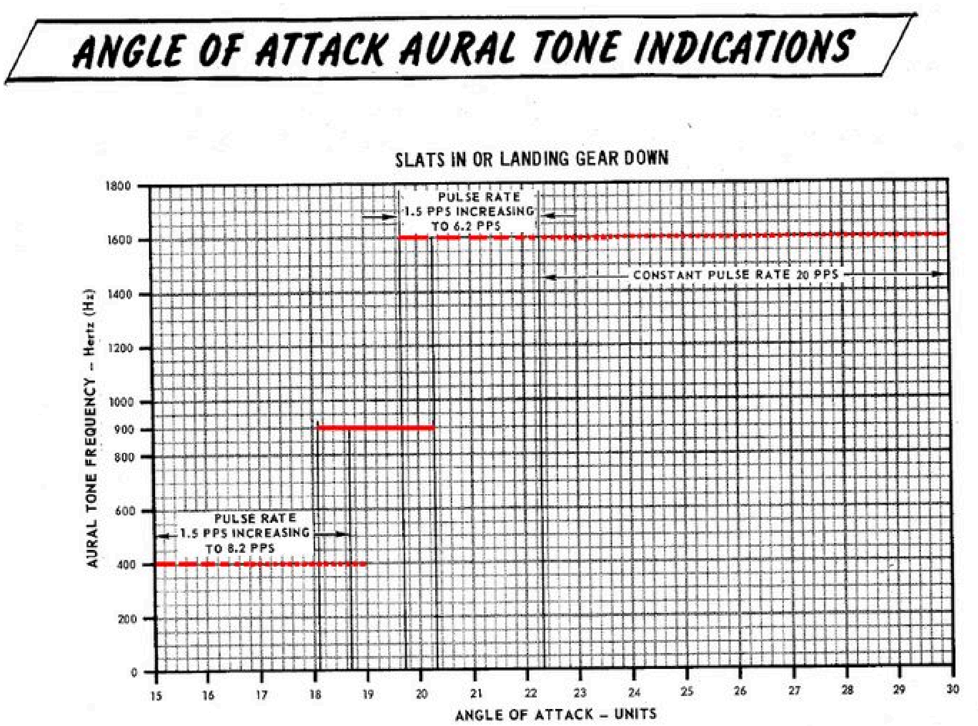
> 💡 Extension of the landing gear and thus the nose gear door changes the airflow around the probe causing to indicate higher angles by 1 unit. The approach airspeeds account for that. Therefore, performing an approach with the gear retracted, will cause the indicators to show approximately 1 unit low, and the aircraft will be roughly 5 knots fast for an on-speed approach.

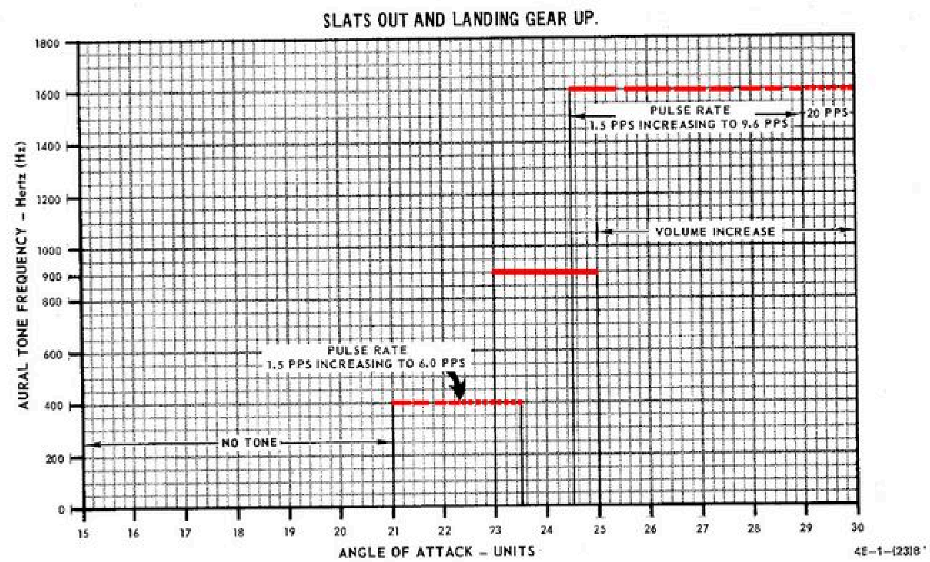
Indexers



The AoA Indexers, found on the windshield frame of the front cockpit, and above the instrument panel in the rear, display color coded and directional symbology for the on-speed approach value of 19.2 units once the landing gear have been lowered.

Aural Tone System





The Aural Tone System provides audible feedback in maneuvering flight and during landing configuration. Beginning above 15 units AoA with gear down, and 21 units AoA with the gear up and slats in, a pulse will be heard by both crew-members.

The rate of the pulse can vary from 1.5 to 20 pulses per second, with increasing frequency based on higher AoA values.

This tone can be lowered in volume below 20.3 units AoA gear down/25 units gear up with controls in each cockpit; exceeding these values will cause the system to override the volume limits and deliver the warning pulses at a minimum volume to ensure they are audible regardless of volume setting.

> 💡 The respective knobs are labelled STALL WARNING and can be found on the right side in either cockpit. They must not to be confused with the AURAL TONE CONTROL knobs, which control weapon related tones.

Due to limited forward visibility, the tones are a crucial aid during landing. If a low pitch tone playing at a pulse is heard, the aircraft is too fast. If a high pitch tone playing at a pulse is heard, the aircraft is too slow. For the proper on-speed configuration, a steady tone at a medium pitch is played.

Stall Warning Vibrator

The left front cockpit pedal includes a Stall Warning Vibrator, which is activated over 22.3 units Angle of Attack. This physical (and in DCS audible) indication is given to make the pilot aware of the potential of an impending stall and provide enough time to reduce AoA and prevent the loss of control of the aircraft. Reducing AoA below the threshold will deactivate the warning.

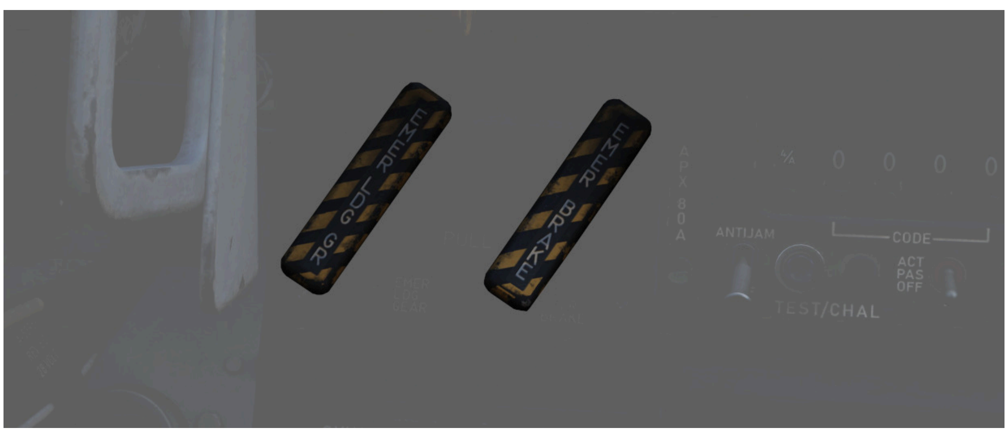
Landing Gear System and Ground Handling Controls

The F-4 Phantom uses a conventional tricycle landing gear arrangement, driven by the Utility hydraulic system. The Landing gear is electronically controlled and hydraulically actuated by the utility hydraulic system. Accidential retraction of the landing gear when the aircraft is on the ground is prevented by safety switches on the main gear. The gear is locked down by internal finger latches which require hydraulic pressure to release. The automatic disable of the nose gear steering and anti-skid system is realized by scissor switches located in the landing gear bays. In the event Utility hydraulics are offline, an emergency extension system using compressed air is available to lower the gear for landing.

Landing Gear Control Handle

The Landing Gear Control Handle is found on the left instrument panel in the front cockpit, with a red wheel-shaped knob for identification.

Landing Gear Emergency Extension Handles



Emergency landing gear extension is driven by a pair of compressed air bottles carrying sufficient charge for lowering the gear one time. The emergency extension is commanded in the front cockpit is performed using the Gear Control Handle; pulling the handle aft in any position releases the compressed air into the landing gear hydraulic system, forcing the gear doors to open and the gear to lower and lock. Extension can also be performed in an emergency from the back seat using a handle on the left sub-panel marked EMERG LDG GEAR. Pulling this handle

performs the same action as pulling the front cockpit gear control handle aft.

Landing Gear Warning Lights

In the upper left corner of the front cockpit instrument panel is a WHEELS warning lamp that illuminates when the aircraft is below 230 knots without the landing gear lowered. Selecting the gears down or up when the WHEELS lamp is illuminated will cause a warning lamp installed in the Landing Gear Control handle to light up red.

Landing Gear Position Indicators

Status indicators for the landing gear system are found in both cockpits on the left sub-panel. The indicators are three windows, one for each gear station. The position of the gear are shown in their respective windows

with the word UP when up and doors are closed, a barber pole (angled white and black bars) when the gear and doors are in transition either closing or opening, and the illustration of a wheel when the gears are down and locked.

Nose Gear Steering

Nose Gear Steering (NGS or also NWS) is actuated using the referenced button on the control stick in either cockpit. Holding the button down permits the crew member to steer the aircraft using the rudder pedals. Steering limit of the nose gear is 70 degrees from centerline in both directions.

Rudder steering becomes effective at approximately 70 knots. At this speed Nose Gear Steering should be disengaged and not be used any further.

Wheel Brakes

Differential steering is provided with weight on wheels using rudder pedal deflection. Assistance in braking performance is provided by an included Anti-Skid System, which engages with the aircraft over 30 knots. Braking function is delayed by the Anti-Skid System on landing until the right main gear has been in contact with the ground for 3 seconds, or the wheels reach 50 knots of rotational speed.

Anti-Skid System

The electronically controlled anti-skid system provides anti-skid protection at wheel speeds over 30 knots. The system detects the start of a skid and releases the brake pressure in proportion to skid severity. Below 30 knots the anti-skid protection is not available and braking is in direct proportion to the brake pedal movement. The system has a built-in touchdown protection feature that prevents braking until 3 seconds after weight is sensed on the right main gear or wheel spin up to 50 knots. It should be noted that a low coefficient of friction between the runway and tires (as it occurs during Aquaplaning or on icy runways) may lead to the wheels not spinning up or cause them to slow below 30 knots wheel speed after spin-up. In this case the system falsely detects the aircraft speed below 30 knots and reverts to manual braking.

Anti-Skid Control Switch

Next to the oxygen quantity gauge in the front cockpit is the Anti-Skid Control Switch, which is used to turn the system ON or OFF.

Anti-Skid Inoperative Light

Found on the front cockpit left console, the ANTI-SKID INOPERATIVE light will indicate when the Anti-Skid Switch is set to OFF, the Emergency Quick Release Lever is pressed, or there is a system issue.

Emergency Quick Release Lever

Should the Anti-Skid system appear to malfunction during a rollout, the system can be immediately disengaged by holding down the Quick Release Lever found on the control sticks in either cockpit. This will illuminate ANTI-SKID INOPERATIVE warning.

Emergency Hydraulic Brake System

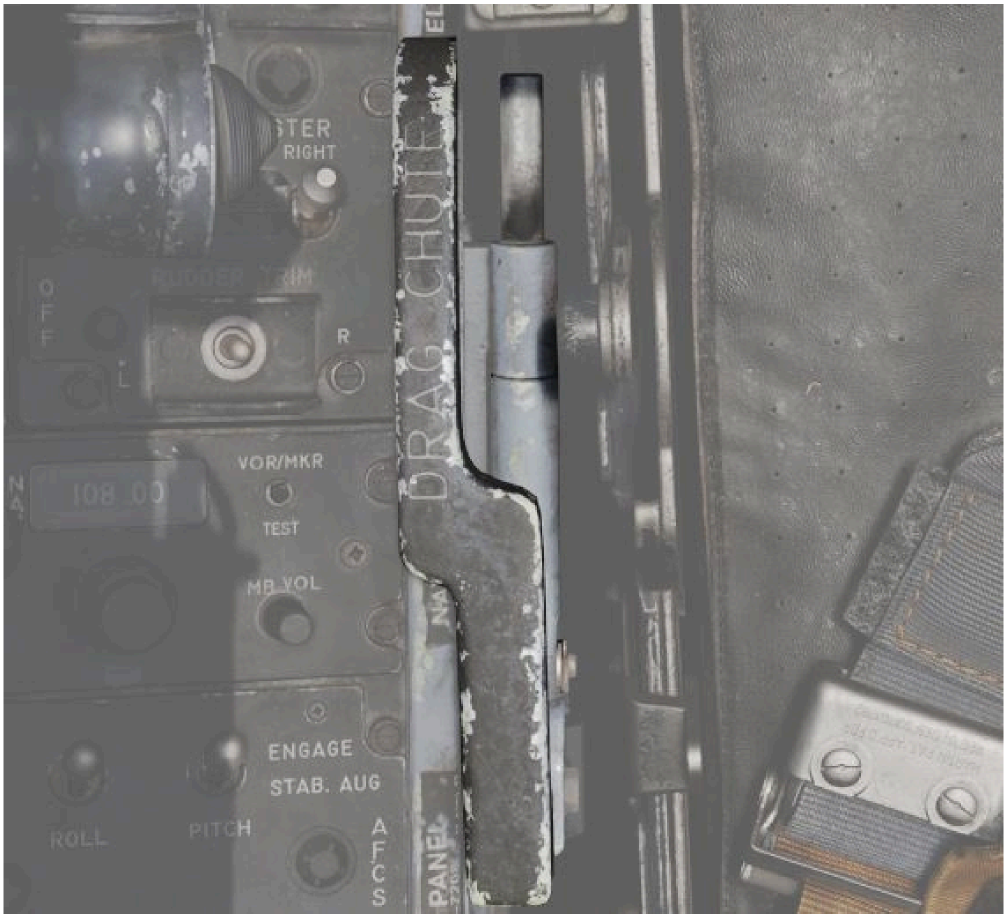
In the event of a Utility hydraulic system failure, emergency differential braking is provided by pulling the Emergency Brake Handle on the lower left side of the instrument panel in either cockpit. Doing so forces hydraulic pressure from a reserve accumulator, and provides enough power for approximately 10 brake applications.

Arresting Hook System

The Phantom carries a retractable arresting hook for ground stopping in emergency takeoff and landing situations that will reach the strip overrun. Placing the Arresting Hook Handle in the front cockpit into the DOWN position will lower the hook in approximately five seconds. Lowering the hook will illuminate a red warning lamp in the Hook Handle, and illuminate the HOOK DOWN warning on the telelight panel.

The system is not intended to be used for carrier operations.

Drag Chute System

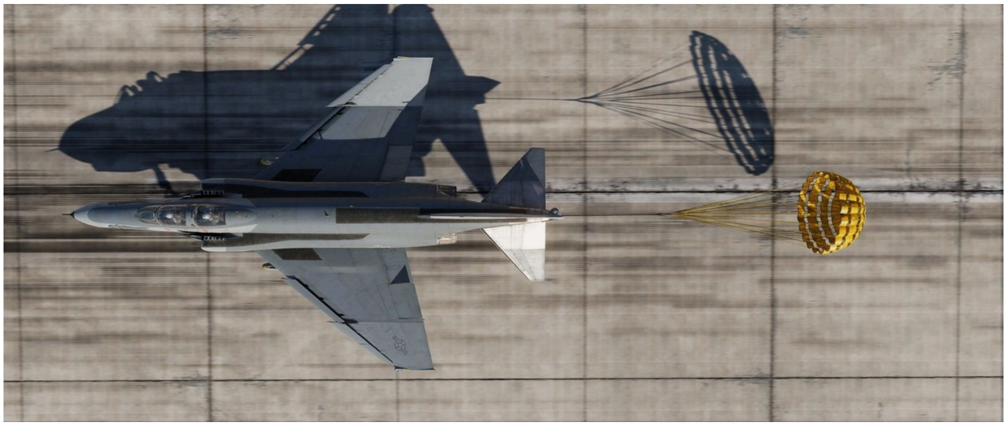


The F-4E has an available Drag Chute to reduce landing roll as necessary. The chute can also be used for spin recovery. Deployment of the chute is performed by rotating the handle found in the front cockpit. The chute is drawn from its door with a smaller pilot chute. Once the chute has deployed and performed sufficient braking action or the aircraft has recovered into a controllable state, the chute is jettisoned by pressing the button and pulling the handle back, then lowering it. This action releases the chute cables and allows it to pull free.

Do not use the Chute in excess of 200 Knots IAS while landing.

For spin recovery the Chute can be used by pushing the stick full forward, putting ailerons and rudder in a neutral position and deploying the chute.

> 💡 Drag chute should not be dropped on the runway or a taxiway. A popular technique is to leave it on the side of a taxiway by appropriately orienting the aircraft, inflating the chute with the engines and then releasing it in the desired direction.



Wing Fold System

The F-4E includes a wing fold system to assist in maintenance and ground handling. Unlike prior models, the wing fold apparatus on the F-4E is un-powered, and requires ground crew members to manually move the outboard panels with the fold control activated to release the locking mechanism.

Engines and Fuel System

"This baby will go, and old Smokey will never catch it, because it's got a state-of-the-art fuzz buster inside. Now, it's not legal in all countries, but I'll tell you what, Cal won't tell, no siree."

The F-4E Phantom II is equipped with two General Electric J79-GE-17A/F engines. A turbine-type starter, powered by external air or the expanding gases of a solid propellant cartridge, is employed for engine cranking during starting.

It also features an internal fuel system comprising interconnected cells in the fuselage and two internal wing tanks. External fuel can be carried in two wing-mounted 370-gallon tanks and a 600-gallon fuselage-mounted tank.

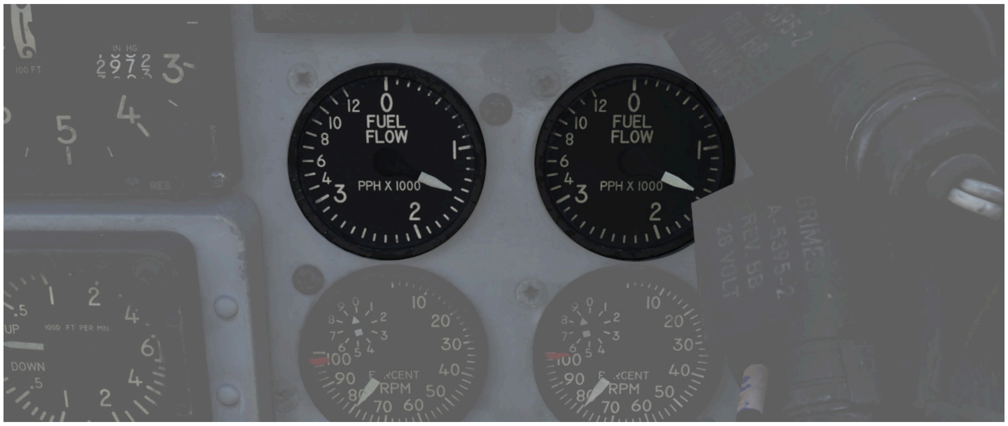
Engines

Korean specialists and Air Force maintenance technicians remove an engine from an F-4 Phantom II aircraft at the F-4 maintenance depot

The F-4E Phantom is powered by two J79-GE-17 engines built by General Electric, with a rated static sea-level power delivery of 11,870 pounds of thrust in Mil, and 17,900 pounds in afterburner. The engines have provision for both assisted pneumatic start at fields with an available cart, or via a propellant cartridge to initiate spin-up. Similarly, the engines can utilize the aircraft's internal battery for initial power, or connection with an external power cart.

> 💡 When the engines are off they make a rattling noise as the respective blades rattle in their holders. This is called windmilling.

Fuel Flow Indicators



Each engine has a fuel flow indicator found in the front cockpit instrument.

The indicators read in thousands of pounds per hour, from 0 to 12. The indicators provide flow rate up to Mil power; when afterburner is engaged, a separate fuel delivery system is used to provide fuel directly to the afterburner stage, and the flow rate is approximately 4 times the value shown. The engine speed is also controlled by the fuel flow, so a change in fuel flow can be directly observed if the throttles are moved.

Fuel Flow should not exceed 1200 pph at lightoff and 800 to 1500 pph at idle operations. Fuel consumption for Engine start is approximately 65 pounds per Engine.

Oil System

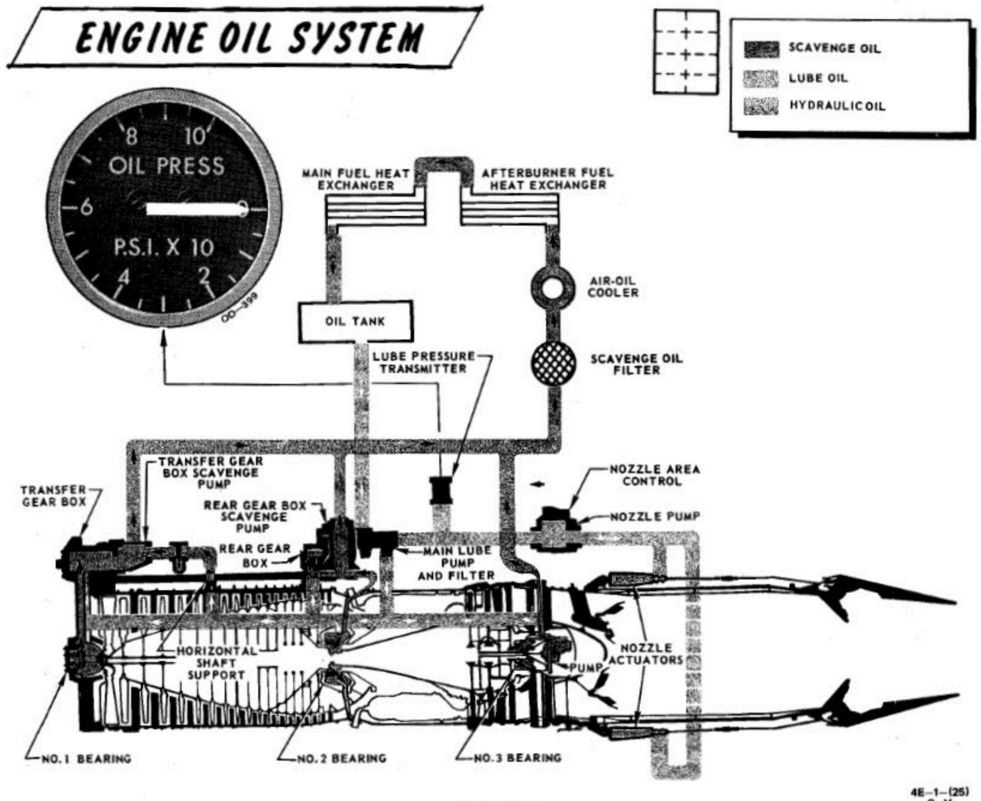


Figure 1-1

Each engine is equipped with a completely self-contained, dry sump, full pressure oil system. The oil supply to the lubrication system is interrupted during negative G-flight due to the inability of the scavenge pumps to recover oil from the sumps and gear boxes. The Engine Oil system is used for lubrication, variable nozzle positioning and constant speed drive unit operation. The standpipes which supply the three systems utilizing engine oil are in the reservoir such that the pipe for the constant speed drive unit is the highest, the one for the nozzle control is the next highest, and the lubricating system pipe is the lowest. This arrangement is to prevent a critical system failure if one of the circuits leak. If a leak in the constant speed drive unit would occur it will probably cause a failure of that system only, while a leak in the nozzle control system may cause failure of that system and the constant speed drive unit. Oil is also supplied directly from the reservoir to the constant speed drive unit, where it is used as both the control and final drive medium for controlling generator speed. The lubrication element of the oil pump

supplies oil to cool and lubricate bearings, gears and other rubbing or moving parts in the engine. Lubricating oil is also circulated through the engine-driven generator for cooling purposes.

Oil Pressure Indicators

Oil pressure indicators are on the front cockpit pedestal panel, and calibrated from 0 to 100 PSI. Important values are:

- 12 psi - Minimum at idle RPM
- 30-60 psi - In-flight military
- 35 psi - Static minimum at military thrust
- 60 psi - Maximum

Variable Duct Ramp

Optimization of air to the engines is performed by a Variable Duct Ramp system directed by the Automatic Duct Control (ADC); this optimization uses a pair of variable ramps to decelerate incoming air to subsonic for best engine performance. In the event limits are exceeded for inlet temperature, the Duct Temperature High Indicator Light (DUCT TEMP HI) on the telelight panel will illuminate. Permitting the issue to continue can cause permanent engine damage.

Starting System

Pneumatic Mode Starting

The pneumatic mode is the primary starting mode for all normal and routine operations. In this mode the Phantom utilizes an auxiliary start cart that turns the starter turbine, cranking the engine.

The cart is operated by the crew chief, see the Crew Chief chapter for more information about how to interact and request air supply.

Cartridge Mode Starting

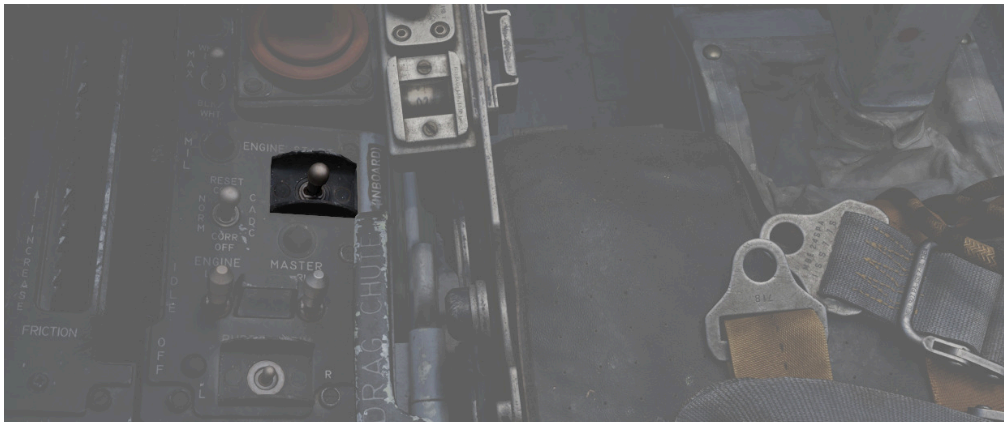
Cartridge mode is considered an alternate method of starting supplied for operational and emergency needs. A propellant charge is used to turn the starter turbine, which in turn cranks the engine to initiate startup. Cartridge ignition is controlled by the engine start switch providing the respective engine master switch is on.

> 💡 To avoid possible irritation caused by cartridge exhaust smoke/gases, it may be advisable to close canopies and select 100% oxygen during start cycle.

Cartridges can be installed by the crew chief, see the Crew Chief chapter for how to interact and request cartridges installation.

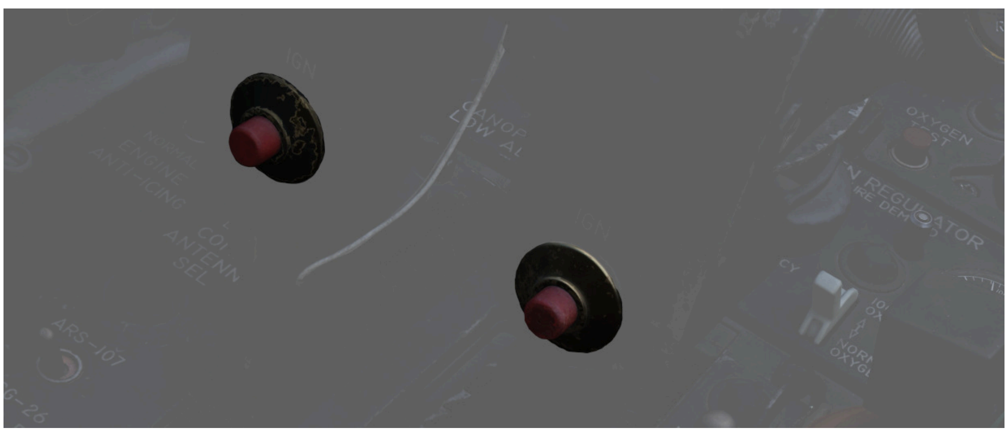
> 🔴 WARNING: Cartridges are explosive and, unless fired, must not be forgotten to be removed. Under no circumstances will the aircraft be flown with unfired cartridges in the starter.

Start Switch



Used only for cartridge start, selecting L or R ignites the cartridge installed for the respective engine.

Ignition System



The -17E/G engine is equipped with one 28 volt, low energy ignition unit and one 28 volt high energy unit that improves ground starts in cold weather and air starts using alternate fuel. The main ignition system produces an electrical arc which ignites the atomized fuel-air mixture in the fourth and fifth combustion chambers. The remaining eight combustion chambers are ignited through the crossfire tubes. Pressing the ignition button causes the spark plugs to discharge, igniting the fuel-air mixture as the throttle is moved from OFF to IDLE during engine start. The spark plugs only fire while the spring-loaded ignition button is held.

Afterburner Ingition System

The afterburner ignition system consists of the torch igniter, a spark plug and an afterburner ignition switch. When the throttle is moved into the afterburner detent, the afterburner ignition switch closes, and the spark plug supplies a continuous arc. Ignition and torch igniter fuel flow are maintained until the throttle is removed from the afterburner detent.

Engine Anti-Icing System

Using the Anti-Icing Switch set to DE-ICE, bleed air from stage 17 is distributed to ports installed in the compressor face area of the engines. This system does not perform de-icing functions, but is to be activated prior to ice formation. As high Mach speeds provide enough friction heat to the air stream to deny icing in the compressor stage, usage of the Anti-Icing System is unnecessary and can cause engine damage.

The system should be turned on in turbulent air and thunderstorms, or when a rise in Exhaust Gas temperature is noted by the pilot as this is an indication for an engine icing condition.

Anti-Ice Indicator Lights

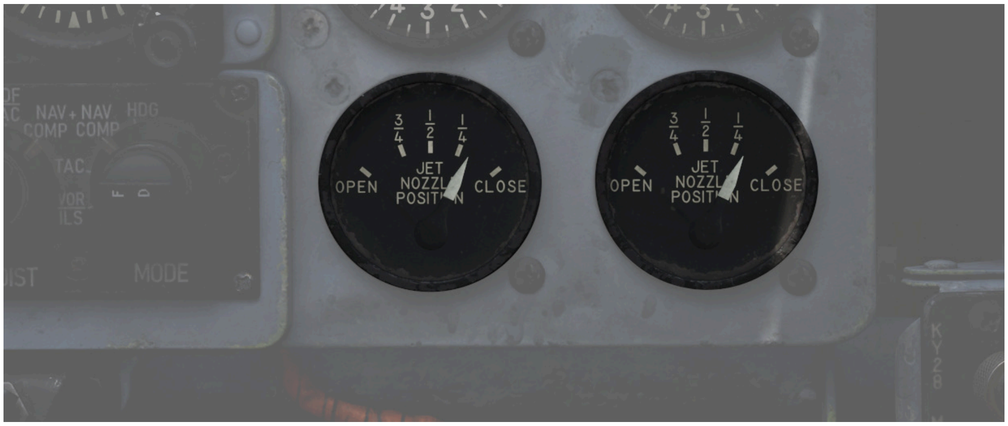
Activation of the Anti-Icing system will illuminate two lights on the telelight panel, L ANTI-ICE On and R ANTI-ICE On. A failure of the anti-icing system with the Anti-Icing Switch set to NORMAL will also light these telelight indicators as a warning. If the aircraft is above Mach 1.2 when this occurs, immediate speed reduction is necessary to prevent engine loss. Because of the warning function for the ANTI-ICE ON lamps, a condition that illuminates them will provide a MASTER CAUTION warning.

Controls and Indicators

Exhaust Nozzle Control Unit

Throttle position, nozzle position feedback and exhaust gas temperature are utilized to schedule the correct nozzle area. During engine operation in the sub-mil region, the nozzle area is primarily a function of throttle angle and nozzle position feedback. The nozzle is scheduled to approximately 7/8th open at idle and the area is decreased as the throttle is advanced toward the military power position. However, during a rapid throttle burst from below 79% rpm to 98% rpm, a control alternator supplies engine speed information to the temperature amplifier, which in turn schedules engine speed inputs as a function of temperature limiting. This signal prevents the primary nozzle from closing beyond a preset position, permitting a rapid increase in engine rpm that could damage the engine. During engine operation in the military and afterburner region, it becomes necessary to limit the nozzle schedule as established by the throttle angle and nozzle feedback to prohibit exhaust gas temperature from exceeding engine design limits and damaging the engine.

Exhaust Nozzle Position Indicators



Directed by the Exhaust Nozzle Control Unit, the paired primary (the convergent, inner nozzle) and secondary (the divergent, outer nozzle) are actuated independently on a schedule to maximize outlet performance versus exhaust gas temperature. When idle, the engine nozzle will be roughly 7/8ths open, reducing in size as the throttle approaches MIL. During operation in the MIL and AB regions, the Control Unit moderates the nozzle size relative to throttle position and received EGT to maintain temperatures within design limit.

To monitor the current position of the nozzles relative to each other, as well as EGTs, an indicator is provided with calibrations from CLOSE to OPEN in four increments. The nozzle indicators enable the pilot to make a comparison of nozzle position between engines and are also used to establish a relationship between nozzle position and exhaust gas temperature, as well as nozzle position and throttle settings.

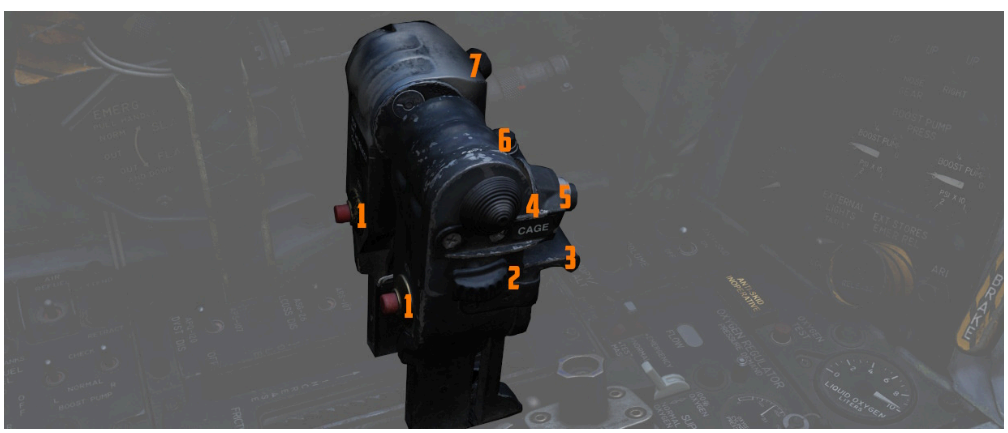
Normal settings would be OPEN with the engines off until IDLE, 3/4 to 1/2 with engines in IDLE and 1/4 for MIL power. MAX power will not change the indicator.

Engine Master Switches

A pair of two-position Engine Master Switches are found on the front cockpit left console on the inboard engine control panel. Selecting ON powers the fuel boost and transfer pumps for the respective engine; this will occur whether the aircraft is connected to external auxiliary power or not, as doing so without will connect the aircraft battery to the pump circuits.

As the Engine Master Switches arm the fuel shutoff valves, to properly shut down the engines without external power it is necessary to return the throttles to the cutoff position prior to turning the Engine Master Switches off, otherwise the valves will remain open.

Throttles



Paired throttles are provided in both cockpits for engine thrust control. In normal use, movement of the throttles from IDLE to OFF will perform

fuel cutoff; to prevent inadvertent engine shutdown, a pair of finger lifts (3) are provided to lock out the OFF position without performing this actuation. Afterburner is attained by shifting the throttles outboard (left) at the MIL stop, then pushing them forward.

The rear cockpit throttles are connected to the front throttles in such a fashion that only the pilot can start the engines or enter the afterburner range; the WSO can reduce throttles out of the afterburner region back into MIL operation and lower. While the rear throttles can be shifted from OFF without pilot assistance, return to OFF for shutdown requires pilot engagement of the finger lifts.

In the event of opposing commands on the throttle arms between seats, the rear throttles will be disconnected from the front throttles to prevent damage to the linkage. This condition may cause a reduction in afterburner authority from the front throttle pair. Resetting the throttle linkage is performed by placing the front throttles at the IDLE or MIL stop and moving the rear throttles in the opposite direction to which the disconnect occurred.

The rear throttles only hold a microphone button and speed brake switch.

Tachometers

Both engines are provided with tachometers on the right side of the front cockpit instrument panel, and the right side of the rear cockpit instrument panel. The tachometers will function without external power.

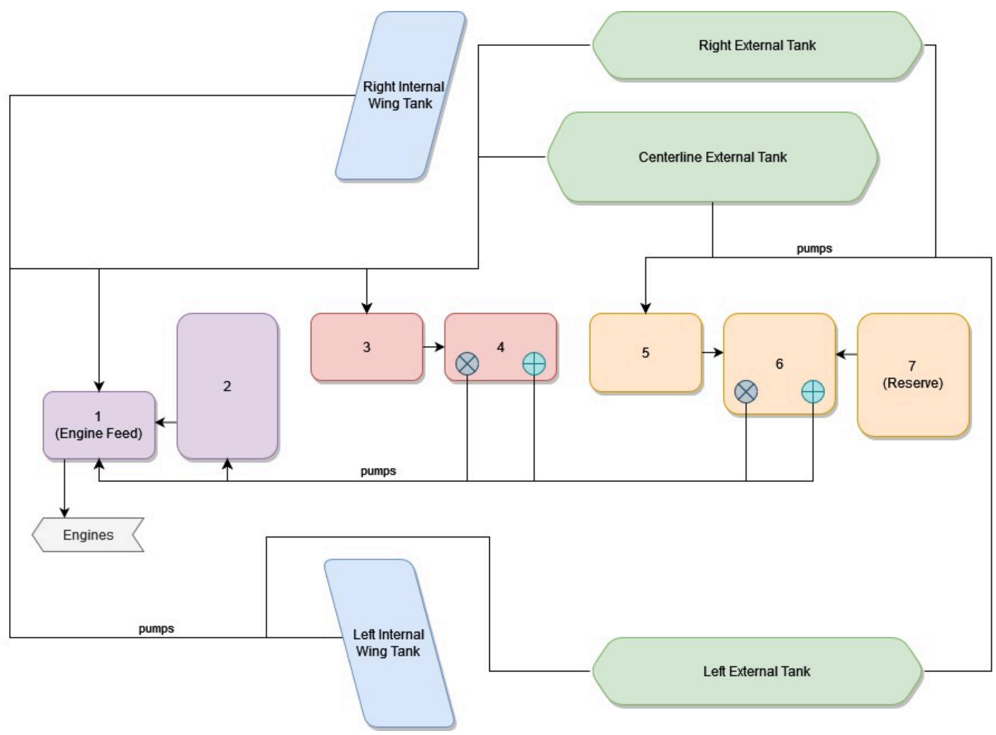
Exhaust Gas Temperature Indicators

Exhaust Gas Temperature Indicators are found on the front cockpit instrument panel. The indicators have two pointers each: a large pointer for the 0 to 12 scale referencing 100 degrees centigrade, and a smaller pointer on a separate scale with 0 to 10 referencing 10 degrees centigrade. Measuring for these values is performed upon exit of the turbine. For normal operations the exhaust gas temperature should not be less than 250°C and should not exceed more than 540°C. If an overtemperature Event occurs the throttle should be returned to the off position. If that is not possible the respective engine master switch should be turned off.

Fuel System

The Phantom's fuel system is duplicated; that is, their pump and feed arrangement is the same for both the left and right engines, and they share the same set of fuel cells. Internal fuselage fuel between all 7 cells and the wing tanks is just over 12,000 lbs of JP-4. With two external 370 gallon wing tanks, that value increases to over 16,800 lbs. Adding the centerline 600 gallon tank will bring the aircraft total fuel state to just under 20,800 lbs of fuel.

Transfer Sequence



The F-4 carries two internal wing tanks, along with seven fuel cells down the length of the fuselage, with cell 1 resting just behind the aft cockpit, and the remaining cells numbered in order to the rear of the aircraft. Cell 1 is the feed cell for the engines; cells 4 and 6 each carry a hydraulic and an electric transfer pump to supply fuel to cells 1 and 2. The remaining fuselage cells perform a gravity feed into cells 1, 4, or 6. Cell 2 feeds cell 1,

cell 3 feeds cell 4; and cell 5, as well as cell 7 feed cell 6. With this arrangement, center of gravity balance is maintained along the centerline. Cell 7 is the last cell to initiate transfer in the sequence, and does not begin until the total fuel in cells 1 and 2 fall below 1800 lbs.

Fuel transfer from the wing and external tanks is performed by bleed air pressurization once airborne. Internal wing tank fuel is transferred into fuselage cells 1 and 3, whereas fuel from external tanks are balanced between cells 1, 3, and 5.

> 💡 Internal wing and external tanks will not transfer when not pressurized. This is the case with either the gear out or the AAR door open.

When the aircraft reaches a low fuel state automatic fuel transfer activates, forcing valves from internal wing and external tanks open regardless of what has been selected on the panel.

> 💡 Automatic fuel transfer, once activated, can only be deactivated again by cycling the Air Refuel Switch. This is important, as most switches on the fuel system panel are ignored while activated. An indication for the automatic transfer being active are all three external tank fuel lights being lit regardless of their actual status.

Internal Wing Transfer Switch

Should it be necessary, a two position switch is available to turn off transfer from the wing internal tanks. Found on the Fuel Control Panel, the Internal Wing Transfer Switch can be toggled between NORMAL and STOP TRANS.

External Transfer Switch

External tank transfer is controlled by the External Transfer Switch; found on the Fuel Control Panel, the switch has three positions: CENTER, OFF, and OUTBD (Outboard), with OUTBD referring to the wing external tanks.

It is not possible to transfer from the wing tanks and external tanks at the same time. If both are selected, the external tanks will take priority.

Fuel Boost System

Flow from Cell 1 to the engines is performed by a pair of boost pumps. The pumps are installed at the bottom of the tank to provide fuel in the event of a negative G excursion. The function of these pumps can be confirmed on the Fuel Boost Pump Pressure Indicators found in the front cockpit. Engine idle pump flow rate is 30 PSI, ±5 pounds. To confirm a ground check, a pair of Boost Pump Check switches are found on the fuel control panel. Holding one of these switches in the CHECK position will perform an engine shutdown due to the shutoff valve being opened, and provide feedback on the respective Pressure Indicator.

Fuel Quantity Indication System

Fuel Level Low Warning Light

When the sensor in Cell 2 detects a fuel weight of less than 1650 ±200 lbs, the FUEL LEVEL LOW warning will illuminate on the front cockpit telelight panel. This illumination is independent of the Fuel Quantity Indication System, and can be indicative of a transfer failure.

External Tanks Fuel Lights

Any time an external fuel tank is detected to not be flowing fuel into the fuselage, a respective light will illuminate on the telelight panel - L EXT FUEL, CTR EXT FUEL, or R EXT FUEL. These lights will only illuminate for the respective external transfer - that is, if OUTBD is selected, CTR EXT FUEL cannot illuminate, and vice versa. Because transfer can occur intermittently due to flow from the tanks exceeding engine fuel consumption, the warning lamp is not immediately indicative of an empty external tank, and should be checked against the quantity indication system.

> 💡 A good general indication that the tanks are empty is the total fuel counter showing a value below 11.000 lbs. To confirm, fly calm and level and watch if the light stays on and the fuel gauge is not going up for at least one or two minutes.

Further, the lamps will illuminate whenever the air refuel switch is set to EXTEND, while ALL TANKS are selected for refueling, causing the external tank valves to open while not allowing fuel flow from them.

Also, the lamps will illuminate when running low on fuel and the aircraft activates the automatic fuel transfer, forcing the valves open.

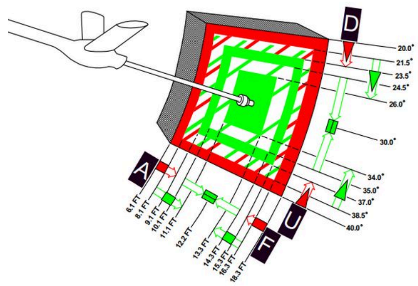
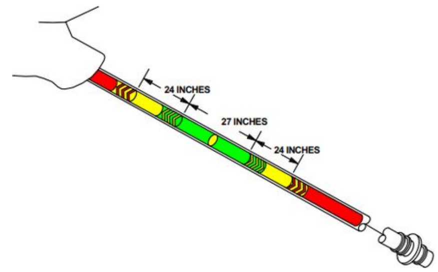
> 💡 The system has no awareness of actual external tanks being loaded. The lamps are simply linked to the respective fuel valve being open and no fuel flow being detected. That is, even when flying without any external tanks, all three lamps will illuminate when the aircraft opens the corresponding valves during AAR or automatic fuel transfer.

When air-to-air refueling, or when refueling on the ground and the tanks have reached a full condition, the External Tanks Full lamps, found under the canopy bow, will light.

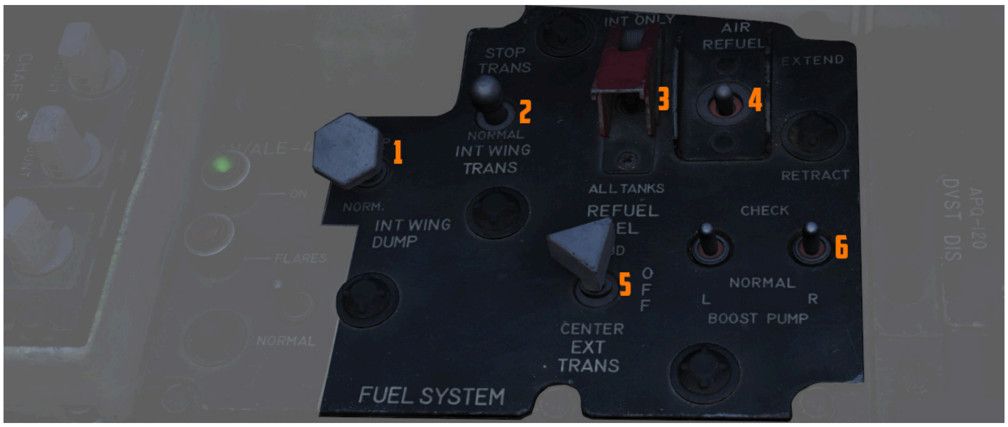
Air Refueling System

For air-to-air refueling, the F-4E uses a receptacle system compatible with high pressure USAF-style boom refueling. With this system, fuel can be delivered to the Phantom at a rate of up to 3900 lbs per minute. Fuel received is delivered into fuselage cell 2, then equalized through the rest of the aircraft cells, wing tanks, and, if installed and selected, external tanks.

> 💡 While the maximal supported refuel rate is about 3900 lbs per minute, the actual rate in practice is highly dynamic and depends on the tanks that can still take fuel. Refuel Rate is bottlenecked by the pipe layout and their dimensions. For example, being down to just the left and right external tank will rather result in a refuel rate of 1400 lbs per minute. Refueling internal tanks 1-7 takes about one to two minutes. Also filling up the wing tanks and external tanks will take additional four to five minutes.

Boom Reach	Boom Marks
	

💡 Fully refueling takes roughly between one and three minutes.



Air Refuel Switch

Preparation for air refueling is performed by toggling the Air Refuel Switch (4) to EXTEND; doing so extends the receptacle, illuminates the receptacle visual lamps, depressurizes the fuel cells, activates the transfer pumps to redistribute received fuel for CG maintenance, and activates the air refuel READY lamp. RETRACT is used to lower the receptacle and return pressurization and normal function to the tanks.

If, during AAR, the boom disconnects and the DISENGAGED light illuminates, this switch has to be flipped to RETRACT and back to EXTEND to reset the system and allow the boom to connect again.

Refuel Selection Switch

The two-position Refuel Selection Switch (3) provides options for two modes of refueling: internal fuselage and internal wing tanks (INT ONLY), and ALL TANKS, used to include external tanks in the refueling operation.

Ready Light

With the receptacle extended and tanks depressurized, the READY lamp illuminates to notify the pilot refueling can begin. The lamp will turn off when the boom is connected to the receptacle, or the receptacle is lowered by the RETRACT command on the Air Refuel Switch.

Disengaged Light

Should the boom separate from the receptacle, the DISENGAGED lamp will illuminate. In the event of a DISENGAGED signal, the system must be reset to continue refueling. The system must be reset by toggling the air refuel switch.

Air Refueling Release Button

On the front seat control stick is the Air Refueling Release Button. Its primary purpose is to release the receptacle from the boom in the event of a manual refueling cycle (one in which the boom operator cannot force a disconnect remotely), or perform a disengagement on demand based on flight conditions or emergency situation. Pressing the button will disengage the boom, and illuminate the DISENGAGED lamp.

AIR REFUEL RECPT Circuit Breaker

In the event of a DISENGAGED situation during air refueling, the system is reset either by cycling the Air Refuel Switch or by using the AIR REFUEL RECPT circuit breaker, found on the No 2 circuit breaker panel in the rear cockpit - right side, fourth column, top breaker.

External Tanks Full Lights

Three indicators- L.H. FULL, CTR. FULL, and R.H. FULL (Left Hand, Center, Right Hand) lamps provide confirmation that the external tanks have been filled during the air refueling process. The lamps will remain lit until the air refueling receptacle retracted.

Fuel Dump System

Fuel from the wings can be dumped directly, rather than requiring transfer into the fuselage, using the Wing Fuel Dump Switch.

This switch, when selected to DUMP, will release fuel from the internal wing tanks at their dump lines at the wing fold trailing edge. Flow rate is dependent on power setting and attitude, higher engine RPM and

positive pitch increases dump speed, whereas lower RPM and a nose low condition reduces dump speed.

> 💡 In level flight at 85% RPM, the dump flow rate is roughly 650 pounds per minute. Leading to the entire fuel being dumped after roughly 15 minutes.

Fuel Venting System

To prevent issues with overpressure, the aircraft provides a venting system.

Should an overpressure condition occur, tanks will vent fuel until the pressure is corrected.

The process is fully automated. External wing tanks vent through the fuel dump system, while all other cells are connected to the vent mast below the rudder.

> 💡 Under normal conditions, overpressure only occurs momentarily whenever the internal wing fuel tanks are pressurized and made ready for transfer. This is the case whenever the gear is retracted or the AAR door is closed.

💡 Fuel venting can also occur when flying slow and inverted, due to strong negative G forces. This can often be seen during aerobatics.

Navigation & Communication

The AN/ASN-63 Inertial Navigation System (INS) equips the F-4E aircrew and integrated weapons delivery system with real-time accurate positional, velocity, attitude, and heading information.

The UHF communication system in the aircraft is modified to support both crypto and conventional voice transmission and reception. The intercom system and UHF transceiver are adapted for operational compatibility with the KY-28 speech security unit.

The VHF Omnidirectional Range Instrument Landing System (VOR/ILS) furnishes accurate bearing and course deviation information through a ground station transmitter. This system enables the aircraft to utilize precision landing approach and descent capabilities at fields equipped with a localizer.

The Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) system offers bearing and range information to transmitting stations, with a reception range of up to 390 miles from ground stations and 200 miles for air-to-air TACAN-equipped aircraft.

CPT Mark Wright, an F-4E Phantom II pilot of the 336th Tactical Fighter Squadron, charts a map during the exercise Crested Cap

Flight Director Group

Accurate course navigation is provided by the Flight Director Group, which includes the Flight Director Computer (1), the Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI) (2) along with the Navigation Function Selector Panel (3), the Attitude Director Indicator (ADI) (4), in the front cockpit, and the Bearing Distance Heading Indicator (BDHI) (5) together with the Navigation Mode Selector Switch (6) in the rear cockpit.

Navigation Function Selector Panel

Found on the front cockpit instrument panel, the Navigation Function Selector Panel has two knobs - a Bearing/Distance Selector Knob and a Mode Selector Knob. Stacked on the Mode Selector Knob is the Flight Director Switch.

Bearing Distance Selector Knob (BRG/DIST)

The Bearing Distance Selector Knob (1) sets the bearing pointer and range indication displays on the HSI. Positions are VOR/TAC, TAC, ADF/TAC, and NAV COMP.

In VOR/TAC mode, magnetic and relative bearing to the VOR station and range to the TACAN station are provided on the HSI bearing pointer and range indicator.

With TAC mode, magnetic and relative bearing and range to the selected TACAN station are displayed.

In ADF/TAC mode, magnetic and relative bearing to the selected ADF station and range to the TACAN station are displayed.

And in NAV COMP mode, magnetic and relative bearing and range are provided to the destination set in the navigation computer.

Mode Selector Knob (MODE) and Flight Director Switch

The Mode Selector Knob (3) controls the remaining informational displays on the HSI (outer knob), as well as the pitch and bank steering bars on the ADI (inner knob (2) labelled FD). The mode selector knob operates independently of the bearing pointer and range indicator, and the selector positions are VOR/ILS, TAC, NAV COMP, and HDG. Navigation modes set by this knob will be indicated by an illuminated word message when the instrument panel lights are on; available mode word messages are TAC (TACAN), NAV (navigation computer), UHF (ADF), MAN (HDG entry), ILS (instrument landing system), and TGT (target). TGT illuminates that the WSO has provided a target entry and pressed TGT on the Cursor Control Panel.

The Flight Director Switch toggles the Flight Director Computer pitch and bank angle steering clues, visible on the ADI. Selecting OFF removes these bars from view.

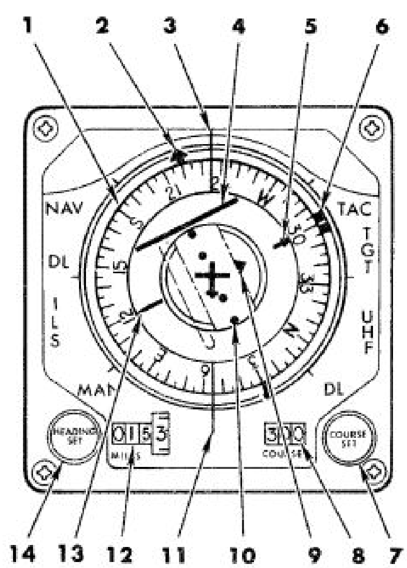
In VOR/ILS, if a VOR frequency is selected, the HSI Course Set knob is used to set the VOR radial. Once set, the HSI Deviation Indicator shows current deviation from the selected course. If an ILS frequency was selected, the localizer signal will be shown on the deviation indicator.

TACAN mode presents navigation information to the currently selected TACAN beacon. To provide full information, the Bearing/Distance Switch should be set to TAC. The HSI course arrow and course selector window are set using the Course Set knob to the desired TACAN course. Once set, the HSI Deviation Indicator and aircraft symbol provide the top-down display relative to the set course, with a maximum deviation deflection of ±5 degrees. The HSI Heading Set knob is used to set a desired TACAN course for bank steering presentation on the ADI. As the bank steering is based on the heading marker position, if it is not set properly, bank steering on the ADI will not be correct to intercept the desired course. A To-From indicator displays when the mode selector is in TACAN or VOR/ILS mode when either are tuned and received; once the course is intercepted, the indication references whether the current course is taking the aircraft to or from the tuned station.

The NAV COMP Mode displays magnetic ground track on the HSI course arrow and the HSI course selector window relative to the current navigation computer fix. The ADI bank steering bar provides steering information to direct an approach to the command heading.

With HDG mode active, the HSI course arrow and deviation are slaved to the lubber line and aircraft magnetic heading. The HSI course selector window displays the current selected magnetic heading, which is adjusted using the Heading Set knob. The given course information is applied for an ADI bank steering command.

Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)



1. COMPASS CARD
2. BEARING POINTER
3. UPPER LUBBER LINE
4. COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR
5. COURSE ARROW (HEAD)
6. HEADING MARKER
7. COURSE SET KNOB
8. COURSE SELECTOR WINDOW
9. TO-FROM INDICATOR
10. COURSE DEVIATION SCALE
11. LOWER LUBBER LINE
12. RANGE INDICATOR AND WARNING FLAG
13. COURSE ARROW (TAIL)
14. HEADING SET KNOB

The Horizontal Situation Indicator displays a top-down plan view of current navigation, with cues provided relative to the selected navigation mode selector position. It interacts closely with several navigational aids like VOR, TACAN, ADF, and the aircraft's Navigation Computer (NAV COMP).

The Bearing Pointer and Range Indicator (**2**) on the HSI display the bearing and distance to the navigation aid selected via the Bearing Distance Selector Knob. The Navigation Mode Selector governs the functionality of the heading marker, course arrow, and the course deviation indicator (**6**), which includes a to-from arrow. Both these controls – the Bearing Distance Selector and the Navigation Mode Selector – have a direct impact on the illumination of specific mode indicator lights on the HSI.

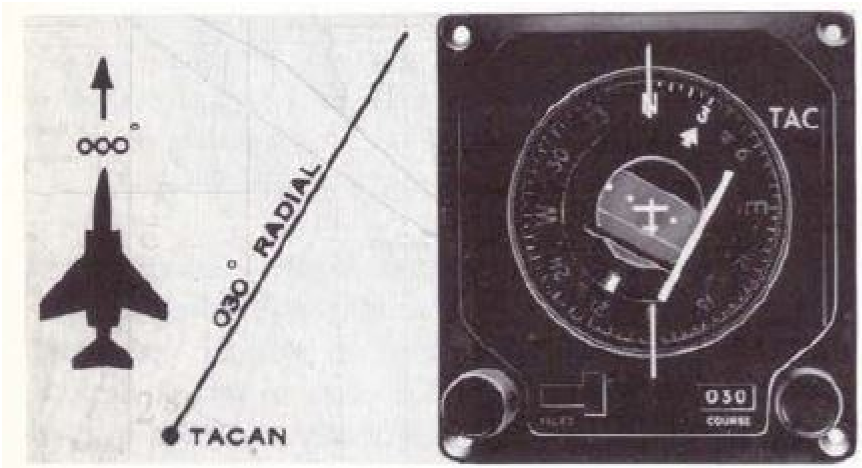
The compass card (**5**) in the HSI is driven by heading input from the AJB-7 system. It rotates to align the aircraft's magnetic heading directly under the lubber line at the top of the instrument, assuming the signal received is accurate and reliable.

The Bearing pointer indicates magnetic bearing to a given VOR, TACAN or NAV COMP station, depending on the BRG/DIST switch selection. Providing the compass card is giving good information, this bearing is also relative. However, if there are inaccuracies in the magnetic heading, to navigate towards the selected destination, the aircraft should be steered not by centering the arrow on the lubber line, but by following the heading indicated by the arrow using the magnetic compass. If a UHF (ADF) signal is tuned, the bearing pointer consistently shows the heading in relative terms.

The command heading marker provides as a desired heading reference for the Flight Director. To obtain correct steering, the marker must be manually set in all but Nav Comp modes (then it's automatically set). The steering clues are visible on the ADI bank steering bar.

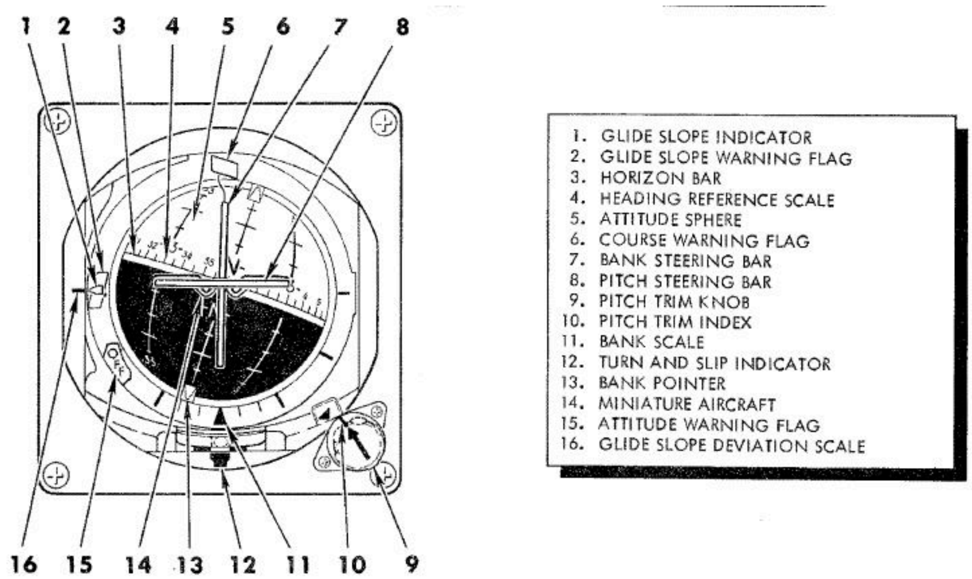
The deflection of the Deviation Indicator in VOR and TACAN modes indicate the deviation of the aircraft from the selected course (visible on

the Course rollers and Course Arrow). Is indicates how far is the aircraft off the selected track. 2.5 deg per dot, maximally up to 5 deg.



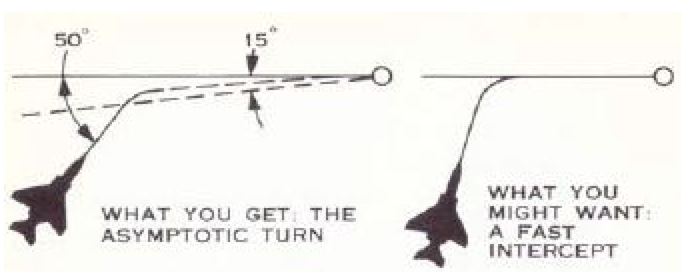
In ILS mode, the HSI displays deviation from the localizer signal. This indication is more precise, as the needle is more sensitive to deviations in that mode. Notably, this reading is independent of the selected course, providing direct feedback on the aircraft's alignment with the ILS approach path.

Attitude Director Indicator (ADI)



The ADI provides command steering to intercept selected headings, TACAN stations, tracks, VOR radials, or navigation computer destinations. Bank steering instruction is presented using the bank steering bar, which can reference angles up to 35 degrees, at 90 degrees of heading deviation. Any heading errors less than that will produce a bank correction of something less than 35 degrees. If a quick intercept or a bank angle in excess of 35 degrees is desired, the bank steering must be disregarded during the turn.

The system initiates an approximate 50-degree straight-line intercept towards the desired track until the aircraft is within 15 degrees of it. Beyond this point, it transitions to an asymptotic approach to align with the track. For a faster intercept, it might be necessary to disregard the bank steering signal.



When the Heading Set knob has been used to enter the correct target heading, the intercept presentation is accurate within a 60 degree field of a TACAN course, or 90 degrees for a VOR radial. Additionally, a Glide-

slope Pointer is provided for relative glide-slope position indication during an ILS approach.

> 💡 The Heading Marker must be manually aligned with the desired heading (except in NAV COMP mode) to ensure correct bank steering guidance. However, due to wind drift, this bank steering may not always keep the aircraft precisely on a TACAN or VOR track. In such scenarios, manual adjustments for wind correction are required for the Heading Marker setting to maintain the correct course.

Upon startup of the ADI, an OFF warning flag will be displayed until the AN/AJB-7 gyro has aligned. This can also appear due to power loss or a signal failure. The flag does not present if a system failure occurs outside of the AN/AJB-7.

Bearing Distance Heading Indicator (BDHI)

The Bearing Distance Heading Indicator (BDHI) displays navigation information using two needles, referred to as the No. 1 and No. 2 pointers, which receive inputs controlled by the WSO Navigation Mode Selector Switch.

When the upper position is selected to TACAN/ADF/UHF, the no. 1 pointer indicates UHF bearing, and the no. 2 pointer indicates the

TACAN bearing. If there is no TACAN signal, both pointers indicate the ADF bearing.

With the middle position selected - VOR/TAC, the no. 1 pointer indicates the VOR bearing, the no. 2 pointer indicates the TACAN bearing, and the range indicator (3) provides distance to the TACAN station. In the absence of a TACAN signal, both pointers indicate the VOR station.

In the lower position, NAV COMP, the no. 1 pointer indicates bearing to the navigation computer target coordinates, and the no. 2 pointer indicates magnetic ground track. The range indicator notes distance to the target coordinates.

AN/ASN-63 Inertial Navigation System

The AN/ASN-63 INS provides the F-4E aircrew and integrated weapons delivery system with real time accurate positional, velocity, attitude, and heading information. When the system is aligned to its most precise extent in gyrocompass mode, the INS is accurate to 3 nautical miles per hour of circular error probability (CEP).

> 💡 That means that after one hour of flying, the probability for an error in precision is spread such that in 50% of cases it is either below or above 3nm.

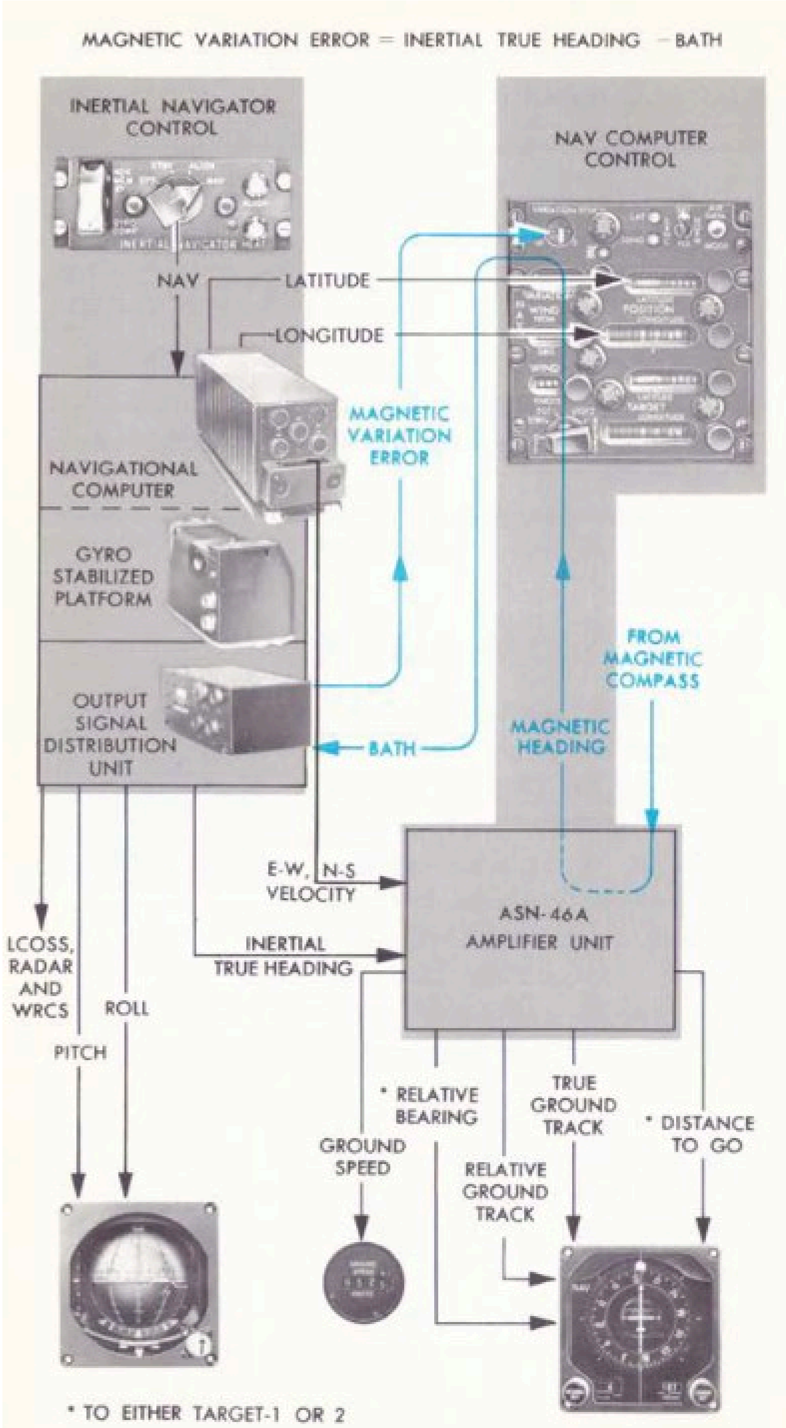
Inertial Measurement Platform

The system uses a four gimbal (outer roll, pitch, inner roll, azimuth) inertial navigating platform, with the dual roll gimbals providing redundancy to eliminate a gimbal lock in outer roll/azimuth gimbal alignment.

Installed on the platform are a pair of G-200 two-axis gyros, with the upper gyro axis aligned for spin on the north-south axis while the lower gyro aligns for east-west spin; torque detection in each gyro tracks the

perpendicular axes - ergo, the high gyro detects east/west rotation, while the low gyro detects north/south rotation. In this way, rotation in all three dimensions are represented. The gyros are floated, and proper operation can only take place once the fluid has attained operating temperature (160 degrees F); the system is effectively temperature controlled across the altitude operating range of the Phantom. A series of precision magnetic torquers provide localization movement, while acceleration pick-offs function within a separate electromagnetic field perform the actual data capture from the displacements of the gyroscopes.

Along the platform, set orthogonally (at 90 degree respective positions) are a trio of A-200D accelerometers. These accelerators, similarly floated to the gyros, with a similar arrangement of torquers and displacement pickers to provide velocity capture. Increasing the accuracy of these evaluations is the inclusion of a tuning fork, the resonance from which eliminates effectively all static friction in the motion capture assembly.



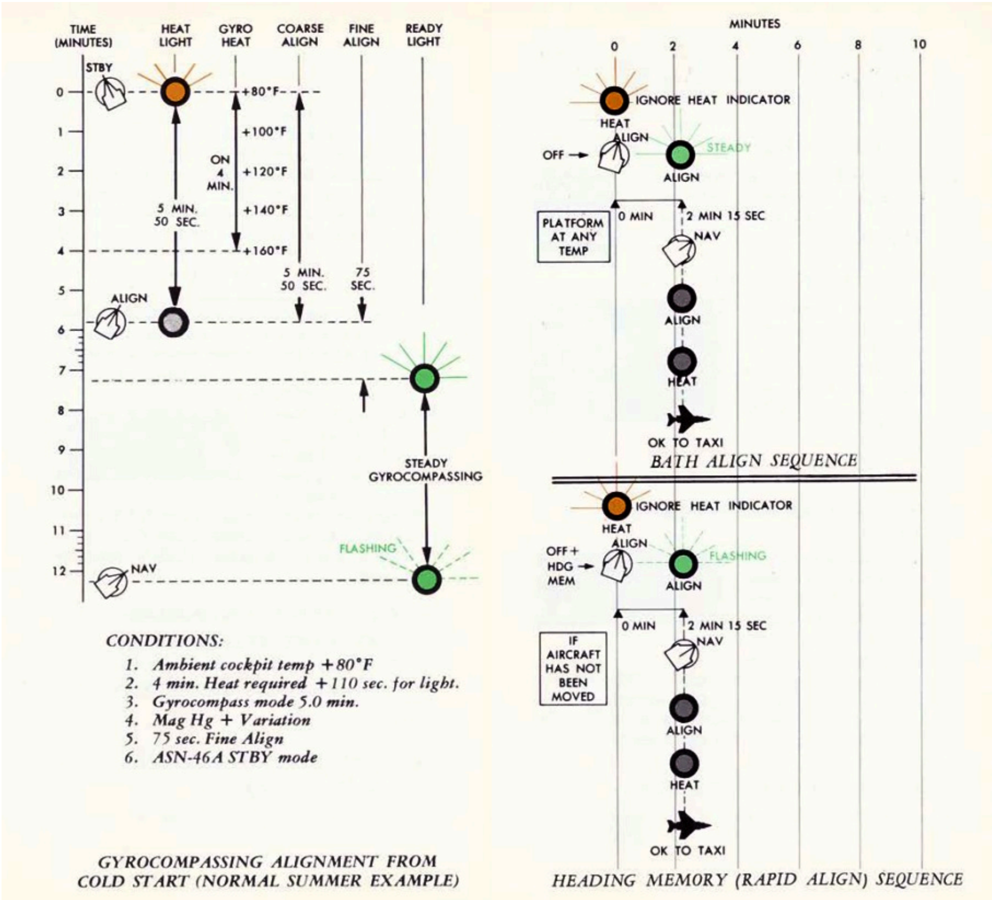
LN-12D SYSTEM OUTPUTS, NAV MODE

Navigational Computer and Output Signal Distribution

The respective captured motion signals from the gyroscopes and accelerometers are amplified in the LN-12D navigational computer, which then performs the earth reference integration. The LN-12D compensates for all longitudes and can effectively track as high as 80 degrees latitude, where the mechanical limitations of calculating tangent relative to the equator is too high for the device.

The AN/ASN-63 provides information to other systems in the Phantom from the OSDU, or Output Signal Distribution Unit. The OSDU provides ground speed, north-south and east-west velocity, total velocity, inertially stabilized altitude, climb angle, true inertial heading, ground track, and drift angle. The WRCS receives inertial true heading, ground track, drift correction angle, and drift angle for its ballistics computer. Drift angle is captured for the BDHI, HSI, and FDC. Drift correction angle is also provided to the radar and LCOSS.

Alignment Options



The LN-12 has three modes of alignment on aircraft start: BATH, Heading Memory (HDG MEM), and Gyrocompass alignment. Prior to performing any alignment, STBY Reference System must be selected, the Nav Computer Control Panel should be turned to STBY and its position update switch should be selected to NORMAL. Local magnetic variation should be entered on the variation counter, and the position counter should be set to local latitude and longitude. Doing so will greatly expedite gyrocompass alignment. Furthermore, alignment should not be performed with the wings in their folded position, as the magnetic flux valve that provides compass synchronization wil be 60 degrees outside of normal position.

The INS also includes an in-flight position update option, should the aircrew note gross deviation from known location fixes.

Indications

The INS panel features two indicator lights: HEAT (4) and ALIGN (2).

The HEAT light is active in any alignment mode (including Coarse Alignment in the STBY mode), signifying that the system is heating up. It turns off after approximately 110 seconds, indicating that the gyros have reached the operational temperature of 160 degrees Fahrenheit.

The ALIGN light, functional exclusively in the ALIGN mode, signals the completion of alignment. A steady ALIGN light indicates that a BATH (fast) alignment has been achieved. Provided the system has not encountered any errors and the gyros were pre-heated in STBY mode (evidenced by the extinguished HEAT light), the system will proceed to perform a Gyrocompass Alignment. A flashing ALIGN light signifies the completion of either a Gyrocompass Alignment or a Heading Memory Alignment.

Best Available True Heading

STBY position must be placed momentarily to avoid an INS no-go. Once set to ALIGN (HEAT light may be ingnored), the ALIGN lamp will illuminate steadily after about 75 seconds indicating BATH Alignment is ready. Once in BATH, the INS is accurate to roughly 5 and a half nautical miles per hour CEP, although higher inaccuracies can be seen. Once BATH is achieved, NAV mode can be selected and the aircraft flown with the above caveat.

Heading Memory Alignment

This option becomes accessible if the alignment has been previously stored and the aircraft has remained stationary. To access it, select HDG MEM (1) located beneath the red guard on the control panel before transitioning the INS knob from OFF to ALIGN. This alignment method minimizes the alignment time, offering a relative Circular Error Probability (CEP) at the optimal end of BATH (5.5 nautical miles), or even Gyrocompass Alignment (3 nautical miles) if the previous alignment occurred within the last 2 hours.

To access the accelerated HDG MEM alignment mode, the guard must be raised and the switch actuated up, and the INS mode switch placed to ALIGN until the ALIGN lamp starts flashing. Then, the INS can be placed into NAV mode. If time allows, STBY mode can be selected before going to ALIGN to allow proper heating of the gyroscopes (which goes through the illumination/off cycle as above).

> 💡 Heading can be stored in the mission editor.

Gyrocompass Alignment

Maximum system precision is found by allowing the INS to perform a full Gyro-compassing alignment. This method permits the gyros to find the most accurate true north reference possible, but can entail substantial amounts of time - and even greater time based on inaccurate or missing magnetic variation setting entry prior to powering the INS on. As an example - for a one degree compass heading error, the time to achieve maximum accuracy on the system is approximately five minutes, which attains an accuracy of ±10 minutes of arc alignment, giving the aforementioned 3 nautical miles of deviation per hour. The minimum amount of time to complete a Gyro-compassing alignment once BATH or HDG MEM level alignment is achieved is 50 additional seconds, while a normal alignment takes around 5 minutes. If the aircraft is aligned at 70 degrees of latitude or more, additional time should be expected.

To conduct Gyrocompass Alignment, it's necessary to keep the INS in STBY mode until the HEAT light turns off. Moving to ALIGN while the lights are still on prevents achieving full Gyrocompass Alignment, resulting in only the BATH process being performed. The duration of the heating phase depends on the ambient temperature. The system heats up at a rate of approximately 20°F per minute, reaching an operational temperature of 160°F. Once the system reaches its operating temperature, an additional 50 seconds are required until the HEAT light extinguishes. After transitioning to ALIGN, the light will illuminate steadily after 75 seconds, signaling the completion of the initial BATH alignment, initiating the gyro-compassing process. Once Gyrocompass

alignment concludes, the ALIGN indicator will flash, indicating the system has achieved full alignment. While gyro-compassing (when the align light is steadily lit), NAV mode can be entered at any time, though optimal accuracy will only be attained when the ALIGN indicator flashes.

Any other available time prior to moving the aircraft can be spent in ALIGN to further increase system accuracy.

In-Flight Emergency Alignment

In the event of a significant attitude error or failure of the STBY Attitude Reference, an emergency in-flight alignment of the INS can be executed. This may be indicated by the NAV SYS OUT LAMP illuminated. The aircraft must maintain straight and level flight, with the Reference System Selector selector switch set to STBY. Once in this configuration, the INS Mode Knob should be switched to OFF, then to STBY for a duration of 15 seconds. Subsequently, after the 15-second interval, return the Mode to NAV, and resume straight and level flight. The process of resetting the Reference Selector to PRIM can be performed approximately after 40 seconds, although the precise alignment time is not specified.

> 💡 Accuracy of the attitude in this alignment is contingent upon how steadily the aircraft was flown during the alignment period and subsequent alignments may be required. Following this emergency alignment, only attitude information will be available. Velocities, position, and displays on the navigation computer will be inaccurate and cannot be utilized for navigation purposes and the NAV SYS OUT LAMP will illuminate.

Navigation Computer

The ASN-46A Nav Computer is used for general navigation and tactical route planning. The system contains both a great circle and rhumb line computational capabilities, with the former being used for larger distance bearing calculations (over 120 miles), and the latter for closer range accuracy. The Nav Computer functions solely using aircraft-based instruments, ergo the INS, Air Data Computer, and the magnetic compass; it can receive no information from the ILS, VOR, or TACAN systems.

The system can maintain relative bearing and distance from up to two specific waypoints at a time (identified as Target 1 and Target 2, with Target 2 being held in memory), and this information is shown on the BDHI and ADI in real time. For data to appear on the BDHI, the Navigation Selection Switch must be positioned in NAV COMP.

The computer also provides confirmation of current LN-12 precision, using a pair of lights (6) marked LAT and LONG, as well as the Variation Sync Meter (5). When these lamps are off, the current displayed position coordinates are within 1 1/2 arc minutes precision. Magnetic variation detected by way of the INS gyroscopes is compared against the manual performed prior to INS power-up via the Magnetic Variation Control knob, and displayed on the Variation Sync Meter (5). This deviation can be corrected on the Magnetic Variation Control Knob to bring the sync to center. Although the magnetic variation control knob has no effect on

the meter in air data mode, positive correction prior to INS loss increases the air data mode precision.

The Nav Computer can function in either Inertial or Air Data mode. Both modes provide the same outputs but the inertial mode (default) is more accurate.

In the event of an INS failure, the Nav Computer reverts to Air Data mode. In Air Data mode, the rear pilot must continually monitor and adjust true wind direction and speed, magnetic variation, as the only dead reckoning inputs available to the computer is true airspeed (from the air data computer) and magnetic heading from the compass system. When the system reverts to Air Data mode, the AIR DATA MODE lamp will illuminate.

During startup, the Position Control Knobs, Wind Control Knobs, and Magnetic Variation Control Knob are used to enter known latitude, longitude, wind direction and speed, and magnetic variation for the location of the aircraft at that time.

Waypoint Entry

Entering waypoints and target information is performed using the Function Selector Knob and the two Target Control Knobs (10), one for latitude, and the other longitude.

Name	Description
OFF	System off.

Name	Description
STBY	System powered, but no latitude or longitude reference performed versus the values in the Target windows.
TARGET 1	Provides readouts of range and bearing on the currently entered Target window values.
TARGET 2	Selects range and bearing information from previously stored Target window values.
RESET	Deletes any previously saved Target window values, stores currently entered Target window values.

Because of the Target 2 memory function, in practice the aircrew has some flexibility in process depending on the demands of the mission. As an example, should the Phantom crew be tasked with a CAP or defensive role relative to a known position (ie, bullseye), the coordinates of that location can be loaded into the Target Control values, the Function Selector placed into RESET, and then returned to Target 2. Any change from Target 2 to Target 1 or STBY, then back to Target 2 will maintain said location value, easily accessed. This will memorize the entered position into Target 2, from which it will be easily accessible by just switching the knob back to Target 2 at any time.

The other common technique was "leapfrogging":

1. On startup, the second waypoint would be stored in Target 2 memory (entry on the Target Control values, Function to RESET, then back to Target 2).

2. Once the second waypoint location was stored, the rear pilot would then select Target 1 for live entry of the first in-flight waypoint on the Target Control values.

3. During flyout to the first waypoint, upon passing it over, Target 2 would be selected as the destination, and the next waypoint (3) would be entered on the Target Control Values.

4. Upon flyover of waypoint 2, the Function Knob would be positioned to RESET, then back to Target 2 - now pulling the waypoint 3 values from the Target Control values.

This process would be continued over the course of the flight, and allow the rear pilot the ability to immediately switch to Target 1 for a quick check of relative position to another location of interest if required, or an in-flight detour (such as to a tanker track), then return back to the next stored waypoint for navigation.

In Flight Updating

In flight updating with the Nav Computer is performed using direct overflight of known target points, using a visual or radar fix, over a TACAN station, or via instruction from GCI.

Inertial Mode Update

With the Nav Computer in Inertial mode, the aircraft is flown straight and level at a known fix location.

1. Prior to arrival at the fix point the Position Update Fix is placed in SET position. Doing so disengages the longitude and latitude position counters.

2. The position longitude and latitude counters are set using their respective knobs for the known location.

3. Directly before overflying the fix point the Position Update Switch is placed and held in the FIX position.

4. Upon direct flyover of the fix point, the Position Update Switch is released, allowing it to fall back into NORMAL.

The correction rate of the Nav Computer is roughly 3 minutes latitude or longitude per second, and the Update Switch (7) must be held in FIX long enough to account for the largest value. As an example, if the deviation is 9 minutes in latitude and 4 in longitude, the FIX position must be held at least 3 seconds prior to the aircraft directly passing the fix location. Further, the switch actuation from SET to FIX must be smooth and direct, as there is a half second time delay in the computer in the pass-through of NORMAL.

Air Data Mode Update

In Air Data Mode, the Nav Computer can be updated as in the Inertial Mode using the SET/FIX method, or via direct rotation of the latitude and longitude position knobs. Using the latter method requires the Function Select Knob to be placed in STBY, TARGET 1, or TARGET 2. The SET/FIX method is preferred, as doing so allows for instant update upon fix position flyover and release of the switch.

TACAN (Tactical Air Navigation) System

Bearing and range information to transmitting stations is provided by the TACAN system. The TACAN system can receive information from ground stations as far as 390 miles, and air-to-air TACAN equipped aircraft to 200 miles. The TACAN system provides the identity of the transmitting station and the dependability of the signal received. Course deviation is calculated and displayed on navigation systems set in TACAN mode. If a TACAN signal is invalid, a warning is displayed. In the event of a signal loss, the system continues providing range tracking for 15 seconds, and bearing tracking for 3 seconds. The system will perform a self-test after a signal loss to confirm function on the control panel. Two TACAN antennas are provided, and signal switching is automatic to maintain the best signal.

TACAN Controls

TACAN controls are found on the navigation control panel in each cockpit.

Navigation Command Button and Indicator

The NAV CMD button and indicator performs a command authority switch between the two cockpits, and are found in the upper right corner of the Communication Control Panel. A green light illuminates to the left of the button in the cockpit that has control of the navigation system.

- Mode Selector Knob,
- BRG/DIST Selector Switch, and
- Navigation Function Selector

As detailed in the Flight Director Group section, the Mode Selector, BRG/DIST Selector, and Navigation Function Selector determine the presentation of TACAN information on the HSI, the ADI, and the BDHI.

Navigation Channel Control Knobs

On the TACAN Control Panel beneath the channel window, a pair of knobs (7, 4 and 3) set the desired TACAN channel. The left knob (7) controls the tens and hundreds digits of the channel. The right knob (4) selects the units of the operating channel, and the outer knob (3) sets the X or Y channel; both X and Y have 126 available channels. While the indicator can show 127, 128, and 129, these values are nonfunctional.

TACAN Function Selector Knob

- OFF: the TACAN system is de-energized
- REC: only the receiver is energized, and the system receives and decodes bearing signals from the TACAN station and provides bearing information for the HSI, BDHI, and ADI displays.
- T/R: the TACAN generates distance information along with bearing; the distance is then added to the HSI and BDHI, provided in nautical miles.
- A/A REC: the TACAN receives and displays bearing information for the HSI, BDHI, and ADI steering display from an aircraft providing a TACAN beacon signal. The channel selected must be 63 channels above or below the transmitting aircraft beacon, on the same X or Y channel range; for example, a tanker transmitting on 83X will be received on 20X.
- A/A TR: the TACAN interrogates the equipped aircraft beacon to add range information to the HSI and BDHI. The channel selection method remains the same as A/A REC.

Navigation Volume Control Knob

The NAV VOL knob (**2**) controls the headset audible volume of the received TACAN station.

TACAN Test Button

The Tacan test button (**6**) may be used to test the TACAN System. For a detailed procedure see the Navigation Test Procedure.

VOR/ILS System

The VHF omnidirectional range instrument landing system, or VOR/ILS, provides precise bearing and course deviation information from a transmitting ground station. Additionally, the aircraft is able to use precision landing approach and descent capabilities at localizer equipped fields. Guidance information from the VOR/ILS system is provided to the pilot on the BDHI, ADI, and HSI. VOR/ILS function is enabled on these displays using the appropriate Flight Director Group control selections on the Bearing/Distance Selector switch, the Navigation Mode Selector switch, and the Flight Director Switch.

ILS System

The ILS system is designed to detect deviations from the designated landing approach path and relay this information to selected avionics in the aircraft.

When the appropriate ILS mode is selected on the Navigation Function Selector Panel, several instruments provide guidance for precision approach. These include the Deviation Indicator on the Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI), which shows lateral alignment with the runway,

and the Glide-slope Indicator on the ADI, which displays the vertical descent angle relative to the ideal glide path.

Additionally, if the Flight Director is activated, steering cues will be provided by the needles on the Attitude Director Indicator (ADI), offering visual guidance for both pitch and roll to maintain the correct approach path.

In the rear cockpit the both horizontal and vertical deviations are presented on the Course Indicator.

The typical maximum deviations are ±2.5 degrees for the localizer and ±0.7 degrees for the glide-slope.

Marker Beacons

If Marker Beacons are positioned along the approach path, the aircraft's system will audibly signal and illuminate the corresponding Marker Beacon light as it passes over each one. Depending on the specific setup at an airport, there can be:

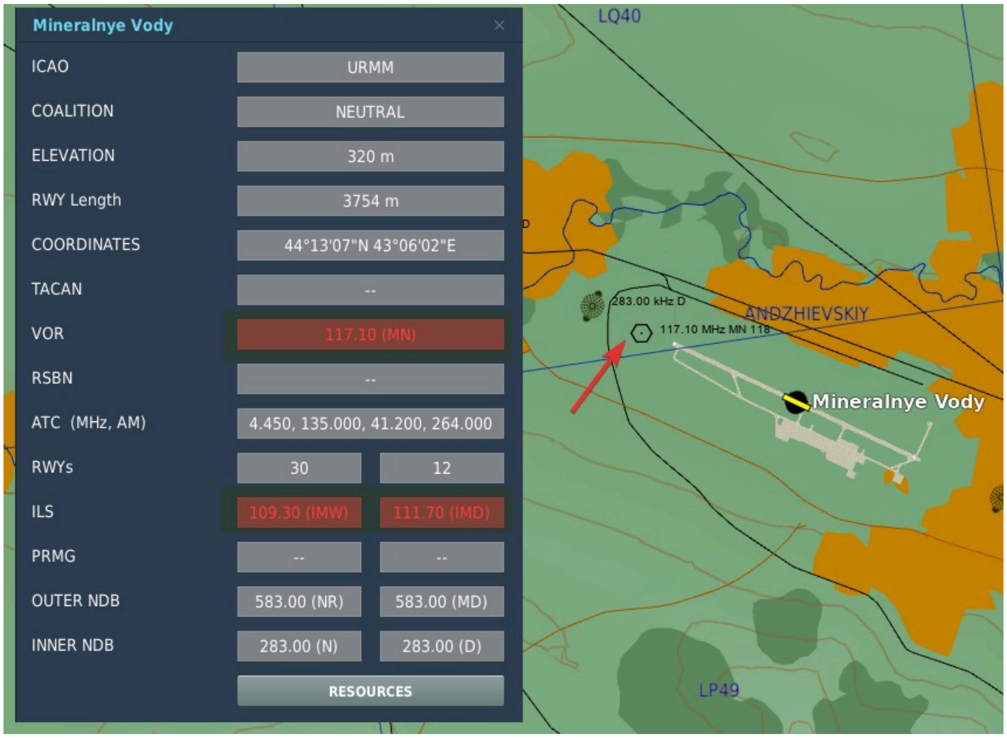
- Outer Marker: Identified by a low-pitched, continuous tone.
- Middle Marker: Recognized by a higher-pitched, alternating audio tone. This marker indicates a closer proximity to the runway, usually at the decision altitude for landing.
- Inner Marker: Characterized by a very high-pitched tone or a series of high-pitched dots. This marker is not always present but, when it is, signifies an even closer position to the runway end.

VOR/ILS Control Panel

The control panel for the VOR/ILS is found on the front cockpit left console; the panel includes a frequency indicator, two frequency select knobs (2), a volume control (marked NAV VOL) (1), a marker beacon volume control knob (MB VOL) (3), and a VOL/MRK TEST pushbutton (4).

VOR/ILS Frequency Selector Knobs

The Frequency Selector Knob (2) is a dual actuation concentric knob; the outer ring selects the number to the left of the decimal point on the frequency indicator, whereas the inner knob selects numbers to the right.



In DCS, to find the desired VOR/ILS frequency of your target, go on the Map and click an airfield that you want to fly to. If available, VOR and ILS frequencies will be listed.

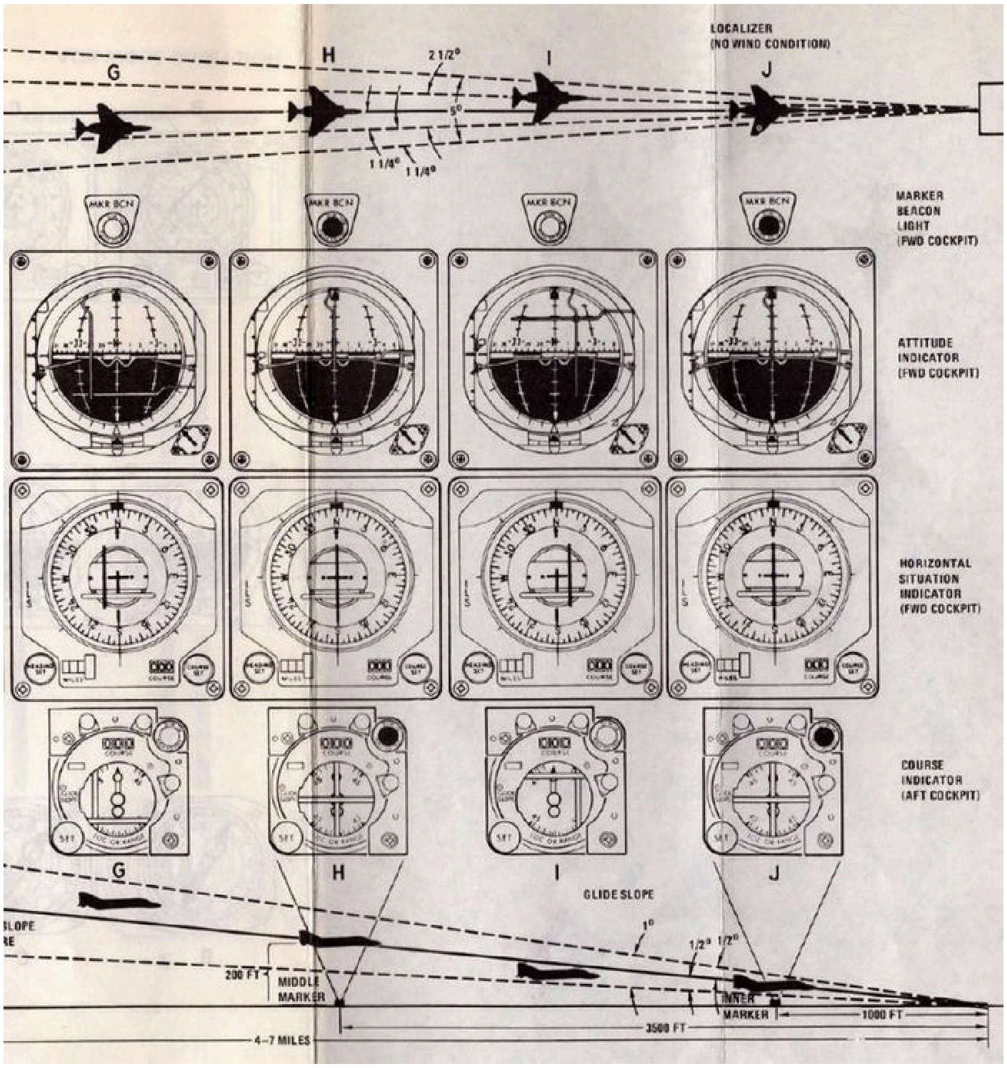
💡 Not every airfield has a VOR station or an ILS systems.

The system is designed to automatically detect whether a tuned frequency corresponds to a VOR station or an ILS localizer. VOR operates within a frequency range of 108 MHz to 117.95 MHz. The ILS localizer frequency range is from 108.1 MHz to 111.95 MHz.

In the shared frequency region, VOR stations typically operate on frequencies with an even-numbered tenth of the range (e.g. 108.2 MHz, 108.4 MHz, etc.), while ILS localizer frequencies are assigned to the odd-numbered tenths, including hundredths of a MHz (e.g. 108.1 MHz, 108.3 MHz, 108.35 MHz, etc.).

The glide-slope component of the ILS operates in a frequency range from 329.3 MHz to 335.0 MHz. These frequencies are paired with their corresponding localizer frequencies, ensuring that there is no need for

separate manual setting. When a localizer frequency is selected, the associated glide-slope frequency is automatically tuned, providing integrated lateral and vertical guidance (if available) for precision approaches. The Marker Beacon that works in conjunction with the ILS system, operates at a frequency of 75 MHz.



VOR/MKR Test Pushbutton

After an ILS frequency has been selected on the frequency indicator, pressing the VOR/MKR Test pushbutton (4) causes the marker beacon lights to illuminate. If a VOR Frequency is selected, a valid VOR Signal is present, a course of 315° selected on the HSI course selector and the HSI mode is in VOR/ILS a test can be initiated. Pressing the test pushbutton causes the course deviation indicator on the HSI to move to center (with

a maximum allowable error of ±4°) ,the "to-from" indicator on the HSI to indicate TO, the marker beacon lights to come on and the bearing pointers on both the HSI and BDHI to swing to 315°.

NAV VOL Knob and MB VOL Knob

The NAV VOL knob (**1**) both activates the VOR/ILS system, as well as controls the audible volume for the front cockpit. The knob is turned clockwise to power the system on, then further to increase the volume. The MB VOL knob (**3**) adjusts the volume of the marker beacon audio in the front cockpit.

WSO Course Indicator

In the rear cockpit is the Course Indicator, on the main instrument panel; During an ILS approach, the indicator displays relative heading for the course set in the course selector window, as well as horizontal and vertical position relative to the ILS localizer and glide slope entered by the pilot. In this way, the WSO can assist the pilot in achieving and maintaining glide slope. The controls for the indicator are purely for the WSOs reference, and do not interact with the Flight Director Group displays in the front cockpit.

Components of the course indicator are a TO-FROM indicator (does not function with ILS), a course deviation scale, a glide slope deviation scale, a COURSE selector window, a course SET knob, a heading pointer and heading scale, a marker beacon light, a GLIDE SLOPE indicator, a course

deviation indicator (LOC OR RANGE), and course and glide slope OFF warning flags.

Once the pilot has selected an ILS frequency, the WSO must set a course inbound heading in the selector window using the SET knob.

Used only with the ILS system (doesn't function with VOR).

Intercom System

The Intercom System provides communication between the pilot, WSO, and ground crew, and functions with external power, or the aircraft battery once either Engine Master Switch is in the ON position.

Intercom Control Panel

Each cockpit has an Intercom Control Panel, providing a volume control knob, an amplifier selector, and a function selector switch.

Volume Control Knob

The Intercom Volume Control knob (1) sets relative volume level for the given cockpit; increasing volume is performed by turning the knob clockwise. The Intercom Volume Control does not affect any other cockpit audio signal.

Function Selector Switch

The function selector (3) offers three options: COLD MIC, HOT MIC (enabling automatic intercom operation), and RADIO OVERRIDE. While RADIO OVERRIDE operates similarly to HOT MIC, it also attenuates all sounds except for crew communication, the pull-up tone from the

ARBCS, and the Shrike aural tone. For ground crew transmission to be enabled, the WSOs switch must be set to HOT MIC.

Amplifier Select Knob

The three position Amplifier Select Knob (2) determines which amplification channel is used: B/U for the backup, NORM for the normal amplifier, and EMER for a parallel function, should both amplifiers in a cockpit fail. In EMER mode, only audio from the other cockpit would be heard, and the volume control of all sounds would be managed by that cockpit.

Intercom Microphone Switch

The microphone switch for the Intercom System is the aft position on the inboard throttle grip in both cockpits. When using the intercom, all audio sans the pull-up tone, stall warning and ECM are reduced (same as RADIO OVERRIDE).

UHF Radio

The UHF Radio in the F-4E provides both voice communication (AM) and Automatic Direction Finding (ADF) capabilities. It comprises two main units: a radio transmitter-receiver (referred to as *COMM*), an amplifier power supply-receiver unit (referred to as *AUX*), and a guard receiver (at 243 MHz). Control over these systems is facilitated by two control panels, one located in each cockpit. The panel that is currently active assumes full command over the radio operations.

The COMM unit is capable of **receiving and transmitting** on a wide range of manually selected frequencies, totaling 3500, or it can operate on 18 preset channels. This functionality covers a frequency range from 225.0 MHz to 399.95 MHz.

On the other hand, the AUX unit is designed to **receive** signals on 20 preset frequency channels, ranging from 265.0 MHz to 284.9 MHz.

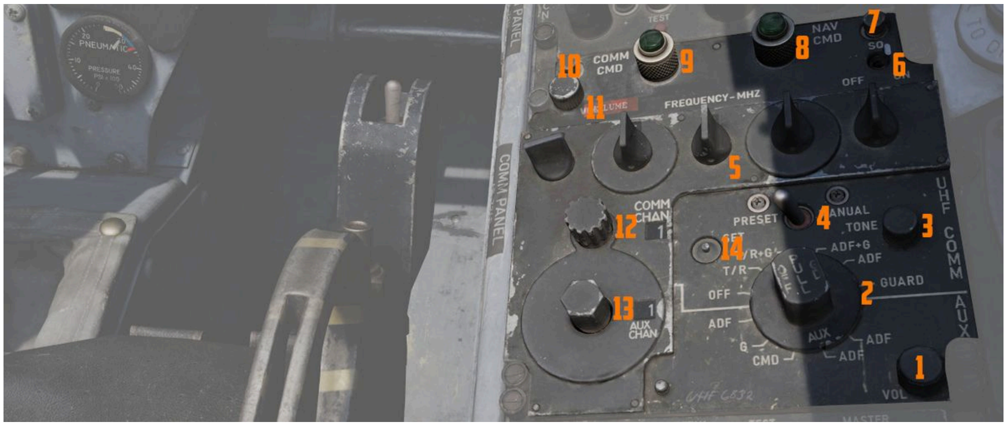
Both the COMM and AUX receivers have the capability to process ADF signals, which can be displayed on the Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI) or Bearing Distance Heading Indicator (BDHI). The AUX frequencies are set by the unit radio maintenance shop, set for the frequencies that are needed for the area of operations. In-Game you can set them through the 9.9 Mission Editor Settings.

Two blade antennas, one upper and one lower, as well as an ADF antenna, are provided. Once the antenna mode is set for the primary channel, the AUX receives signals from the other antenna.

> 💡 The COMM and AUX preset channels and ADF stations may be set in mission editor.

> 💡 The AUX unit is receive-only, you can only use the COMM unit to transmit.

Comm Control Panel



Two Comm Control Panels are installed, found on the right console in the front cockpit, and on the left console in the rear cockpit. These provide management of the radio in either seat, with selectable priority.

For Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) navigation to function effectively, the appropriate receiver must be set to the ADF mode, as selected by the Mode Selector.

Comm Command Button and Light

Control authority of the UHF radio is changed by the COMM CMD button (10). A green light (9) illuminates in the cockpit with control next to the button. Either cockpit can take control, or if already in control, press the button to provide control of the radio to the other seat.

> 💡 Since you can only transmit on the COMM unit, it might be useful to set up the second frequency you want to transmit on in the WSO pit and then use the COMM CMD button to quickly switch between active frequencies.

UHF Volume Control

Sets the listenable volume (**1**) for the UHF radio for the given crew-member.

KY-28 Speech Security Unit

Speech Security Unit KY-28

The UHF communication system is capable of providing either conventional or crypto voice transmission and reception. Both UHF and intercom systems can be used in combination with the KY-28 Speech Security Unit, if so desired in a tactical or hostile environment. The KY-28 can either cipher outgoing voice transmissions or decipher received voice transmissions; however, these functions cannot be performed simultaneously. The crew can choose between plain or cipher mode of operation. In the cipher mode operation the KY-28 converts voice inputs through the microphone into crypto transmissions and deciphers crypto replies that are being received to the crews headsets. In the plain mode operation the UHF functions as a conventional voice transceiver.

KY-28 Controls and Indicators

The KY-28 is controlled by the KY-28 control panel and respectively the conventional UHF or Intercom controls. Both front and rear cockpit instrument panels display mode lights for either mode. If the mode light P is illuminated (1) the KY-28 and UHF/Intercom is operated in plain mode. If the mode light C is illuminated (2) the KY-28 and UHF/intercom is operated in the cipher mode.

KY-28 Control Panel

The KY-28 control panel is in the rear cockpit. It has a power knob, a mode switch and a code zeroize button. The power knob (3) provides power to the KY-28 and can be set to either OFF, ON or RLY (relay). The KY-28 is not powered in the OFF position. It is powered in the ON and RLY positions. If a direct communication between KY units is desired, the ON position is to be selected.

> 💡 RLY would provide the ability to use the KY-28 as a retransmission facility, which is not modeled in DCS.

The mode switch (2) can be set to either P (plain) or C (cipher) operating modes. To change modes the switch has to be pulled outwards. If the KY-28 is powered and the mode switch is set to the C position, the UHF transmitter is automatically selected for front cockpit transmissions. Pressing the zeroize button neutralizes the preset code in the KY-28. The zeroize button (1) is guarded and should only be used in emergencies or after aircraft shutdown if required. As the code can only be set on the ground, pressing the zeroize button during flight makes the cipher mode inoperable for the crew for the remainder of the flight.

> 💡 To permit conventional UHF communications the mode must be set to P (plain) even if the KY-28 power knob is in the OFF position. If the mode is set to C (cipher), conventional UHF communication is

inhibited in both the front and rear cockpit. An exception to this is transmission and reception on guard or aux receivers, as these are not affected by the cipher mode.

KY-28 Modes of Operation

All transmitted and received signals are routed through the KY-28 unit. When the KY-28 mode is set to P (plain), the UHF transceiver operates in the conventional voice manner, whether the KY-28 is powered or not.

To operate the UHF transceiver in the KY-28s C (cipher) mode, the KY-28 has to be powered. When operating in the cipher mode, the KY-28 unit functions in either standby, receive, or transmit.

All KY-28 units remain in the STANDBY condition until either the microphone button is actuated or a sync preamble is received. Once transmission or reception of the crypto message has been completed the KY-28 automatically reverts to the standby condition. While the KY-28 is in the standby condition the radio equipment also functions as a traditional receiver as all incoming non-crypto transmissions are passed directly to the headsets.

The unit switches to the cipher RECEIVE condition whenever a sync preamble is received. The sync preamble is generated by other KY-8, KY-28 or KY-38 units when the transmitting stations operator actuates the microphone switch. The sync preamble ensures that all units in the network are in the cipher receive condition. The enciphered message is received immediately after the sync preamble signal and the message is decoded by the KY-28 and passed to the aircrew headsets in the form of plain language.

When the UHF microphone switch is set to the UHF position, the KY-28 switches to the TRANSMIT condition. The sync preamble signal is transmitted to all receiving KY stations to switch to the cipher receive condition. After actuating the microphone switch, a brief tone is heard in the aircrew headsets. The tone signal indicates that the sync preamble

signal has been completed and transmitted, after which the KY-28 is ready to transmit the crews voice input. When the mic button is released again, the KY-28 reverts to the standby condition. The WSO must select UHF communications with the radio selector switch to transmit ciphered messages. The UHF transmitter is automatically selected for front cockpit transmissions if the KY-28 is operated in mode C.

> 💡 With the C (cipher) mode selected, the transmit condition overrides the cipher receive condition. Hence during cipher receive operation the UHF microphone switch should not be actuated until the incoming message has been completed.

For operations procedure see Chapter KY-28 Operations.

Identification Systems

The aircraft is equipped with a set of interrogator systems AN/APX-76, -80A and -81A, as well as with a transponder to react to interrogations from other aircraft.

The interrogator can be controlled by the WSO with a panel on the left sub-panel. The transponder is set up by the pilot on the right console.

Transponder System

The transponder automatically responds to challenges from surface or airborne radar sets and serves supplementary purposes such as providing momentary identification of position upon request and transmitting a specially coded response to indicate an emergency.

The system operates by receiving coded interrogation signals and transmitting coded response signals to the source of the challenge, with a proper reply indicating the target is friendly.

The system features four modes. Mode 1, Mode 2, and Mode 3/A—are provided for security identification, personal identification, and traffic identification, respectively.

Mode 4 is controlled through the interrogator panel by the WSO. Codes for Modes 1 and 3/A can be set in the cockpit, while the code for Mode 2

must be set on the ground, ranging from 0000 to 7777.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, the settings on the panel have no effect for DCS. However, they are exposed to external tools, such as SRS.

Self Test operation

To self test Modes 2 and 3/A, place the master switch (**1**) to NORM and hold the switch for the desired test mode to the upper position. If the test light on the IFF control panel illuminates, this indicates the mode is operating properly.

Mode 1 and Mode C do not have self testing capabilities.

Normal Operation

To operate the IFF system, start by rotating the master switch (**1**) to STBY. After an approximate 80-second warmup delay, the system receives full power, but interrogations are blocked.

Set the Mode 1, Mode 2, Mode 3/A, Mode 4, and Mode C switches (**6**) as directed, along with the Mode 1 and Mode 3/A code selector switches (**10**) and Mode 4 function switch (**8**). Set the master switch (**1**) to NORM to make the system ready for operation on the selected modes. If the master switch (**1**) is rotated from OFF directly to an operating mode, it also has to go through the warmup period first before it is fully operational.

Interrogation of Position

For Interrogation of Position (I/P) switch operation, place the I/P switch (**9**) in the IDENT position or place it in the MIC position and press the UHF microphone. The IFF system responds with special I/P signals.

If the IFF warning light and MASTER CAUTION light come on momentarily, check the Mode 4 selector switch (**8**) ON and the master

switch (1) NORMAL. Repeated illumination of the MASTER CAUTION light may be stopped only by placing the master switch (1) OFF, resulting in the loss of all IFF capability, or by placing the Mode 4 function switch (8) to ZERO. Before or during flight, if the master switch (1) is placed OFF, the IFF and MASTER CAUTION lights will not illuminate upon interrogation.

Normal IFF operation will be available, after an 80-second warm-up, when the master switch (1) is again placed to NORMAL. If the Mode 4 function switch (8) is placed to ZERO, the IFF light will come on steady, and the MASTER CAUTION may then be reset. Mode 4 will not be available during the remainder of the flight.

Emergency Operation

Upon ejection from either cockpit, the IFF emergency operation automatically becomes active.

If the master switch (1) is in the OFF position before ejection, the system will begin operation after an approximate 80-second delay.

In an emergency, rotate the master switch (1) to EMER. The replies for Modes 1 and 2 are special emergency signals of the codes selected on the applicable dials, while Mode 3/A replies are special emergency signals of code 7700.

Interrogator Systems

The Phantom combines three systems, AN/APX-76, -80A and -81A, for interrogating and challenging other aircraft to detect whether they are friend or foe.

The AN/APX-76 system enables regular interrogation with friendly transponder systems.

Further, the US reverse-engineered some Soviet transponder systems actively used between 1960 and 1980 enough to be able to develop the spoofing system AN/APX-81A *Combat-Tree*. Combat-Tree sends compatible interrogation requests to Soviet systems which they would identify as friendly systems, hence sending back a valid response. This allows the Phantom to not only identify friendly systems, but also some likely-hostile aircraft.

> 💡 Soviets quickly realized the problem and patched their IFF transponder systems, while also encrypting the communication to prevent another breach.

Operation

Controls are combined on a panel, accessible to the WSO on the left sub-panel area.

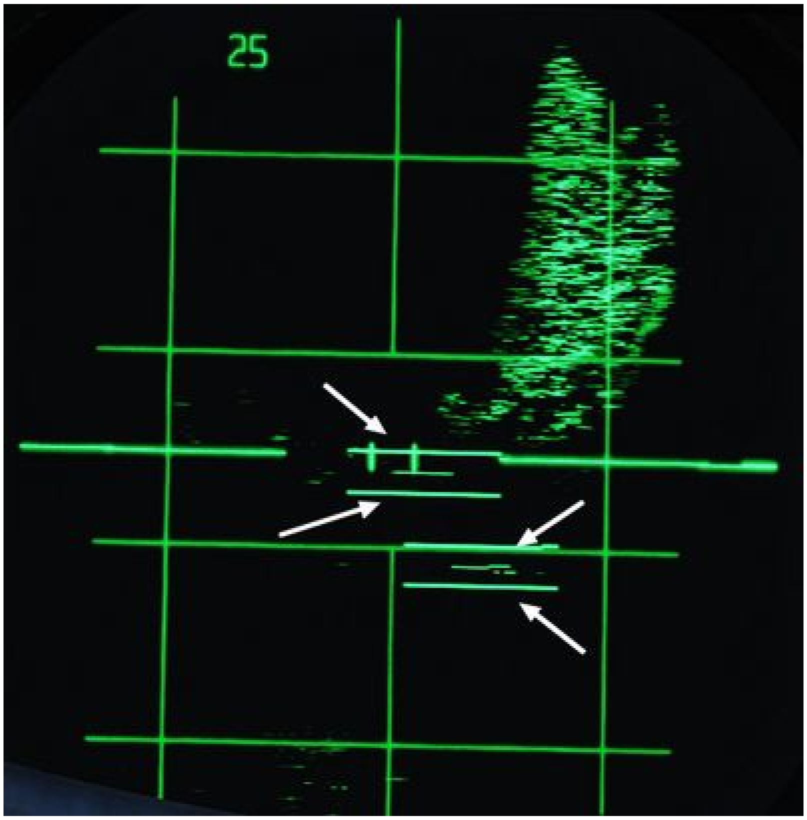
The interrogation mode is set on the first roller-display and can be set to OFF or Mode 1, 2, 3, 4/A or 4/B.

> 💡 In DCS, only Mode 4 (either A or B) is effective and can be used for interrogation.

The other four digits are used to set the IFF code to interrogate for Modes 1 to 3.

Once setup, interrogation can be initiated by pressing the Challenge Button on the Antenna Hand Control Stick.

The radar screen will now display lines above and below a radar return if it was able to detect that a contact is friendly. A single line is shown above the return if the transponder is set to a compatible mode, but the code differs. This is usually the case for civilian aircraft.



> 🚧 The Combat-Tree system will be made available later during Early-Access.

Indications

Challenge Lights

The control panel features two lamps that indicate active interrogation by either interrogation system:

- TEST/CHAL lamp in lower left corner - active APX-81A Combat-Tree Interrogation
- CHAL lamp in upper right corner - active APX-76 Interrogation

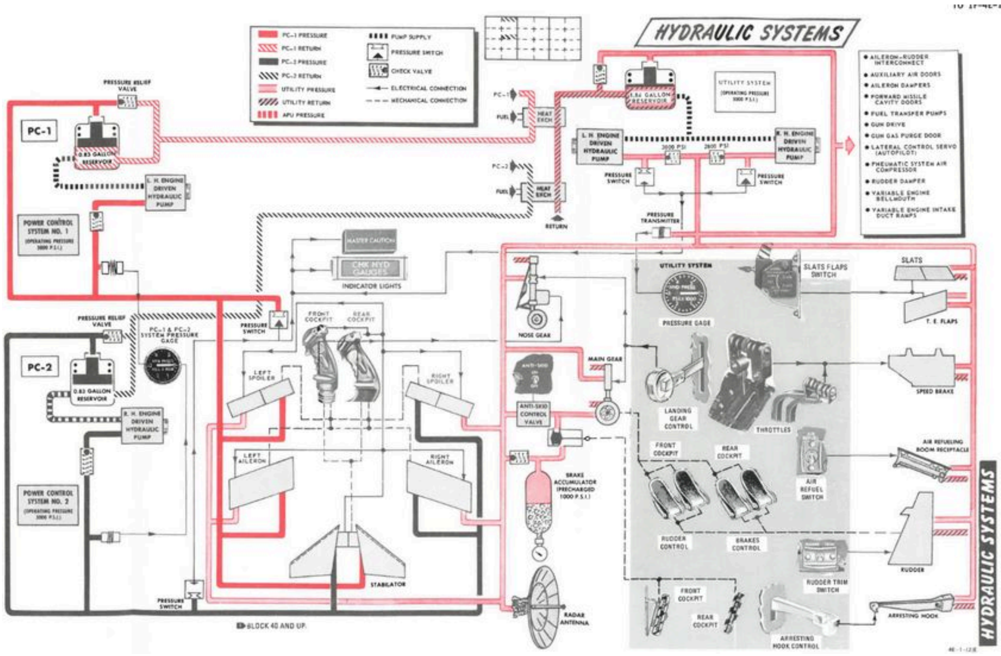
Activity Lights

Right next to either AoA Indexer in the WSO cockpit is a light that indicates activity detected by the APX-81A Combat Tree system.

Illuminated each time the system detects IFF responses by hostile aircraft.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, the activity lights are not simulated in-game.

Hydraulics



The hydraulic power system of the F-4E consists of three, completely independent, closed hydraulic systems:

- Power Control System 1 (PC-1)
- Power Control System 2 (PC-2)
- Utility System

The systems have an operating pressure of approximately 3000 psi and are pressurized any time the engines are running.

Ailerons, spoilers, and the stabilator have two hydraulic actuators. The PC systems are the primary hydraulic delivery to the flight control systems, with PC-1 powering the left side of the aircraft, and PC-2 powering the right; these supply pressure to one of the two actuators on each flight control surface. PC-1 is using left engine pump and PC-2 is using right engine pump.

The Utility Hydraulic System is pressurized by a hydraulic pump on each engine. To prevent the utility hydraulic pumps from resonating, check valves with different operating pressures are installed on the pump

output lines. As a result, the right engine utility hydraulic pump will deliver 2775 ±225 psi at idle rpm, and the left engine utility hydraulic pump will deliver approximately 3000 ±250 psi at idle rpm. The Utility System supplies hydraulic pressure to all aircraft systems (which need hydraulic pressure) except the stabilator actuator. It drives the second actuator on every flight control surface (except stabilator), acting as both a power assist and backup.

The first stabilator actuator is powered through PC-1 and the second one by PC-2. Additionally on aircraft after *TO 1F-4-903*, an Stabilator Auxiliary Power Unit (APU) is installed to provide backup hydraulic pressure for longitudinal control. An electrically driven hydraulic pump pressurizes the APU system to 1700 ±100 psi. The APU supplies pressure to the PC-1 side of the stabilator if PC-1 pressure drops below 1000 psi.

> 💡 The PC-1, PC-2, and Utility hydraulic system are independent of each other; therefore, each aileron and spoiler has two independent sources of hydraulic pressure and one system functions as a backup for the other.

Hydraulic Pressure Indicators

On the pedestal panel in the front cockpit is a pair of Hydraulic Pressure Indicators. One for the PC systems and the other for the Utility system.

The PC system gauge has two pointers, labeled PC-1 and PC-2. Nominal operating power for all three systems is 3000 ±250 PSI.

Hydraulic Systems Indicator Lights

In the event of a pressure loss on PC-1 or PC-2 or the Utility system below 1500 PSI, or a detected definite pump failure, CHK HYD GAGES will illuminate on the telelight panel along with the Master Caution warning.

> 💡 In the event of a Utility system failure on the right side, no apparent pressure loss will be shown to underline the illumination of the CHK HYD GAGES light, whereas a left side failure will show a loss of 200 PSI or more on the Utility system pressure indicator. In any case, if the pressure recovers back to above 1750 PSI, the CHK HYD GAGES light will turn off. In the event of a Utility system failure on the right side, no apparent pressure loss will display to match the CHK HYD GAGES light, whereas a left side failure will show a loss of 200 PSI or more on the Utility system pressure indicator.

With a CHK HYD GAGES warning, the Master Caution can be cleared by resetting; however, be aware that if the CHK HYD GAGES light is still on at that certain moment, a subsequent hydraulic system failure will not re-trigger the Master Caution warning, with the consequence of not taking notice.

Also, the Master Caution and CHK HYD GAGES lights can illuminate momentarily during extension of the landing gear, or during intense maneuvering due to system load. In such situations, check the pressure indicators: should they return to nominal values, disregard the warnings as they will reset momentarily.

Technical Sergeant (TSGT) Rossell Powell of the 347th Electronic Maintenance Squadron finds a leaking hydraulic connection on an F-4 Phantom II aircraft during an aircraft battle damage repair exercise

Pneumatics

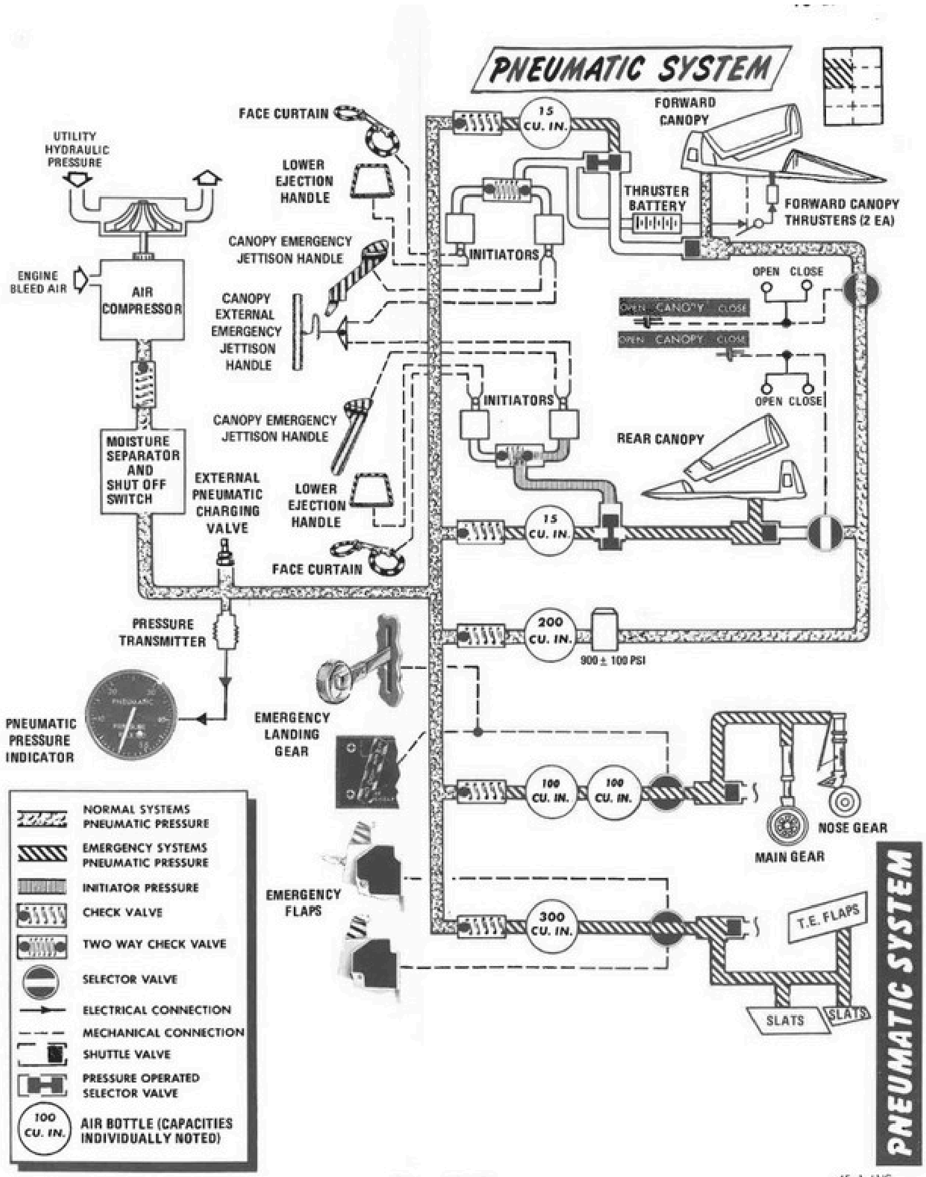


Figure FO-6

The pneumatic system provides high pressure air for the normal and emergency operation of the canopies, and the emergency operation of the landing gear and slats flaps. Air for the pneumatic system is drawn from the engine bleed air supply, via the electronic equipment cooling system, and is compressed by a hydraulic motor driven air compressor. A pneumatic pressure sensor in the system moisture separator opens a

hydraulic shutoff valve, to activate the air compressor, when the system pressure falls below 2750 +50 -0 psi. When the pneumatic system pressure builds to 3100 +100 -50 psi, the pneumatic pressure sensor closes the hydraulic shutoff valve which de-activates the air compressor. Normal system pressure range is from 2650 to 3300 psi due to pressure transmitter and pressure gage tolerances.

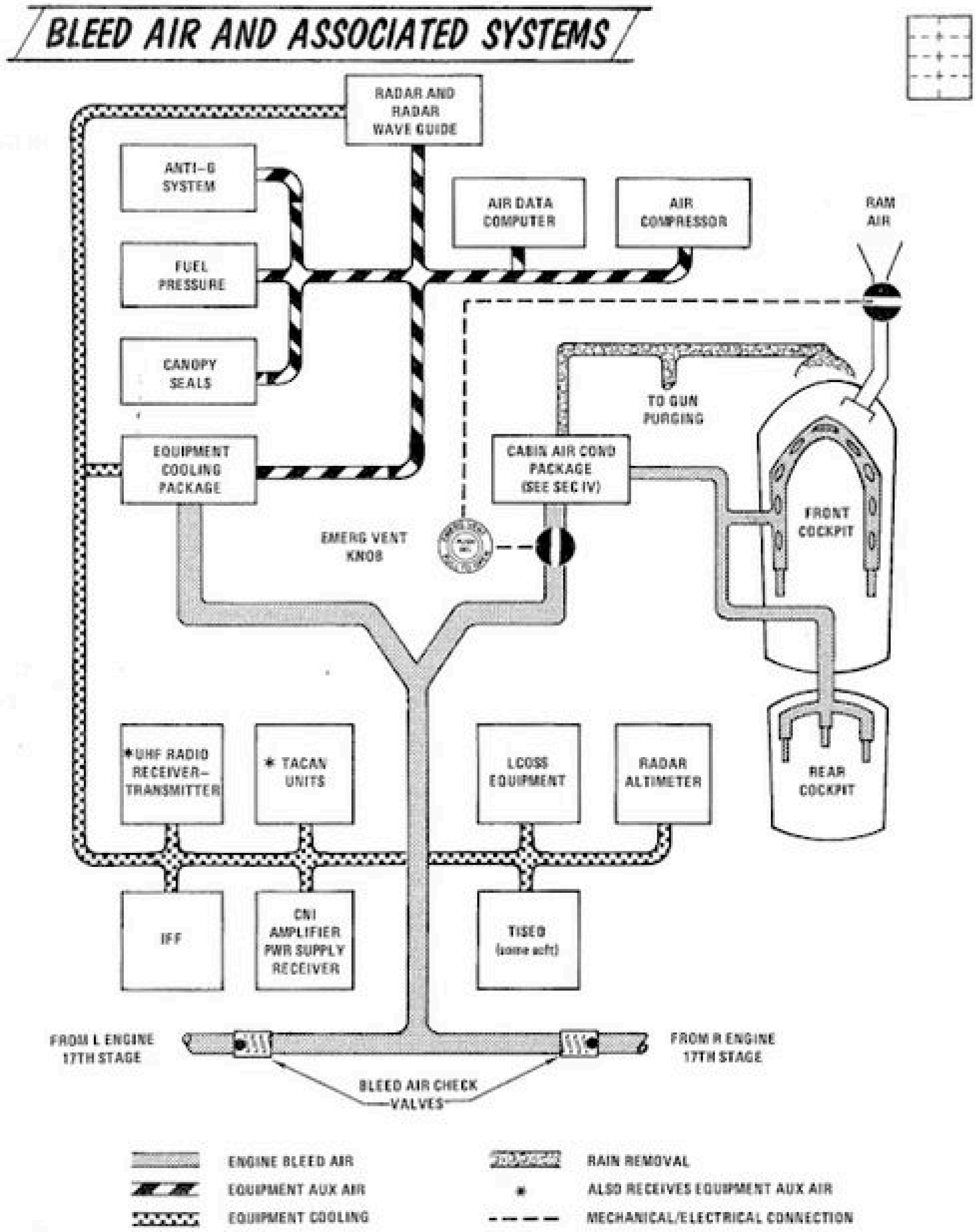
The pressurized air from the air compressor is then fed into the different tanks which can supply it to several systems:

- Canopies
- Landing gear (in emergency mode)
- Slats and flaps (in emergency mode)

A Pneumatic Pressure Indicator is found on the front cockpit pedestal panel. It indicates manifold pressure of the system.

Bleed Air System

The bleed air system supplies high temperature, high pressure air from the engines to the boundary layer control system (on aircraft without slats), the cabin air conditioning system, and the fuel cell pressurization system. Control of the bleed air flow, temperature and pressure is initiated and regulated by the requirements of each system. The system utilizes engine compressor bleed air tapped off the 17th stage compressor. Normally, both engines supply the air for the operation of these systems, but when necessary, single engine operation will supply sufficient air for their operation.


BLEED AIR AND ASSOCIATED SYSTEMS
RADAR AND RADAR WAVE GUIDE
ANTI-G SYSTEM
FUEL PRESSURE
CANOPY SEALS
EQUIPMENT COOLING PACKAGE
AIR DATA COMPUTER
AIR COMPRESSOR
RAM AIR
TO GUN PURGING
CABIN AIR COND PACKAGE (SEE SEC IV)
FRONT COCKPIT
REAR COCKPIT
EMERG VENT KNOB
*UHF RADIO RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER
* TACAN UNITS
LCOSS EQUIPMENT
RADAR ALTIMETER
IFF
CNI AMPLIFIER PWR SUPPLY RECEIVER
TISEO (some acft)
FROM L ENGINE 17TH STAGE
FROM R ENGINE 17TH STAGE
BLEED AIR CHECK VALVES
ENGINE BLEED AIR
EQUIPMENT AUX AIR
EQUIPMENT COOLING
RAIN REMOVAL
* ALSO RECEIVES EQUIPMENT AUX AIR
MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Utility Systems

Oxygen System

Aircrew breathing oxygen is provided with a 10-liter liquid oxygen bottle. A regulator panel is found on the left side in each cockpit - on the console in the front cockpit, and the left sub-panel in the rear. Flow is initiated in each cockpit using the Supply Lever (6) found on the regulator panel. Oxygen flow is confirmed using the Flow Indicator (3), which alternates from black to white for each breath (white indicates inhalation). Supply pressure and remaining volume is confirmed using the Oxygen Pressure (7) and Oxygen Quantity gauges (2) found in both cockpits.

A detailed chart of the Oxygen duration is provided here:

OXYGEN DURATION CHART

COCKPIT ALTITUDE FEET	OXYGEN DURATION-HOURS — GAGE QUANTITY-LITERS										
	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	BELOW 1
35,000 and UP	24.3 24.3	21.8 21.8	19.4 19.4	17.0 17.0	14.6 14.6	12.1 12.1	9.7 9.7	7.2 7.2	4.8 4.8	2.4 2.4	·EMERGENCY· DESCEND TO ALTITUDE NOT REQUIRING OXYGEN
30,000	17.8 18.0	16.0 16.2	14.2 14.4	12.5 12.6	10.7 10.8	8.9 9.0	7.1 7.2	5.3 5.4	3.5 3.6	1.7 1.8	
25,000	13.7 17.0	12.3 15.3	10.9 13.6	9.6 11.9	8.2 10.2	6.8 8.5	5.4 6.8	4.1 5.1	2.7 3.4	1.3 1.7	
20,000	10.3 19.2	9.3 17.2	8.3 15.3	7.2 13.4	6.2 11.4	5.1 9.6	4.1 7.6	3.1 5.7	2.0 3.8	1.0 1.9	
15,000	8.3 23.4	7.4 21.0	6.7 18.7	5.8 16.4	5.0 13.9	4.1 11.7	3.3 9.3	2.5 7.0	1.6 4.6	.8 2.3	
10,000	6.7 23.4	6.0 21.0	5.3 18.7	4.7 16.4	4.1 13.9	3.3 11.7	2.6 9.3	2.0 7.0	1.3 4.6	.6 2.3	

- UPPER FIGURES INDICATE DILUTER LEVER–100% OXYGEN
- LOWER FIGURES INDICATE DILUTER LEVER–NORMAL OXYGEN

Note

- THE DURATION TIME IS DOUBLED WHEN ONLY ONE CREWMEMBER IS USING OXYGEN
- DURATION FIGURES BASED ON OXYGEN REQUIREMENT RATES GIVEN IN MIL–D–19326E.
- OXYGEN DURATION INCREASES AS COCKPIT ALTITUDE INCREASES BECAUSE THERE IS LESS AMBIENT PRESSURE ACTING UPON THE LUNGS AT ALTITUDE THAN AT SEA LEVEL. THEREFORE, A SMALLER QUANTITY OF OXYGEN AT ALTITUDE WILL EXPAND THE LUNGS TO THE SAME SIZE THAT THEY WERE AT SEA LEVEL.

Canopies

The canopies are actuated by the pneumatic system. They are controlled independently between the two cockpits; handle for standard opening and closing is found on the left side of each cockpit, next to it there is the yellow and black emergency jettison handle. On the right side of the cockpit, in the same relative position, is the manual unlock lever which can be used to unlock the canopy in case of pneumatic system failure.

Each cockpit employs an inflatable canopy seal to seal the canopies for cockpit pressurization. The canopy seals are automatically inflated and deflated upon opening and closing of the canopies by using bleed air system.

Windshield Rain Removal

To clear precipitation, placing the Rain Removal Switch to ON will direct bleed air from the air conditioning system to an external vent below the windshield, breaking up rain water into smaller drops and blowing them off of the windshield. The system does increase the temperature of the windscreen, and may cause a WINDSHIELD TEMP HI lamp along with the MASTER CAUTION to illuminate. In this situation, the temperature is nearing that of optical distortion, and must be set to OFF immediately.

Due to high Mach frictional heating of the windscreen, the WINDSHIELD TEMP HI lamp can also illuminate with the system off; in that event, the warning can be disregarded.

Electrics

The F-4E derives electrical power from a pair of AC generators driven by the J79 engines, a pair of AC to DC transformers, and a battery for electrical functions with the engines offline. In addition, the Phantom II can receive external electrical power from ground crew. The two generator arrangement, while normally working independently, includes a bus tie that can connect both buses together to draw power from a single generator in case of failure.

Generator Indicator Lights

Three warning indicators are found on the generator indicator panel: LH GEN OUT, RH GEN OUT, and BUS TIE OPEN. The respective GEN OUT warning will illuminate in the event the generator in question fails. The indication of BUS TIE OPEN is an acknowledgement that a single functioning generator is providing power to the entire aircraft. In the event of a generator failure, the Master Caution will also illuminate. However, in case both generators fail, no GEN OUT light will illuminate.

Generator Control Switches

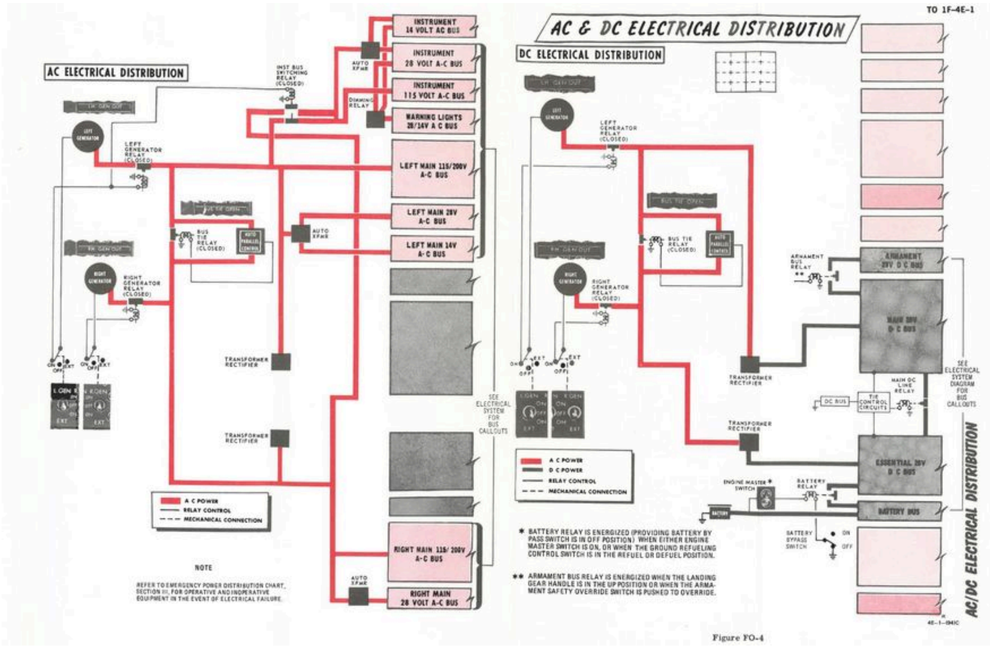
A pair of Generator Control Switches are found on the right console, one for each engine. These three position switches - ON (Forward), OFF, ON External (Aft) - control the state of each respective generator. In the event of a possible generator failure, selecting OFF for the generator that is believed to be offline will cause the power bus to provide electricity from the remaining generator to the other half of the electrical system. The External On setting is used for ground handling purposes when connected to external power, and provides electric power to all instruments, except the CNI and the AFCS.

Instrument Ground Power Switch

Power from an external source to the instrument buses (115/200 volt ac, 28 volt ac, and 14 volt ac), can be provided by the Instrument Ground

Power Switch (1) (if the generator switches are set to EXT ON), found on the right wall in the rear cockpit. Once external electrical power is disengaged or an engine generator comes online, it will switch off.

Bus System



The battery and generators power several buses which then route current to the relevant systems:

- Left Main AC Bus
- Right Main AC Bus
- Instrument AC Bus
- Warning Light AC Bus
- Main DC Bus
- Essential DC Bus
- Armament DC Bus
- Battery Bus

Circuit Breakers

From the buses, power is first routed through Circuit Breakers before they reach the actual systems.

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, CBs in the WSO cockpit are currently not accessible.

Most circuit breakers are placed in the WSO pit on either wall, with the exception of one panel in the pilot pit, housing breakers for the flight control surfaces and similar crucial systems.

Pilot Panel

Located on the right wall of the pilot cockpit, this panel contains seven circuit breakers responsible for flight control surfaces and other systems important for safe operation of the aircraft.

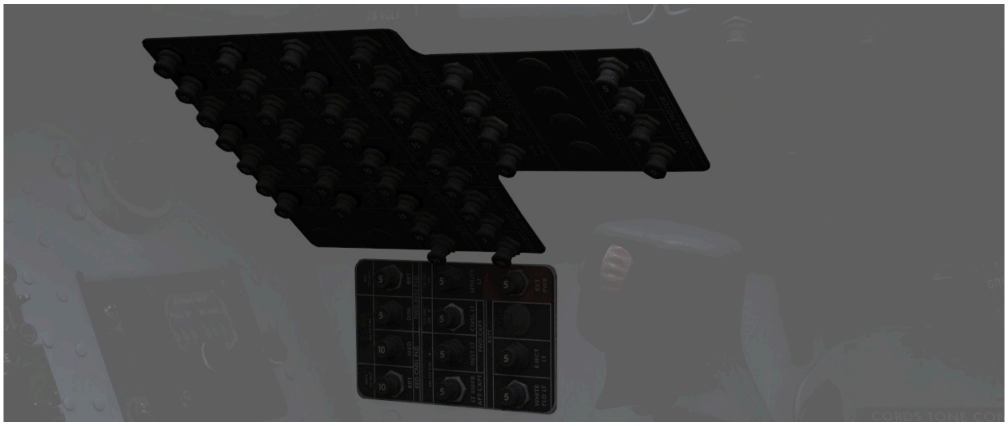
- AIL Feel-Trim (**1**)
- STAB Feel-Trim (**2**)
- Speed Brake (**3**)
- Landing Gear (**4**)
- Flaps (**5**)
- Trim Controls (**6**)
- Rudder Trim (**7**)

Lighting Panel

Hidden behind a bundle of cables to the right of the telelight panel in the Pilot cockpit are two circuit breakers controlling lights.

The upper one (1) is responsible for powering the primary instrument lights, while the lower (2) circuit breaker powers all indicator and warning lights.

CB Panel 1



Front section of right wall in WSO cockpit.

Has the circuit breakers for all stations, the armament and weapon system.

CB Panel 2

Center section of right wall in WSO cockpit.

Mostly responsible for Engine and Hydraulics operation.

CB Panel 3

Aft section of right wall in WSO cockpit.

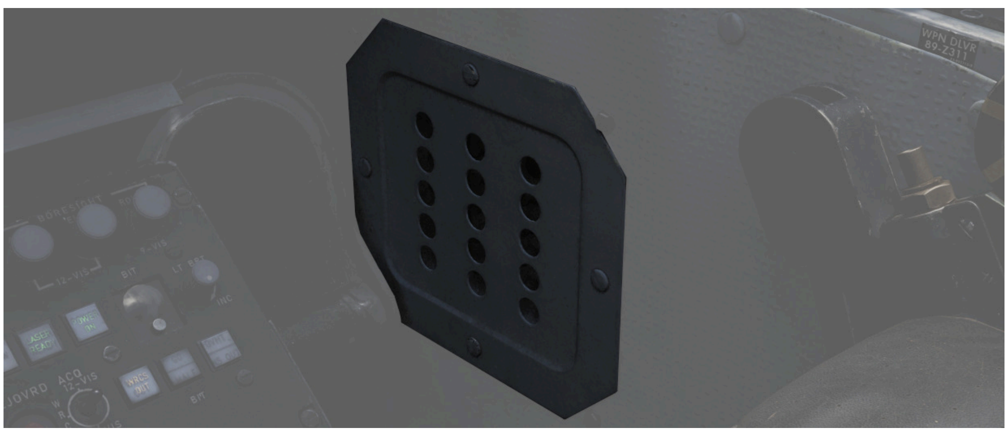
Contains breakers for auxiliary functions, such as Anti-Icing or the Arresting Hook.

CB Panel 4

Aft section of left wall in WSO cockpit.

Master controls of power coming through all buses, the flight computer and targeting pod.

CB Panel 7



Next to the right rudder pedal in WSO cockpit.

Hidden behind a cover, this panel houses all breakers for the ECM and Jamming equipment.

Failures and Emergency Power Distribution

In the event of damage to the Airplane and loss of either the left and/or right generator, as well as the Main 28 Volt DC Bus there are several different systems that are inoperative for the respective bus.

Left Hand Generator Out - Bus Tie Open

If the left-hand generator stops working the following systems won't work:

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
Anti-Ice System	AN/ARW 77 (Used to fire AGM-12 Bullpup)
Anti-Skid System	Anti-Collision Light (one filament)
Afterburner Ignition	DSCG
INS Heater	ECM Pods
Landing light	Equipment cooling (e.g. Pave Spike)
	Fuselage lights
	Front Cockpit console lights
	Front Cockpit red instrument floodlights (DIM)
	Lead Computing Optical Sight
	Left-hand 28V Transformer
	Left-hand fuel boost pump
	Left-hand missile firing
	Left-hand missile power
	Left-hand transformer rectifier
	No. 4 Electrical fuel transfer pump
	Nose gun
	Radar
	Radar Scope Camera
	Red console floodlights
	Right-hand missile power

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
	Seat adjust
	AGM-45 Shrike guidance
	Target designator (Pave Spike)
	Utility light
	Utility Power AC
	Wing and Tail light DIM
	WRCS Power

Right Hand Generator Out - Bus Tie Open

If the right-hand generator stops working the following systems do not work:

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
Airspeed Pitot Heater	ADF
AOA Probe Heater	Aileron feel trim
Bellmouth Pitot Heater	Aileron rudder interconnect
Cockpit heat and venting	ALR-46 Radar Warning System
Fuel quantity indicator	Altitude Encoder
IFF	Anti-Collision light (one filament)
Rear cockpit ci heading pointer	APR-36/37 Radar Receiver
TACAN	APX 80 Air-to-Air IFF
VOR: Bearing Pointers	Armament power
	Autopilot
	Auxiliary receiver
	CADC
	ECM Pods
	Formation lights
	Front cockpit instrument lights
	Gunsight Camera
	In-Flight-Refuel (IFR) receptacle floodlights

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
	Left Engine ramp control
	No.6 Electric fuel transfer pump
	Oxygen Gage
	Radar altimeter
	Right Engine ramp control
	Right-hand 28V transformer
	Right-hand fuel boost pump
	Right-hand transformer rectifier
	Stability augmentation
	Taxi light
	Windshield temp sensing
	Wing and Tail Light BRT

Main 28 Volt DC Bus Out

If the Main 28 Volt DC Bus stops working the following systems do not work:

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
Anti-Skid	ACM IN-RANGE and SHOOT lights
Bus Tie Relay (BUS TIE OPEN light ON)	ADF
Cockpit heat and venting	Aileron Rudder Interconnect
Internal wing fuel dump	Airborne Video Tape Recorder (AVTR)
Landing and Taxi lights	ALE-40 Countermeasure Dispenser
Nose Wheel Steering	Altimeter Vibrator
TACAN	APR-36/37 Radar Receiver
Turn & Slip Indicator (Rear Cockpit)	APX 80 A/A IFF
	Arresting Hook (only the up operation)
	AUX Air doors

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
	AUX receiver
	Conventional Weapons Release
	Combat Documentation Cameras
	DSCG
	ECM Control
	ECM Pods
	Engine Variable Bellmouth
	Equipment cooling control
	Fuselage, Anti-Collision and Tail lights
	Gunsight Camera
	Lead Computing Optical Sight
	Left-hand fuel boost pump
	Missile firing
	No.4 Electrical fuel transfer pump
	No.6 Electrical fuel transfer pump
	Nose Gun
	Pneumatic compressor
	Radar
	Radar Altimeter
	Rain Removal
	Radar Scope Camera
	Right-hand Fuel boost pump
	Rudder Trim/Bellmouth control
	Speed brake
	Special Weapons Centerline Interlock Arm
	Station select and Station select lights

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
	Stabilator Position indicator
	Target Designator (Pave Spike)
	Utility power
	VGH Recorder Power
	Walleye indent power
	Warning lights (DIM)
	WRCS Power

Battery Power Only

If only Battery Power is available the following systems will still work:

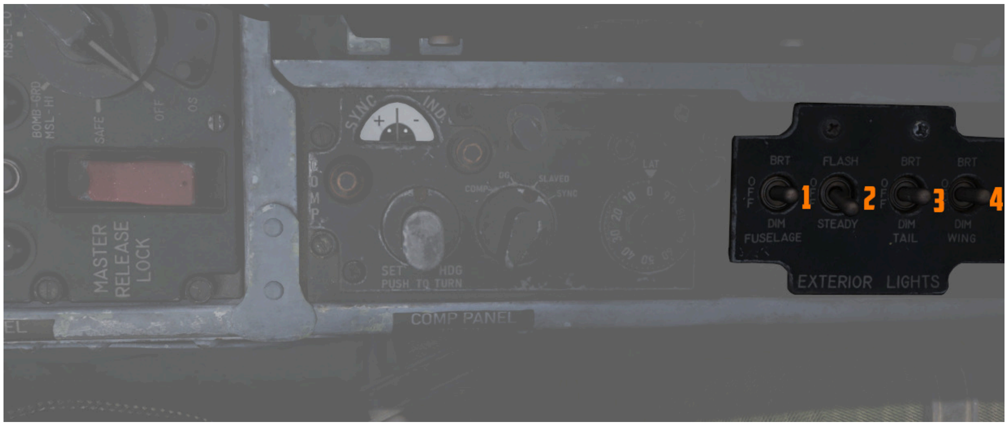
Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
AOA Indicator	All Stores EMER jettison
EGT Indicators	AOA Aural Tone Generator
Ejection Light	Fuel Control
EMER Attitude Indicator	Fuel Valve Power
Engine Fire and Overheat Detection (Test Functions)	Front Cockpit Instrument Floodlights (BRT)
External Wing Fuel transfer (Control)	Guard Receiver
Flaps/Slats control	KY-28
Flaps/Slats Position Indicator	Missile Fairing
Fuel Quantity Indicator	Missile Jettison
In-Flight-Refueling	Nozzle Position Indicator
ILS: CDI, Glide Slope Indicators, Audio, Marker Beacon	Outboard Station jettison
Intercom	Special Weapons Centerline Interlock Safe
Internal Wing Fuel transfer (Control)	Special Weapons Unlock
Landing Gear Control	Trim Control
Landing Gear Position Indicator	

Critical Systems	*Non-Critical Systems*
Left and Right Main Ignition	
Stabilator Feel Trim	
VOR: CDI, TO-From and Audio	
White Flood light	

Lighting Equipment

Exterior Lighting

Exterior lights on the F-4E include position lights found on the wings and tail, join-up lights on the wings, fuselage lights, the anti collision light, and the inflight refueling receptacle light; the control for these are found on the right console. Additional in-flight lighting is provided by the formation lights, which have a separate set of controls above the right console. Further lighting is available for landing and taxi when the gear are lowered, and the controls for these are found on the left sub-panel.

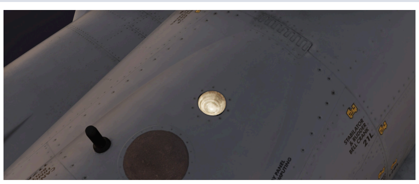
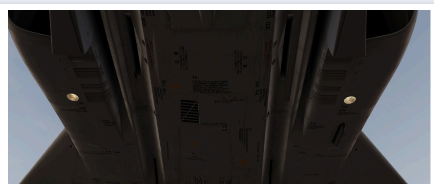


Pilot Exterior Lighting Panel

Position and Join-Up Lights

The wing and join-up lights are controlled by a single switch, with options for OFF, DIM, and BRT. These lights do not have a flash function. The tail light is controlled by the Flasher Switch in STEADY or FLASH position.

Anti-Collision and Fuselage Lights

Fuselage lights on top	Fuselage lights on bottom
	

Three white anti-collision lights are found behind the rear cockpit canopy, and one below each of the engine intakes.

A red anti-collision light is found on the vertical stabilizer.

These are all controlled by the three position FUS switch (1), which can be set to OFF, DIM, and BRT. The red light on the stabilizer only illuminates when this switch is selected to BRT. The fuselage lights only function with the Flasher Switch in STEADY or FLASH, and cycle when in the latter setting.

Landing and Taxi Lights

The landing and taxi lights are found on the nose gear door, and only illuminate when the gear are in the down position.

In-Flight-Refueling Receptacle Lights

To assist operators with boom alignment, lights illuminating the IFR receptacle will power on when it is raised by placing the Air Refuel Switch into EXTEND.

Formation Lights

Electroluminescent formation lighting is found along the fuselage, wing tips, and vertical stabilizer. These are activated using the control panel above the right console, and have options for ON, OFF, and MOM (for momentary).

Interior Lighting

Interior lighting consists of several floodlights, panel back-lighting, gauge edge lighting, and several dimmable warning and indicator lamps.

Both cockpits are fully night-capable and have separate controls for adjusting brightness.

Most controls for interior lighting can be found at the aft end of the right consoles.

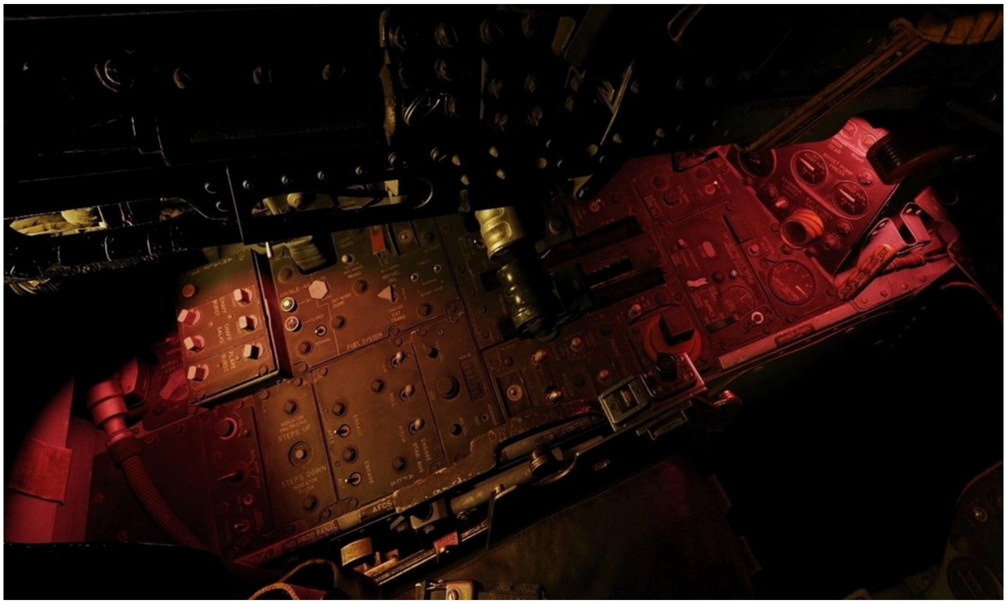
<table>
<tr><th>Pilot</th><th>WSO</th></tr>
<tr><td>


</td><td>


</td></tr>
</table>

Floodlights

For general cockpit illumination, the aircraft features several red floodlights and also a battery-powered white floodlight.



White Floodlight

The White Floodlight switch (1 Pilot, 4 WSO) acts independent of all other controls on the panel, and is either ON or OFF. It activates a separate emergency floodlight (also called *Thunderstorm Light*) that illuminates the cockpit in white. The lamp is energized through the Battery Bus to ensure it is always operational, even in case of total power loss.

> 🟡 CAUTION: Do not forget to turn off the light before parking the aircraft for a longer time, as it will otherwise drain the battery.

Red Floodlights

Red floodlights can be switched individually for the consoles and the instrument panel. Controls are found on the right console and the right wall.

💡 The WSO has no controls for the instrument floodlight. The light is also controlled by the pilots switch on the right wall.

All three positions of the switches are powered by different buses to ensure maximal availability:

Lamp	Bus
Bright	Essential 28V DC Bus
Medium	Left Main 14V AC Bus
Dim	Left Main 115V AC Bus

💡 Floodlights are turned off by selecting the DIM position and moving the Console Brightness knob to OFF.

Panel Lighting

To ensure that all panels and gauges are readable during night, back- and edge-lighting can be enabled by either crew-member individually for the consoles and instrument panel.

Controls are located on the right console.

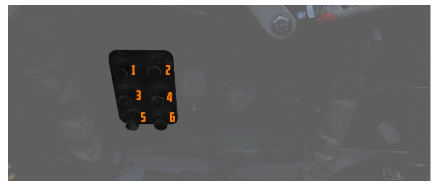
Console lighting is provided by the Left Main 115V AC bus, while instrument panel lighting is powered through the Right Main 115V AC bus.

Flight Instrument Lighting

Additionally to general panel lighting, the brightness for the following six flight instruments can be controlled individually by the pilot using the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob on the front panel, and the six knobs on the right wall.

- AoA Indicator

- Airspeed Indicator
- HSI
- ADI
- VVI
- Altimeter

Flight Instrument Brightness	Flight Instrument Light Intensity
	

The Flight Brightness Knob acts as master control. On the fully CCW position, lighting of all six instruments is turned off.

The knobs on the wall can be used to tweak brightness for instruments individually, where the fully CCW position turns them off and moving the knob CW progressively increases brightness until it reaches the level dictated by the Flight Brightness Knob.

> 💡 The WSO has no controls for the instrument lighting. Instead, the brightness is also controlled by the pilots knobs.

> 🚧 The flight instrument lighting is currently linked to the Instrument Panel Knob on the right console instead. The correct controls will be made available later during Early-Access.

Warning and Indicator Brightness

Additionally to controlling Flight Instrument Brightness, the pilots Flight Brightness Knob also controls the intensity of all warning and indicator lamps in both cockpits.

In the fully CCW position, all indications are given at full brightness. Moving the knob out of this position will result in dimmed lamp intensity. No variable brightness setting is available.

Some lamps, such as the Fire and Overheat lights are excluded from the circuit and will always show at full brightness.

> 💡 Warning and Indicator lamps can not be turned off fully, only a bright or dimmed setting is available.

> 💡 The SHOOT lights have no dimmed setting and are turned off entirely when the knob is moved out of the fully CCW position.

Rotate-To-Dim Lamps

Both cockpits feature multiple lamps that can be dimmed individually by rotating the lamp. Rotation will move a shutter in front of the lamp, resulting in a reduced intensity.

Some of those lamps can also be pushed-to-test.

For the pilot, these lamps include:

Name	Location
CMS Indicator	Left Console
Flare Indicator	Left Console
Recorder	Left Sub-Panel
Marker Beacon	Flight Director Group
Pull-Up	Overhead Indicators
KY-28 Mode P	Right Sub-Panel
KY-28 Mode C	Right Sub-Panel
Radio Command	Right Console
TACAN Command	Right Console
IFF Reply	Right Console

Name	Location
IFF Test	Right Console

The WSO cockpit has the following rotate-to-dim lamps:

Name	Location
Radio Command	Left Console
TACAN Command	Left Console
Chaff Indicator	Left Console
Flare Indicator	Left Console
APX Challenge	Left Sub-Panel
Combat-Tree Challenge	Left Sub-Panel
Marker Beacon	Upfront Indicators
KY-28 Mode P	Upfront Indicators
KY-28 Mode C	Upfront Indicators
INS Align	Right Console
INS Heat	Right Console

Other

Some panels and systems have individual lighting controls not tied to the general console or instrument brightness knobs.

For the pilot, these additional brightness controls are:

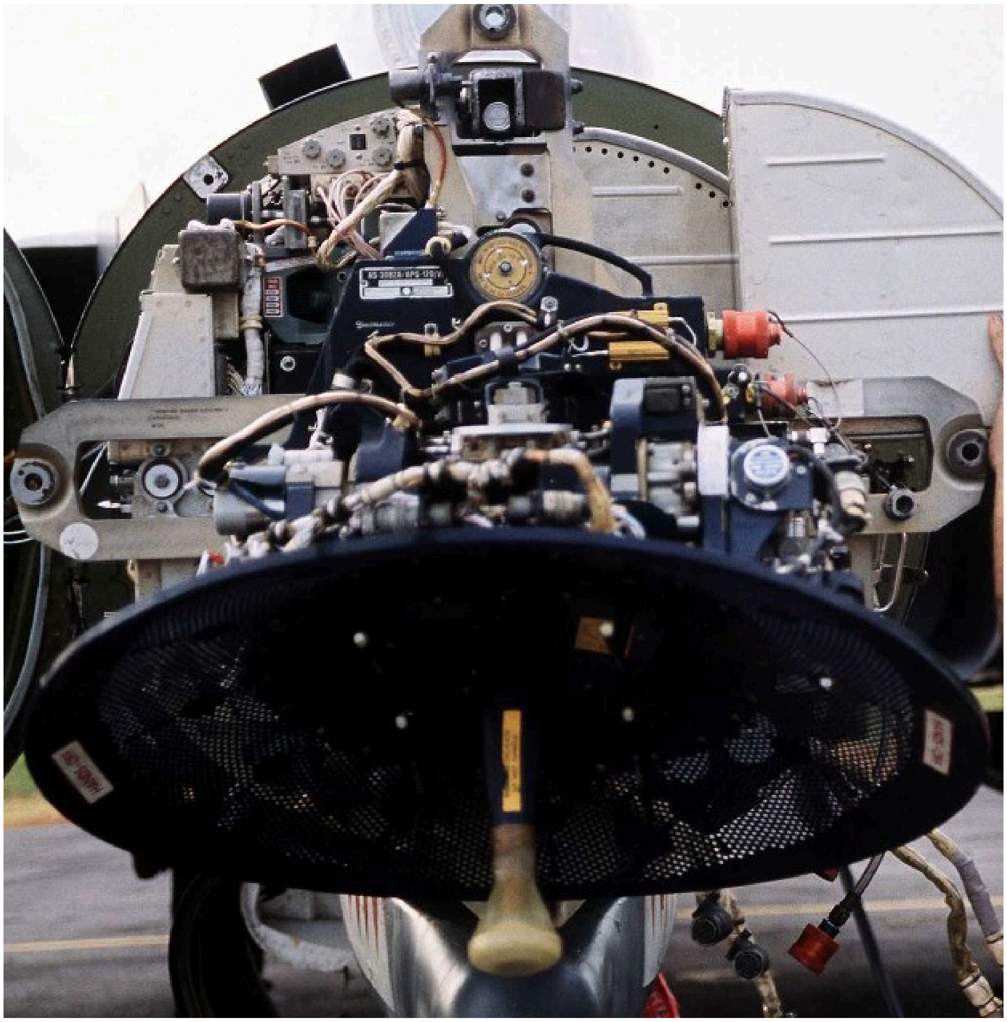
Name	Location
SAI	Left Wall
Station Lamps	Weapon Management
Range Indicator Display	Weapon Management
HUD Reticle	DSCG Controls
DSCG Screen	DSCG Controls
DSCG Scale	DSCG Controls
RWR Display	Right Main Panel
RWR Buttons	Right Main Panel
Standby Compass Light	Right Console
AoA Indexer	Right Wall

While the WSOs brightness controls are as follows:

Name	Location
RWR Display	Upfront Indicators
RWR Buttons	Upfront Indicators
Standby Compass Light	Right Console
AoA Indexer	Right Console
DSCG Screen	Pedestal Group
DSCG Scale	Pedestal Group
Pave Spike Reticle	Pedestal Group
Pave Spike Panel	Pedestal Group

Radar system

"I'll tell you what, it's got a fine radar inside, the APQ-120, you can get a skin paint on a skeeter 200 miles, or a stealth fighter."



A technician works on the AN/APQ-120(V) fire control radar in the nose of a 3rd Tactical Fighter Wing F-4E Phantom II aircraft

The Westinghouse AN/APQ-120 Fire Control Radar, a continuation of the F-4C's -100 and the 4D's 109, is a solid state pulse radar providing the F-4E with air to air intercept functionality, air to ground mapping, ground target reference provision to the LABS and WRCS bombing systems, as well as radar beacon capability. The APQ-120 also functions

as the display system for TISEO and TV guided weapon imagery, and is integrated with the APX-80 interrogation system.

The primary conversion from the APQ-109 to APQ-120 included a reduction in the number of field replaceable units in the nose, as well as the reduction in their size; whereas the -109 had been a hybrid in its movement towards solid state hardware (primarily in the low voltage processing sections), the 120 was a fully solid-state system. While this update reduced the space overhead and weight for the system, the modification of the F-4 nose to include the M61 cannon required a reduction in antenna size, causing a marginal decrease in overall detection range. However, when taken with the increase in system reliability and reduced maintenance, the tradeoff was considered acceptable.

Starting with production of the F-4E block 60, and retrofitted to selected earlier block aircraft, was the addition of the Digital Scan Converter Group display. The inclusion of DSCG increased the overall ease of handling the APQ-120 by adding additional information on the display directly, including current radar range setting and the calculated range rate value against the current acquired target. Further, clarity of the display in all lighting conditions was improved by rendering the radar reference grids directly as part of the displayed image, rather than the previously used markings on the DVST glass. In addition, the DSCG provided the ability of the two crew members to utilize the displays independently; previously, the WSO had control over which mode both the DVST and front seat repeater display would show. With DSCG, the pilot could utilize TISEO or TV air to ground weapons while the WSO maintained a scan pattern or found a ground reference point and inserted it into the WRCS.

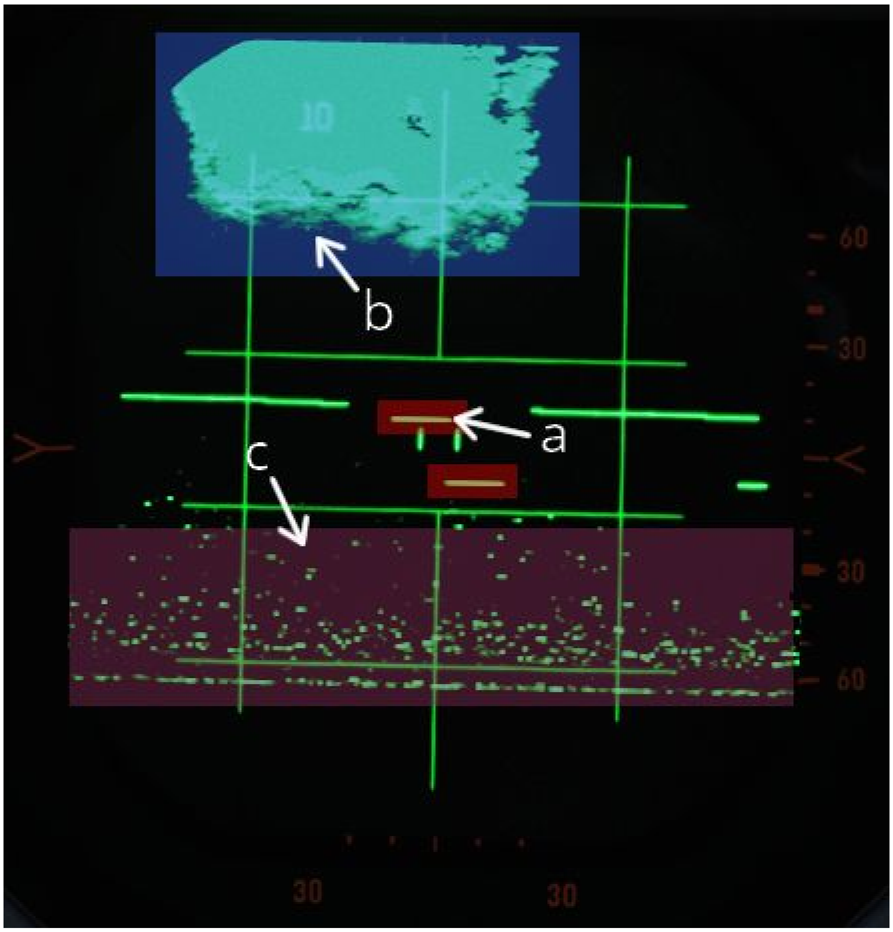
Principle

The APQ-120 is a pulse radar. The radar transmits a radio pulse focused in one direction via the antenna.

Any obstacle in that direction, for example another aircraft or simply ground, will reflect part of the energy back, which the radar then receives via the antenna to be processed and evaluated by the crew. Based on the time it took for the signal to travel back, the radar computes the distance to the obstacle.

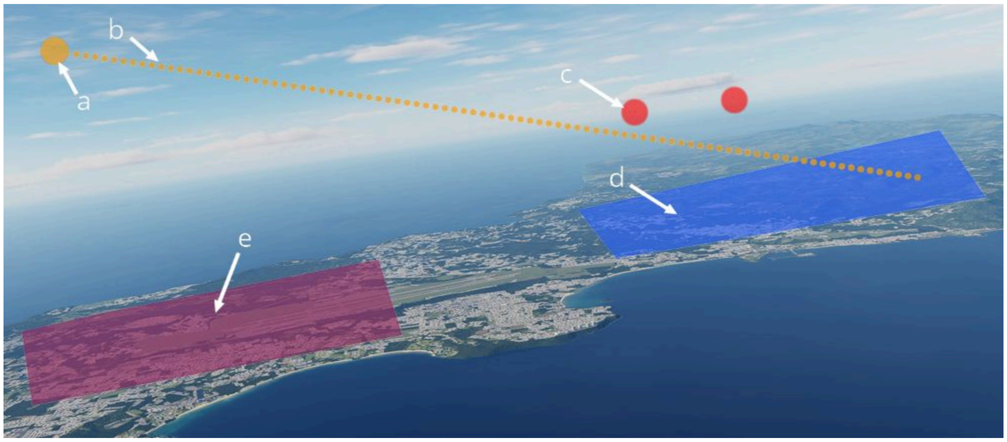
All radar returns are then displayed on the screen **based on their distance**, resulting in a **direct** and **unfiltered** representation of the world in front of the aircraft.

However, since the emitter is not a perfect device, energy is transmitted into all directions, with the main focus being the direction in which the antenna is pointing at. This is referred to as the **main lobe** of the antenna, while any other unwanted returns from different directions are called **side lobes**.



Label	Description
a	Targets from main-lobe
b	Ground clutter from main-lobe
c	Ground clutter from side-lobes

The same situation from outside looks as follows.



Label	Description
a	Own aircraft
b	Antenna direction
c	Targets from main-lobe
d	Ground clutter from main-lobe
e	Ground clutter from side-lobes

Radar Interface

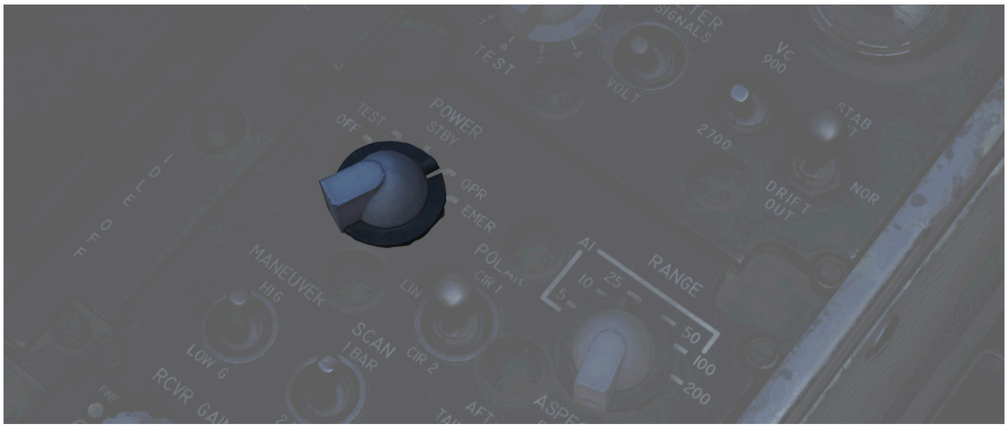
The radar system can be setup by the WSO with two panels on the left console, the Radar Set Control Panel and the Control Monitor Panel.

Radar returns are displayed on the DSCG screen, while the Antenna Hand Control stick on the right console of the WSO cockpit can be used to operate the radar.

Radar Set Control Panel

For a detailed description of the panel see WSO left console center section

Power



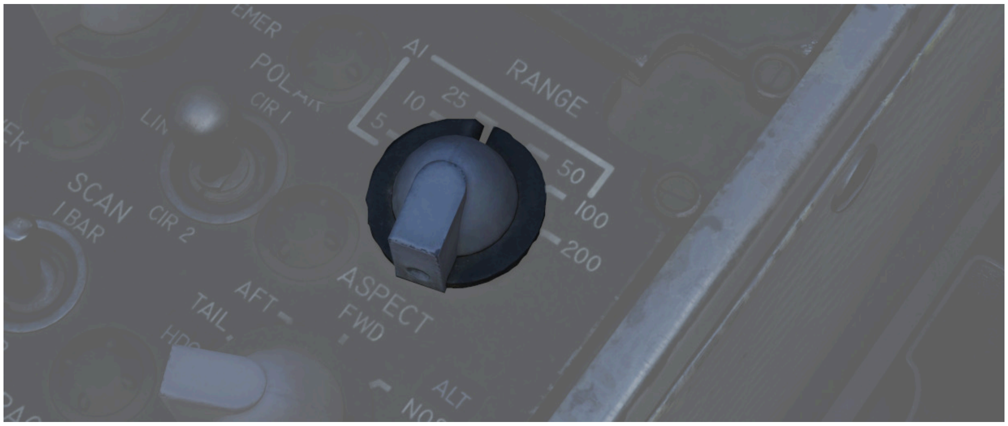
Name	Description
OFF	Powers radar off.
TEST	Applies voltage to control monitor power and provides BIT-test functions 1 through 6.
STBY	Power applied to radar, remains in a non-transmitting standby state.
OPR	System is fully operational.
EMER	Overrides the time delay, pressure, and temperature restrictions to allow radar operation.

Initial powering of the APQ-120 starts by placing the Radar Power Knob into TEST or STBY (Standby). The warmup cycle requires 3 minutes from selecting either setting, and confirmation of this process is shown via the Control Monitor Meter on the Monitor Panel; after 30 seconds from cycling power, the gauge will display a value of roughly 250Vdc; from the point the needle shows power at this nominal value, the warmup procedure will be 2.5 minutes.

After 3 minutes, the radar can safely be placed into OPR (Operate) for employment of the radar, BIT testing can be performed in TEST mode, or the radar can be left in STBY for the safety of crew and others on the ground.

In the event of an emergency situation requiring immediate operation of the radar, EMER can be selected; see the Magnetron and Klystron section for the implications of this.

Range



The Range Control Knob sets the range of the radar. Note there are some modes where the range settings available are restricted or forced to a specific setting.

Current Radar Set range will illuminate the respective indicator range lamp, as well as display the numerical value on the DSCG display in the upper left.

Values up to 50 nmi are indicated as **Air-Intercept (AI)** and are available for Automatic Tracking. Values 100 nmi and 200 nmi are available for the Spotlight mode instead.

Polarization Control

The polarization of the radio frequency energy can be changed using the polarization control. In normal operation the LIN setting is used which produces linearly polarized RF energy (Radio Frequency) in the vertical direction relative to the antenna. This minimizes ground returns as many types of ground clutter are less reflective to vertically polarized RF energy. However, because the antenna is not roll stabilized increased return intensity may be seen when rolling the aircraft.

Both CIR 1 and CIR 2 are circularly polarized positions. Precipitation is less reflective to circularly polarized RF, so CIR 1 and CIR 2 can aid in minimizing clutter in rain or fog.

The polarization is set using the quarter waveplate in the feedhorn which causes the continuous wave emissions to be polarized as described above. This makes only CIR 1 compatible with launching AIM-7 Sparrows as the Sparrow rear antenna cannot receive counterclockwise polarized RF.

Selection	RF energy polarization	AIM-7 Guidance
LIN	Lineally polarized in a vertical orientation	✅
CIR 1	Circularly polarized clockwise	✅
CIR 2	Circularly counterclockwise	❌

💡 Only LIN and CIR 1 modes can be used with the Sparrow, a Sparrow launched using CIR 2 will not guide.

Maneuver Switch

The Maneuver Switch is used to specify the tracking response to target accelerations.

Selection	Description
LOW G	Default position. Limits tracking accelerations to reduce response to countermeasures and clutter.
HI G	Allows track loop to respond with any acceleration.

HI G is forced when Computer Automatic Acquisition is used.

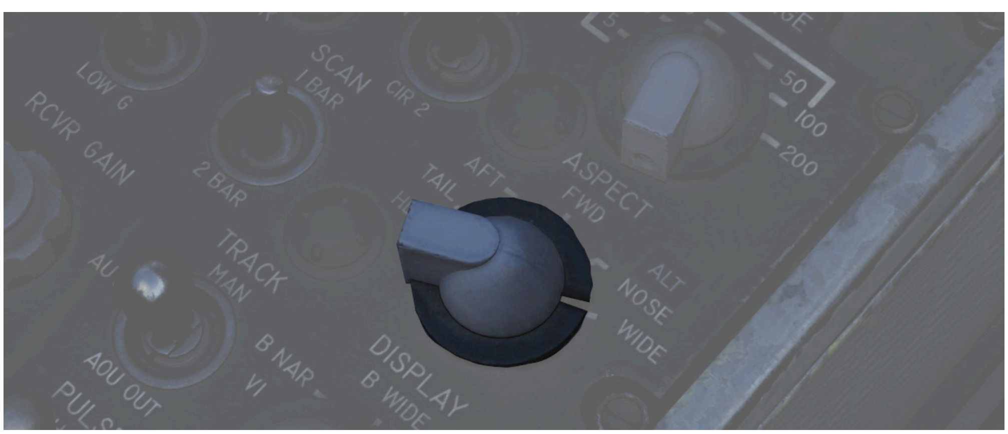
Scan Switch

The Scan Switch specifies the number of elevation bars used in search.

Selection	Description	Total Vertical Coverage (degrees)
1 Bar	Scans along radar plane.	6.7 (3.7 without nutation)
2 Bar	Scan alternates between 1.875 degrees above/below the radar plane.	10.45

1 Bar Scan is automatically commanded when MAP is selected on the Radar Mode Knob. For BST, AIR-GND and CAGE conditions the scan switch position is not relevant.

Aspect



The Aspect Knob is used to provide Sparrow missiles with a simulated doppler signal when **no lock** is achieved to aid with a Sparrow speed-gate lock-on when it is to be fired in boresight. When the radar is tracking, the calculated (or manually set) closure is used to set a narrow speed-gate (±150 kts) around the closure for the Sparrow to search when launched.

The knob also controls the display mode of the DSCG numeric output while the radar is in track.

See below the display and speed-gate settings for the various positions of the Aspect Knob, with Vc indicating selected closure velocity for the speed-gate, where TAS is the aircraft's true airspeed.

Selection	DSCG Display	Sparrow Speed-Gate Setting (Vc)
WIDE	Closure Velocity	Entire Spectrum
NOSE	Altitude	TAS + 450 ±150 kts
FWD	Aspect	TAS + 240 ±150 kts
AFT	Closure Velocity	TAS - 240 ±150 kts
TAIL	Heading	0 ±150 kts

- Closure Velocity: Displayed in knots with positive values indicating closing and negative values indicating opening.
- Altitude: Displayed in hundreds of feet (with the last digit always zero), for example 20,000 MSL would be displayed as 200.
- Aspect: Angle of the tail of the target aircraft to the shooter (own ship), this means if the target is flying directly away it is 0 degrees and directly towards is 180 degrees. Left is shown by negative values and right by positive values.
- Heading: Heading is displayed in degrees from 000 to 360 with the last digit always zero.

Receiver Gain (RCVR GAIN)

The stacked RCVR GAIN potentiometers - FINE on top and COARSE on the bottom, provide the ability to adjust the receiver gain.

FINE is used for small adjustments and COARSE for larger adjustments. For more information see the Gain Control section.

Track Switch

The Track Switch alters range tracking settings. The default position is AUTO which operates normal range tracking with Home on Jam if jamming is detected.

In case jamming is erroneously detected, Home on Jam can be disabled by setting the switch to AOJ OUT.

If required, manual range tracking can be used by setting MANUAL at which point the MAN Vc knob position will be used to set the tracking

gate closure velocity.

Display Knob

The DSCG can display returns in B-Scope or Plan Position Indicator (PPI) on the display.

In B-Scope the horizontal axis of the display indicates azimuth, and the vertical axis represents slant range.

In PPI the horizontal axis is distance to the left and right of the aircraft, with the vertical axis representing distance along the track of the aircraft.

There are also two Sweep Settings NAR and WIDE; NAR is a narrow 45 degree sweep and WIDE is a full 120 degree sweep. See Automatic Search for details.

The VI setting directs the display to provide course guidance for a **Vis Ident (VI)** intercept profile against a locked target.

Manual Vc (MAN Vc)

This 12-position knob is used to set a closure velocity for manual range tracking. The two counter-clockwise positions (1, 2) set an **opening velocity** of 100 and 200 knots respectively. The clockwise positions 0 to 9 positions set a **closure velocity** from 0 to 900 knots.

Closing refers to an target decreasing in range, while opening are targets increasing in range.

Pulse Switch

The Pulse Switch sets the pulse and pulse repetition frequency for the Radar Set. See the Pulse Setting section for more information.

In AIR-GRD mode and Computer Automatic Acquisition, the switch is disabled automatically and SHORT pulse is commanded regardless of its setting.

Radar Modes (MODE)

Specific radar operating modes are dependent on the Radar Mode Knob, but also several other conditions and switches. For a comprehensive description of the radar operation see Radar Operation (General), Radar Operation (Air-To-Air), Radar Operation (Air-To-Ground).

This section will briefly cover each of the positions of the radar mode knob and link to the relevant sections below.

BST (Boresight) Position

BST forces the radar into the boresight state.

This is used when the target is spotted visually or a Sparrow is to be fired without radar tracking.

RDR (Radar) Position

The RDR position puts the radar in Automatic Search.

MAP Position

MAP position is identical to the RDR position and puts the radar in Automatic Search, with the exception that nutation is disabled and the 2 bar search pattern is not available.

AIR GRD (Air to Ground) Position

The AIR-GRD position is similar to the boresight position with the following exceptions:

- Angle Track is Disabled while tracking a target.
- The antenna is always fixed to the boresight with drift stabilization.

BEACON Position

BEACON may be used with any Display Knob position other than VI, as desired.

It does not display radar echoes and instead listens for transponder responses from specific beacon equipment.

TV Position

The TV Radar Mode setting is not used on DSCG aircraft; this is superseded by the TV display option on the DSCG panel itself, and the TV display option in the pilot's cockpit.

> 💡 AIM-7 missiles detune and cannot be re-tuned with the Radar Mode Knob in TV.

Skin Track Lamp (SKIN TRK)

The Skin Track Lamp illuminates when an automatically achieved lock-on is established and held by the radar. This coincides with the T symbol being lit on the DSCG panel.

If the target is manually tracked, or AOJ or HOJ track condition are effective, the light will not illuminate.

FCS Control Monitor Panel

The Control Monitor Panel's primary purpose is to access the built-in diagnostics of the APQ-120.

Additionally, the panel mounts auxiliary controls for the system - the Vc Switch and Stab Switch, and the Temp monitoring lamp.

Coords Light

This lamp is not used with the APQ-120.

Temp Lamp

The TEMP Lamp (7) provides a visual indication of an overheat situation in the APQ-120 avionics bays. Should the lamp illuminate, the radar must be powered off immediately to preclude damaging the equipment.

Should circumstances require the radar be used during a temperature warning, the lamp should be monitored for continued illumination, and the radar must be shut off as soon as possible.

Meter Selector Knob

A 16-position rotary knob (1) used in conjunction with the Meter Switch (4) to test various voltages, currents, and signals generated by the internals of the radar, independently or in conjunction with the Built-In-Test (3) system.

Each position is dual purpose, noted with two sets of values; when the Meter Switch is in the VOLT position, the inner rim of the knob is active, delivering the specified voltage of the selected position. In the SIGNALS position, the outer current or signal value is tested.

Monitor Meter

The Monitor Meter (2) displays voltages, current, and signals relative to the current settings of the Meter Selector knob (1) in conjunction with the Meter Switch (4), or the current Built-In Test (3) setting.

Voltages are confirmed beginning with the -250 position of the Selector Knob and the Meter Switch in VOLT, and will indicate in the "1"-region of the gauge approximately thirty seconds after radar power-on, signifying correct voltage delivery. After this power-up, the Monitor Meter will indicate in the "1"-region for nominal function if the voltages delivered are correct. The +35 selection is an exception to this rule, as the value for correct function is 2.0 or greater.

In SIGNALS mode, the RX1-RX4 crystal current are functioning correctly with a return in the XTAL region.

The EX1 and 2 test electrical frequency control crystals, and are also nominal when XTAL is returned.

For the magnetron, tested in MAG, long pulse operation is confirmed with a return of 1.4 to 1.8, and short pulse operation is correct with a value of 0.9 to 1.15.

KLY, which tests the CW transmitter, should find a value of 0.25 to 1.25 when radiating correctly.

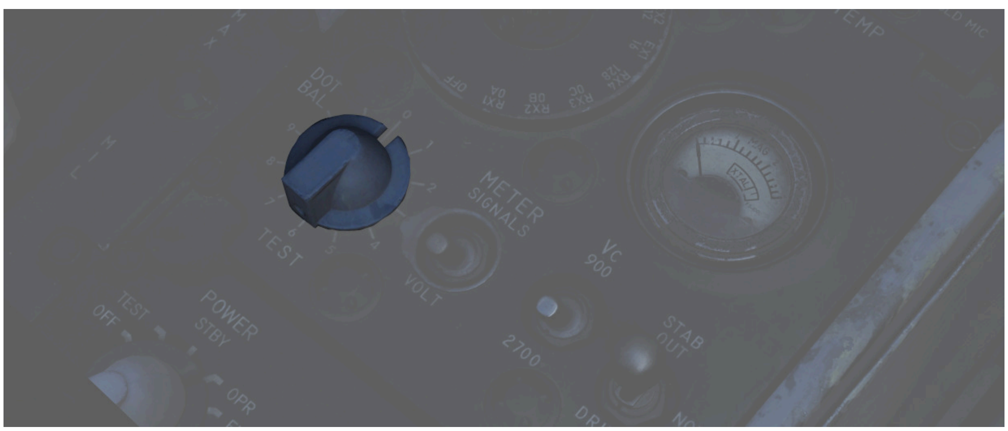
TP 1 tests the temperature and pressure interlocks, and the monitor meter indicates 1 when the interlocks are closed and functioning.

TP 2 confirms waveguide pressure, and a value of 1 is correct.

In LOB, the meter needle will travel roughly between 1.5 to 2.8 as a function of antenna nutation.

Lastly, the LIN and CIR selectors confirm proper linear and circular pulse performance; they only register a value of 1 for a transmission of vertical or clockwise-rotating polarity energy. That is, they do not return a value in CIR pulse (counter-clockwise) mode.

APQ-120 Built-In Test Knob



Confirmation of proper system performance is performed using the various options on the Control Monitor Panel; specific test modes are defined using the Test Knob (3).

Meter Switch

Tied to the Meter Selector knob, the two position switch (4) defines which value of the Meter Selector Knob is being tested - VOLT for the inner ring voltage values, SIGNALS for the outer ring current and signal values.

Vc Switch

With selections of 900 and 2700, the switch (5) is used to scale the Vc gap as displayed in F-4Es with the DVST installed.

> 💡 With the newer DSCG installed, the switch must remain in the 2700 position at all times to ensure correct reading on the display.

Stab Switch

The STAB switch (6) controls the antenna pitch and roll stabilization modes. The default NOR (normal) position maintains stabilization in both channels, and INS system drift compensation is further applied in specific modes (AIR-GND).

In STAB OUT the stabilization of pitch, roll, and INS drift is removed from the radar antenna.

DRIFT OUT maintains pitch and roll stabilization, while removing the INS drift compensation in modes which use it.

Digital Scan Converter Group

The Digital Scan Converter Group (DSCG) provides an integrated display system of the F-4E's radar and electro-optical systems. The system is composed of the front and rear seat scopes, and is driven by the Indicator Control Unit (ICU) which performs conversion of radar and video signals, along with the application of information and fire control cueing symbology.

Grid Knob

On the top left corner of the display is a knob that controls brightness of the display field grid.

HOJ Light (H)

The HOJ light on the top left corner of the display illuminates to provide indication that the radar has transitioned to an angle tracking HOJ operation, using only memorized range and range rate information if a jamming condition is detected.

Scale

To the top right corner of the display is a knob that controls brightness of the angle and elevation scales surrounding the DSCG display field.

Track Light (T)

The Track light on the top right corner of the display illuminates to confirm an angle and range-based lock-on against a target. Same as the SKIN TRK light. See Track for more information.

Contrast (CONTR)

The Contrast Knob (**1**) controls relative DSCG display contrast.

Range (RNG)

The Range Knob (**2**) controls brightness of the range cursor in PPI modes.

Brightness (BRT)

The Brightness Knob (**3**) controls the brightness of the overall DSCG display.

Offset (OFS)

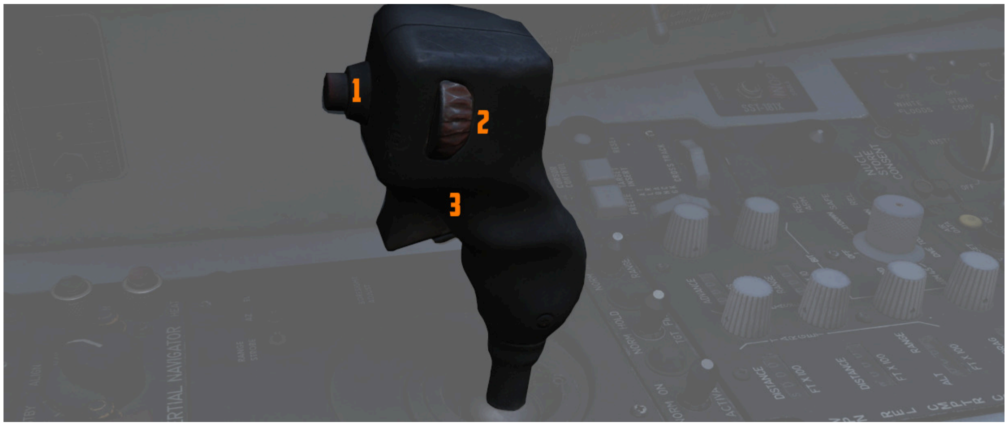
The Offset Knob (**4**) controls brightness of the offset cursor line in PPI modes.

DSCG Mode Knob

The DSCG Mode Knob (**5**) is used to select the current mode of the display.

- OFF removes all power from the display, ceasing all DSCG functionality.
- STBY (Standby) places the DSCG in its warmup mode; no display occurs during this process.
- DSCG TEST displays a test field to confirm proper display function. The DSCG display field shows a search display with eight shades of grey to confirm proper operation and contrast. Prior to entry of this mode for testing, Range 10 should be selected for correct sizing of the shaded fields.
- RDR BIT is a built-in test mode that functions in conjunction with the radar for calibration of the signals provided from the radar with the DSCG's ICU.
- RDR is the operational mode for use with the APQ-120.
- TV is the display mode used for EO weapons (Maverick, Pave Spike) and TISEO.

Antenna Hand Controller



The Antenna Hand Controller is a joystick found only in the WSO cockpit on the right console; the stick integrates with the radar to perform range (fore and aft) and azimuth (left and right) positional control of the acquisition symbol on the radar display in the air-to-air modes, as well as seeker and EO sensor direction with Maverick and Pave Spike.

Additionally, the joystick includes the Antenna Elevation Control thumbwheel (2), which controls the elevation angle of the antenna,

displayed via the EL strobe on the DSCG display; this elevation scan is limited in both up and down movement to 60 degrees.

In the index finger position of the Antenna Hand Controller is the Action Switch (3); a two-position trigger-switch designated half-action in the first detent, and full-action with full engagement. In air-to-air modes, half-action initiates visibility of the range strobe, allowing for proper range alignment with a target return for automatic lock-on, or selection of MAN Vc rates required for a manual lock. With proper bracketing and range strobe adjustment, full-action attempts the automatic lock-on, or initiates manual angle tracking of the intended target.

The Challenge Button (1) is used to initiate an IFF interrogation.

See the AGM-65 Maverick section for details on how the stick is used to control the weapon and the Pave Spike chapter for its interaction respectively.

Range VISIDENT Indicator

The Radar Range Indicator is used for close range VID intercept profiles, providing range information out to two miles and range rate information from inside of 9000'. The information is confirmed as radar-accurate once the range indicator jumps to 9.

The gauge functions in the VI, B NAR, and B WIDE display modes; the indicator does not function in air to ground modes.

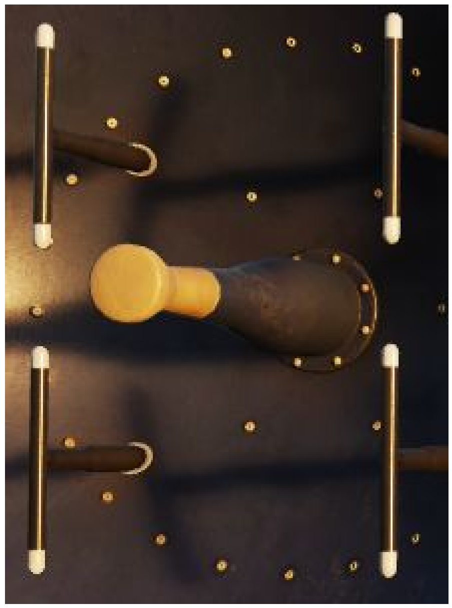
Air to Air Button

The Air to Air Button is a button and a light with the primary function of confirming entry into CAGE mode.

When the crew desires to disengage CAGE mode, the WSO can press the light to exit CAGE mode and revert to the current selected settings from the Radar Control Set.

General Radar Operation

Magnetron and Klystron



The magnetron and klystron are the two methods for producing radio frequency energy in the APQ-120 radar set. Both, the magnetron and klystron radiation is fed through the antenna and emitted from the feedhorn.

Magnetron

The magnetron is the main radio frequency emitter for the radar. It produces pulsed energy which is used to detect and track targets.

Magnetron emission is only present when the Radar Power Knob is in OPER or EMER and all interlocks described below are satisfied.

The magnetron is protected by a wave guide pressure switch and a temperature interlock. If either of these interlocks are open (possibly because of damage or malfunction) the Radar Power Knob can be moved into EMER to return operation; however, operation of the magnetron

without adequate pressure or cooling, may damage the magnetron and can burn the feedhorn.

The magnetron is not powered until 3 minutes after radar is turned on. This can be overridden by moving the Radar Power Knob into EMER; however, operating the magnetron without sufficient warm up may result in incorrect pulse width and timing and/or degraded pulse power.

Klystron

The klystron produces continuous wave radio frequency energy, which is used to tune and guide the Sparrows.

The klystron emissions are present when the Radar Power Knob is in STBY, OPER or EMER, the Radar Missile Power Switch is in CW and all interlocks described below are satisfied.

The klystron is protected by two temperature switches, a pressure switch and a surge current switch. If any of these interlocks (with the exception of the surge current switch) are open, the Radar Power Knob can be moved into EMER to return operation; however, damage to the klystron and feedhorn may result.

The klystron is not powered until 100 seconds after the radar is turned on. This can be overridden by moving the Radar Power Knob into EMER; however, operating the klystron without sufficient warm up may result in degraded power.

Feedhorn Nutation

Feedhorn nutation is required for automatic tracking. The feedhorn nutates to rotate the radiated energy around the antenna axis. This modulates the radar echoes. Where the echo is strongest the antenna will steer if tracking, this drives the antenna back onto a tracked target.

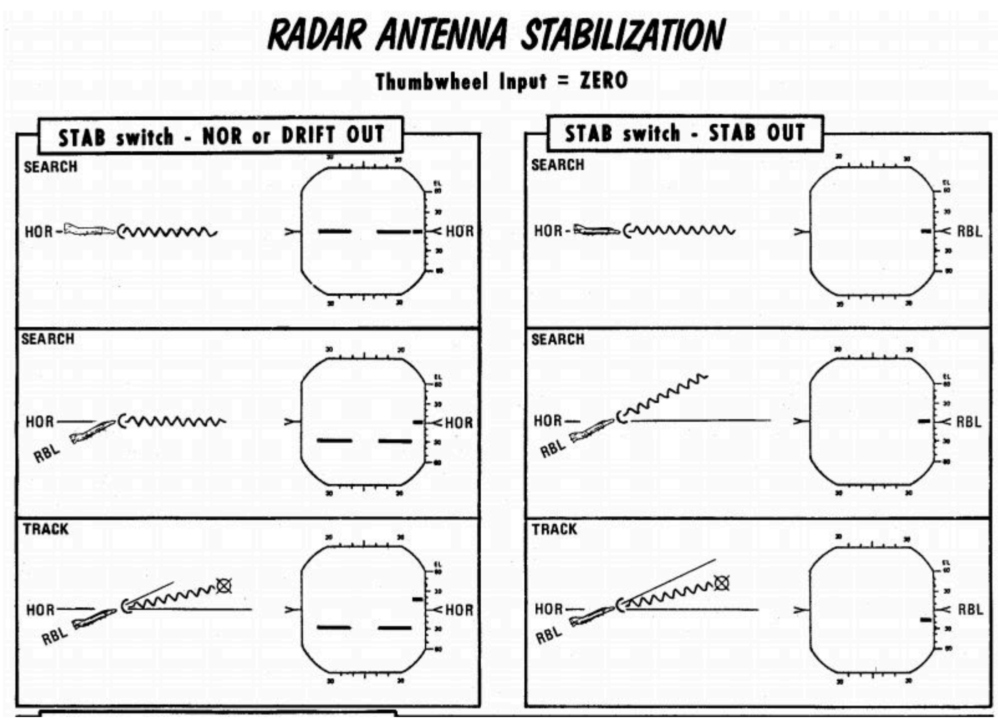
A side-effect of this nutation is increasing the beam-width, from 3.7 degrees (half power) to 6.7 degrees (full power) while reducing the average intensity of the beam.

Below describes the nutation settings for the action switch.

Mode Knob	Range Knob	Action Switch	Nutation
RDR, BST, AIR-GND	ALL	Release	✅
MAP	ALL	Release	❌
MAP-PPI	ALL	Half or Full Action	❌
RDR, MAP-B, BST, AIR-GND	AI	Half or Full Action	✅
	Not AI	Half Action	✅
		Full Action	❌

Antenna Stabilization

There are three antenna stabilization modes. Two apply to Air-To-Air Operation and the other to Air-To-Ground Operation.



NOR

Normal operation of the antenna stabilization.

In Automatic Search, the antenna is stabilized in pitch and roll to the horizon (radar plane). The center of the radar scan is along the heading of the aircraft. In this mode the zero degree mark on the display indicates the horizon.

In Air-To-Ground Ranging, the antenna is boresighted to the radar boresight line but stabilized in drift.

DRIFT OUT

The same as NOR, but drift stabilization is removed.

STAB OUT

In Automatic Search the antenna does not stabilize to the horizon, but instead th aircraft reference.

With Air-To-Ground Ranging, the antenna is boresighted to the radar boresight line without drift stabilization. In this mode the zero degree mark on the display indicates the radar boresight line.

Pulse Setting

The pulse setting determines several characteristics of the Radar Set. These include the length of the transmitted pulse, which amplifier is used to amplify the signals, the frequency at which the pulses are emitted (i.e. the pulse repetition frequency).

The setting is controlled with the Pulse Switch into either LONG or SHORT modes.

Mode	Amplifier	Pulse Repetition Frequency (PRF) Setting (Hz)	Pulse Length (microseconds)
LONG	Narrow Band	370	2.0
SHORT	Back Bias	1060	0.4

💡 The AIR-GND and Automatic Acquisition mode force the pulse setting into SHORT.

The AUTO setting enables the power-level mode switching (PLMS) described below.

Power Level Mode Switching

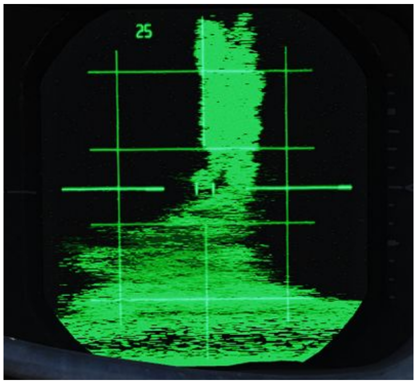
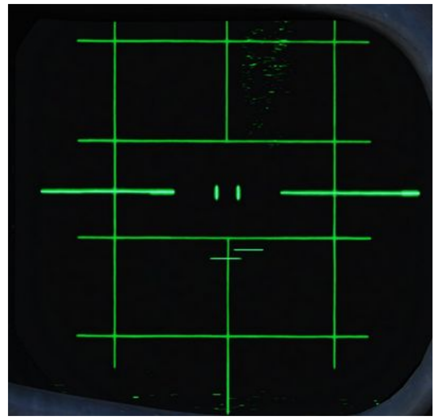
Power Level Mode Switching automatically selects the LONG or SHORT, and Narrow Band or Back Bias amplifiers depending on several conditions such as target range, echo strength or noise signal.

Gain Control

The amplification of the signals that enter the receiver is called the gain. The gain setting is important to both search and tracking operations and is the main means for the crew to pickup targets on the display.

Manual Gain Control

The gain can be altered manually. This changes how returns are displayed. Higher gain settings amplify all echoes but can result in noise and saturation resulting in degraded image. Lower gain settings will result in better target contrast; however, weaker returns will not be visible, this can degrade detection range.

Too much gain	Perfect gain (2 targets)
	

When the radar locks on a target, the gain control is switched to the Automatic Gain Control Circuit and manual gain control no longer is used.

> 💡 Getting the correct gain is a balance and comes with experience, as a general rule of thumb for search the gain should be increased until a small amount of noise (random specks) begins to show.

Along with receiver gain the display also has image levelling, after adjusting the gain it may take a few scans for the image to adjust the level correctly.

Automatic Gain Control

The Automatic Gain Control takes control of the gain setting once the radar is in track. The gain is adjusted automatically using the target within the range tracking gate to provide a consistent target signal for tracking.

Sensitivity Time Control (STC)

The strength of a radar echo falls off with `1 / r^4` where **r** is the range. This means on a normal display the brightness of the radar returns will get dimmer with distance.

For ground mapping the APQ-120 counteracts this effect. With the Radar Mode Knob in MAP and the Display Knob in a PPI mode, Sensitivity Time Control is enabled.

When enabled, it exponentially increases the receiver gain with range to counteract the echo power fall off with range. This provides an approximately even brightness with increasing range.

Air to Air Radar Operation

Radar operation for Air-To-Air includes the RDR-B and MAP-B modes, along with the BST mode. RDR-B and MAP-B can be used with automatic search and BST mode can be used as a close range mode to cue a target on the boresight.

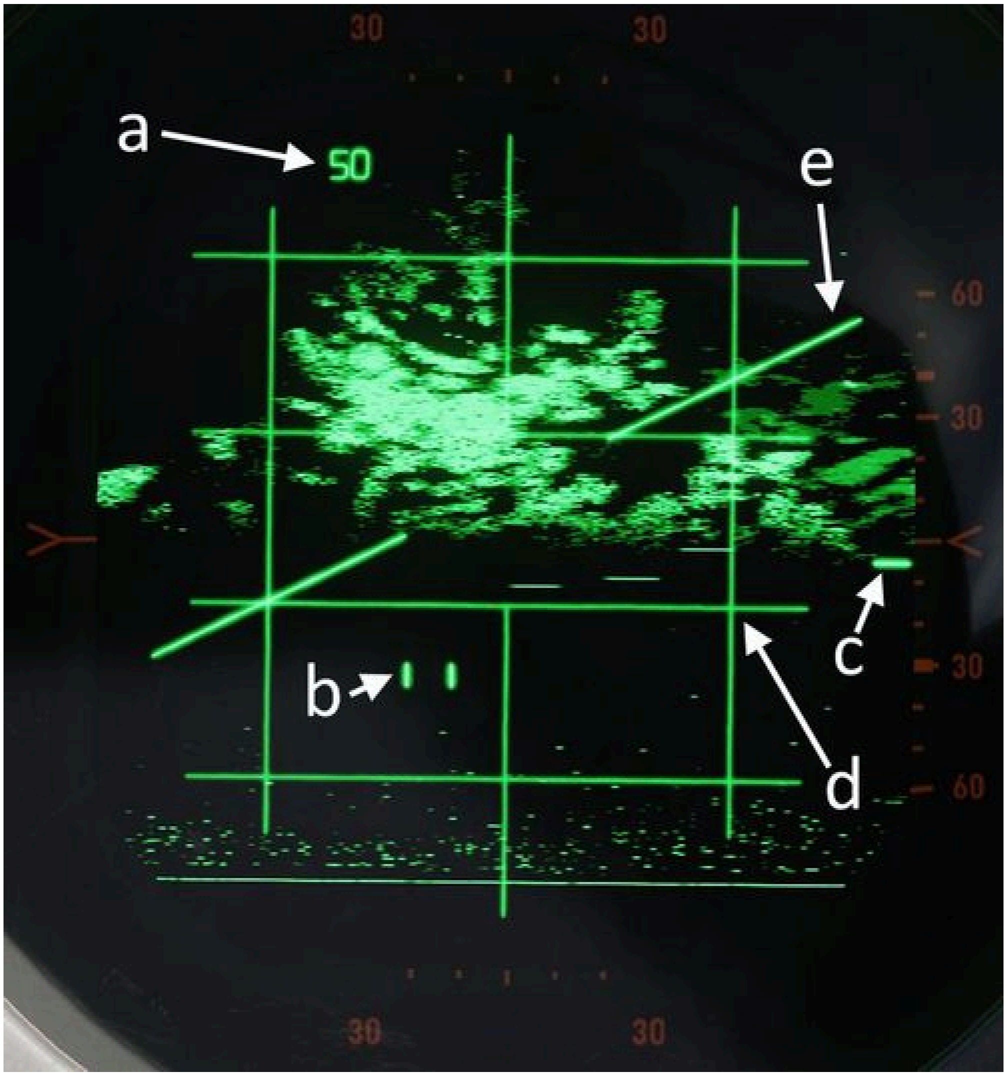
Automatic Search

During automatic search, the antenna moves back and forth in the radar plane. The limits of this search are determined by the Display Knob. Search is normally 120 degrees wide with the display knob in WIDE positions, and limited to 45 degrees in the NAR position. Only Display Knob positions with B are usable in Air-To-Air operations.

The Radar Mode Knob knob is used to select automatic search by choosing either RDR or MAP. In RDR the number of bars can be selected by the Scan Switch. In MAP only 1 bar is used regardless of the switch. Feedhorn nutation is used with RDR but not MAP; leading to an estimated beam-width of approximately 6.7 degrees in RDR and 3.7 degrees in MAP.

Selecting BST or AIR-GND on the Radar Mode Knob, the antenna scan is boresighted along the radar boresight line.

Below shows the usual symbology present in Automatic Search and Boresight Modes.



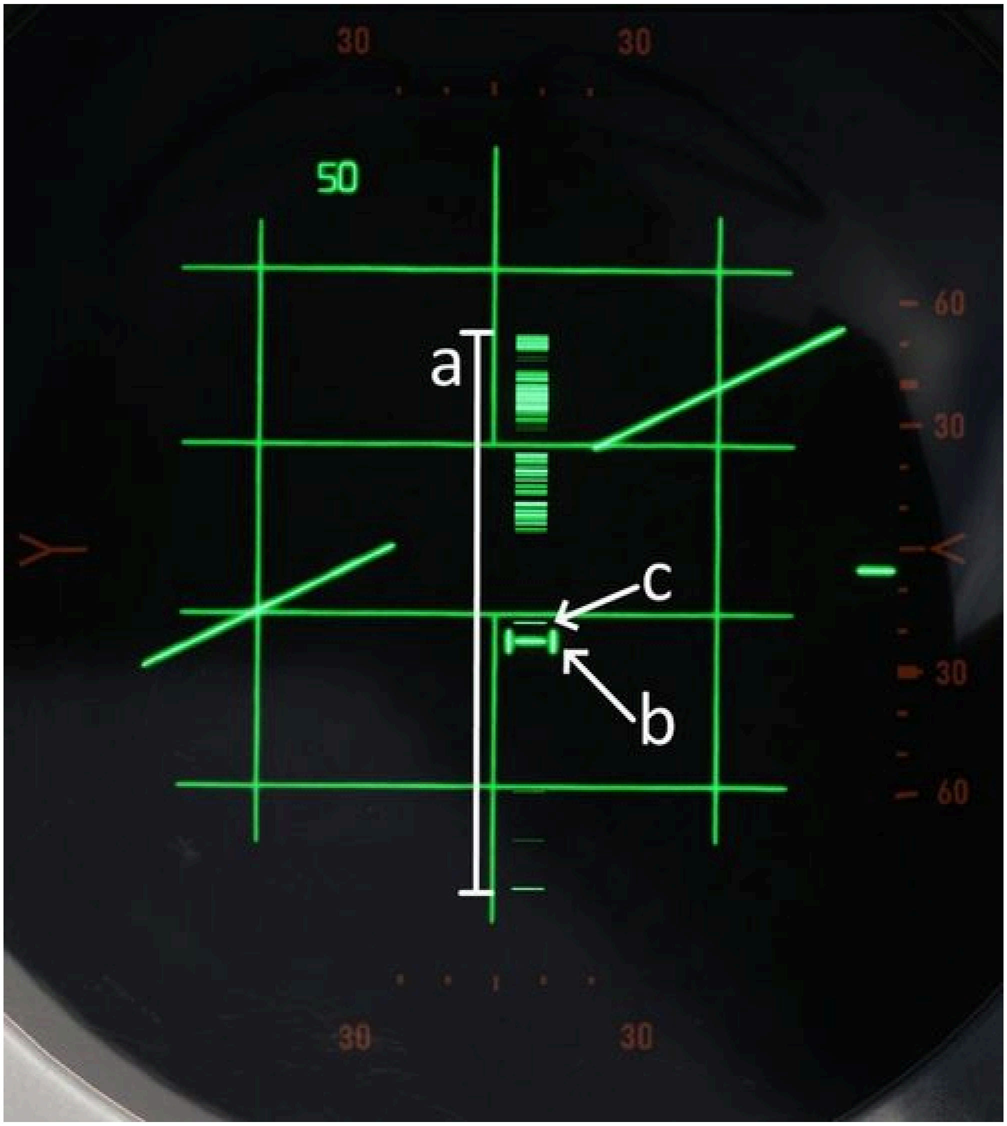
Item	Name	Description
a	Range Display	Shows current selected or forced range
b	Radar Cursor	The radar cursor is used to select targets and displays the current selected range and azimuth. It is moved by the Antenna Hand Control.
c	Antenna Elevation	Shows antenna elevation (in degrees) relative to the radar plane, or aircraft if the Stab Switch is in OUT. This can be moved with the Antenna Hand Control elevation wheel.

Item	Name	Description
d	Radar Grid	Left and right vertical lines show 30 degrees left and 30 degrees right. This measurement is relative to the radar plane with the Stab Switch in NOR or DRIFT OUT and relative to the aircraft with the Stab Switch in OUT. Each horizontal line marks a scale where the gaps are `1/5` of the current range setting of the display.
e	Horizon Line	Shows the horizon line, only present with Stab Switch in NOR or DRIFT OUT

Acquisition

Acquisition can be used with any radar mode that uses B-Scope and is used to achieve a tracking condition.

With the Radar Mode Knob in RDR or MAP, Half Action can be held on the Antenna Hand Control trigger to begin acquisition. In RDR or MAP the antenna azimuth will follow the acquisition symbol. In all modes where acquisition can be used the range of the acquisition symbol will set the desired range for lock-on.



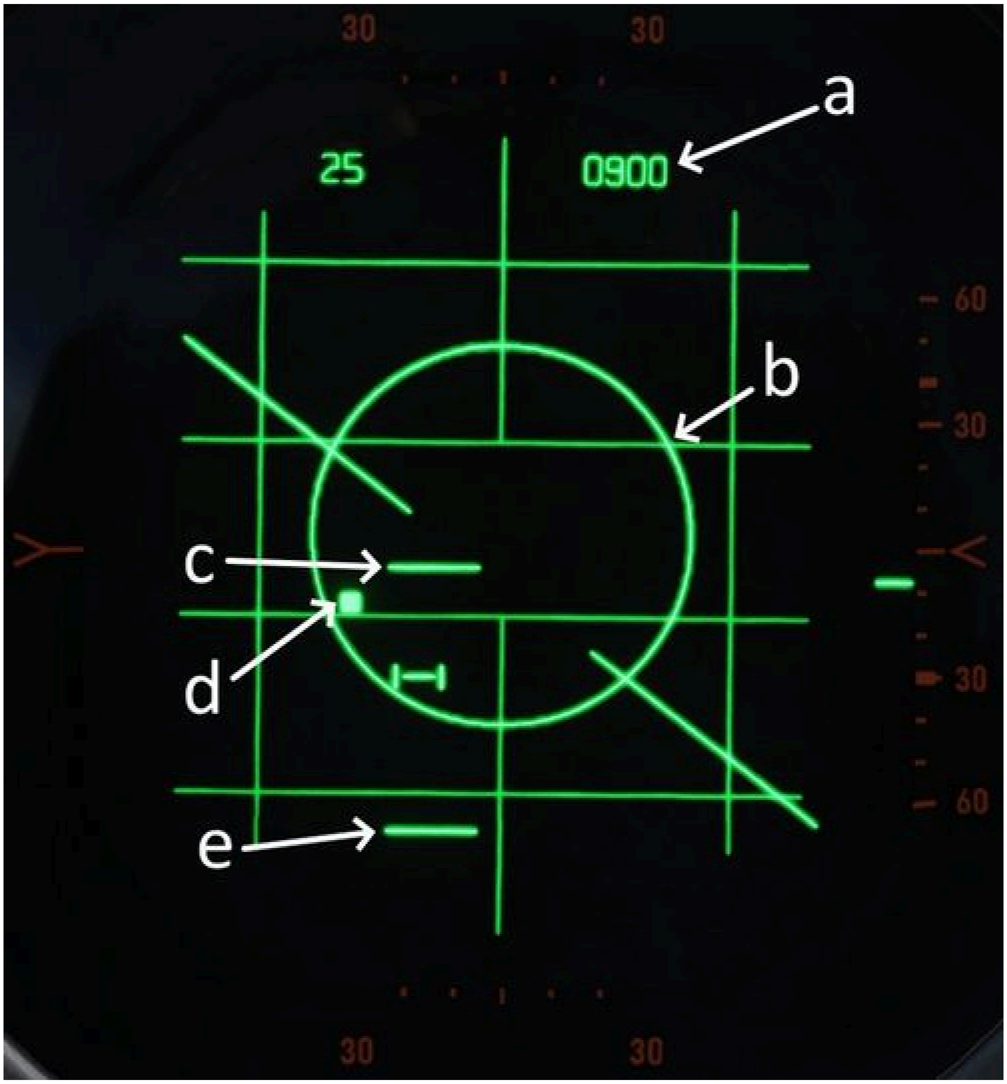
Item	Name	Description
a	B-Sweep	The B-Sweep displays the current radar echoes along the azimuth of the antenna, these are displayed in both acquisition and track.
b	Acquisition Symbol	Like the radar cursor, the acquisition symbol shows the current selected azimuth and range. It is moved with the Antenna Hand Control. It is also displayed in track to indicate target range and azimuth.

Item	Name	Description
c	Target Echo	Target Return displayed along the azimuth

Track

Automatic tracking can be commanded by first entering acquisition and then, once the target has been bracketed by the acquisition symbol, Full Action can be depressed to enter automatic track.

The type of track entered depends on the selected mode. There are two types of tracking circuits available, angle tracking and range tracking. These will both be described below.



Item	Name	Description
a	Display Readout	The readout depends on the position of the Aspect Switch
b	Allowable Steering Error	Describes the maximal Off-Angle-Launch-Envelope, see Allowable Steering Error
c and e	Range Strobes	Indicates Launch Envelope, see Range Strobes Description
d	Aim Dot	Provides pilot steering, see Aim Dot

On the top right corner of the radar screen is an engraved T symbol which illuminates if a range track condition is present. This is only found on the WSO Screen.

Angle Track

The Angle Tracking circuit steers the antenna to keep the target centered. It does so by making use of feedhorn nutation (conical scan). The antenna steers towards the direction of highest amplitude in the nutation scan pattern. As a result, angle tracking cannot be achieved without nutation (MAP-B begins nutation when using acquisition).

Angle Tracking has two settings set by the Maneuver Switch, HI G and LOW G. These set limits on the acceleration in the angle tracking circuits.

Antenna steering has several important functions:

- Tracking target location in elevation and azimuth
- Providing head aiming angles to the Sparrow for a seeker lock-on.
- Illuminating the target with continuous wave radio frequency energy for Sparrow guidance.

Range Track

The radar uses a range gate to select a target in range. This uses only radar returns within the range gate for its circuits. This helps eliminate clutter and other targets, and allows angle tracking circuits to accurately track the target of interest without erroneous signals.

In Range Track, the range gate uses the radar echoes to automatically correct any error between the range gate and the target echo. This causes the range gate to move; the rate at which the gate moves is the closure velocity and displayed on the screen. This is also used to supply the Sparrow with a closure velocity to set its speed-gate for target tracking.

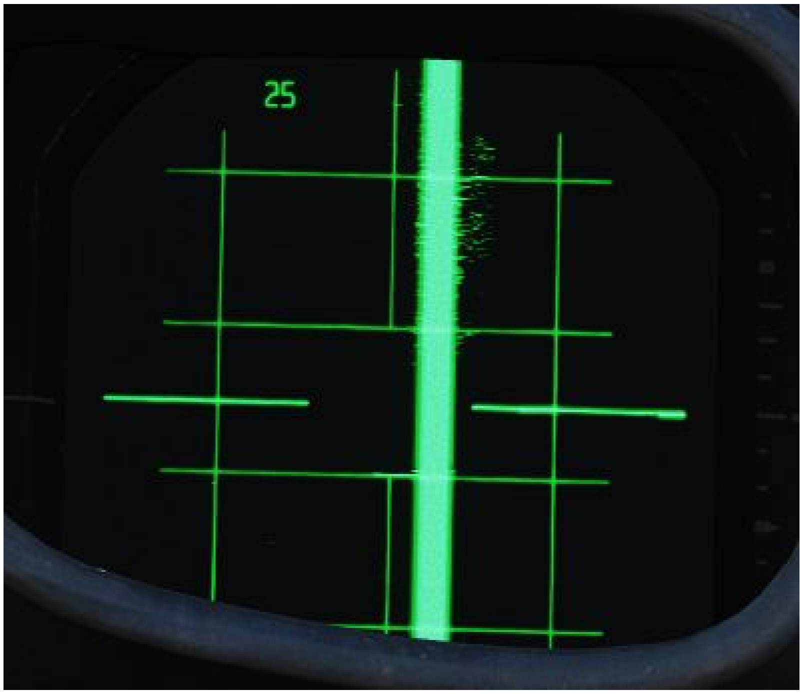
Range Track can operate in memory mode. When in memory mode the range gate will continue to move down at the last calculated closure velocity. When this occurs the SKIN TRK and T light on the DSCG will go out and the range rate digits will begin to flash at 4 Hz. If memory mode

was entered because the target was lost, the system will drop the lock if the target does not reappear within 5 seconds.

Memory Mode will be entered under several conditions:

- Manual Search is selected (Track Switch)
- Target is lost
- Jamming condition is detected

Home On Jam



The back bias amplifier in the radar produces a noise signal based on the overall strength of the echoes. Once this noise signal exceeds some threshold, the system will consider it a jamming condition and enter Home On Jam. The range track circuit goes into memory mode, the angle track circuit continues to operate and track the jamming target in elevation and azimuth.

The Home On Jam condition is also indicated by the engraved H on the WSO DSCG and the last zero digit of the closure velocity is replaced by a H along with the closure rate flashing.

Spotlight

In the 100 and 200 mile ranges, a procedure known as Spotlight can be used to maintain radar monitoring of a target manually.

Spotlighting entails placing the acquisition cursor over the desired return, then selecting and holding the full action trigger position of the Antenna Hand Controller. Doing so, the antenna will nutate and revert to the chosen Polar Switch selection to increase target definition, but without attempting the automatic lock-on.

The target can be maintained in a well-observable state by holding full action and following the target-return with the Antenna Hand Controller until it reaches a range at which lock-on can be achieved (with the

applicable change in range setting; the radar cannot attempt a lock at an incompatible range setting).

Intercept Computations

The LRU-1 Intercept Computer can calculate firing envelopes for the Sparrow and Sidewinder Missiles.

Range Strobes

The DSCG can display two range strobes at any given time representing the missile envelope. There are three possible strobe types.

Range Indication	Description
Rmax	Maximum range of the missile provided the target continues flying on current heading and course.
Rmax2	Maximum range of the missile if the target performs the shortest high g turn to tail aspect.
Rmin	Minimum range capability of the missile.

Missile Selected	Strobes Displayed
Sparrow	Rmax and Rmax2
Sidewinder	Rmax and Rmin

All ranges are calculated for the point the Trigger is pressed and hold down for release, not the point where the actual release signal is send a few seconds later. This means if the missile envelope is met on the display, then the Trigger can be pressed and the envelope will be valid for missile launch.

Allowable Steering Error (ASE) Circle

The allowable steering error indicates the maximum lead or lag at which the missile can be launched and will still retain a high probability of hit. The circle diameter gradually increases in size once Rmax is reached and gradually begins decreasing in size as the target range approaches Rmin.

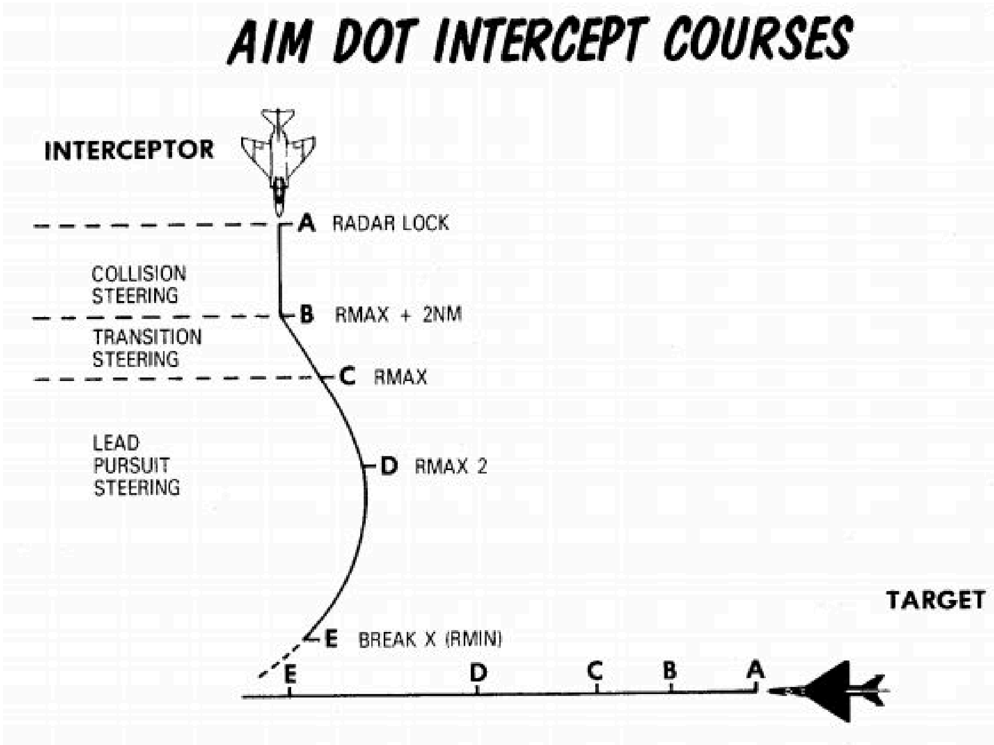
With the Sparrow selected, the max ASE Circle size is 25 degrees for an AIM-7E and 35 degrees for an AIM-7F.

With the Sidewinder selected, if caged, the ASE Circle size is fixed at 1.2 degrees. With it un-caged the ASE Circle dynamically changes size as described above, with the max diameter representing 25 degrees.

Aim Dot

The aim dot provides steering commands to the pilot. There are three different types:

1. Collision Steering, this minimizes time to intercept by putting the fighter on an intercept course.
2. Transition steering, this begins 2 nmi outside Rmax and steers the aircraft towards the next steering type.
3. Lead pursuit, inside Rmax lead pursuit minimizes the missile's post-launch maneuvers.



Shoot/In Range Lights

Shoot Lights illuminate provided the following conditions are met:

- Aim Dot is Inside the ASE Circle
- Target is within Rmax and Rmin

If Sparrows are selected then shoot lights are also inhibited when the target aspect is 90 ±9 degrees (left or right) and the target is lower than 5 degrees above the horizon. This prevents shooting a Sparrow into the main lobe clutter.

> 💡 With the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob out of its fully CCW position - such as during flights at night, all SHOOT lights will remain off.

Hold Altitude Light

The Hold Altitude Light illuminates provided the following conditions are met:

- Range is greater than the computed snap-up range.
- Altitude is greater than 32,000 ft.
- The target is more than 8000 feet above the fighter.

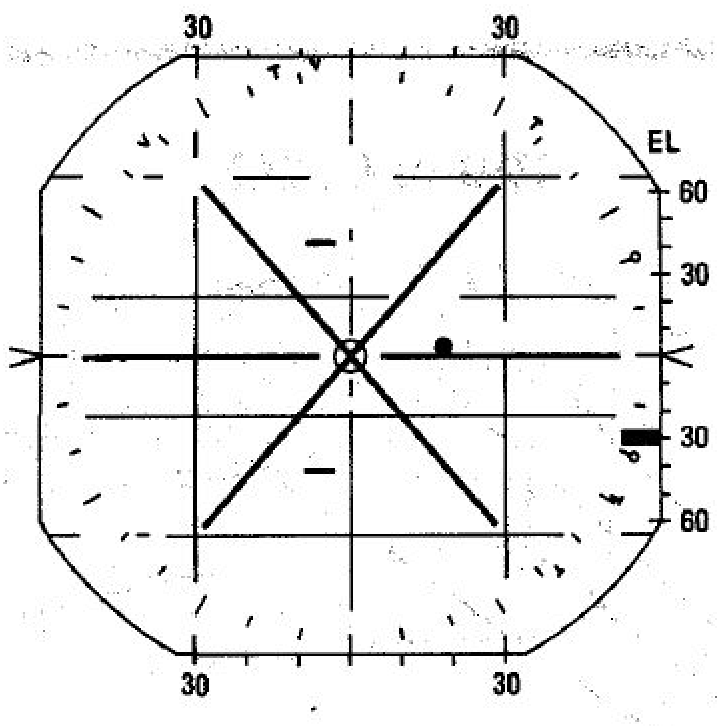
When the light is illuminated the azimuth error in the aim dot should be corrected only when the light goes out. The fighter should snap up to center the aim dot.

Break X

In all modes (except VI) when the target is lower in range than the calculated Rmin the Break X symbol will be displayed to indicate minimum range condition.

In Visual Intercept (VI) break X is displayed when range is less than 1000 ft.

When break X is displayed, the ASE Circle is also removed.



BREAK X
(APPEARS WHEN TARGET REACHES R_{MIN})

Firing Interlocks

There are several interlocks to prevent firing missiles in unfavorable conditions.

For the Sidewinder the only interlock preventing the missile from being fired is with the flaps in the down position.

For the Sparrow there are several conditions:

- The aim dot must be within the ASE Circle
- The in range and shoot lights must be on
- There must be no break X condition
- The selected mode must not be Visual Intercept

> 💡 Note that SHOOT lights remain off with the Flight Instrument Brightness Knob out of its fully CCW position. The firing interlocks are not influenced by this.

The interlocks are overridden automatically with a HOJ condition or when the Sparrow is to be fired in boresight mode. The interlocks can be overridden manually with the Interlock Switch.

Boresight and Cage Condition

Boresight

Boresight can be entered either by moving the Mode Knob to BST or by depressing the CAGE button on the throttle. The latter enters a cage condition which is very similar to boresight entered through BST, with the exception that the cage condition limits the range to 5 nmi and forces the maneuver setting into the HI position.

When in boresight, the antenna is fixed along the radar boresight line and the radar returns are displayed on the scope as in an acquisition mode. Acquisition can be commanded with half action as in automatic search to

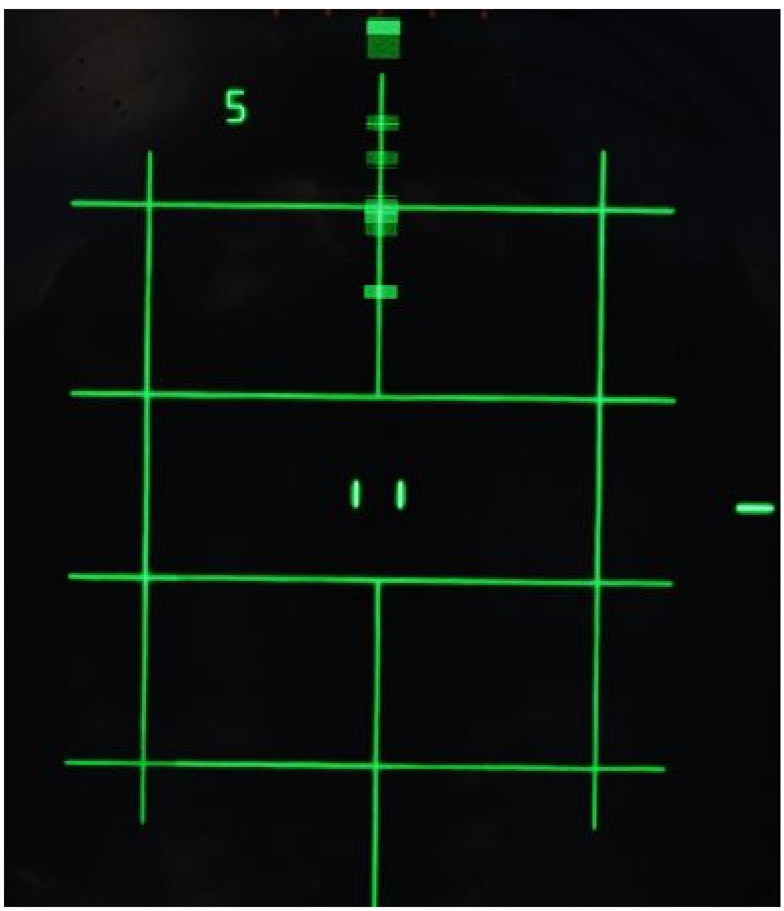
acquire, and then full action can be used to initiate track. Range and angle tracking will begin as normal.

Sparrows can be fired without tracking the target. If that is the case, the pilot must position the target on the gunsight pipper and the WSO can select an appropriate aspect setting. The Sparrow can now be fired.

> 💡 Targets need to be within a 5 degree zone or an attempted lock will likely result in a bad lock.

Cage Condition

The cage condition is a close combat mode which can be entered at any time by depressing the CAGE Button on the pilot throttle. This by default puts the radar into boresight as described above.



When the cage condition is present the following changes happen:

- Air-To-Air light in the rear pit illuminates.
- Trigger control is transferred to the air-to-air weapons (including when ARM and TV are selected)
- Optical sight switches into the A/A mode.
- Computer Automatic Acquisition becomes available.

If a track condition exists before the CAGE Button is pressed and the pinky switch on the throttle is in RADAR or HEAT, the radar breaks track and returns to boresight. If pinky switch is in GUNS, the lock is not broken.

Cage mode can be exited from either cockpit. The pilot can place the Weapon Select Knob into or out of the B position. If the pilot leaves the Weapon Select Knob in B, it does not preclude a later entry into Cage mode. The WSO can exit cage mode by pressing the Air To Air Button.

Computer Automatic Acquisition Mode (CAA)

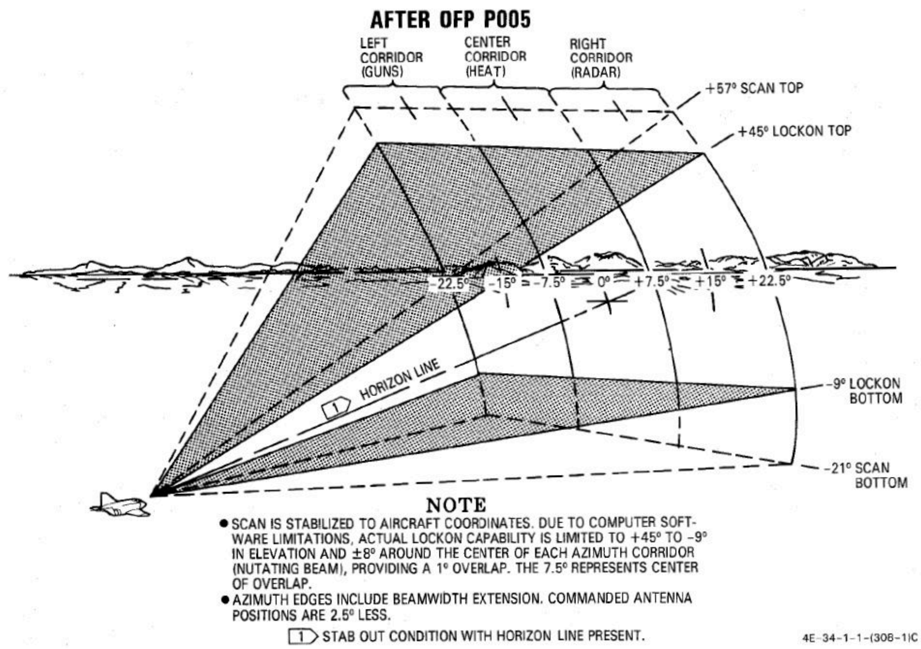
Once in Cage mode, the radar can be selected in to Computer Automatic Acquisition using the Nose Gear Steering button on the stick.

In CAA, the radar enters a vertical-oriented scan pattern 78 degrees in height by 15 degrees wide, the scan is 3 vertical bars wide. Actual radar lock capability within this scan pattern is from +45 degrees above the horizon line to -9 degrees below the horizon line due to APQ software limitation. In the event that the radar finds a suitable target within the scan volume, the target will be locked. Should the flight crew find the locked target not be the one intended, the Nose Gear Steering button can be pressed on either stick grip to return the radar back to the search pattern.

In CAA mode, the radar's search pattern can be shifted left and right utilizing the pinky switch on the throttle.

Pinky Selection	Scan Center
Guns	Left (-15 deg)
Heat	Center (0 deg)

Pinky Selection	Scan Center
Radar	Right (+15 deg)



To exit CAA, the pilot can select position B on the Weapon Select Knob, or the WSO can push the Air-To-Air button. Should a radar lock be in place at the time of mode exit, it will be retained.

Air to Ground Radar Operation

Radar operation air-to-ground includes the AIR-GRD mode and RDR-PPI and MAP-PPI.

AIR-GRD mode is used as a form of radar ranging for the WRCS Dive Toss mode. RDR-PPI and MAP-PPI are used for WRCS offset bomb and target find modes.

Air-To-Ground Ranging

AIR-GRD mode is available when the Mode Knob is positioned in the AIR-GRD position. AIR-GRD is used for air-to-ground ranging and is available only in AI ranges. In this mode the antenna is fixed to the radar boresight while also being stabilized in drift, this drift correction can be removed by setting Drift Out on the Stab Switch in-case of INS malfunction.

AIR-GRD mode disables Angle Track operation and only uses Range Track. Once locked on the main lobe clutter (ground radar echo), it will be tracked in range.

To use AIR-GRD, 5 or 10 nmi range should be selected. Once the target has been identified the pilot should make a 10 to 40 degree dive towards the target. The receiver gain should be reduced to produce a clutter signal of approximately 1/2 nmi. This is done to prevent erroneous track of sidelobes which would result in incorrect ranging information.

When locking the return, the cursor should be placed roughly at the center of the echo. Flying shallow angles will stretch the return further, requiring locking roughly one third of the return instead.

The AIR-GRD acquisition procedure is as follows:

1. Adjust receiver gain to reduce clutter signal to 1/2 nmi.
2. Position range strobe over clutter signal.

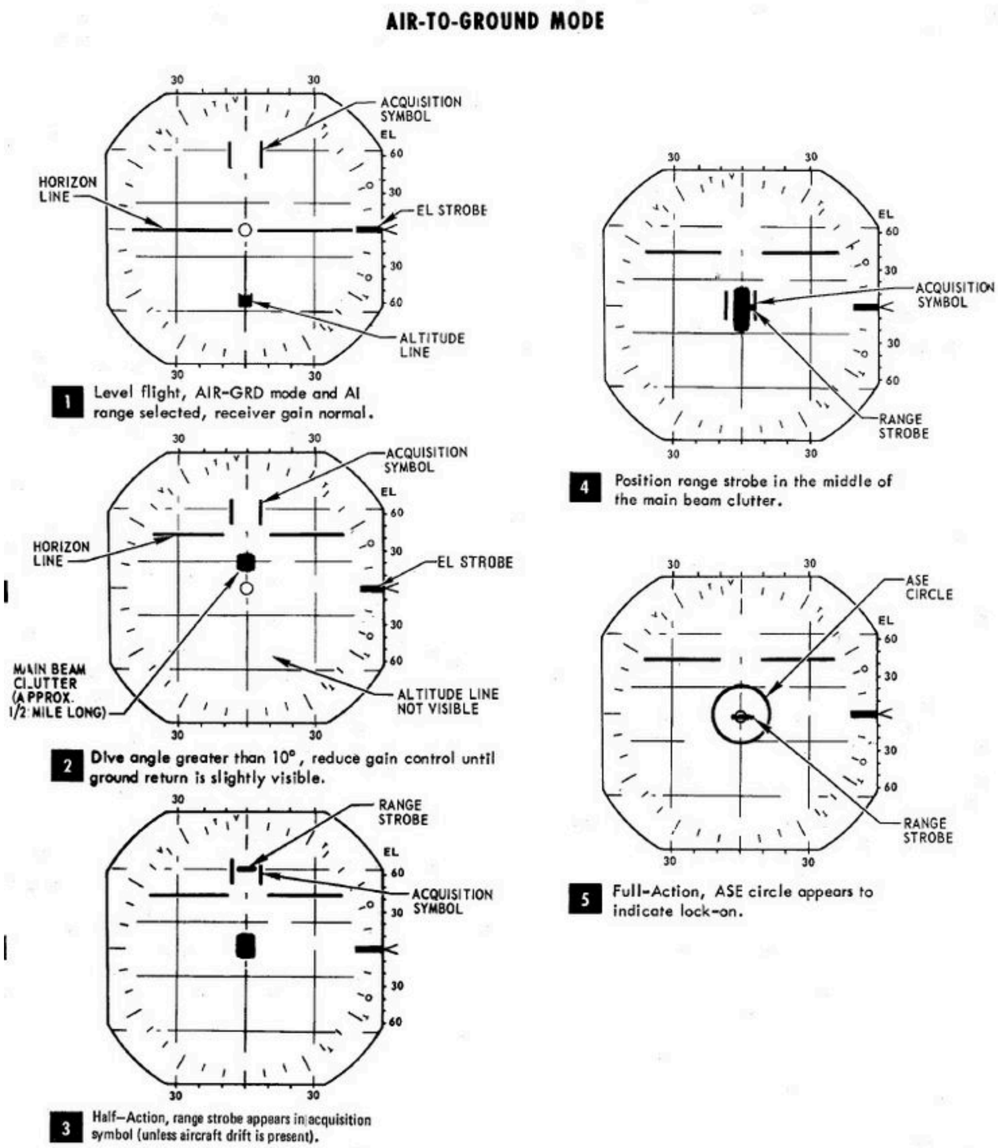
3. Press Action Switch to half and then full action. Release after ASE circle is visible.
4. Confirm Lock-on.

> 💡 The radar can track ground clutter from beyond 25,000 ft; however, is limited by the same number to what can be fed into the WRCS.

Sometimes false tracking can occur, which is indicated by a rapid decrease in slant range displayed on either the optical sight or radar.

To correct this condition the following actions can be taken:

1. Press Action Switch to half action, release.
2. Begin acquisition process again.

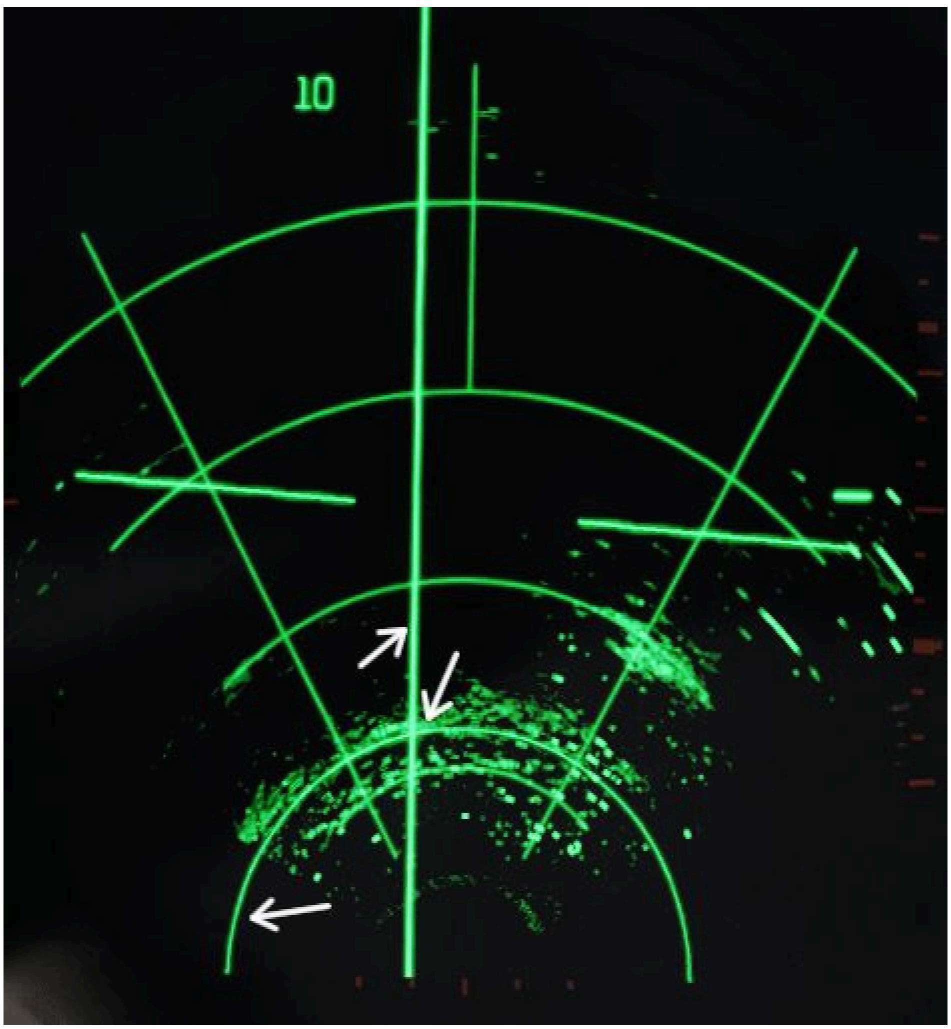


Map Mode (PPI)

Radar Map mode PPI (position plan indicator) is a display which shows radar returns plotted with their real position relative to the aircraft. The aircraft position is at the bottom center of the display, lines parallel to the vertical axis of the display are parallel to the aircraft track. Lines parallel to the horizontal axis of the display are offset from the track up to a maximum of half the current display range.

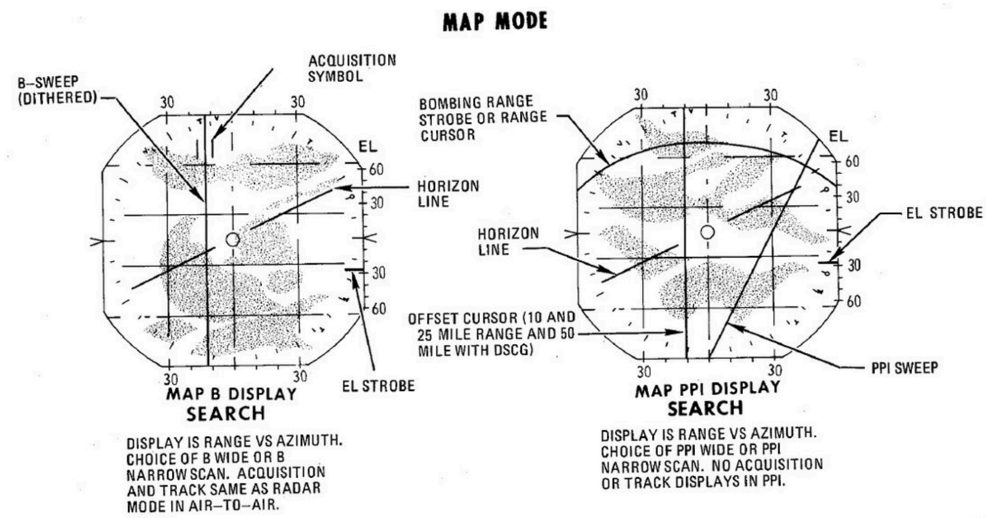
PPI Mode can be accessed by changing the Display Knob into PPI-WIDE or PPI-NAR. With the exception of 5 nmi which is always displayed in B-Scope interpretation.

The range cursor is an arc of constant range from the aircraft. The offset cursor is an offset parallel to the drift of the aircraft, which can be offset left or right of the aircraft's current track. Offset Cursor and Range Cursor can only be displayed in PPI modes.



Both Range and Offset Cursor are displayed if Weapon Delivery Mode is set to TGT FIND or OFFSET, or Radar Mode Knob is set to BEACON. If this is not the case, then only the Range Cursor is displayed at a fixed range which can be adjusted by the ground crew.

The Along Track Control is used to increase and decrease the current setting for the range cursor. The Cross Track Control is used to move the offset cursor to the left and right of the aircraft's track.



Weapon Systems

The F-4E features two systems to assist the Pilot and WSO in air-to-ground Operations. The AN/AJB-7 ARBCS (Automated Release Control System) serves as the automated release control system for time or pitch-relative bombing. It interfaces with the Multiple Weapon Controls, Pedestal Panel weapon settings, and various munitions such as bombs, laser-guided bombs, or the AGM-45.

The Weapon Release Computer Set (WRCS AN/ASQ-91) supports various delivery modes for both level and dive maneuvers. The weapon release signal is automatically generated by the computing system, incorporating inputs such as INS velocities, radar target range, and manual inputs from cockpit controls.

The AWRU (Automatic Weapon Release Unit) receives operational power when BOMBS or RKTS & DISP is selected on the weapon selector. The control panel features two INTRVL controls and a quantity (QTY) selector.

Multiple Weapons System

The Multiple Weapons System is designed to provide a single point of management for all stores deliverable by the F-4 with regards to arming, pylon activation, delivery mode, and selective jettison. While specific weapons may have additional controls elsewhere in the cockpit on a case by case basis, all of the noted functions are driven by this panel on the left forward console in the front cockpit.

Nose/Tail ARM Switch

Beginning from the top of the panel, the four way Nose/Tail ARM switch selects the solenoids for arming wire capture on MERs and TERs, which then arm the fuzes at the point of release. Additionally, the switch position can also dictate in-flight high/low drag release mode for retarded bombs such as the Mk 82 Snakeye.

Name	Description
SAFE	No arming solenoids activate; bombs release without fuzing enabled.
NOSE	Forward and center position solenoids activate to hold arming lanyards.
TAIL	Aft position solenoids activate to

Name	Description
	hold arming lanyards.
NOSE/TAIL	Forward, center, and aft position solenoids all activate to hold arming lanyards.

For example, MK-82 Air or Snakeye variants will only detonate if the nose fuze is selected and switch between high drag configuration with the tail fuze set and low drag if not set.

MER-10 and TER-9 racks include an automatic stepper mode function to automatically bypass stations that have already released munitions. To set this function, when the BOMBS mode of the Weapon Select Knob is chosen, the Nose/Tail switch must be in the NOSE or the NOSE & TAIL position for release signals to be delivered through installed MERs and TERs and bypass empty positions; if the system is set in TAIL, an additional release pulse(s) must be applied using the bomb switch to cycle through the empty stations. Usage of the MER-10A and TER-9A circumvent this requirement.

RKTS and DISP bypass empty stations automatically.

Station Select Buttons

With the station select buttons it is possible to select the different armaments on the respective stations. This does not constitute air-to-air weaponry.

Mode Selection - Delivery Mode Knob

Release mode is set using the Delivery Mode Knob. Values to the left of OFF employ the AN/AJB-7 Attitude Reference and Bombing Computer Set (ARBCS), whereas values to the right of DIRECT employ the Weapon Release Computer Set (WRCS). DIRECT is the manual release mode. TGT FIND functions as a navigational mode, and cannot provide a weapon release signal to the fire control, thus can be considered in practice a "safe" position.

The values, clockwise from the left, are as follows:

Name	Description	System
INST O/S	Instantaneous Over the Shoulder	ARBCS
LOFT	Loft	ARBCS
O/S	(Timed) Over the Shoulder	ARBCS
T LAD	Timed LADD (Low Angle Drogue Delivery)	ARBCS
TL	Timed Level	ARBCS
OFF	Off	
DIRECT	Manual	
TGT FIND	Target Find (Navigation and Pave Spike only)	WRCS
DT	Dive Toss	WRCS
DL	Dive Laydown	WRCS
L	Laydown	WRCS

Name	Description	System
OFFSET	Offset Bomb	WRCS
AGM-45	AGM-45 Delivery	WRCS

Weapon Selector Knob

The Weapon Selector Knob is used to designate the type of weapon to be used

Name	Description
RKTS & DISP	Rockets and dispensers. Arms AWRU release circuitry.
ARM	AGM-45 Shrike
TV	AGM-65 Maverick and other EO guided weapons.
C	Open/unused. May be utilized as an OFF selection.
B	Same function as AIR-TO-AIR button in rear cockpit.
A	Munitions with internally-set intervalometers (CBUs or spray containers).
AGM 12	AGM-12 Bullpup.
BOMBS	Bombs. Arms AWRU release circuitry.

Centerline Tank Aboard Light

The forward AIM-7 missiles can be inhibited from launch under certain centerline conditions due to possible separation issues or chance of igniting the contents of the centerline position. The CL tank light will illuminate if such a possible condition exists. The conditions that can cause this are as follows:

1. Fuel Tank or MER; the forward Sparrows cannot be launched. The CL tank light will shut off if the tank or MER is jettisoned, allowing launch or jettison.
2. BRU-5/A with single bomb; the CL tank light will illuminate. Forward position Sparrows can be launched or jettisoned; however, attention should be paid to eliminate lateral roll movements until the launched weapon is clear.
3. Aero-27/A with Centerline Arming Unit. The CL tank light will illuminate; however, the forward position AIM-7s cannot be jettisoned or released until this is removed post-flight.

Interlock Switch

The fire control system provides an inhibitor option for AIM-7 launches to confirm valid parameters are met, and is accessed with the INTLK switch. With IN selected, the missile will not release upon trigger down should any of the following not be the case:

1. The IN RANGE lamp illuminated
2. The target aim dot within the ASE (Allowable Steering Error) circle
3. The radar knob is not in VI mode

With the INTLK switch in OUT, the AIM-7 can be launched at any time, no matter the condition of the current parameters against the target.

The INTLK switch provides no function for AIM-9 launch.

Aircraft Weapons Release Unit (AWRU)

Used in the BOMBS and RKTS & DISP weapon modes, the AWRU provides interval and quantity controls for munition delivery. The AWRU has both a manual and automatic mode, and the resulting function is accessed with the appropriate settings.

The Interval Knob contains 14 values, providing base interval timing of release pulses while the bomb release button is held from 1/20th of a second (.05) to 1 second. This value can have a 10x multiplier applied to it using the INTRVL Switch. In the NORM mode of the INTRVL switch, the release will apply as on the Interval Knob, whereas when selected to x10, the 10x multiplier will apply - for example, 1 second in NORM would become an interval of 10 seconds in x10 mode.

The Quantity Knob sets the total number of munitions dropped during a bomb release hold, and applies the manual or automatic release functions based on the value selected.

Single-Manual: 1

In the 1 position, the AWRU is placed into manual mode. One munition will be dropped on each bomb release press, with releases across multiple

selected stations dropping in a left-right-left pattern. The bomb release button must be released, then pressed a subsequent time, to release another round.

Single-Ripple: 2-18

In numerical positions 2-18, up to the total number of selected munitions will be dropped according to the Interval setting. As an example, with a QTY of 6 and an interval of .20, six bombs will be dropped, one every 2/10ths of a second from the press of the bomb release button. The sequence will reset upon button release, allowing subsequent ripples of the same quantity to be dropped.

Single-Continuous: C

In position C, the quantity of weapons is dictated by how long the bomb release button is held. The ripple will apply the set interval, releasing one munition each pulse, until the bomb button is released.

Pairs-Manual: P

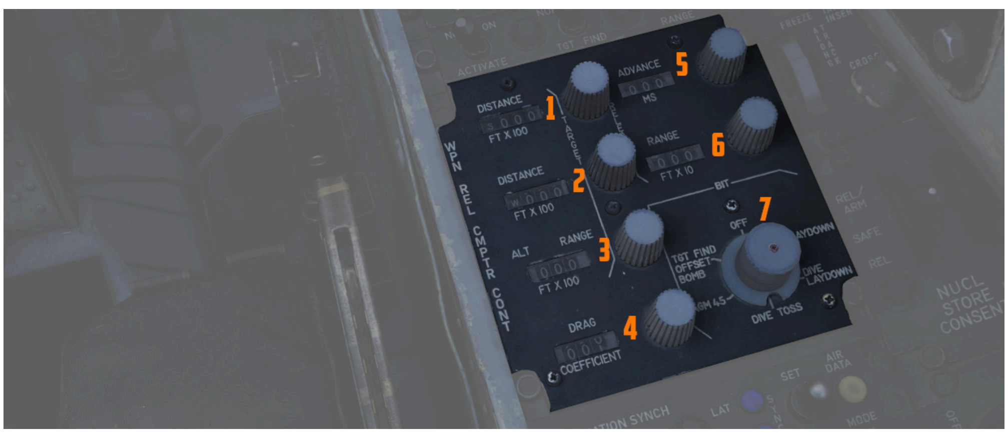
Position P places the AWRU into pairs mode. With multiple stations selected, each time the bomb button is pressed, a weapon will be released from each station.

Salvo: S

In the S position, the AWRU enters into salvo mode, functioning like Pairs-Manual with single rounds released from each station, but using the set interval value to release multiple salvos until the bomb button is released.

Weapon Release Computer Set (WRCS)

Provision for the F-4E to perform accurate level and dive munition delivery is provided by the AN/ASQ-91 WRCS. The WRCS inputs are set with the associated panels in the cockpits, and these commands, along with INS data and radar target ranging, are used by the ballistic computer to provide the release signal.



Target Range Controls

The Computer Control Panel found in the rear cockpit has three TARGET entry controls, two RELEASE entries, and a bomb DRAG COEFFICIENT

entry setting, as well as a BIT control knob for system function check. Target entry is relative to the predetermined IP.

The upper range control input is for North/South, and selection of relative bearing is noted by the N or S prefix at the start.

The middle range control input is for East/West, and like the previous, the E or W prefix on the range sets the relative bearing direction.

The final ALT RANGE entry is for target altitude- whether the target or RIP (Radar Identification Point) elevation as MSL, or the target/RIP's pressure altitude. In Laydown mode the entry refers to the distance between the IP and the target in hundreds of feet.

Entries for North/South and East/West are in 100 foot increments, and a maximum value of up to 99,900 feet may be entered for these distances. The ALT RANGE entry has a maximum of 24,900 in 100 foot increments.

> 💡 The WRCS can be damaged if the ALT RANGE entry is greater than the aircraft's current MSL (x100) in TGT FIND and OFFSET BOMB modes.

Release Range Control

The Release Range control is used to manually set bomb range in tens of feet, and is accessible in the Laydown, Dive Laydown, and Offset Bombing modes. The maximum setting is 9990 feet (999x10), and when used in a WRCS/AJB-7 integrated delivery, the actual range can be as high as 99,900'.

The Rg control should not be set to the same value as the target range control. Otherwise, the bomb rack delay may release late, or not at all.

Release Advance Control

Operative in all WRCS and WRCS/LABS integrated motes, the Release Advance Control works in conjunction with the AWRU to advance the release signal in milliseconds. Whereas the AWRU Intervalometer setting triggers the release pulse sequence from the moment the bomb release button is pressed, when the Release Advance Control is applied in a WRCS driven delivery, the specific bomb location in a multiple ripple sequence can be calculated in advance, allowing the most effective spread possible across a given target.

As an example, an AWRU single-ripple quantity release of 4 is selected with an interval of 120 milliseconds. To place the third bomb in the ripple on target, the following equation is used:

$$RA = I_R \cdot (N_{Tgt} - 1)$$

where

- `RA` = Release Advance Setting, milliseconds
- `I_R` = AWRU Release Intervalometer setting, milliseconds
- `N_Tgt` = Impact Sequence number of bomb desired on target

$$RA = 120 \cdot (3 - 1)$$

Thus, for this release, we would set the value of RA to 240 msec. This would produce a spread of two bombs ahead of target, one on the calculated target point, and one behind.

The maximum setting for the Release Advance Control is 999 milliseconds. A calculator to calculate the Release advance in-game is provided with the bombing calculator. You can open and close it by pressing RCTRL+B in game.

Drag Coefficient Control

Used only in the Dive Toss Mode, this entry is a bias factor prepared for the ballistic computer to compensate for actual bomb trajectory. The maximum setting for this value is 9.99.

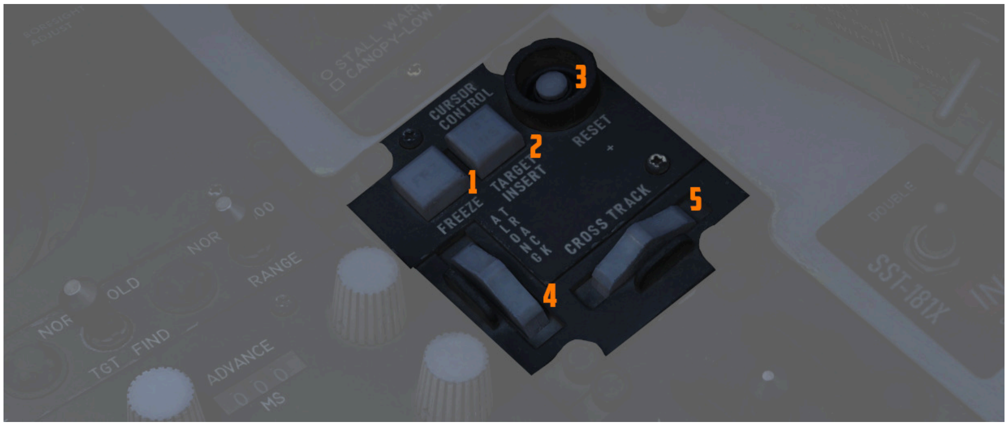
Ballistic Computer

The ballistic computer is not directly accessed by the flight crew, but instead pre-set based on the configured loadout by the ground crew to add the necessary ejection bias factors. The computer uses these pre-set bias factors in conjunction with a coefficient setting for munition drag in the Dive Toss mode to calculate accurate delivery.

WRCS Built-In-Test (BIT)

The BIT control is used to confirm go/no-go status of the WRCS. The BIT system checks individual bomb modes individually, and effectivity of the given setting is confirmed by selecting the desired mode, pushing the center of the knob PUSH FOR BIT for five seconds, then pressing the FREEZE button in conjunction with the PUSH FOR BIT button. Confirmation of mode performance will be displayed as GO or NO-GO. Should a mode be checked a subsequent time during a flight and a NO-GO response is received, it can be disregarded.

Cursor Control Panel



The Cursor Control Panel provides the controls needed for TARGET FIND and OFFSET bombing modes. The panel has two wheels named ALONG TRACK and CROSS TRACK, which is used in the MAP-PPI mode to position their respective cursors over the Radar Identification Point (from this point denoted as RIP). The ALONG TRACK control, which presents relative range to the RIP, also includes an internal switch enabling the cursor instructions to be acknowledged by the WRCS ballistic computer, and must therefore be the first applied command in the target insertion sequence.

Once the ALONG TRACK (range hemisphere) and CROSS TRACK (vertical line) cursors are aligned over the RIP, the FREEZE button is pressed to initiate WRCS ground path tracking of the specified point. The button remains illuminated until the RESET button is pressed or another bombing mode is selected.

With WRCS ground tracking initiated, the TARGET INSERT button is pressed for the ALONG TRACK and CROSS TRACK cursors to shift from the RIP to the offset target. Once selected, target steering information is provided from the WRCS to the BDHI, ADI, HSI, and optical sight. In the AGM-45 missile mode, the AoA Indexers will provide maneuver commands for level, dive, or climb requirements to align for seeker acquisition. Further, unless the Pull up tone switch is disabled on the LABS panel, an audio tone will be triggered from the point of bomb release button press until the first bomb releases from the aircraft; this

function is nominally for training purposes, as it can preclude other system audio volume.

Weapon Delivery Panel

The Weapon Delivery Panel permits the aircrew to use the WRCS TGT FIND functions in LABS (ARBCS) modes - those found on the left side of the pilot's Delivery Mode Knob.

The TGT FIND switch on the panel functions the same as the TGT FIND mode on the Delivery Mode Knob. The Delivery Mode Knob overrides this switch in any mode outside of TGT FIND, and should be set back to NORM. The HOLD position energizes the target finding circuits in conjunction with any LABS or DIRECT mode the pilot selects.

The RANGE Switch is functional in any WRCS mode requiring a Release Range setting. The NORM position applies the noted x10 multiplier on the displayed Release setting, whereas selecting x100 applies a multiplier of 100 to the counter value.

The ACTIVATE Switch triggers the prerequisite activation signals to the LABS circuits once the aircraft has passed within the Release Range. The switch should only be placed in ON after target insert has been pressed and the ALONG TRACK and CROSS TRACK cursors have transitioned to the target.

Attitude Reference and Bombing Computer Set (ARBCS)

The AN/AJB-7 ARBCS is the automated release control system for time or pitch-relative bombing. Interfacing with the Multiple Weapon Controls, Pedestal Panel weapon settings, and bomb, laser guided, or the AGM-45, the system releases the selected munition once the respective Bombing Timer or respective Bomb Release Angle Computer pitch angle (gyro) target has been achieved.

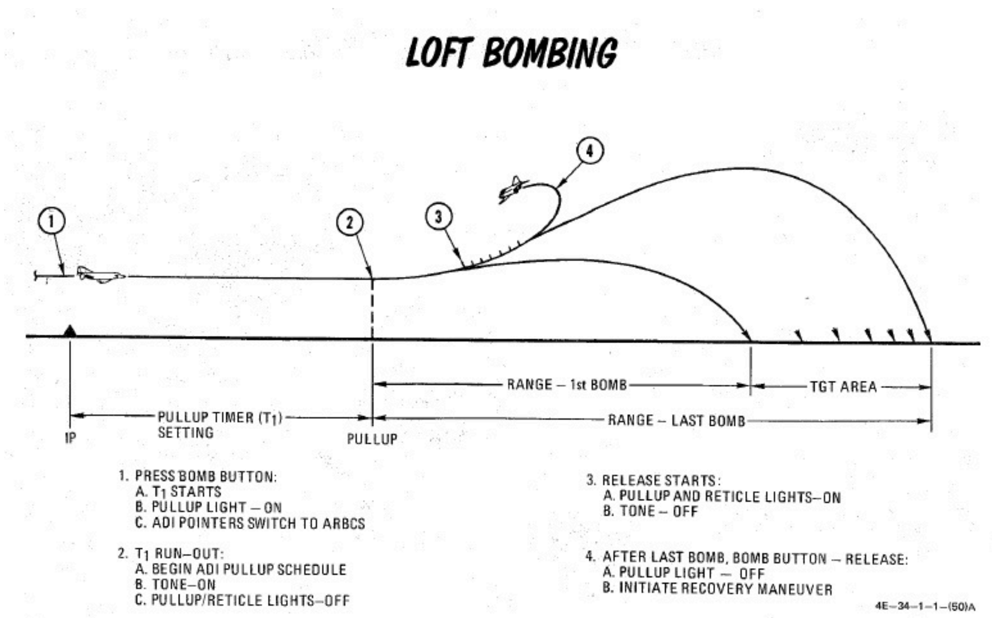
The left side of the Delivery Mode Knob selects the ARBCS release modes. Both LOFT and T LAD modes provide weapons release in a pull-up, with LOFT selecting a 4.0 G pull-up schedule and weapon release on achieving a set gyro angle value, whereas T LAD assumes a 3.5 G pull-up schedule and release at the end of the Bombing Timer setting. Necessary values for Low and High angle, as well as the Bombing Timer are found on the provided tables.

Bomb Release Angle Computer

The Bomb Release Angle Computer provides entry of the necessary target pitch angles for ARBCS bombing modes. The values of HIGH (70 to 179.9 degrees) and LOW (0 to 89.9 degrees) are controlled using their respective entry knobs. Internally, the computer contains the release

switches, as well as the resolver to transmit the target angle values to the ADI director pointers.

A calculator for the input values in-game is provided by the bombing calculator. You can open and close it by pressing RCTRL + B in game.



Bombing Timers

Timers for ARBCS bombing modes are available for PULL-UP (0 to 60 seconds) and RELEASE (0 to 30 seconds). Both can be set in increments of 0.1 second, with 0.1 second as the minimum setting. The reference windows do not count down during the bomb run.

When the PULL-UP timer is complete, required PULL-UP signaling will initiate, along with any ADI director programming to show proper flight path. RELEASE timing is mode dependent, and will occur once PULL-UP is complete, if required.

In LOFT and O/S modes, only PULL-UP timing is activated, and a value must be set to energize the ADI pull-up flight path program.

In T LAD and TL, PULL-UP and RELEASE are both activated, in sequence, and both require a value entry- PULL-UP to energize the flight path programming, and RELEASE to generate the munition release signal.

In integrated LABS (ARBCS)/WRCS bombing, the above requirements are the same; however, the WRCS initiates the bomb run timing, rather than pressing the bomb button. When the WRCS initiates timing, an audio tone is applied to signal timer start.

A calculator for the input values in-game is provided by the bombing calculator. You can open and close it by pressing RCTRL+B in game.

ARBCS Indicators

During ARBCS weapons delivery, a number of indicators are available to confirm run initiation and at what step of the given run the aircraft is in:

1. Upon run initiation (bomb button press/WRCS initiation) and PULL-UP timer start, the Pull-up light turns ON.


2. At PULL-UP timer completion, the Pull-up light turns OFF, the reticle light turns OFF, and a steady Pull-up Tone (if switched ON)

occurs.

3. As release pitch angle is attained, the Pull-up light turns ON, the reticle light turns ON, and the Pull-up Tone stops.
4. When the bomb button is released, Pull-up light turns OFF.

This indication sequence can occur with the master arm in SAFE for training purposes.

Gyro Fast Erect

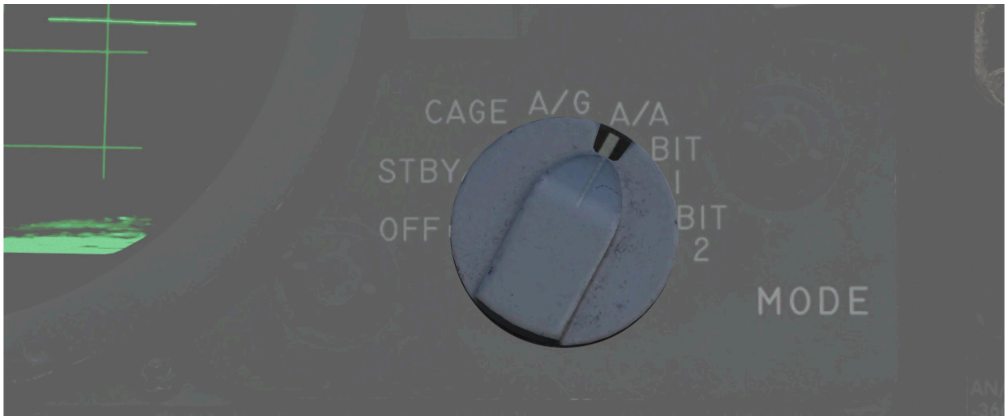
Due to rapid maneuvering during a bombing run, gyro deviation can occur due to fluid migration. While this deviation will resolve naturally at a rate of 1 to 2 degrees correction per minute over time, it can quickly be corrected by using the FAST ERECT switch found in the front pilot cockpit on the left side console, at a rate of 15 degrees per minute. This switch should not be held for more than 60 seconds, or damage can occur to the gyro.

Lead computing optical sight system (LCOSS)

The lead computing optical sight system or short LCOSS, is used to establish a visual sight reference to either air-to-air or air-to-ground weapons delivery. A red reticle is projected on a combining glass. The LCOSS features seven different modes that can be selected via the Sight Mode Knob.

LCOSS Controls

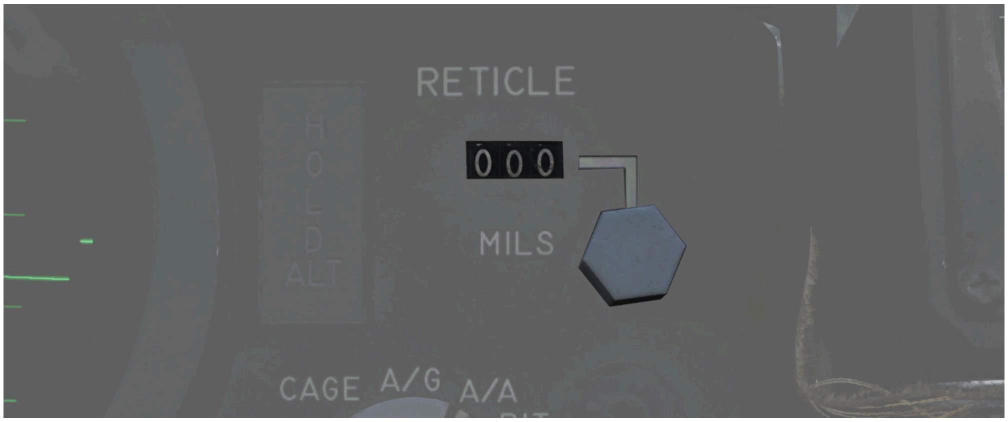
Sight mode knob



The sight mode knob selects the mode of operations which are the following:

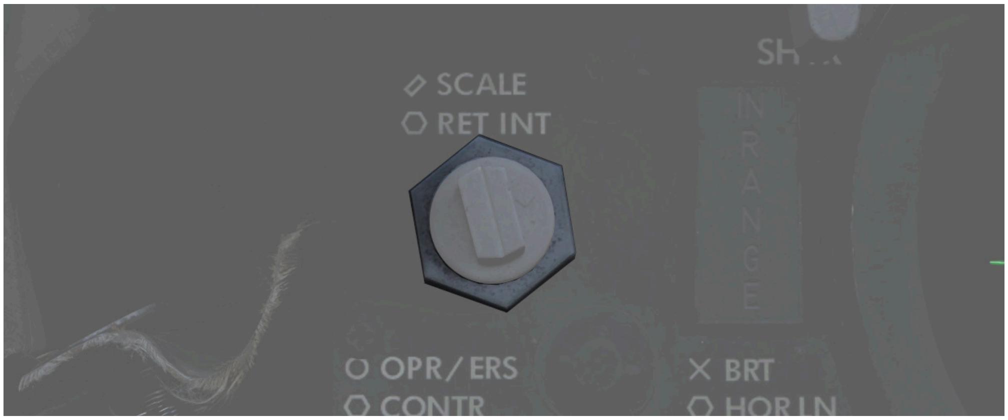
Sight mode knob	Function
OFF	De-energizes the sight system.
STBY	Energizes the sight system for warmup but does not display any reticle.
CAGE	Reticle is displayed and caged at the radar boresight line (RBL).
A/G	Selects the air-to-ground mode. The reticle is depressable from zero mils to 245 mils below the fuselage reference line (FRL).
A/A	Selects the air-to-air lead compute mode. The reticle position is governed by the sight gyro, radar range, the CADC Sensor and the cage button on the throttle.
BIT 1 and BIT 2	Energizes the lead computing amplifier relays so that fixed voltages are applied to the sight system for a self test. Displays self test pictures.

Reticle depression control



The reticle can be depressed by rotating the reticle depression knob until the readout (in one-mil increments) shows the desired sight setting. The Reticle cannot be positioned manually in azimuth.

Reticle intensity control



Rotating the reticle intensity control knob changes the brightness of the reticle.

Shutter lever control

The shutter control lever is a two position lever with positions of CL (closed) and OPEN. In the CL position a shutter is placed between the optical light source and the combining glass thus preventing damage to the optics from bright sunlight. In the OPEN position the shutter is removed and the reticle will be displayed.

Reticle Image

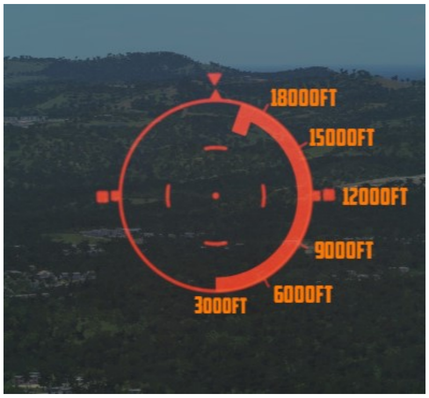
The reticle image that is projected onto the combining glass is composed of a fixed reticle, roll reference tabs, and a range bar. The fixed reticle

consists of 2-mil diameter pipper located in the center of a 25-mil diameter segmented circle, and a 50-mil diameter completed circle.

The roll reference tabs rotate about the 50-mil circle. The roll reference tabs have two seperate functions. During the offset bombing mode and the target finding mode the roll tabs provide steering information from the WRCS. The position of the roll tabs, with respect to the fixed index tabs, indicates the angle between the ground track and course to the target. In every other mode of operation the roll tabs indicate the aircraft roll attitude, supplied by the INS.

Roll tab left roll	Roll tab right roll
	
1 left roll tab, 2 center roll tab, 3 right roll tab	*1 left roll tab, 2 center roll tab, 3 right roll tab*

The range bar is semicircular and appears on the inside of the 50-mil circle only when a target has been acquired by radar lockon. The instantaneous length of the range bar, and the rate at which the length is changing indicates the actual radar slant range and the range between the aircraft and the target. The minimum length of the range bar (and minimum range indication) exists at the 6 o'clock position. With gun selected the inside tab of the range bar at 6 o'clock, the actual radar range is 1000 ft. At the 5 o'clock position the range bar is 2000ft continuing with 1000ft increments per tab. The maximum range that can be shown is 6667ft with guns selected. When any other mode than GUN is selected the range bar is 3000ft at the 6 o'clock position and 6000ft at the 5 o'clock position, with increments of 3000ft per tab. The maximum displayable range is then 20000ft.

Range bar with guns	Range bar in any other mode
	

Reticle Cage Function

The reticle cage function is applied through the CAGE button on the throttle. With the sight operating in the (GUNS) A/A mode and with CAGE pressed (no radar lockon) the reticle is caged at radar boresight line (RBL). When CAGE is released, a pseudo range of 1000ft is supplied to the computer but the range bar is not displayed. With radar lockon the stiffening function is applied as long as CAGE is pressed. The range bar continues to indicate the actual radar range or the maximum displayable range. When CAGE is released the reticle moves in azimuth elevation to display the lead required to a maximum of 4000ft. This will only happen with GUNS selected.

Pave Spike

The AN/AVQ-23 Pave Spike targeting pod is the successor of the AN/AVQ-10 Pave Knife and predecessor of the AN/AVQ-26 Pave Tack pod. It entered service in 1974 and was replaced from 1982 to 1989 by the Pave Tack pod. It provides a slew-able TV image for spotting ground targets and can fire laser for determining range information and to guide laser guided weapons.

The line of sight can be controlled by the WSO, using the Antenna Hand Control. The camera image is displayed on the DSCG scope and can be viewed by both, the Pilot and the WSO independently.

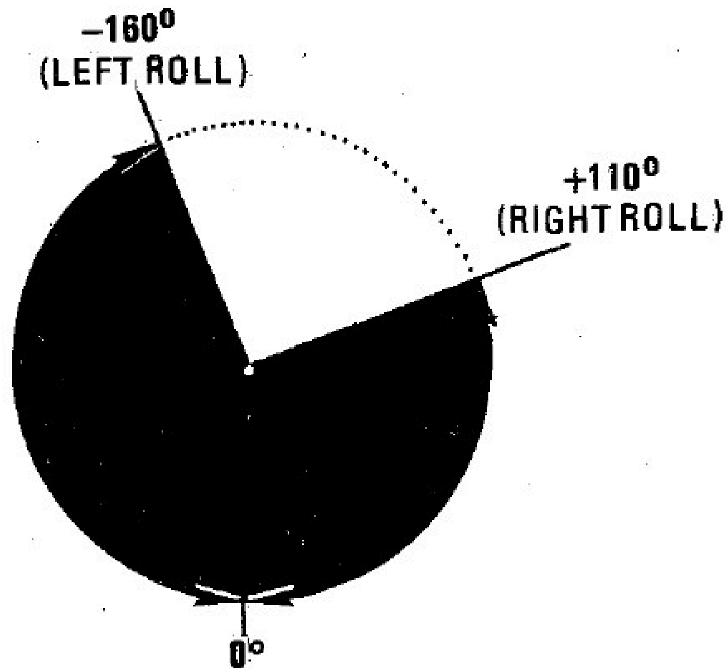
Targeting Pod

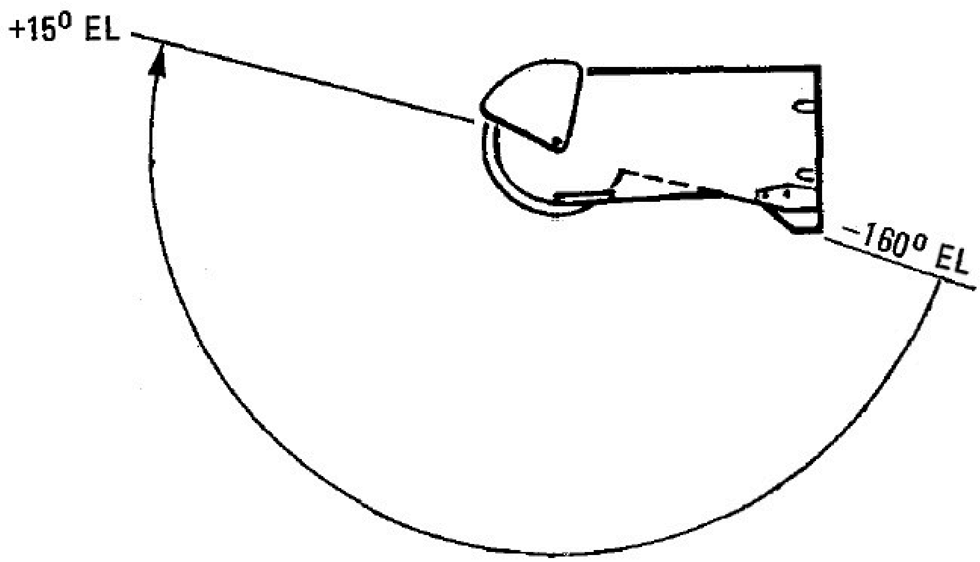
The system has an optical camera for daylight operation with one level of optical zoom, for a wide and narrow (4x) field of view.

Limitations for the pods gimbals are

- Roll: -160 to +110 degrees
- Pitch: -160 to +15 degrees

- Yaw: -15 to +15 degrees





Symbology

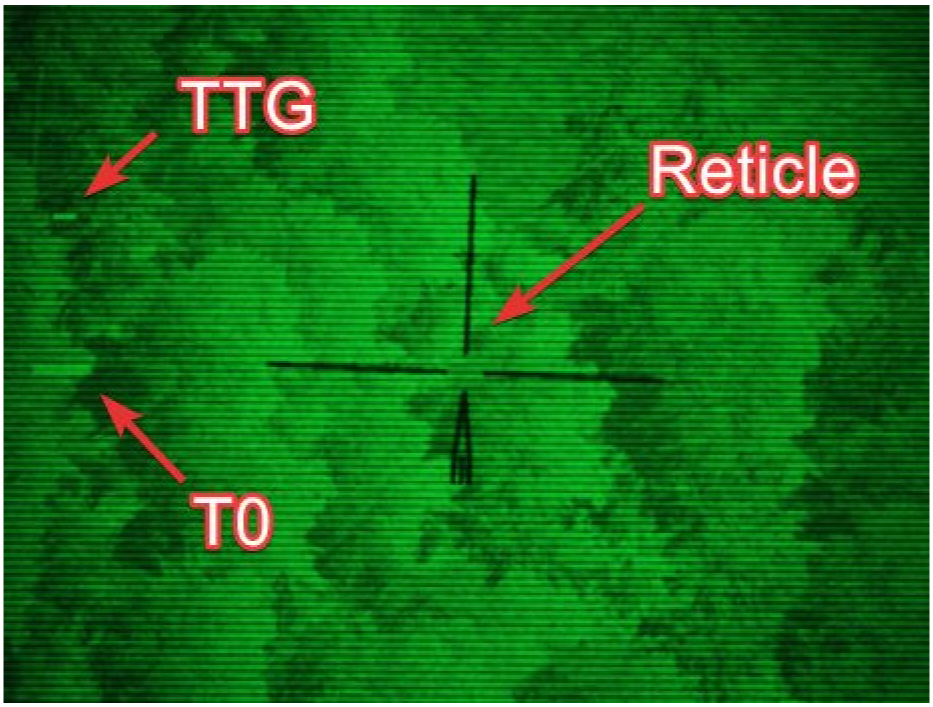
The TV image mainly consists of a reticle. The reticle rotates clockwise to indicate the pods current elevation. At a 90 degree rotation, the pod is looking straight down. If the reticle is almost upside down, the pod reached its gimbal limit for the elevation (160 degrees).

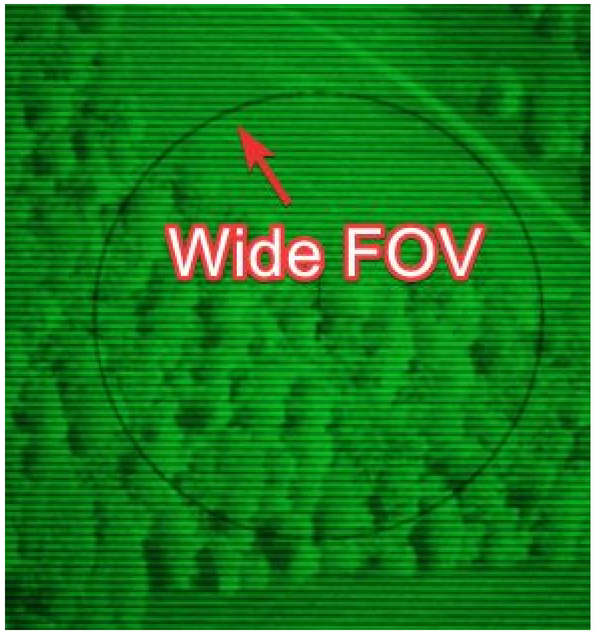
The wide field of view is indicated by a circle around the reticle.

On the left, the image displays two cues:

- Time To Go Cue (TTg)
- Release Cue (T0)

During weapon operation, TTg moves down until it intersects T0, indicating the time to release from maximally 15 seconds.





The cues also indicate various situations related to laser operation.

Indication	TO	TTG
not shown	not in TRACK mode	not in TRACK mode
steady	commanded to fire laser (full action)	firing laser, accepted range
flashing fast	not commanded to fire laser	not firing laser or target too far away
flashing slow		firing laser, but range rejected

Controls

The Pave Spike is mostly interacted with by the WSO, while the Pilot has indicators assisting in keeping the pods line of sight within its limits.

The entire system, known as AN/ASQ-153 Electro-Optical Target Designator System, consists of:

- Range Indicator (Pilot)
- Azimuth-Elevation Indicator (Pilot)
- Laser Coder Control (WSO)

- Target Designator Set Control (WSO)

While the display is shown on the DSCG screens in both cockpits.

(1) Range Indicator, (2) Brightness Control knobs, (3) DSCG Display, (4) Azimuth-Elevation (LOS) Indicator, (5) Weapon select knob

(1) Video Select button, (2) DSCG Display, (3) DSCG Control knobs, (4) Target Designator Controls, (5) Laser Code Designator, (6) Antenna Hand Control

Azimuth-Elevation Indicator

The Azimuth-Elevation Indicator is the main instrument for the pilot to assess the pods current attitude in order to keep the line of sight within the operational limits.

The needle shows the pods roll position from -160 (CW) to +110 (CCW) degrees.

Three flags indicate the elevation:

- green: -120 to -155 degrees
- yellow: -155 to -160 degrees
- red: -160 or beyond degrees

> 💡 If the needle is kept within the green labelled range and neither the yellow or red flag are shown, the view will not be obstructed by the pod or the aircraft.

Range Indicator

This panel provides the pilot with a readout of the slant range measured by the Pave Spike (x100 ft).

When the Test-Button (3) is pressed, the display shows 888, the knob underneath it (5) controls the brightness of the readout.

The Mode-Knob (1) allows the pilot to select one of two weapon delivery modes available with the pod:

- WRCS - Automatic Delivery
- ROR - Release on Range

In the SET position, the display shows the desired release range used in the ROR mode. The knob below the readout (4) can be used to adjust this range.

Laser Coder Control

The WSO can set the laser code used by the targeting pod by using the four small push-buttons (1) on this panel. Each press will advance the corresponding digit by one. Once a code has been set, it can be transferred to the Pave Spike by pressing the Enter-Button (2) to the right.

The Laser Coder system starts validating the entered code, this process takes about 5 seconds. If the NO-GO lamp is lit, the code is invalid.

> 💡 Codes directly relate to lasers frequencies, resulting in them having to be between 1111 and 1788 and not use digits 0 or 9 in order to be valid.

When power is applied to the system, it automatically initiates a transfer of the currently set code.

Target Designator Control Set

This is the main panel to interact with the targeting pod.

From left to right, top to bottom, it provides the WSO with:

- Reticle Brightness Knob (1) - change the reticle from black to green
- Az/El/Roll Boresight Knobs (2,3,4) - adjust the boresight position of the pod within ±2.5 degrees
- Stow Button (5) - Stow or Un-stow the pod
- Laser Ready Button (6) - Arm or Disarm the laser
- Power On Button (7) - Turn the pod on or off
- Currently selected BIT, with push button to advance the BIT (8)
- Light Brightness Knob (9) - adjust brightness of all lights on this panel (except the Overheat lamp)
- Reject/Override Button (10) - Force the use of the laser slant range
- Acquisition Mode Switch (11) - Select the Acquisition Mode (12-VIS, WRCS or 9-VIS)
- WRCS Out Button (12) - Toggle WRCS integration with the pod
- GO/MALF Lamp (13) - Indicates BIT results
- INS Out Button (and Overheat lamp) (14) - Toggle INS integration with the pod

The lamps generally indicate the current status, while the push buttons can be used as a manual command. For example, pressing the Laser Ready

Button is not enough for the laser to actually be ready. The lamp will only be lit if all other conditions, such as a valid laser code being set, are met.

Antenna Hand Control

During Track mode, the WSO can manually slew and correct the pods line of sight with the Antenna Hand Control, or Antenna Stick.

The Challenge Button (1) is used to zoom in or out, while the 2-stage trigger (3) is used to switch between modes and fire the laser. The Slider (2) does not feature any functionality with the Pave Spike.

> 💡 Controls are **not** inverted. Moving the stick up also moves the view up (*pitch up*).

> 💡 The pods math is fairly limited, do not move the reticle above the aircraft datum line (looking up) or controls will invert and the pod is unable to compute target coordinates properly.

The trigger functions slightly different if used for the Pave Spike, compared to the radar or also some other aircraft. To fire the laser, instead of perhaps holding the trigger down, one has to complete the sequence and move the trigger through all its stages forth and back, i.e. from *Released* to *Half Action*, to *Full Action*, back to *Half Action* and *Released*. Completing this sequence will toggle the laser on or off. To enter

track mode, one has to complete the sequence *Released* to *Half Action* and back to *Released*. Holding the trigger at any point will not actuate the linked action.

> 💡 Our provided binds make sure to execute the sequence properly. For physical 2-stage triggers, use the corresponding 2-stage binds.

Electrics

The Pave Spike draws its power through 4 circuit breakers on the No. 4 CB Panel (WSO, left wall). They forward current from the left main AC bus and the main DC bus.

All panels of the system are powered directly through the pod, and hence will be turned off if the Pave Spike targeting pod is not equipped.

> 💡 It is not required to turn on the pod itself in order for power to be routed through the pod to the panels.

Integrations

INS integration

During normal operation, the pod is connected with the INS. This can be disabled manually by pressing the INS OUT push button.

With INS disabled, the following functions are **not available**:

- Automatic target stabilization during Track-mode
- Roll-stabilization during 12-VIS Acquisition-mode
- Slant range computation
- WRCS integration

WRCS integration

During normal operation, the pod is connected with the WRCS. This can be disabled manually by pressing the WRCS OUT push button.

Also, the WRCS is disabled automatically without INS integration, or if currently not in DIRECT or TGT FIND weapon mode.

With WRCS disabled, the following functions are **not available**:

- WRCS Acquisition mode
- Memory mode
- WRCS Automatic Weapon Release

And some functions are degraded, but **still available**:

- Slant range computation
- Automatic target stabilization during Track-mode

Modes

Prior to being able to designate a target, one has to visually acquire the general target area and put the LOS in the vicinity. This is done by using one of three acquisition modes:

- 12-VIS
- 9-VIS
- WRCS

The modes can be selected by the WSO, using the Acquisition Mode Switch.

Visual modes

In 12-VIS and 9-VIS, the LOS is set to a fix position.

- 12-VIS: 0 degrees roll, -2 degrees elevation, looking slightly nose down
- 9-VIS: -90 degrees roll (CW), -90 degrees elevation (down), looking left

12-VIS can be a great way to find targets of opportunity, as it allows the pilot to put a target directly on the nose. The position also corresponds to the caged HUD reticle. Additionally, if the INS is integrated with the pod, 12-VIS is roll-stabilized.

The use of 9-VIS is very limited. It is intended to aid in acquiring a target while observing an area in a turn. The target has to be put on the extension of the left wing. However, in practice it is very difficult to maintain a turn in such an attitude.

WRCS mode

The main mode to acquire targets is the WRCS mode, in which the LOS is set to the current WRCS target. This usually corresponds to the cursor on the radar screen, but can also be set manually by the WSO. This enables the crew to spot a target, or general target area, by using the radar or entering known coordinates and then slewing the pod to this destination. If no specific target has been inserted, the WRCS usually defaults to the aircraft position, resulting in the pod looking straight down.

> 💡 The WRCS mode automatically falls back to the 12-VIS mode in case the WRCS integration is deactivated.

Track mode

Once the target, or general target area, has been found using the acquisition modes, the WSO can enter Track-mode by pressing the trigger on the Antenna Hand Control to either Half or Full Action.

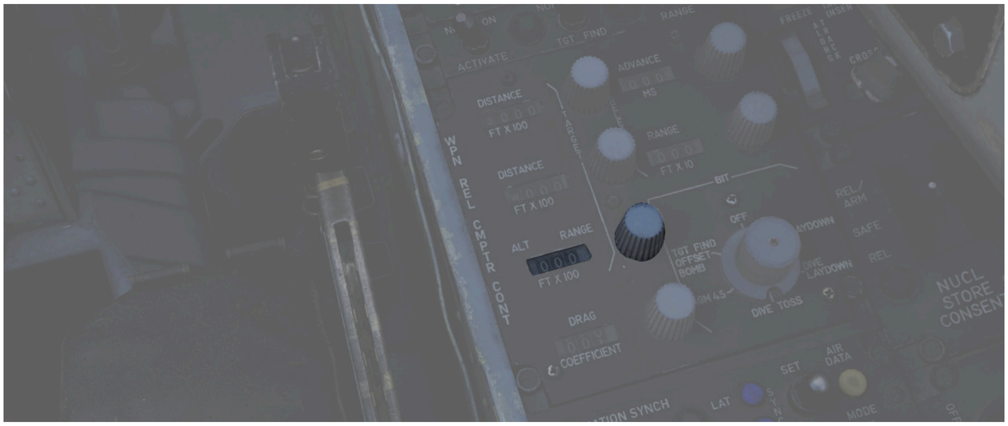
> 💡 It is necessary for the trigger to go through the full sequence of for example *Released* to *Half Action* and back to *Half Action* in order to enter Track-mode.

In this mode, the Antenna Stick can be moved to slew the pod LOS. Operating the laser is only available in this mode, and can be activated by pressing the trigger on the Antenna Stick to Full Action.

Track mode is indicated by the T0 and TTG cues becoming visible on the display. They also indicate the status during laser operation.

If the INS is integrated with the pod, the image will automatically be space stabilized on the computed target position. Be aware that the stabilization is rudimentary and needs constant correction with the stick for the target to be kept centered.

The stabilization is mostly based on the measured slant range. Accurate slant range can be obtained by firing the laser. Alternatively, it is computed based on the aircraft barometric altitude and the target altitude, which can be set by the WSO on the WRCS panel.



Without a WRCS integration, a target altitude of 0 is assumed, degrading the stabilization.

> 💡 The pod is not capable of computing a slant range for targets above the own aircraft altitude (for example when attacking up-hill). Since that is measured using the barometric altitude, depending on the pressure-setting, this can lead to erratic behavior during hot days when flying low. Problematic situations like this were commonly referred to as *Idiot mode*, as the tracking system started to behave very odd and it was very difficult to restore proper behavior. The crew often had to deactivate the INS integration temporarily in order to disable the automatic tracking.

Memory Mode

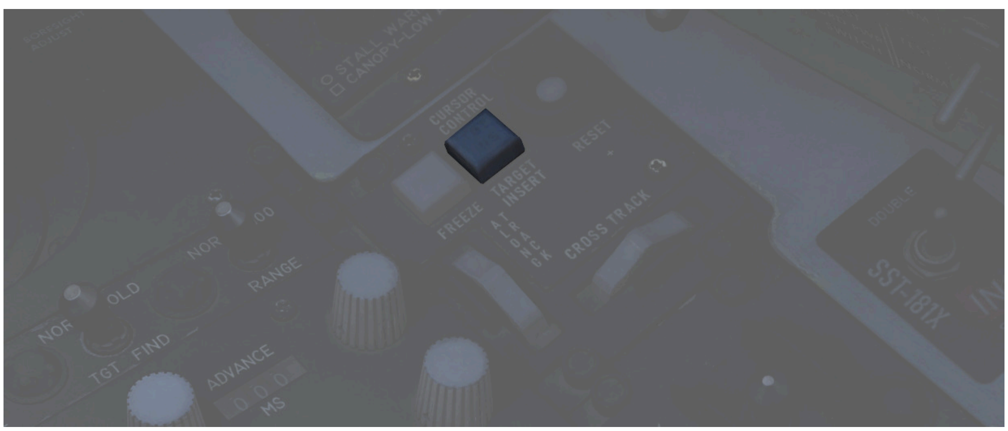
Whenever a target-insert signal is send, the system activates the Memory-mode, provided it is currently in Track-mode and the WRCS integration is active.

In this mode, the line of sight is slaved to the current WRCS target, even if it is outside of the pods gimbal limits and cannot be displayed currently. The mode acts very similar to the WRCS-Acquisition mode.

The memory mode has to be left explicitly again, by either pressing half or full action on the Antenna Stick.

Target Insert

A target-insert signal is usually initiated by the WSO pressing the target-insert button.



However, when the pod is currently in Track-mode and is maneuvered outside of its gimbal limits, it will automatically initiate a target-insert signal and send its current target position to the WRCS.

> 💡 If the laser is currently firing, it will automatically be stopped when hitting a limit.

This signal then also causes the pod to enter Memory-mode, in which case it will continue to follow the position now memorized by the WRCS.

Additionally, the signal will also be send if the pod is deselected, i.e.

- Video Select Button - Weapon, or
- WSO DSCG Mode - not TV (for example switching to Radar)

Laser System

The laser can only be operated in the Track-mode and serves two purposes:

- Guiding laser guided weapons on a target,
- and accurate slant range measurement.

Slant range is, besides weapon impact calculations, used for the automatic target stabilization in Track-mode. If not measured with the laser, it is computed based on inaccurate INS and WRCS data, resulting in a degradation of the system.

The laser can be used when the LASER READY lamp is illuminated.

To setup the laser, a valid code has to first be entered on the Laser Coder Control panel and transferred to the pod by pressing the Enter-Button. Make sure that the NO GO light does not remain illuminated.

The LASER READY push button has to be pushed in for the laser to be armed.

Additionally, the laser is guarded by the nose gear position, which has to be fully retracted to prevent accidental use on the ground.

Once ready, the laser is fired during track mode by pressing full action on the Antenna Stick. The status of the laser operation is indicated by the cues on the display being steady or flashing.

💡 It is necessary for the trigger to go through the full sequence of *Released* to *Half Action*, to *Full Action*, back to *Half Action* and *Released* in order to actuate the laser. In particular, do not hold down the trigger but release it again.

Indication	T0	TTG
not shown	not in TRACK mode	not in TRACK mode
steady	commanded to fire laser (full action)	firing laser, accepted range
flashing fast	not commanded to fire laser	not firing laser or target too far away
flashing slow		firing laser, but range rejected

The T0 cue indicates intention to fire the laser, while the TTG cue represents the outcome of the laser usage.

The slant range measured by the laser is compared to the slant range computed based on INS and WRCS data. If it is not within ±20% percent of that value, it is rejected. This is indicated by TTG flashing slow.

The system can be forced to use the laser range regardless, by pressing the Reject/Override Button.

In practice, laser measured range is much more accurate than the slant range computed by the system. Hence, pilots developed a habit of always hitting the button whenever they fired the laser.

> 💡 This habit can lead to trouble during shallow attacks, such as when flying low altitude, where a small input can quickly lead to the slant range measured by the laser being very off. And hence cause the stabilization to drift off quickly.

Weapon Release Modes

The pod offers two additional weapon release modes:

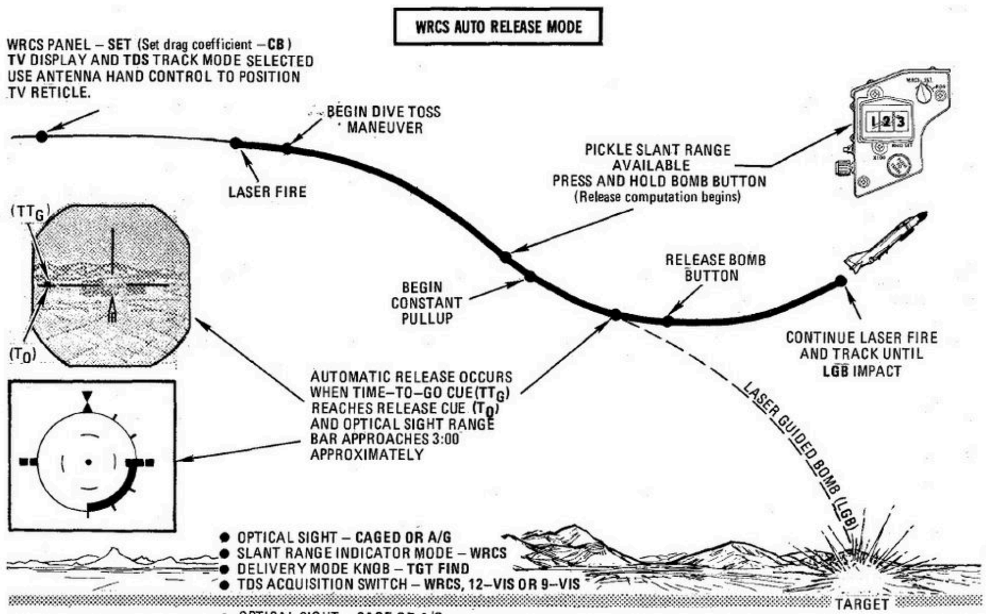
- WRCS Auto Mode
- ROR (Release on Range)

Auto Mode

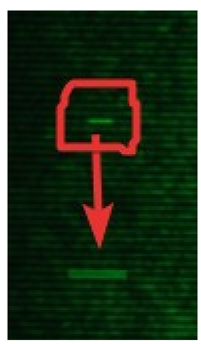
The main method of weapon delivery with the pod is the WRCS automatic release mode.

The WRCS has to be integrated with the pod for it to be available, and the pilot must select TGT FIND as delivery mode, as well as WRCS on the range indicator.

This mode works the same as the Dive Toss mode of the WRCS, just that it will use the pods computed slant range and target instead.



The TTG cue will move down and meet the T0 cue to indicate the time to release from maximally 15 seconds.

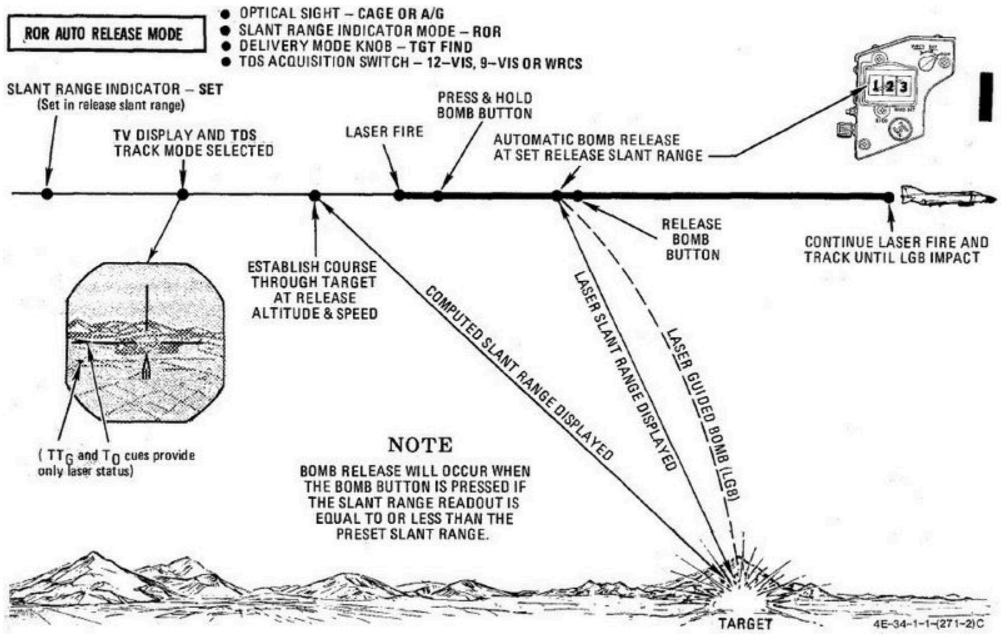


ROR

Release on range is mostly a backup mode. The pilot must select TGT FIND as delivery mode, and ROR on the range indicator.

Weapons will be released automatically, as soon as the computed slant range is less than the set desired release range. The range is configured on the range indicator, by setting the mode to SET and rotating the knob below the display.

Best results are achieved during level flight.


ROR AUTO RELEASE MODE
OPTICAL SIGHT – CAGE OR A/G
SLANT RANGE INDICATOR MODE – ROR
DELIVERY MODE KNOB – TGT FIND
TDS ACQUISITION SWITCH – 12–VIS, 9–VIS OR WRCS
SLANT RANGE INDICATOR – SET
(Set in release slant range)
TV DISPLAY AND TDS
TRACK MODE SELECTED
LASER FIRE
PRESS & HOLD
BOMB BUTTON
AUTOMATIC BOMB RELEASE
AT SET RELEASE SLANT RANGE
RELEASE
BOMB
BUTTON
CONTINUE LASER FIRE AND
TRACK UNTIL LGB IMPACT
ESTABLISH COURSE
THROUGH TARGET
AT RELEASE
ALTITUDE & SPEED
COMPUTED SLANT RANGE DISPLAYED
LASER SLANT RANGE DISPLAYED
LASER GUIDED BOMB (LGB)
(TT_G and T_O cues provide
only laser status)
NOTE
BOMB RELEASE WILL OCCUR WHEN
THE BOMB BUTTON IS PRESSED IF
THE SLANT RANGE READOUT IS
EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN THE
PRESET SLANT RANGE.
TARGET
4E-34-1-1-(271-2)C

Other

Stowing

After turning on the system, the pod can be un-stowed by pressing the STOW push button.

When un-stowed, the pod moves according to the current selections and automatically goes into the WIDE FOV.

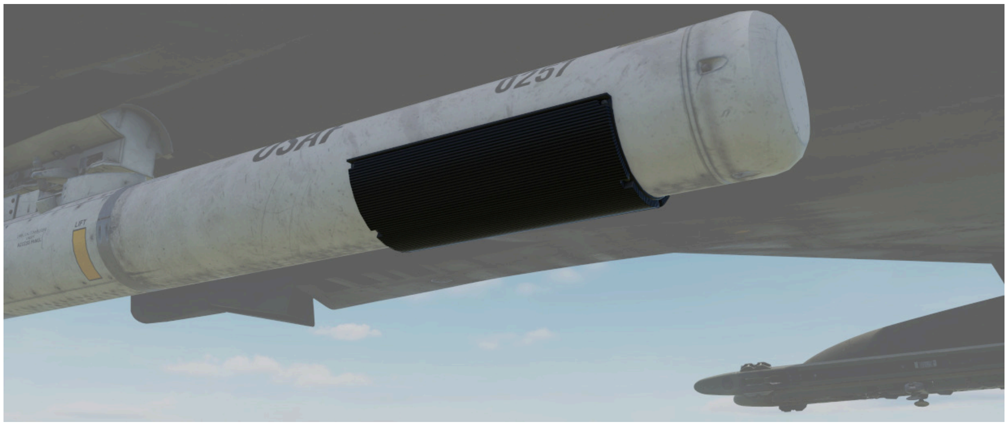
In the stowed position, the camera is rotated upwards and a cover is moved in front of it. This protects the camera from stones and other hazards during taxi, takeoff or low level flight.

The stow-procedure takes about 5 seconds, with the light indicating the current status.

🟡 CAUTION: The stow-position is held electrically and can not be held without power. Un-powered, the pod swings freely with force. Taking off without first applying power to the pod, or flying with the pod being powered off, will cause the pod to leave the stow position. Outside of the stow position, the system will get damaged through hazards and whenever it is forcefully moved into its gimbal limits. Damage will not only offset the boresight position, but also affect other properties, such as movement speed and similar.

Cooling

The targeting pod has a cooling system installed in the rear section, which automatically cools the pod by external airflow.



In general, the system is capable of keeping the pods temperature within limits during all normal operation.

However, if the temperature gets out of control, the Overheat lamp will illuminate.

In this case, make sure to turn off the pod immediately and give it some time to cool down first. Ignoring the lamp will cause parts of the pod to melt, damaging it irreparably.

A broken pod is generally indicated by the MALF lamp going on and the display being all black.

To prolong use of the pod and prevent overheating, limit slow and low-level flight, as well as continuous use of the laser.

🟡 CAUTION: As a rule-of-thumb, do not use the laser for longer than 15 minutes without allowing for cooling between uses. Limit continued slow and low level flight while operating the pod to 30 minutes. For extreme outside temperatures, adjust the limits accordingly.

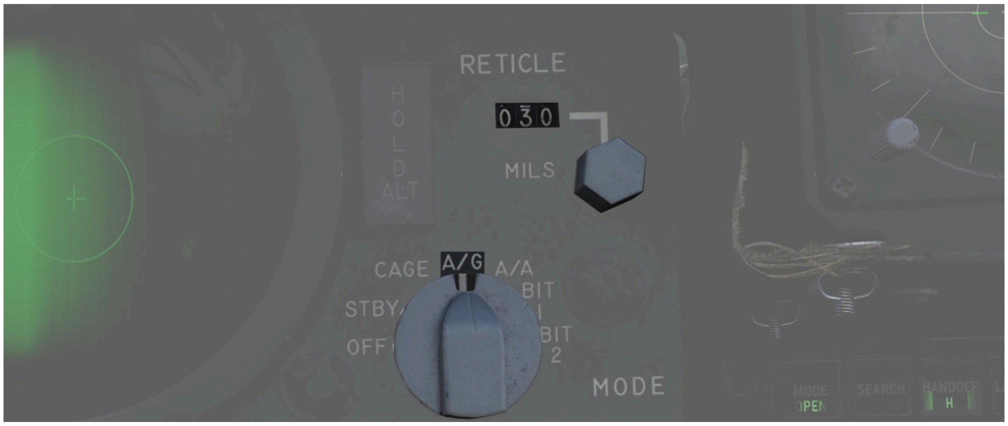
Boresight

Normally the Pave Spike is correctly calibrated by the ground crew before getting into the plane, but it can drift due to combat damage or high G maneuvers in which case an in-flight recalibration by the WSO may be necessary.

Therefore, the Target Designator Control panel provides three knobs to adjust the boresight position in all three axis (azimuth, elevation and roll) within 2.5 degrees in either direction.

Under perfect conditions, the pod is boresighted parallel to the aircraft datum line. However, due to lack of a calibration reference, the WSO can only achieve a rough alignment.

As first step, the optical sight should be put into A/G mode and the reticle must be depressed by around 30 mils. At this setting, the correct boresight position intersects with the sight reticle at a distance of roughly 20,000 ft to 60,000 ft (200 to 600 indicated on the Range Display).



Next, the aircraft has to be maneuvered to place and hold a distant object, such as a building, on the pipper of the optical sight.

As the pilot holds the object on the pipper, the WSO must put the pod into the 12-VIS acquisition mode, activate the narrow field of view and can adjust the azimuth and elevation to align the pod with the object.

> 💡 Since the pod is loaded on the left station, the correct boresight position is offset a few feet to the left of the pipper.

Roll is very difficult to align in-flight; if possible, land first. Then, place the acquisition switch into 9-VIS and use the Roll Knob to align the pod roughly with the height of a person standing in the distance.

Alternatively, a rough roll alignment can be achieved in-flight by placing the acquisition switch into WRCS, integrating WRCS with the pod, and erasing any current target input. This way, the pod will automatically look straight down.

The aircraft can now be flown directly above a landmark, such as a river and the Roll Knob can be used to align the line of sight with the landmark.

BITs

The pod has 5 built-in tests, with BIT 1 being the actual mode used during normal operation. They can be activated and switched through by clicking the BIT button below the display. The GO/MALF lights show the result of the BIT:

- GO - test was successful
- MALF - test detected a failure

During normal operation, activated through BIT 1, neither of the lights are illuminated.

BIT 0

All lights on the Target Designator Set Control illuminate with full brightness. The pod does not need to be powered up for this test.

GO/MALF do not indicate test results in this mode.

BIT 1

The circuits are energized and monitored. If any voltage reading is abnormal, MALF illuminates.

GO does not illuminate in this mode.

This is the standard operational mode. The pod can be used normally and the system will continuously monitor the status.

BIT 2

The system simulates track functionality, simulating all inputs, altitude and range data.

After about 15 seconds, the test is finished with either GO or MALF illuminating.

> 💡 For the test to be successful, the aircraft must not be moving, the pod must be un-stowed and INS must be integrated.

Bit 3

This tests the laser energy level. The pod moves to a special position where it looks inside itself, such that the laser fires against a special sensor mounted inside the pod.

The pod must be un-stowed and a valid laser code must have been entered, as well as the LASER READY button being pushed in. The nose gear guard is ignored during the test, allowing the use of the laser on ground.

Once the pod has reached the test position, the WSO must press and hold the Reject/Override button to start firing the laser. The laser stops firing when the button is released.

When the laser fires, a 5 second test program starts, with the sensor measuring the laser energy. After the 5 second test, either GO or MALF illuminate to indicate whether the energy level was above the required minimum.

The pilot can assist in telling the WSO that the test position has been reached, as indicated by the Azimuth-Elevation Indicator (1 and 2).

Bit 4

The system tests the ranging computation by feeding a simulated laser slant range of 2100 ft (±200). The pilot can confirm this using the Range Indicator readout.

After about 8 to 14 seconds, the test is finished and either GO or MALF is lit.

Upgrades

Based on crew feedback, the Pave Spike targeting pod received two major upgrades, which are available as separate selectable weapon in DCS.

Smart-Track

TCTO 518, known as the Smart-Track upgrade, aims at removing the requirement to press the Reject/Override button to force the laser measured slant range in situations in which the computed slant range was usually too inaccurate.

With the upgrade, the system will automatically accept the laser slant range whenever the pods elevation gimbal is above -7.5 degrees. I.e. in shallow angles, for example during 12-VIS mode or low altitude attacks.

Fast-Track

The popular upgrade TCTO 519 overhauls the pods gimbal motors, increasing the movement speed from 15 dps to 60 dps.

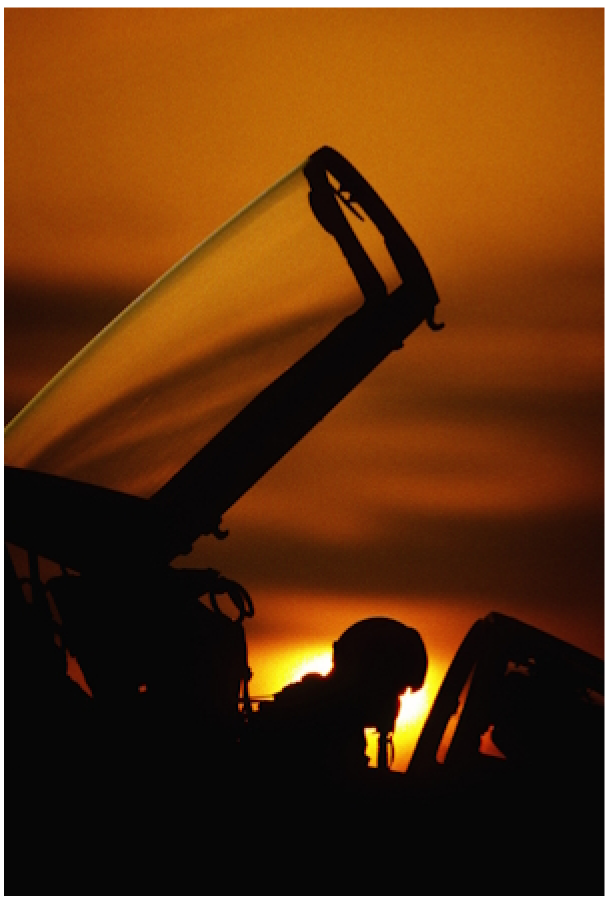
> 💡 At this speed, the targeting pod is capable of tracking a target during low altitude high speed flight, such as overflights at 1,000 ft with 500 knots.

Defensive Systems

The F-4E features up to 4 AN/ALE-40 Countermeasure dispense Pods. The AN/ALE-40 Countermeasure dispense Pods are used by a variety of US Aircraft.

Also found on the F-4E is the ALR-46 Radar Warning Receiver (subsequently RWR) is the F-4E's passive situational awareness system for detection of airborne and surface-to-air radar threats.

For extended protection and radar jamming it can also carry the ALQ-131 ECM Pod.



An F-4E Phantom II pilot is silhouetted in the cockpit of his aircraft as he prepares for a mission during Exercise TEAM SPIRIT'86

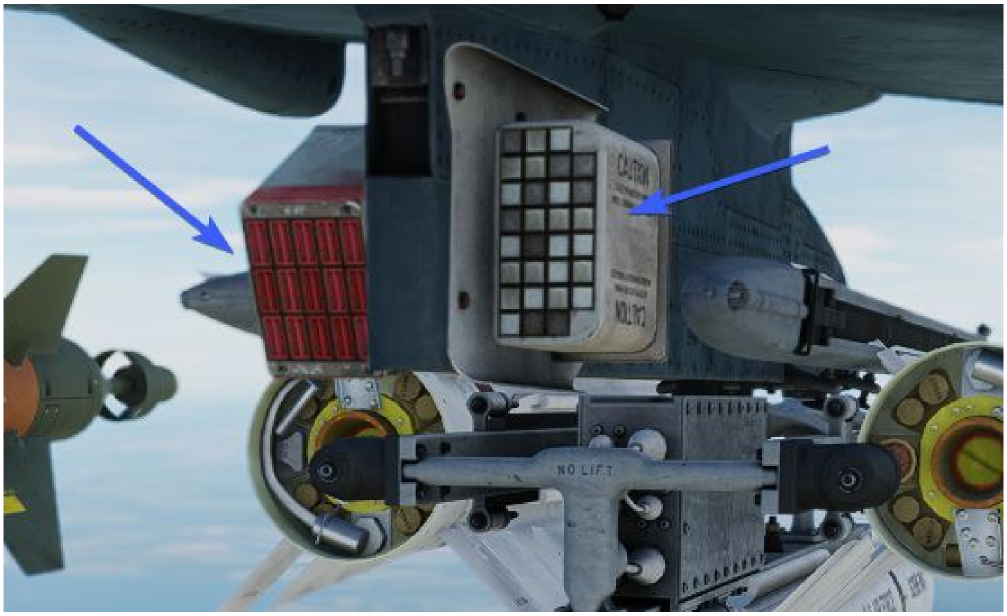
Countermeasures

AN/ALE-40 Countermeasures System

The AN/ALE-40 countermeasures dispenser set provides the capability of dispensing RR-170 A/AL chaff cartridges and MJU-7/B infrared flare cartridges. The system consists of four dispenser slots located on the inboard armament pylons (2 on each) as well as cockpit controls.

The pilot cockpit contains a programmer, a flares select switch with two lamps and a dispense button located on the throttle. The WSO pit has a cockpit control unit (CCU).

The main circuit breaker for the AN/ALE-40 is located on the No. 4 Circuit Breaker Panel above the aft left console in the WSO cockpit.



Dispenser Configuration	Description
No payload	Dispensers installed without payload
120 chaff	Only chaff loaded
60 chaff + 30 flare	60 chaff and 30 flares loaded
90 chaff + 15 flare	90 chaff and 15 flares loaded
30 flare	Only flares loaded

General operation

Operation of the AN/ALE-40 is controlled from both the front and rear cockpit. The CCU initiates the various modes of operation. The programmer will generate the firing commands in different combinations.

The pylon mounted dispensers will convert the firing commands to individually sequenced firing signals. If the operation mode is set to chaff, the dispensing will start in the left pylon dispenser and then transfer the dispensing signals to the right pylon dispenser upon depletion of stores in the left dispenser. If the operation mode is set to flare, dispensing will start in the right pylon master dispenser and upon depletion of stores the sequencer switch will transfer the dispensing signal to the left master

dispenser. Flares can also be jettisoned from their dispensers at a rate of 10 flares per second by activating the ripple switch located on the CCU.

Dispensing of countermeasures can be initiated by either the pilot (Button on the Throttle) or the WSO (Dispense Button or Ripple Switch on the CCU).

Countermeasures will be dispensed according to Flares Select Switch, CCU and Programmer settings.

Chaff and Flare programs are divided into two categories:

- BURST - single dispense signal
- SALVO - group of bursts

> 💡 To dispense countermeasures, flaps and speed brakes have to be retracted.

Cockpit Control Unit (CCU) - WSO Cockpit

The Cockpit Control Unit (CCU) is installed on the left console of the rear cockpit. It consists of two mode knobs, two counters and two indicator lights (one for chaff and one for flare), as well as a guarded ripple switch and a dispense button.

The CCU issues signals which are sent to the programmer or directly to the dispensers, depending on selected modes.

Chaff Mode Knob

With the chaff select switch (4) in the NORMAL position and flaps and speed brakes retracted, the switch positions function as follows. For every dispense button press:

- OFF - No dispenses, as the chaff system is **inactive**.
- SGL - A **single** chaff is dispensed.
- MULT - Chaff dispensed according to **CHAFF BURST** settings of the Programmer.
- PROG - Chaff dispensed according to **CHAFF BURST** and **CHAFF SALVO** settings of the Programmer.

> 💡 When Chaff Double mode is selected in the Mission Editor, twice as many chaff will be released in every mode (2 chaff for every single chaff dispense signal). The counter is then set to half the number of total chaff cartridges loaded to indicate the number of remaining dispenses, i.e. not the cartridges.

Flare Mode Knob

With the flare select switch (7) in the NORMAL position and flaps and speed brakes retracted, the switch positions function as follows. For every dispense button press:

- OFF - No dispenses, as the flare system is **inactive**.
- SGL - A **single** flare is dispensed.
- PROG - Flares dispensed according to **FLARE BURST** settings of the Programmer.

Chaff and Flare Counters

There are two subtraction counters (3 and 6), one for the chaff system and one for the flare system. They indicate the quantity of remaining

chaff and flare cartridges.

Chaff and Flare Indicator Lights

Both the flare and the chaff system have one green indicator light (5 and 8) each. Whenever a mode (other than OFF) is selected on the respective mode knob, the corresponding indicator light will illuminate.

> 💡 Both chaff and flare can be used simultaneously provided a mixed chaff and flare loadout is used.

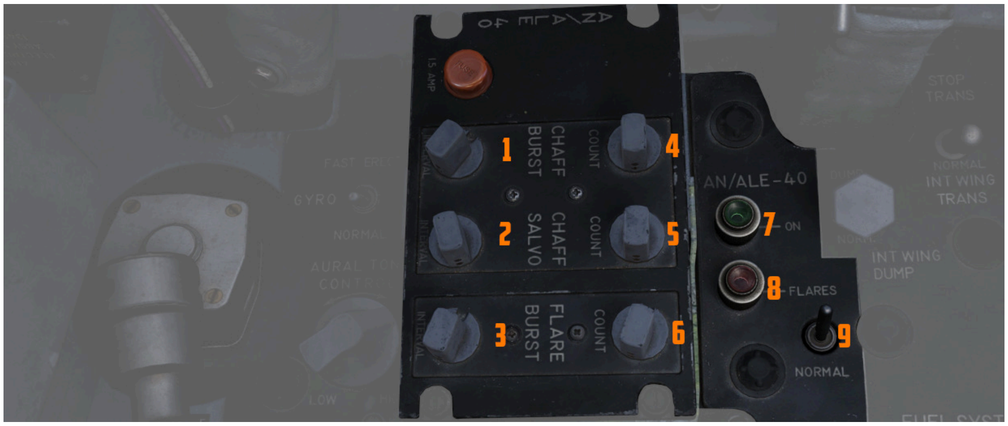
Ripple Switch

The ripple switch (**2**) is guarded. When the guard is lifted and the switch is activated, it will initiate flare dispensing regardless of the position of any other switches or mode knobs in the countermeasures system (if the flaps and the speed brakes are retracted). The flares will be dispensed at a rate of 10 flares per second until both left and right pylon dispensers are empty.

Dispense Button

The dispense button (**1**), when pressed, initiates chaff/flare dispensing as selected by the CCU and Programmer provided the flaps and speed brakes are retracted and the chaff/flare mode knobs are in any position other than OFF.

Programmer - Pilot Cockpit



The AN/ALE-40 Programmer contains the controls and circuitry used to send specific fire commands to the chaff and flare dispensers. The following settings are adjustable:

Category	Knob	Values	Description
CHAFF BURST	COUNT (4)	1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8 (units)	quantity of bursts (per salvo)
	INTERVAL (1)	0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4	time interval between each burst
CHAFF SALVO	COUNT (5)	1, 2, 4, 8, C (continuous)	number of salvos
	INTERVAL (2)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, R (random)	time interval between each salvo
FLARE BURST	COUNT (6)	1, 2, 4, 8, C (continuous)	quantity of bursts
	INTERVAL (3)	3, 4, 6, 8, 10	time interval between each burst

💡 All intervals are expressed in seconds.

Fuel System Control Panel - Pilot Cockpit

Flares Select Switch

If the flares select switch (3) is in the **NORMAL** position, it arms the countermeasures dispenser system and allows for chaffs and flares to be dispensed as set by the CCU and the programmer by pressing either dispense button.

If the flares select switch is in the **FLARES** position it only affects the front cockpit dispense button by ignoring all switches and knobs in the countermeasures system, provided that the flaps and speed brakes are retracted. This allows the pilot to dispense a single flare each time he presses the dispense button. Rear cockpit dispense functions are unaffected by the switch position.

AN/ALE-40 Power On Indicator Light (Green)

This green light illuminates (1) when the Flares Select switch is set to NORMAL and at least one of the chaff and flare mode knobs are in any position other than OFF.

Flares Indicator Light (Amber)

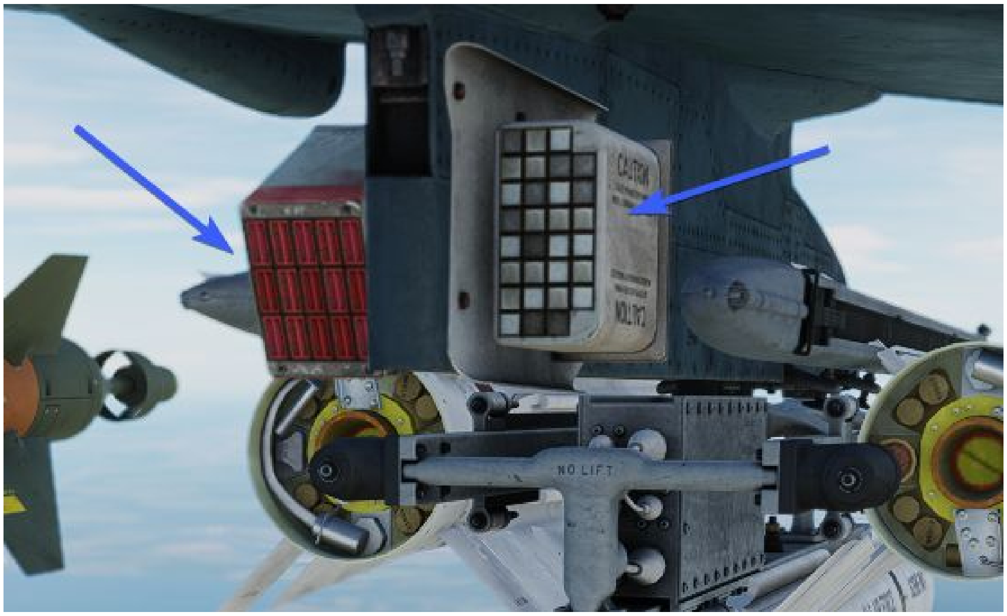
This amber indicator (2) illuminates when the Flares Select switch is set to FLARES.

When illuminated, flares can be dispensed by pressing the front cockpit dispense button regardless of programmer and CCU settings, provided the flaps and speed brakes are retracted.

Dispense Button (Pilot Cockpit)

When pressing the dispense button chaff/flare dispensing is initiated as set on the CCU and AN/ALE-40 programmer if the flaps and speed brakes are retracted and the flares select switch is set to NORMAL. Additionally single unit flare dispensing can be initiated by a single button press if the flares select switch is set to FLARES.

AN/ALE-40 Dispensers



The AN/ALE-40 countermeasures dispensers are divided into two distinct dispenser configurations. The master (outboard) dispenser contains the electronics and sequencer switch for both dispensers on each pylon and is installed on the outboard side of the inboard armament pylons. The slave (inboard) dispenser is installed on the inboard side of the inboard armament pylons and is connected to the master dispenser by an interconnect cable. The aircraft can be configured either with four chaff payload modules on all four dispensers or two chaff payload modules on the slave dispensers and two flare payload modules on the master dispensers. Only chaff payload modules can be installed on the slave dispensers; flare payload modules can only be installed on the master dispensers.

Master Dispenser Assembly

> 💡 Operation of the master dispenser assembly is done automatically by the ground crew in DCS, according to the AN/ALE-40 loadout selected in the loadout menu.

One master dispenser assembly is installed on the outboard side of each inboard armament pylon. It consists of a sequencer switch, a breech assembly, a RESET/OPERATE circuit breaker switch, a payload control switch, a safety pin switch with safety pin and warning streamer and relevant electrical circuitry. The sequencer switch converts the firing commands into individual firing signals for each pyrotechnic squib in both the master and slave dispensers. The breech assembly provides the interface to mount the chaff or flare payload modules. Insertion of the safety pin removes electrical power to both pylon mounted dispensers. After a full chaff or flare module has been loaded, the RESET/OPERATE switch is placed in OPERATE. The chaff or flare sections will fire in sequence. After flight, if a partial load of chaff or flares remains, the switch should be left in OPERATE. If the switch is moved to RESET, the empty chaff or flare stations have to be stepped through before loaded stations will fire. The payload selector switch positions C (chaff) and F (flare) only define the master dispenser mode of deployment and are set automatically in DCS according to the selected loadout.

Slave Dispenser Assembly

> 💡 The payload selector switch position is by default set to CS (chaff single dispense). However, it can also be set to CD (chaff double dispense via the Mission Editor.

One slave dispenser assembly is installed on the inboard side of each inboard armament pylon. It contains a payload selector switch to set either chaff single or chaff double dispense, a breech assembly and relevant electrical circuitry. If the payload selector switch is left in the default CS position, one chaff cartridge will be dispensed for each chaff burst commanded. If the payload selector switch is set to the CD position, two chaff cartridges will be dispensed simultaneously, one from each dispenser, for each chaff burst commanded. The breech assembly provides the interface to mount the chaff payload module.

Flare Housing Adapter

The flare housing adapter is installed between the master dispenser assembly and the flare payload module. The wedge shaped adapter ensures that the flares will be ejected aft and down from the aircraft. It cannot be mounted to the slave dispenser.

Chaff Payload Module and Cartridges

The chaff payload module is attached to the master or slave dispenser breech assembly with four quick release fasteners. The chaff cartridge consists of a basic plastic sleeve, chaff dipoles and a plastic end cap. When dispensed the chaff dipoles are ejected from the sleeves and leave the disposable sleeve and empty squib case behind. The cartridge base provides a recess for the chaff pyrotechnic squib.

> 🔴 WARNING: Accidental discharge of chaff cartridges can cause injury to personnel or damage to the aircraft.

Flare Payload Module and Cartridges

The flare payload module can only be installed on the master dispenser assembly. The flare housing adapter serves as the interface. The flare cartridge consists of a metal outer sleeve, a flare element, a safe-ing and initiation device and a plastic end cap. An indentation in the cartridge base allows for proper flare installation.

> 🔴 WARNING: Accidental discharge of flare cartridges can cause injury to personnel or damage to the aircraft.

Chaff/Flare Pyrotechnic Squibs

The chaff pyrotechnic squibs are installed immediately prior to use and are stored separately from the chaff cartridges. They are metal encased and electrically fired.

The flare pyrotechnic squibs are larger in diameter and have an O-ring groove. They are installed immediately prior to use and are stored separately from the flare cartridges.

Radar warning receiver

The ALR-46 Radar Warning Receiver (subsequently RWR) is the F-4E's passive situational awareness system for detection of airborne and surface-to-air radar threats. The system captures signals from multiple pairs of directional antennas installed at the aft of the fuselage, on each wingtip and under the nose; the difference in relative timing of detection and angle by the antennas is used by the system to define a relative bearing to the emitting radar. Further processing of the received radiation references the stored threat catalog to ascertain emitter type, as well as to define a relative threat range as a function of received power versus known output.

🚧 The ALR-46 is currently installed in the housing of a APR-36 earlier RWR model.

The resulting processed threat signal is then presented on the RWR's CRT display, with bearing to the emitter shown on the display with the top relative to the nose (12 o'clock) and the bottom the tail (6 o'clock), and with proximity to center relative to the system's calculation of the level of threat - with closer indications being of higher danger, and those within the middle ring being classified within engagement range. In normal operation, the ALR-46 can present 16 threats on the CRT concurrently. The highest priority threat as computed by the ALR-46's threat and range catalog is presented on the display with a diamond superimposed by its symbol; this is considered "floating" diamond functionality, with the ALR-46 defining priority. In the event of possible engagement by a threat emitter (concurrent with the illumination of the

ACTIVITY and/or MISSILE LAUNCH buttons), the event is signified by a circle around the emitter symbol.

ALR-46 Controls

Controls are duplicated for pilot and WSO. The pilot controls are directly below the RWR Indicator, while the controls for the WSO are found below the Central Indicator in the front of the view.

RWR Display Intensity Knob

Found adjacent to the RWR situation display in the lower left corner of the panel, the Intensity Knob functions as a dimmer to control the brightness of the displayed RWR returns. Clockwise raises the brightness, counter-clockwise lowers the brightness.

ALR-46 Control Panel

The ALR-46 Control Panel consists of ten multipurpose, illuminated buttons, along with a pair of rotary knobs for controlling the system's volume and panel brightness.

Priority/Open

The ALR-46 defaults on power-up to OPEN mode (**1**), which presents up to 16 threats on the display atone time, depending on how many emitters are visible and current system settings (Search, LOW ALT, etc.). In the event the crew requires immediate prioritization of the most pressing

threats in a saturated environment, the PRIORITY button can be pressed to display the five emitters the system deems the most dangerous. When pressed, the OPEN illumination will swap to the PRIORITY position, and revert back upon selection back to OPEN.

S (Search)

By default, the ALR-46 is programmed to prioritize and display emitters tied to weapons that can engage and destroy the aircraft. However, missions will require monitoring of early warning and search radar systems working with longer pulse-widths for extended range detection and tracking of possible intruders - i.e., the F-4. These emitters can be displayed using the Search mode (**2**), which presents them on the RWR with the S symbol to signify their function as a long range search radar. Entry into Search mode is displayed on the button with an illuminated "S".

Because of their low threat priority, it is important to note that search radar symbology may often fall off the display due to their reduced importance - especially when the ALR-46 is placed into PRIORITY mode.

Handoff (H with <> Diamond)

The Handoff button (**3**) provides the opportunity for the flight crew to define the priority emitting threat. By default, the ALR-46 defines the highest priority threat as a function of range, current transmitting mode, and the threat catalog. This priority threat is visualized with a diamond superimposed around the emitter's symbol. In the event the pilot wishes to define a different emitter as the target, the Handoff button is pressed and held to cycle the priority diamond through the various emitters. Once the desired emitter is focused upon and surrounded with the diamond, the button can be released, and the priority symbol will remain latched with that emitter, with audio from the selected emitter played through the intercom, and the double caret (<>) symbol on the button illuminated to signify latched mode. With a latched diamond focus emitter, the system will remain focused on said emitter until the signal is either lost, the crew selects another focus emitter with the Handoff button, or the button is pressed momentarily to return to normal floating diamond threat priority mode.

In the event that the emitter is tight grouping of other symbols on the display, the TGT SEP mode will be applied.

Missile Launch

In the event a missile launch is detected by way of discrete SAM guidance commands being received, the MISSILE LAUNCH indications in this button (4) will illuminate, and a circle is superimposed around the threat emitter defined as guiding the inbound weapon. Pressing the button while illuminated will provide launch audio through the intercom.

Low Altitude (LOW ALT)

The ALR-46 utilizes own-ship altitude as a defining aspect of threat priority, thus causing low altitude AAA and SAM threats to lose priority in the event the aircraft is at an altitude that is estimated to place it outside of their threat envelope. Activating LOW ALT mode (5) removes this envelope estimate from the threat prioritization and places low altitude threats back into priority, useful for circumstances such as a high to low dive attack or target ingress profile, and is confirmed as the active mode with the illuminated LOW ALT descriptor on the button.

Target Separate (TGT SEP)

In the event of a number of emitters being detected at such close proximity that the symbology overlaps on the RWR display, the Target Separation button (7) provides the option to expand symbology on the display from emitters in the same area to allow for clarity on the type and number of radars being detected. Pressing the button triggers the lower TGT SEP illumination on the button, and any emitter groups the system defines as being eligible for the expanded presentation will do so for three seconds on the RWR display before reverting back to the standard view.

System Test (ON/SYS TEST)

The system power on test (8) provides a three band (1 low, 2 mid, 3 high) check in all four quadrants for proper sensitivity, along with an angle confirmation of 225 degree relative bearing for diagnostic purposes. The

test sequence begins with 1s in all four quadrants, with the lower left value in a diamond (signifying a heading of 225, which is displayed on the panel); the second and third continue this process, cycling band 2 and band 3. The tests are accompanied with a sequence of tones for adjustment of audio monitoring level.

Unknown (U)

When an emitter is detected that does not have a catalog entry, but is recognized by received power, duration, and pulse as being a possible threat, the U indicator on the Unknown button (9) will flash. Pressing the button will provide a U symbol on the RWR CRT at the correct azimuth position for reference and monitoring.

The default condition of the Unknown button is with the U symbol illuminated, but steady.

Activity Power

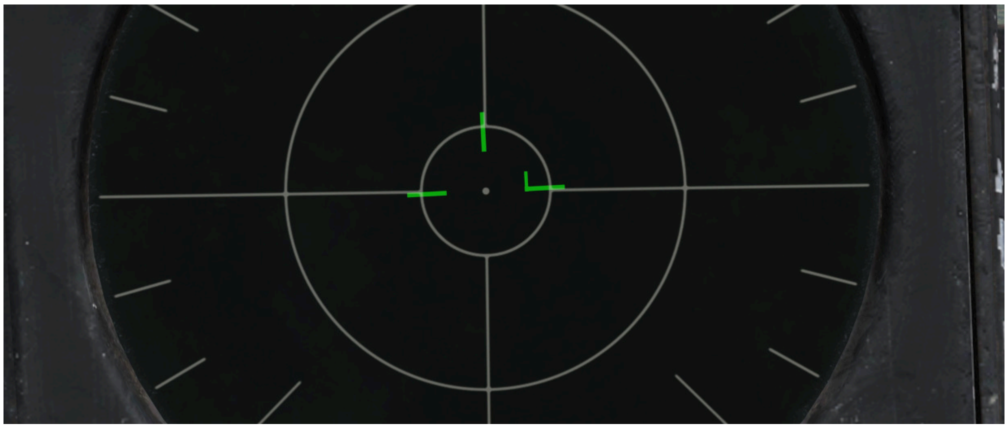
In the event SAM guidance commands are detected, the ACTIVITY button (10) will illuminate. This button's function is similar to the MISSILE LAUNCH indication insofar as that it responds to a guidance directive to a SAM, but does not respond to discrete changeover signals. Thus, an illuminated ACTIVITY warning may in fact indicate a launch, depending on the system engaging the F-4 and the circumstances surrounding it. The indication will provide a circle around the threat emitter.

System Power

The System Power button (11) is the on/off switch for the ALR-46. When pressed to activate the system, the RWR control panel and display will cycle through their initial 9-second warmup, with the display and illuminated buttons undergoing rapid flashing as the system is prepared for use and proper functioning is confirmed. Search mode is deactivated by default upon startup, and if in the event the aircraft was powered down and restarted, the altitude priority mode (LOW ALT or normal) will be in the same state it was left prior to shut down.

In the event of a system power failure, the ALR-46 has an automatic restart function. Once power is recovered, the receiver will restart after a fifteen-second delay, in addition to its 9-second power on self test. The system will resume state in the same fashion as a normal restart - with Search mode deactivated and the altitude priority as when power was lost.

Excess Noise Strobe Indicators



During normal operation, a trio of three T shaped indicators appear in the 9, 12, and 3 o'clock positions near the center of the RWR CRT. These indicators signify the absence of excess noise in the low (9), mid (12), and high (3) band amplifier detection. In the event noise becomes too significant in a given amplifier channel, the indicator for the respective band will disappear. Should this occur, a SYS TEST can be performed to confirm the channel is still functioning; in the event of a pass, the channel can be considered working at a reduced detection capacity.

A fourth indicator may appear as part of the SYS TEST or power up cycle. This fourth indicator in the 6 o'clock position does not signify any function.

Audio Knob

The AUDIO Knob (**6**) is the direct volume control for the situational audio from the ALR-46. Turning the knob clockwise increases the audio volume, turning counter-clockwise lowers the audio volume.

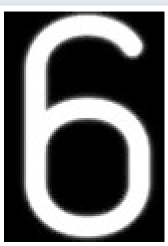
DIM Knob (Dimmer)

The DIM knob (**12**) on the ALR-46 control panel manages the brightness setting of the illuminated control buttons; turning the knob clockwise increases the brightness, counter-clockwise reduces the brightness.

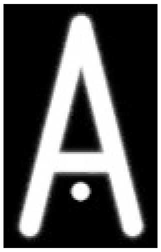
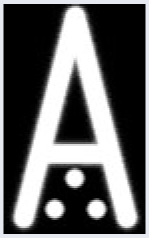
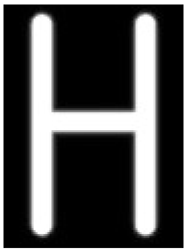
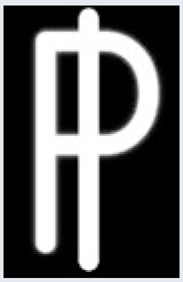
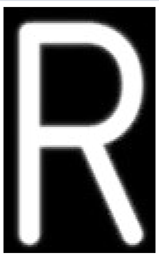
Symbology

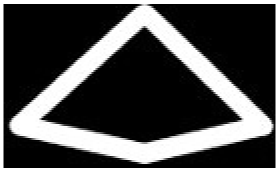
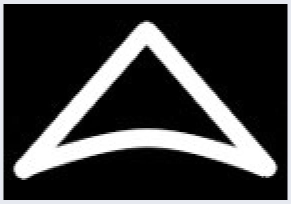
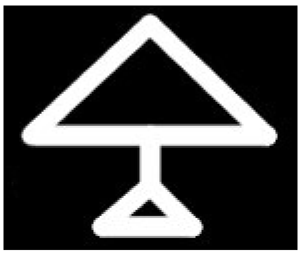
The ALR-46 features a limited number of symbols for the different radar threats. The following symbols can stand for the different threats. The ALR-46 can save up to three files containing threat tables. Those three files contain either a Training set, a Land or a Sea set. The Training file is not in use at the moment. The land file contains all land and air based threats while the sea file contains all sea and air based threats. The Pilot can switch between the training and land file by simply pressing the SYS TEST (**8**) and within a one second timespan press the TGT SEP (**7**) button. A T symbol will be displayed within the lower portion of azimuth when the training file is selected. To switch to the sea file simply press the SYS TEST (**8**) button and within a one second timespan press the Unknown (**9**) button. When the sea file is selected a ship symbol will be displayed in the lower half of azimuth.

Land and Air based Threats

Symbol	Possible threat
	SA-2 S-75 "Fan Song" TR
	SA-2 S-75 RD-75 Amazonka RF
	SA-3 S-125 "Low Blow" TR
	SA-5 S-200 "Square Pair" TR
	SA-6 Kub "Straight Flush" TR
	HQ-7 TR

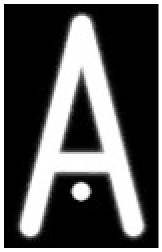
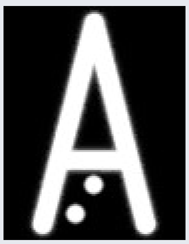
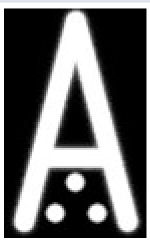
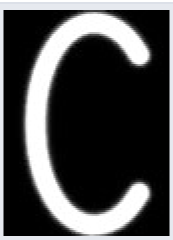
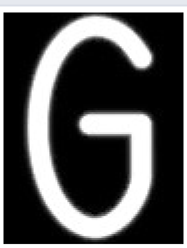
Symbol	Possible threat
8	Osa 9A33 ln
10	SA-10 S-300PS "Flap Lid"
11	SA-11 9K37 Buk
15	SA-15 9K331 Tor
19	SA-19 2k22M Tunguska
A	ZSU-23-4 Shilka

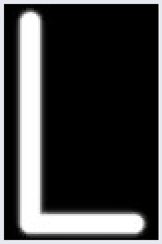
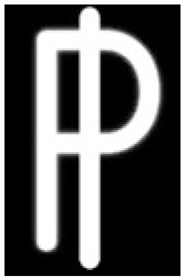
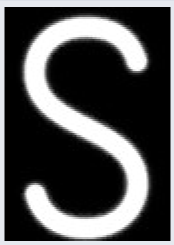
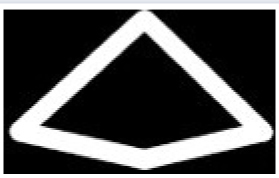
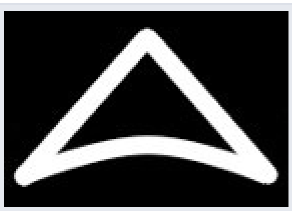
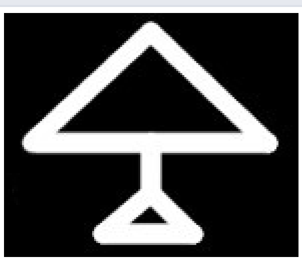
Symbol	Possible threat
	Fire Can SON-9
	Gepard, C-RAM Phalanx
	MIM-23 Hawk
	MIM-104 Patriot
	Rapier, Roland
	SA-6 Kub "Straight Flush" SR, Roland SR, C-Ram Phalanx SR, PPRU-1 "Dog Ear", HQ-7 SR, Hawk CWAR, NASAMS, Rapier Dagger, SA-11 Snow Drift, SA-10 "Big Bird", S-300PS 40B6MD SR

Symbol	Possible threat
	E-2D Hawkeye, E-3C Sentry, A-50
	F-14, F-15C, F-15E, F-16, F-18C, JF-17, M-2000C, Mig-29, SU-27, MiG-31, Tornado IDS/GR4
	F-1, AJS-37, F-4E, MiG-19, MiG-21, MiG-23, F-5E-3

Sea and Air based Threats

Symbol	Possible threat
4	Rezky, Albatros
6	Battlecruiser Pyotr Velikiy, Cruiser Moskva, Type 052C Destroyer
7	Type 054A Frigate, Type 052B Destroyer

Symbol	Possible threat
	Frigate Neustrashimy, CV 1143.5 Kuznetsov
	La Combattante II
	Type 071, Leander Class
	Ropucha Class
	CVN-71 Theodore Roosevelt, CVN-72 Abraham Lincoln, CVN-73 George Washington, CVN-74 John C Stennis, CVN-75 Harry S. Truman, USS Forrestral, LHA Tarrawa
	O.H. Perry

Symbol	Possible threat
	Leander Class
	Ticonderoga, USS Arleigh Burke
	Rezky Head Net SR, Neustrashimy SR, Invincible SR, Leander SR, Slava Class SR, Kuznetsov SR, Ropucha SR
	E-2D Hawkeye, E-3C Sentry, A-50
	F-14, F-15C, F-15E, F-16, F-18C, JF-17, M-2000C, Mig-29, SU-27, MiG-31, Tornado IDS/GR4
	F-1, AJS-37, F-4E, MiG-19, MiG-21, MiG-23, F-5E-3

Electronic Countermeasures

"It's got ECM, it's got ECCM, IBM, folk, we'll give you M&Ms"

The Phantom can be equipped with ECM pods capable of jamming radar signals to protect it from getting tracked by other aircraft or radar guided missiles.

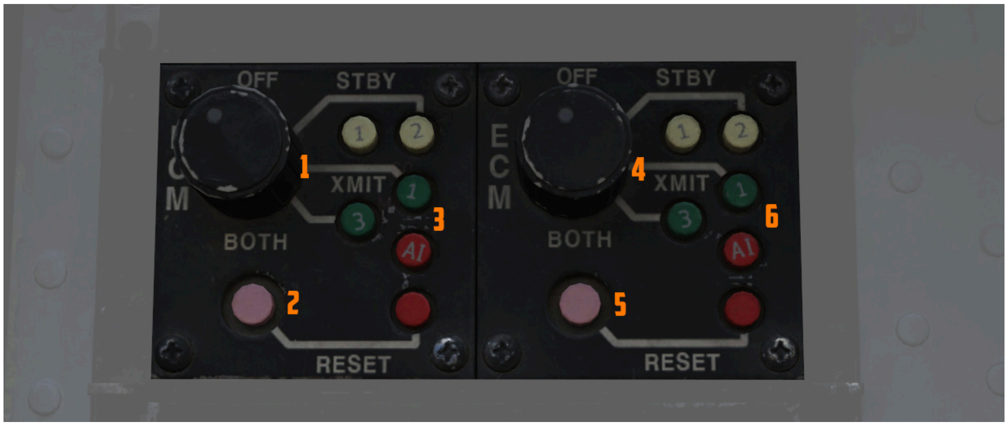
During its service, it saw a number of pods with different capabilities.

Early pods such as the AN/ALQ-71 or AN/ALQ-87 have been used effectively during the Vietnam war. During mid 1970s, mostly AN/ALQ-119 and AN/ALQ-131 have been in service.

The Phantom supports ECM pods on the two inboard pylons (stations 4 and 6) and the inner wing pylons (stations 2 and 8). However, the ECM signals are connected in a chain on each side respectively, only allowing control of one jammer pod per side. Additionally, many pods have restrictions only allowing them to be loaded on some specific pylons. For example, AN/ALQ-119 and AN/ALQ-131 may not be equipped on the right inboard pylon (station 6).

> 💡 Due to engine limitations, we can not influence the effectiveness of the Phantoms jammers. Equipping multiple pods does not increase their strength or coverage.

Controls



The electronic counter-measurement systems are all controlled by the WSO via controls on the right sub-panel.

The controls are duplicated for any pod carried on the left stations (4 or 2) and for the right stations (6 and 8) respectively.

Interpretation of the modes, techniques and exact operation of the lights (3) depend on the loaded jammer model.

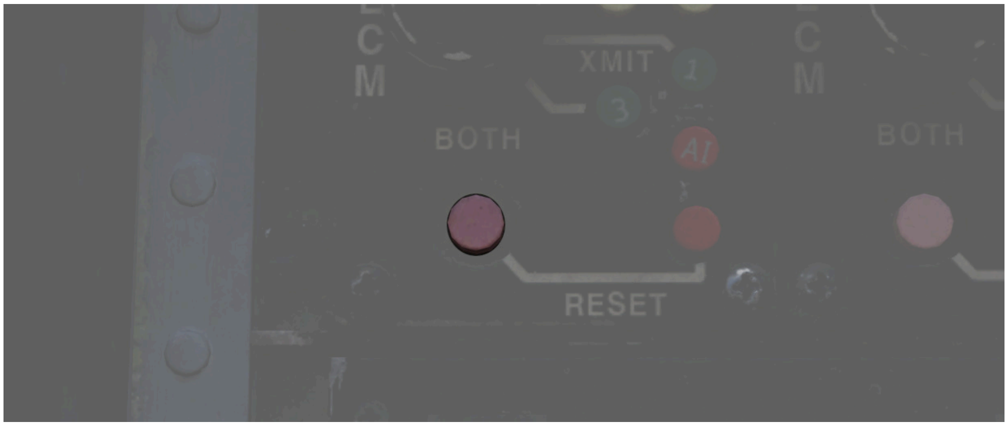
Generally, the jammers differentiate between two modes or techniques that can be used. Both of which usually have a warmup phase indicated by the Standby Lights on the panel.

The knob (1 and 4) can be used to place either technique in Standby or, once ready, activate transmission (XMIT 1, XMIT 2, BOTH).

Some jammer models can also detect that they are actively jamming an enemy radar, indicated by the AI light.

> 🔴 WARNING: To prevent exposing personnel to radiation, the mode knob must not be placed in XMIT while on ground.

Reset Button and Lamp



The reset lamp (3 lowest red one), if lit, indicates a fault in the jammer system. Flashing indicates an overheating condition, in which case the pod should be turned off to prevent damage.

In case of a fault, the reset button (2) can be pressed to reset the jammer system (similar to turning it OFF and back ON), in which case it will run through the warmup period again. If the fault could be cleared, the light will go off.

AN/ALQ-131

In service between 1970 and 1990; may not be equipped on the right inboard station 6.

Technique 1 and 2 are identical and require a warmup period of around 3 minutes before being activated.

> 💡 The warmup logic is hardwired - flipping the pod off and on, or having a short loss of power, will result in the full warmup period being required again before use.

Standby lamps illuminate to indicate that warmup phase has finished and the technique is ready to be activated.

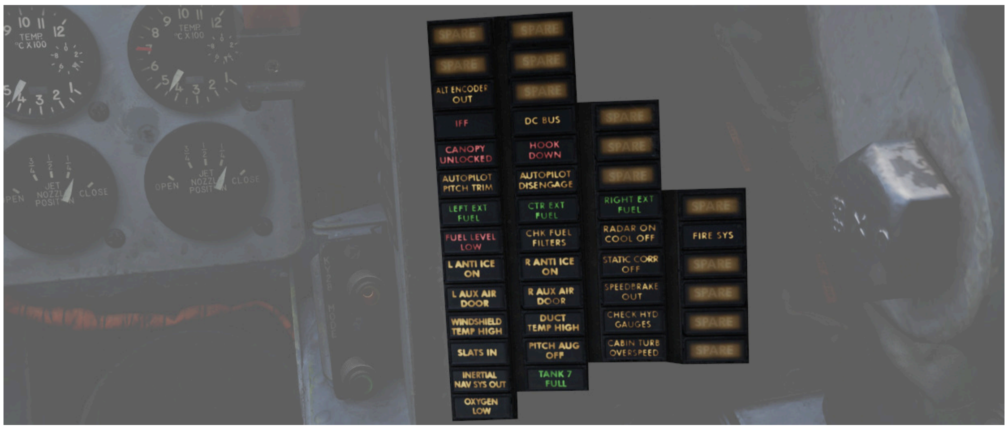
The pod can overheat, in which case the fault lamp will illuminate. In this case, make sure to set the mode to Standby immediately and give it some time to cool down first. Ignoring the lamp will cause parts of the pod to melt, damaging it irreparably.

> 🟡 CAUTION: As a rule-of-thumb, do not transmit for longer than 20 minutes without allowing for cooling between uses. Limit continued slow and low level flight while operating the jammer to 30 minutes. For extreme outside temperatures, adjust the limits accordingly.

Emergency Systems

Warning and Indicator Lights

Telelight Panel



The majority of cockpit warning lamps are found on the telelight panel on the right sub-panel in the front cockpit. See the Emergency Procedures Supplement for a comapct list of them or see the one below:

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
Alt Encoder out	The light will illuminate if there is an unreliable signal or no signal from the altitude encoder unit. It also may illuminate momentarily during high-rate climbs, dive maneuvers or during		

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	transonic flight		
IFF	The light will illuminate when the Mode 4 code is zeroed or no code is inserted	DC Bus	The light will illuminate if both generators fail or if a voltage drop occurs between the main dc bus and essential dc bus.
Canopy Unlocked	The light will illuminate in the front cockpit if any canopy is not locked and lowered. The rear light will only illuminate when the rear canopy is not fully locked and lowered.	Hook down	The light will illuminate if the arresting hook is not up and locked.
Autopilot Ptich Trim	The light will illuminate when the AFCS is engaged and the automatic pitch trim follow up is inoperative or lagging sufficiently behind the airplane maneuvering.	Autopilot Disengage	The light will illuminate when the autopilot is disengaged after initial engagement of the AFCS.
Left Ext Fuel	The light will illuminate if	CTR Ext Fuel	The light will illuminate if

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	the external fuel tanks are selected and there is no fuel flow from the tank to the fuselage.		the external fuel tanks are selected and there is no fuel flow from the tank to the fuselage.
Fuel Level Low	The light will illuminate when the Fuel level in cells 1 and 2 has reached a predetermined fuel state of 1650 ± 200 pounds.	CHK Fuel Filters	The light will illuminate when the fuel filter is clogged. The filter automatically opens to bypass, allowing normal fuel flow to the engine
L Anti Ice On	The light will illuminate when the anti-ice bleed air system is on.	R Anti Ice On	The light will illuminate when the anti-ice bleed air system is on.
L Aux Air Door	The light will illuminate when the left auxiliary air door operates out of phase with the landing gear handle.	R Aux Air Door	The light will illuminate when the right auxiliary air door operates out of phase with the landing gear handle.
Windshield Temp High	The light will illuminate when the windshield	Duct Temp High	The light will illuminate when the temperature

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation
	approaches a temperature which will cause optical distortion while the windshield rain removal is used. Windshield rain removal should be turned off immediately.		within the engine intake duct is beyond allowable limits.
Slats In	The light will illuminate if the Slats Override Switch is placed to the IN position, forcing the slats to stop moving as a function of the AOA.	Pitch Aug Off	The light will illuminate when power is on the airplane and the pitch stab aug switch is not engaged.
Inertial Nav Sys Out	The light will illuminate if the Inertial Navigation system is either out or off.	Tank 7 Fuel	The light will illuminate when the fuel transfer valve fails to open.
Oxygen Low	The light will illuminate when the oxygen amount is below 1 litre.		

Light	Explanation	Light	Explanation

Master Caution

Found in the front cockpit, the MASTER CAUTION provides the pilot with an up-front warning of potential hazard to the aircraft. The MASTER CAUTION illuminates concurrently with most warning lamps on the telelight panel and the generator indicators; warnings that do not set off MASTER CAUTION are noted in the Telelight Panel list.

MASTER CAUTION can be deactivated by the pilot pressing the reset button on the right console. However, it is important to note that pressing MASTER CAUTION does not clear a warning on the telelight panel; instead, the warning will remain until rectified. Should a second event occur in a system already giving a telelight warning, MASTER CAUTION will not illuminate a second time.

Warning Light Test Circuit

Confirmation of bulb function can be performed using the Warning Test Light Circuit found on the interior light control panel in both cockpits. These do not perform a function text for the individual warning systems, only confirm that the lights will illuminate.

Engine Fire and Overheat Detector System

On the right upper instrument panel in the front cockpit are four warning lamps- two FIRE and two OVRHEAT lights, one for each side. Should a fire be detected in an engine compartment, the applicable FIRE lap will illuminate. Overheat detectors are mounted at the rear of the fuselage adjacent to the engine nozzles, and illuminate the respective OVRHEAT lamp should temperatures become dangerous to the aircraft.

Fire Test Button

When pressed, this button tests for functionality of the FIRE and OVRHT lamps. Can also be used in conjunction with the Warning Lights Test switch to confirm detection and continuity performance of the fire and overheat warning systems. Holding the Warning Lights Test switch in the WARN TEST position, then simultaneously pressing and releasing the Fire Test Button performs the test. Proper system function is confirmed with the four FIRE and OVRHT lamps off while the Fire Test Button is pressed, then illuminating when it is released.

Ejection Seats

The Phantom II uses the Martin Baker Mk. H-7 ejection seat in both positions for safe aircrew extraction in the event of airframe loss. Triggering ejection using the face curtain or lower ejection handles fires the seat mounted initiator that jettisons the canopy. Once the canopy is clear of the airframe, the ejection gun primary charge fires, unlatching the seat from the cockpit and initiating seat climb-out. As the seat rises, restraints on the legs pull them back for clearance and the drogue timer is set. At the appropriate height, a lanyard attaching the rocket motor initiator to the airframe trips the firing pin for the main rocket engine to clear the aircraft. The previously set drogue gun fires at this time, deploying a pair of small chutes to stabilize the seat in attitude and initiate deceleration.

Once the seat has reached a pre-set barometric altitude between 11,500 and 14,500 feet, or momentarily after stabilization if lower, scissor mechanisms release the crew-member with the survival kit-containing seat pan from the ejection frame and deploys the main chute. In the event of ejection below the barostat altitude, the WSO chute is fully deployed at 5 seconds after ejection initiation, and the pilot one-second later.

Eject Light

In the event of loss of intercom power, the pilot can warn the WSO to prepare for ejection by pressing the EJECT switch found on the left canopy sill forward of the flap switch. This illuminates a pair of warning lamps found on the rear cockpit indicator panel. This can also be done by the WSO to warn the Pilot of an ejection.

Command Selector Valve Handle

To the left and above the rear cockpit instrument panel is the Command Selector Valve Handle. This handle determines the sequence by an ejection initiated from the rear seat - both seats, or the rear seat only. The handle is marked PLT EJECT PULL TURN. When the handle is oriented vertically, single seat ejection is selected; to set dual seat ejection, the handle is rotated clockwise to the horizontal.

All ejections initiated from the front seat are dual ejections.

Jettison System

The majority of stores carried by the F-4 can be jettisoned from the aircraft while in flight and with the landing gear stowed and doors closed. Jettison does not remove pylons, and the AIM-9 Sidewinder is non-jettison-able.

Name	Description
OFF	Safes PUSH TO JETT button on the Selective Jettison Control Panel.
STORES	Releases all MER/TER, single carried, LAU-88 mounted rounds, or drop tanks upon PUSH TO JETT.
L/R FWD	Jettisons AIM-7 from respective position on PUSH TO JETT. Inhibited if CL TK ON.
L/R AFT	Jettisons AIM-7 from respective position on PUSH TO JETT.
L/R WING	In conjunction with TV or ARM, jettisons single AGM-65 Maverick or AGM-45 Shrike from wing on PUSH TO JETT.

External Stores Emergency Release Button

Found on the front left cockpit sub-panel, the External Stores Emergency Release, also known as the panic button, will release all air to ground munitions, external tanks, and any pods subject to jettison. Sparrow and Sidewinder missiles, along with all pylons, will remain in place. Pushing the button will show the yellow paint inside its recess to confirm its actuation. Performing the actuation disengages external fuel tank transfer automatically, permitting proper flow of internal wing tanks without further pilot action. The button is active so long as the aircraft gear is up, or, in the event of a forward gear handle failure, so long as the rear gear handle remains IN, and weight is off wheels.

Selective Jettison

Wing and centerline stores can be jettisoned independently using the Jettison Knob in the STORES position, selecting the desired Station Select Buttons to release, and pressing PUSH TO JET. Any pylon or missile launcher at the station will remain in place, but stores - including MERs and TERs, will be released.

As example, to jettison the right and left external fuel tanks, the pilot must select *STORES* on the knob, press the corresponding station select buttons *LO*, *RO* and then push the jettison button.

AIM-7 Jettison

AIM-7 Sparrow missiles are released individually using the L/R FWD or L/R AFT positions on the Jettison Knob, then pressing PUSH TO JETT.

AGM-65 Jettison

To release AGM-65 missiles, choose TV or ARM on the Weapon Select Knob, press the desired Station Select Button(s), select L WING or R WING for the Jettison Knob, and press PUSH TO JETT. One missile is released per press; once desired rounds are removed from one wing, select the other wing with the Jettison Knob and repeat the PUSH TO JETT cycle.

Weapons & Stores

As a cornerstone of air forces around the globe, the F-4E's effectiveness is not only attributed to its advanced avionics and airframe design but also to its formidable array of weapons and stores.

The F-4E features three main types of Air-to-Air Weaponry including Heat-Seeking Missiles with the AIM-9 in different variants, the semi-active radar homing missile AIM-7 in different variants and a M61A1 Vulcan cannon that can be used against Air and Ground Targets.

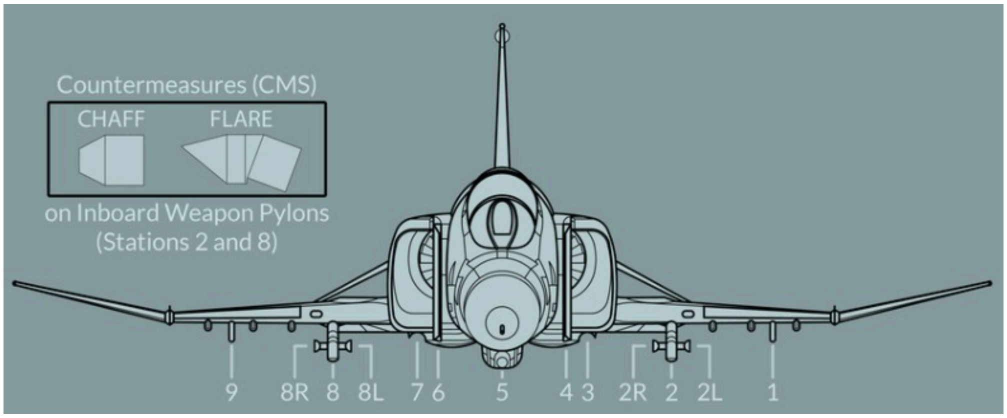
The aircraft can be armed with a variety of bombs, rockets, and guided munitions to engage and neutralize ground targets. Precision-guided munitions, such as laser-guided bombs, enable the Phantom II to strike high-value targets with precision, minimizing collateral damage and maximizing mission success.

In addition to its lethal armament, the F-4E can be configured with external fuel tanks to extend its operational range. The aircraft can also carry specialized stores, including targeting pods and electronic warfare (EW) systems.

Loadout

The following diagram gives an overview of all stores that can be loaded on the stations.

> 💡 In practice, not all combinations might be possible, as there are a lot of technical factors resulting in restrictions.



Store / Station	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2
AIM-7			1	1		1	1	
AIM-9		(2)						(2
AGM-12	1	1						1
AGM-45	1	1						1
AGM-62	1							1
AGM-65		3						3
MK-81	6	3			6			3
MK-82	6	3			6			3
Mk-83	2	3			3			3
Mk-84	1	1			1			1
M117	3	3			5			3
Mk-20		3			6			3
CBU-1/A	2				1			
CBU-2/A	2				1			
CBU-52	3	2						2
CBU-87	3	2			4			2
GBU-10	1	1						1
GBU-12	1	2						2
GBU-24	1	1						1
BDU-33	6				6			
BDU-45	1	2						2
BDU-50	6	3			6			3
BLU-107		3			6			3

Store / Station	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2
GBU-8	1	1						1
FFAR (×19)	3	3			3			3
SUU-23	1				1			
SUU-25 (x8)	2				2			
ALQ-131		1				1		1
AN/AVQ-23						1		
AN/ALE-40		(1)						(1
Fuel Tank	1				1			

In general, stations 3, 4, 6 and 7 can be used to load Air-To-Air Missiles, or also Jammer and Targeting Pods.

Air-To-Ground Ordnance is mostly carrier on pylons 1, 2, 5, 8 and 9.

Pylons 2 and 8 are special, since they can be equipped with the Special-Weapons-Adapter (SWA) and have additional attach-points on their sides (labelled 2L, 2R, 8L, 8R) for loading AIM-9 Sidewinder missiles without occupying the entire pylon.

> 💡 AIM-9 Sidewinder can be loaded onto pylon 2 and 8 additionally to other ordnance. Hence, it is still possible to equip for example a Maverick on the same pylon.

Further, AN/ALE-40 Countermeasure Dispensers can be attached to the aft section of Pylon 2 and 8. Allowing the aircraft to carry a mix between 120 chaff and 30 flares in total.

Guns

Internal Cannon M61A1 Vulcan

The General Electric M61 Vulcan cannon finally went to war as an integral part of the Phantom with the advent of the F-4E, with the nose profile and APQ-120 modified to fit the weapon. Carrying 639 rounds in the internal drum, the six-barreled Gatling style rotary cannon provides a user-selectable rate of fire from 4000 to 6000 rounds per minute, delivering a muzzle velocity in excess of 3,450 ft/s, with armor piercing incendiary and high explosive incendiary round options available. Useful in both air-to-air and air to ground roles, the Vulcan was used for four confirmed kills by the USAF over Vietnam with the F-4E.

Accumulated gas is vented by ram air entering the Gun Purge Door on the nose of the aircraft. The door is held closed by hydraulic pressure and will automatically open to release the gas from firing the gun. It closes after the gas pressure has reduced below a threshold or the gun is de-energized, for example when switching Master Arm or all rounds have been fired.

💡 The venting process takes between 10 seconds to 1 minute, depending on the burst duration.

🔴 WARNING: Do not spool up the engines as long as ground personnel is working on the door. It will forcefully close automatically as soon as hydraulic pressure is obtained.

Employment

To utilize the M61, the GUN station select switch must be selected, the Master Arm must be ON, and the Gun selection on the Pinky Switch (Aft) must be actuated. This will illuminate the GUN lamp on the Head Up Display.

For air-to-air usage, the optical sight should be selected to A/A mode. In air-to-air mode, the optical sight functions as a lead computing optical sighting (LCOS), thus maneuvering in both elevation and azimuth relative to a radar locked target, or a default 1000' range setting in the event of no lock. With a lock, the range bar presentation is relative to 6700' just to the left of the tick at the 1 o-clock position, down to 1000' at the 6 o-clock position.

For air to ground use, the optical sight should be selected to A/G mode, the Delivery Mode knob should be set in the OFF or Direct mode, and the desired sight depression mil setting be entered for the intended attack profile. Depression is set relative from the Fuselage Reference Line (FRL). While Depression will lower the reticle in elevation, there is no azimuth drift due to relative aircraft motion.

Gun rate is controlled with the Rate switch on the Pedestal panel, and is selectable as High (6000 rounds per minute) or Low (4000 rounds per minute). Also on the Pedestal panel is the gun rounds remaining indicator.

Of note is the Auto Clear function; the cannon will fire approximately between 5 and 11 rounds from the point the pilot has released the trigger to clear all bolt actions in the cannon; this spin-down takes approximately one second, and the gun cannot be fired again during this

operation. While the Pedestal panel carries the Auto Clear switch, this switch does not have any control over the internal M61A1 cannon, and can only deactivate round clearance for podded external cannon installations.

External Cannon Pods SUU-16/A and SUU-23/A

Built to both provide gun capability to aircraft that did not mount them internally, and to increase available direct fire in the close air support mission, the SUU-16/A and SUU-23/A gun pods were both built around the M61A1 and a 1200 round ammunition load. Both pods are fixed-rate at 6000 rounds per minute, and up to three can be concurrently installed and driven by the fire control system; while up to five can be loaded for ferry purposes, and promotional images have shown such a configuration, only three can be activated.

> 💡 The inner wing pylons 2 and 8 are not wired to operate the pods. Only the center station and the outer wing pylons can fire the guns.

The primary difference between the -16/A and -23/A pods are their method of power; the former using a ram air turbine arrangement to drive its motor, while the latter is internally powered. This difference had an effect on relative utility - while the -23/A could be fired at any airspeed, thus allowing it to be loaded onto slower aircraft, the -16/A's ram air turbine required a minimum speed of 300 knots to fire, and only reached its optimum performance above 400 knots. Both pods have an auto-clear function for safety, which cause rounds loaded in the breeches to be released back into the ammo bin, which does entail a momentary delay of one to two seconds prior to being able to fire the pod again.

External Employment

Activation of the SUU pods are performed by selecting their respective Station Select buttons, and placing the Delivery Mode knob in OFF or Direct. The Weapon Selector knob can be in any position other than TV or ARM, unless CAGE mode is activated. The desired Auto Clear setting should be selected, and Master Arm set to ON to activate the pod. On the SUU-16, the Master Arm activation deploys the ram air turbine.

Installed, the guns are boresight along the Fuselage Reference Line. Thus, with the optical sight in air to air mode, the rounds will fall in accordance with reticle center, just as the main cannon- only with the natural offset of their respective pylon position, thus allowing for effective natural gunnery, if only affected by a moderate increase in resulting CEP. In the same fashion, in air to ground mode, the SUU pods observe the same performance relative to the reticle depression schedule as the internal cannon, again, with their respective offsets from centerline and CEP increase.

To safe the gun pods after combat, prior to deactivating Master Arm, the Auto Clear switch should be placed into the Auto Clear position, the

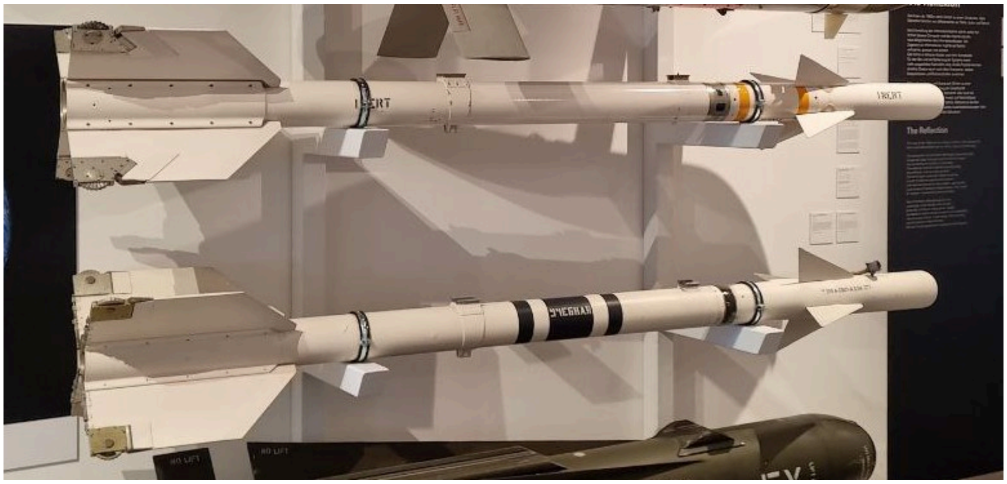
trigger squeezed momentarily, and the respective Station Select buttons pushed to off. On the SUU-16, this will close the ram air turbine.

Air to Air

The F-4E Phantom II stands as an enduring testament to aerial supremacy, owing much of its reputation to its formidable air-to-air capabilities.

The AIM-7 Sparrow missile takes center stage in the Phantom II's air-to-air capabilities. Comprising a substantial portion of the F-4E's air-to-air armament, the Sparrow's radar-guided system allows pilots to engage adversaries before they enter the visual horizon.

In close-quarters engagements, the F-4E relies on the AIM-9 Sidewinder, a short-range, infrared-guided missile celebrated for its agility and responsiveness. Constituting a vital component of the Phantom II's air-to-air weaponry, the Sidewinder excels in the intense and dynamic scenarios of dogfights.



AIM-7 Sparrow

The AIM-7 is a semi active radar missile with a maximum launch range of approx. 26 nautical miles.

Originally designated the AAM-N-6 Sparrow III, the AIM-7 Sparrow saw initial service entry with the United States Navy in 1958. Unlike the beam-riding AIM-7A (AAM-N-2 Sparrow I), which required the launching aircraft to maintain boresight on the target for the flyout of the weapon, the semi-active radar homing AIM-7C could effectively engage a maneuvering target well off boresight, so long as the designating aircraft's radar could maintain a lock during the missile's intercept. The AIM-7C quickly gave way to the 7D, which saw a number of kills over Vietnam, and the 7E, which scored the majority of the type's kills in Southeast Asia. Additionally, the F-4E saw compatibility with the AIM-7F and AIM-7M.

Utilization of the AIM-7 begins with tuning the onboard rounds, performed with the RDR MSL switch , selecting it into the CW ON position. This tuning process takes approximately one minute, and can be initiated once power has been applied for at least one minute to the radar (any position out of OFF) in most operating environments (ambient temperature below 90 degrees F). The missiles are properly tuned when the missile status light (RDR) is illuminated in each station carrying a Sparrow missile for at least one minute. After successful tuning, the RDR MSL switch can be returned to the STBY (Standby) position. The status lamps will turn off once returned to STBY. Once in the combat area, the RDR MSL switch should be returned to the CW ON position, to maintain proper missile tuning state during the engagement.

Employment

To employ an AIM-7, the optical sight should be placed into the A/A position, which stabilizes the Reticle at the Radar Boresight Line in the window. The roll tabs function to provide the pilot with relative roll attitude guidance in instrument conditions (weather or nighttime), and the right side of the 50 mil diameter circle (outer) functions as a range bar when a radar lock is achieved against a target, displaying ranges up to 20,000' (top) to 3000' (bottom), with 12,000' signified at the 3 o-clock position. It is also possible to employ an AIM-7 using the ACM Mode via pressing the Cage Button first and than pressing the CAA Button to accomplish a lock.

When radar lock against a target is achieved with AIM-7 selected, a pair of strobes surround the locked target in azimuth. Identified as Rmax and Rmax 2, they represent effective ranges against a 1 G target (Rmax), and a high rate maneuvering target based on altitude (Rmax 2, representing 8G up to 20k, 6G to 35k, and 4G above 35,000'). When a missile is launched, the Rmax 2 strobe falls to the bottom of the display, and begins driving upwards towards the target lock; this functions as a missile flyout timer. When the timer reaches the locked target, it can be assumed the missile has arrived. The display does not provide Rmin, but instead reverts to a break X warning superimposed over the radar image should Rmin be attained for a Sparrow launch.

Prior to engagement, a determination must be made as to whether or not the missile interlocks will be kept in, or positioned out. The interlocks preclude an AIM-7 shot when outside of effective firing parameters, those being the missile in range (illuminating the IN RANGE light), the target aim dot within the ASE (Allowable Steering Error) circle on the radar display, and the radar display mode out of VI (Vis-Ident mode).

With the interlocks in, should any of the three aforementioned restrictions be met - target out of range, aim dot outside the ASE, or the radar left in VI, a trigger actuation will not cause the release of a missile. With interlocks out, an AIM-7 will be released no matter the condition of the three interlocks.

When parameters are met, the SHOOT lamps will illuminate. Found in both cockpits, these lights reinforce the condition of good launch

conditions for the AIM-7. In the event a target enters a main beam clutter situation (aspect angle between 81 and 99 degrees and lower than 5 degrees above the horizon), the lights will turn off, even though the interlock requirements are met. Maneuver should be utilized to bring the target outside this region prior to launch.

At the point of engagement, AIM-7 missiles are selected using the Pinky Switch on the outboard (left) throttle arm, selecting the forward position. This illuminates the RADAR lamp on the Head Up Display panel.

Before employing the AIM-7E Sparrow, a delay of four seconds should be given if the Master Arm switch is set in the ON position prior to radar lock on, or a delay of two seconds if the Master Arm switch is set to ON after radar lock on. This is due to the set-in period of the missile speed-gate. With the AIM-7F, this delay is reduced to two seconds with Master Arm switch On prior to lock, or immediately after selecting Master Arm switch to On if lock on was achieved first. Should these delays not be adhered to, the missile may fail to track because of improper target doppler injection.

With the target in parameters or interlocks out, pressing the trigger fires off an AIM-7. A second AIM-7 can be fired immediately at the same target, if desired, by releasing, then squeezing the trigger a second time-holding it on the second actuation.

Launch Sequence

The launch sequence for the AIM-7 missile is (in aircraft orientation)

1. Left Forward Station
2. Right Forward Station
3. Left Rear Station
4. Right Rear Station

In the event of a centerline store or tank precluding forward missile release, the CL TK lamp will illuminate. Rear missiles may still be fired, and the forward missiles may be fired if the centerline tank is dropped or MER is jettisoned. The lamp also illuminates in the event of a BRU-5/A in the centerline position; however, a missile can be launched in that condition. The Aero-27 precludes any release, even if the round has been dropped.

Variants

The following variants of the AIM-7 family are available for this variant of the Phantom:

Type	Description
7E	The E variant was an early version of the Sparrow missile, entering service in the 1960s, which uses proportional navigation and Semi Active Radar Homing to guide.
7E2	Changes were made to improve the performance in close range dogfight situations, at the expense of energy retention in longer ranged engagements. Fuzing time is also reduced allowing for proper fuzing in close engagements.
7F	The F Sparrow was upgraded to be solid state, have a higher performance two stage motor (boost and sustainer) and have improved electronics including the ability to coast targets through the

Type	Description
	main lobe clutter and altitude lines. These changes also make the seeker able to detect targets from further range and with increased countermeasure resistance and track using both continuous wave and pulse doppler guidance signals unlike the E, E2 and E3 which can only guide on continuous wave.
7M	The M was the first inverse mono-pulse Sparrow providing increased tracking precision, it also has improved motor performance and electronics, including improved clutter and countermeasure rejection. The M like all Sparrows can also guide using continuous wave, at a degraded tracking precision.

Below is a very basic comparative summary of each Sparrow's performance in some general areas, whereas 🟢 means *good*, 🟨 *fair* and 🔺 *poor*.

Type	Seeker	Range	Dogfight	Countermeasure Resist / Clutter Rejection
AIM-7E	🔺	🟨	🔺	🔺
AIM-7E2	🔺	🔺	🟢	🔺
AIM-7F	🟨	🟢	🟢	🟨
AIM-7M	🟢	🟢	🟢	🟢

💡 Technically, the E2 has the same maximal range than the E. However, due to its maneuvering-behavior, that range lessens for

anything but a dead straight shot.

AIM-9 Sidewinder

Entering service with the United States Navy in 1956, and finally accepted by the United States Air Force in 1964, the short range, infrared seeking AIM-9 Sidewinder is considered by most to be the world's first truly effective air to air guided missile. Beginning with the AIM-9B and maintaining compatibility to the AIM-9M in US service, the Sidewinder provided the Phantom II with a capable close-in weapon system against rapidly maneuvering opponents.

Employment of the AIM-9 can be performed with or without a radar lock, and is initiated by selecting Master Arm to ON and selecting the Throttle Pinky Switch to the center position for Heat. The HEAT lamp on the Head Up Display will illuminate, and available AIM-9 missiles will illuminate on the Missile Status Panel. The Optical Sight should be selected to A/A, and the reticle will stabilize at the Radar Boresight Line, which is the boresight location for the Sidewinders on the rails.

Should a radar lock be achieved, the sight will display the range bar on the right side as previously described, with 20,000' indicated at the top, and 3,000' range indicated at the bottom. With a radar lock on, the radar will

display a pair of strobes signifying Rmax and Rmin for the Sidewinder against the target under current launch conditions.

💡 The AIM-9 does not receive a guidance handoff from the APQ-120 like on later aircraft to direct the seeker's look angle. Instead, the ASE circle presents the aim dot against the target to bring it to the RBL.

Centering the aim dot in the ASE aligns the target to the RBL, thus allowing for rapid acquisition by the seeker of the selected AIM-9. Once the missile's tone changes to signify lock, the pilot can then hold down the ARR button on the grip to allow for Sidewinder self-track (seeker uncage); this function allows the seeker to maintain acquisition of the target (noted by the shifted audio tone), while permitting maneuver of

the aircraft to a better aspect angle or range solution prior to launch if the situation allows. The amount of maneuver available to a given Sidewinder type is based on the variant, and should be considered before making the selection.

Launch Sequence

Once the desired firing solution is attained, the AIM-9 is launched using the trigger.

AIM-9 Launch Sequence:

1. Left Outboard
2. Right Outboard
3. Left Inboard
4. Right Inboard

Variants

The following variants of the AIM-9 family are available for this variant of the Phantom:

Variant	Description
B	First operational version of the Sidewinder family, entering service in the 1950s. It utilized an infrared homing seeker for target acquisition and tracking, making it a heat-seeking missile.
J	Featuring enhanced guidance and performance characteristics. It retained the infrared homing seeker but had improved sensitivity and better resistance to countermeasures.
JULI	Variant of the AIM-9J developed by Germany. It featured modifications to meet specific operational requirements.
L	Significant upgrade with improved infrared homing capabilities, allowing for better target discrimination. It introduced all-aspect targeting, meaning it could engage targets from any angle, not just from behind.

Variant	Description
M	Improved guidance and counter-countermeasures capabilities. It had enhanced maneuverability and improved target-tracking algorithms, making it more effective in combat situations.
P	Developed for export and used by various nations. It featured improvements over earlier models in terms of reliability and seeker performance.
P-3	Improves the P version by using a reduced-smoke motor and improving the guidance system. Base of the swedish RB-24J missile.
P-5	Further improves counter-countermeasures capabilities, as seen in the M version. Base of the swedish RB-24L missile.
Captive M	Non-functional version used for training and testing purposes.

Below is a basic comparative summary of each Sidewinder's performance in some general areas, whereas 🟢 means *good*, 🟨 *fair* and 🔺 *poor*.

Type	Lock - Tone	Uncage	Aspect	Maneuverability
B	🔺	🔺	Rear	🔺
J	🔺	🟢	Rear	🟨
JULI	🟢	🟢	All	🟨
L	🟢	🟢	All	🟢
M	🟢	🟢	All	🟢
P	🔺	🟢	Rear	🟨
P-3	🔺	🟢	Rear	🟨
P-5	🟢	🟢	All	🟨
Captive	🟢	🟢	All	❌

Type	Lock - Tone	Uncage	Aspect	Maneuverability
M				

Some variants have a null-seeker. These missiles do not produce a tone when fully aligned with a target. This can lead to confusion, thinking the missile does not track while it is actually locked perfectly on the target.

The AIM-9B is unable to uncage in order to dynamically track a target that is not on its boresight.

ACM Modes

CAGE Mode

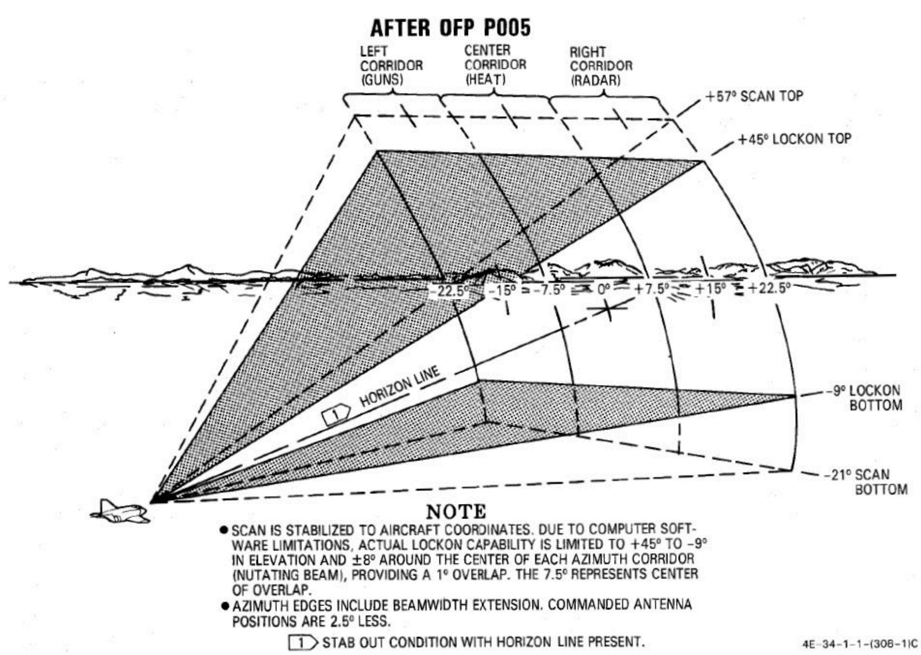
In the event that an AIM-7, AIM-9, or M61A1 must be employed against an airborne target with the sight in A/G mode (for example, the flight is bounced by opposing aircraft), the optical sight reticle can immediately be slewed to the Radar Boresight Line using the Cage Button, found on the inboard (right) throttle handle. Cage mode commands the radar into BST mode with a five-mile range, and short pulse, and sets the firing circuit for the currently selected air-to-air weapon relative to the Pinky Switch. For the optical sight, the command activates the respective elevation and azimuth tracking, roll mark, and range functions of the reticle for the chosen weapon, without the pilot having to remove a hand from throttle or stick to swap the sight mode or weapon control panel functions.

Should a track condition exist prior to pressing Cage and the Pinky switch is in Radar or Heat position, the lock is broken when the button is pressed, and the antenna slaves to boresight when released. If the Pinky Switch is in the Gun position, the lock is not broken.

Cage mode can be exited from either cockpit, by placing Weapon Select knob in the pilot cockpit to the B position momentarily, or by the WSO pressing the Air to Air button on the rear cockpit panel. If the pilot leaves

the Weapon Select knob in B, it does not preclude a later entry into Cage mode.

Computer Automatic Acquisition Mode (CAA)



Once in Cage mode, the radar can be selected in to Computer Automatic Acquisition using the Nose Gear Steering button. In CAA, the radar enters a vertical-oriented scan pattern 78 degrees in height by 15

degrees in width. Actual radar lock capability within this scan pattern is from +45 degrees above the horizon line(fuselage line) to -9 degrees below the horizon line(fuselage line) due to APQ software limitation. In the event that the radar finds a suitable target within the scan volume, the target will be locked. Should the flight crew find the locked target not be the one intended, the Nose Gear Steering button can be pressed on either stick grip to return the radar back to the search pattern.

In CAA mode, the radar's search pattern can be shifted left or right utilizing the Pinky Switch.

Selection	Focus
Guns	Radar Focus Left
Heat	Radar Focus Center
Radar	Radar Focus Right

To exit CAA, the pilot can select position B on the Weapon Select knob, or the WSO can push the Air to Air button. Should a radar lock be in place at the time of mode exit, it will be retained.

Air to Ground

The F-4E Phantom II's air-to-ground capabilities are marked by a commitment to precision and versatility. Armed with a diverse array of munitions, ranging from traditional unguided bombs to sophisticated precision-guided missiles, the Phantom II is equipped to undertake a variety of ground attack missions.

Integral to the F-4E's air-to-ground arsenal are guided munitions used for precision strike. Laser-guided bombs (LGBs) and other precision-guided munitions enable the Phantom II to engage high-value and strategically important targets with unparalleled accuracy.

Missiles

Among the Phantom II's lethal armament are the AGM-65 Maverick and AGM-45 Shrike missiles, each playing a distinct role in the aircraft's capacity to engage ground targets and neutralize enemy threats.

The AGM-65 Maverick, a precision-guided air-to-ground missile, uses its versatile guidance systems, including electro-optical and infrared seekers, to allow pilots to engage a variety of ground-based threats.

The AGM-45 Shrike missile takes on a specialized role in Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD). Designed to seek out and neutralize enemy radar installations, the Shrike is an anti-radiation missile that targets radar-emitting threats.

AGM-45 Shrike Anti-Radiation Missile

The Sparrow-derived AGM-45 Shrike is an early attempt at an anti-radiation missile for the suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) role. Mating a frequency-tuned seeker with the rocket body of an AIM-7, the Shrike provided the United States Navy, and later the United States Air Force, with a standoff option for the engagement of enemy SAM radars. While nominally effective, in practice the Shrike was a difficult weapon to employ properly, given its limited range, low speed, and primary engagement mode that left the launching aircraft within lethal envelopes of most opposing air defense systems. Further reducing its potency was a small warhead, meaning that in most instances only the emitting antenna itself was damaged, rather than the vehicle it was mounted to.

While limited in most respects, the Shrike received a number of upgrades over its lifetime, lasting in service from the mid-60s in Vietnam, until just after the Gulf War, through better engines and additional seeker updates for later SAM systems. The Shrike was put into use by two foreign users - the Israeli Air Force, who also modified it for a ground-launched version, and through clandestine means with the RAF during the Falklands War.

Variants

Only the A version can be equipped on this version of the Phantom.

Employment

The AGM-45 has three separate launch modes available: (WRCS) AGM-45, (LABS) LOFT, and (WRCS) DIRECT.

Basic cockpit setup

Before any AGM-45 Shrike can be employed a few things have to be set in the cockpit by the pilot:

1. Select the station for the Shrike you want to employ via the station select buttons
2. Select ARM on the weapon select knob
3. Select one of the three available modes of the Shrike via the delivery mode knob
4. (optional) Turn the flight director on for ADI needle guidance
5. (optional) Turn the LCOSS to A/G
6. Turn MASTER ARM on

AGM-45 (WRCS Mode)

Used only with the AGM-45 in conjunction with the WRCS, this mode is the primary means of employment of the Shrike. The mode is based around a high altitude attack profile, and depends on the pre-programmed weapon engagement envelope of the AGM-45 stored within the WRCS. This profile, in conjunction with current aircraft state information from the INS and a signal provided by the receiver in the missile - having detecting an emitter of the type its attuned to, define a flight path and release envelope for optimum probability of the missile reaching the target.

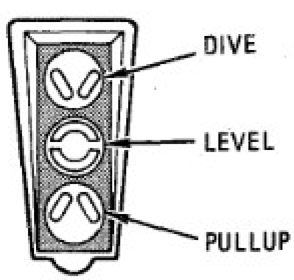
With the WRCS mode selected to AGM-45, the run is initiated by arming a station select button for a hardpoint carrying an AGM-45 missile. Doing so activates the missile's receiver, and upon emitter acquisition will provide the aforementioned information signal to the WRCS. The WSO should enter a target altitude value into the computer control panel, if necessary, using a mean value for the current target area, and if multiple missiles are to be launched, a release advance time setting. The WRCS

receives both data from the missile regarding look angle from the missile, along with corrected look angle from the INS; the selection for which data to use is performed with the TGT/MSL Rej switch, that should, in most cases, be left in the DF REJ position.

Look angle and estimated range available, the WRCS will provide guidance instruction using the needles on the ADI. Once oriented in the dive angle, the horizontal range to target will be provided on the HSI and BDHI, so long as the INS position is selected for navigation mode.

When the aircraft's orientation is correct and the ADI needles are centered, once the aircraft is within missile range, one of the indexer lights will illuminate based on the detected range to target to instruct the pilot as to the required release maneuver - dive, level, or pull-up. At this time, the pilot can press and hold the bomb release button to initiate the attack. Once the release range is attained in the instructed profile, the missile will be launched.

> 💡 Special note must be made of the importance of maintaining the ADI needles centered, especially the vertical azimuth relationship. Because the orientation of the missile itself when installed on the wing can cause offset of its receiver to occur when the aircraft is banked, preparation of the attack may require repeated adjustments with wings brought to level every few seconds to make certain the aircraft is pointing at the emitter.



Commands of the AGM-45 Shrike in WRCS mode

Pull-up

The Pull-up command light indicates that the aircraft is at some range where the Pull-up maneuver must be flown to get a release signal. After pickle and with the indexer light indicating Pull-up, the Pull-up instruction is guidance for the pilot to initiate a steady rotation back to the horizon, and, if desired, continue into a steady climb state until range requirements are met and the missile is launched. The pilot can choose to either bring the aircraft to near level and stop, or pull further into a low climb profile. When the aircraft is approximately 5 seconds away from release, the level indicator will illuminate, directing the pilot to maintain the current orientation until the Shrike is away.

Dive

The dive command in the WRCS mode occurs only when the attack is initiated very close to the target. The situation and proximity to the SAM installation must be considered prior to attack commitment with the pickle button, as any response by the battery has a high probability of arriving before the missile can potentially kill the emitter. The dive command, once followed, will then be followed with the level indicator once missile launch imminent.

Level

The level instruction is less of a directive than a confirmation of impending launch. Depending on the initial attack setup, the level signal may immediately occur, or occur quite soon after one of the other two instructions. From that point, it is simply required that the pilot maintain the current state for best chance of missile success.

WRCS AGM-45 Employment

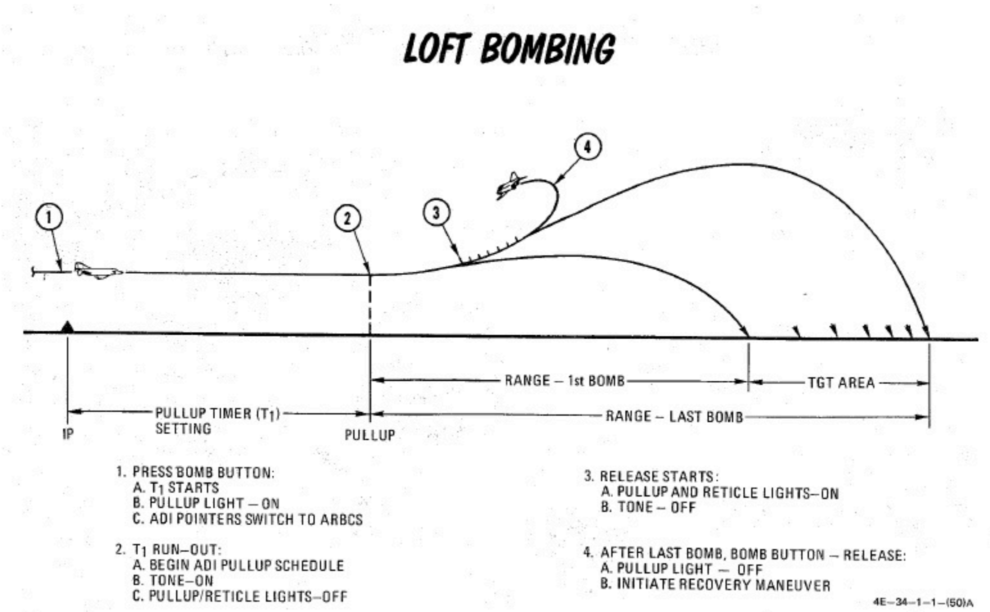
> 💡 The WRCS mode is currently WIP and will the employment will be described once it is ready

Loft

The Loft attack profile of the Shrike is like a loft bombing attack, utilizing the weapon lookup tables to define a suitable IP to release distance, the necessary release angle, and the time from IP to pull-up is determined by the lookup table speed versus the IP to release distance.

One key difference in the Loft mode versus the WRCS employment modes for the Shrike is the primary usage of the NORM mode rather than DF REJ; this places the missile's receiver in the role of the azimuth guidance directive on the ADI rather than the INS. The ADI's vertical needle will appear when the AGM-45 position is selected on the pedestal switch which is the NORM position.

The attack is performed like a loft bombing profile; the Phantom is flown over the IP at the intended altitude and airspeed, with the bomb release button being held from the point of flyover. The countdown timer initiates, the horizontal ADI bar appears to maintain level flight, and the pull-up lamp illuminates. When the pull-up timer runs out, the pull-up lamp will turn off, the sight reticle will turn off, and the horizontal ADI bar will move to display G load as normal for the pull-up maneuver; a correct profile will keep both ADI bars centered. When the aircraft achieves the programmed release angle, the missile will launch. Once launch has occurred, the pull-up lamp and sight reticle will illuminate again, and the horizontal ADI bar will stow.



Example of the Loft bombing, the procedure stays the same for the AGM-45 Shrike

LABS Loft Employment

This mode works exactly the same as it would for bombs so pre-planning is necessary. Select an IP calculate the timers and fly the same attack profile as for Loft bombing. Note that in this mode the Loft seeker of the AGM-45 Shrike needs to sense a differential pressure of 1 Bar and needs to sense a barometric height of over 18,000ft to arm itself and start searching.

Direct Mode

Direct mode employment of the AGM-45 is dependent on the crew knowing the precise location of the target SAM emitter; while it can be utilized as a fallback method in event of a WRCS system failure, the need for at least 10 degrees of dive angle against the target for successful delivery places a premium on being able to plan the attack against a specific point on the ground.

To employ the weapon in Direct mode, the crew confirms receipt of emitter audio, and initiates a dive to center the ADI needles at the target. The crew should then check the dive chart for angle and AGL, and the

pilot should maneuver into that orientation, maintaining a centered vertical ADI needle. From that point, the bomb release button is pressed and held until the Shrike is fired.

WRCS Direct Employment

For a direct employment all the pilot has to do is center the needles on the ADI and press the bomb release button. The Shrike will fire within one second after pressing the bomb release button. Be aware that the Shrike will have the least amount of range in direct mode and should be fired very near to the target. A dive angle of 20 degree or more is recommended.

Seekerheads

The following seekerheads can be used to track the corresponding radars:

Seekerhead RF Guidance	SA-2	SA-2 (TR)	SA-3	SA-3 (TR)	SA-6	SA-6 (TR)	SA-8	SA-10	SA-10 (TR)	SA-11	SA-15
Mk 22	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Mk 23	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐
Mk 24-5	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Mk 24-34	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐
Mk 25	☐	☑	☐	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☑
Mk 36	☐	☐	☐	☑	☐	☑	☐	☑	☑	☐	☐
Mk 37	☑	☐	☑	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Mk 49 Mod 1	☐	☐	☐	☑	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐	☐
Mk 50	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☑	☐	☑	☐

AGM-65 Maverick

Entering service in 1972, the AGM-65 air to surface missile provided the Phantom II with a direct-fire long range weapon, capable of destroying armor, mechanized infantry, and other targets with electro-optical, and later - infrared imaged, accuracy.

The F-4E was capable of carrying up to six between the two inboard wing pylons. The AGM-65 Maverick has an approximate maximum range of 12 nautical miles.

Employment of the Maverick is shared between both cockpits, with the pilot responsible for stores and mode selection, and initial seeker placement. From the point the seeker head is stabilized on the intended target area, either crew member can direct the final intended contrast target.

Variants

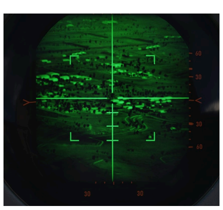
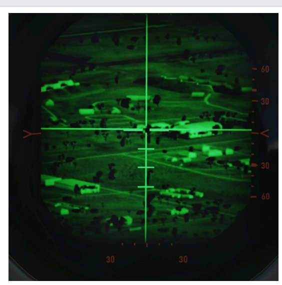
Available variants include:

Variant	Warhead	Description
A	462 lb	TV-Guided
B	462 lb	TV-Guided with a narrower FOV than A
D	485 lb	IR-Guided
G	675 lb	IR-Guided, optimized for larger targets

Employment

To utilize a Maverick of any variant, the pilot begins by pressing the applicable Station Select buttons, and setting Master Arm to On. The pilot then must select Direct on the Delivery Mode Knob, and the TV position on the Weapon Select Knob.

When selected to TV, the 3-minute missile gyro warmup sequence initiates; it is suggested to start the stopwatch to the left of the Multiple Weapon Panel as a means to avoid disturbing this sequence. Once the warmup has completed, the lower amber ARM indicators on the Station Select buttons will illuminate. Failure to permit this gyro cycle can potentially damage the guidance unit of the missiles aboard. During this warmup period, it is helpful to set the optical sight to A/G mode, and enter a depression of **45 mils**, so that the sight alignment be that of the missile seeker. This way, the pilot can put the target on the pipper and it will be within the weapons view.

No Lock	Locked on Target	Narrow View and Locked
		

Once the warmup has completed, the crew may activate their displays for viewing seeker video; the pilot selects the TV position on the Scope

Display Select switch on the Pedestal panel, and the WSO places the DSCG display mode knob to TV and the Video Select Switch to WEAPON instead of ASQ.

> 💡 To start the TV feed, the flight stick trigger has to be pressed, otherwise the screen stays blank.

With the displays activated, the pilot maneuvers the aircraft to position the sight reticle over the target area, and either crew member can then press their respective flight stick trigger to initiate video. With video active, command of the missile seeker is controlled by the crew member who activated the video signal, as follows:

Pilot

With the pipper over the target area, pressing and holding the ARR button enables track slewing with the Forward Hand Control stick inboard from the throttle. Once the seeker crosshair is over the intended target, releasing the ARR button performs a lock-on of the missile to the contrast area under the crosshair. If the missile seeker fails to achieve lock on the correct target, the lock can be broken by squeezing the trigger again, bringing the missile seeker back to its boresight position, and then reattempting the lock with the ARR button. Should the target not appear to have enough contrast versus the surrounding background, the contrast can be swapped from black hot to white-hot, or vice versa, using the Target Contrast Switch on the inboard Engine Control Panel. Leaving the switch in the Auto position allows the seeker to attempt to determine the best option for contrast.

Should a missile appear to not be functioning correctly, it can be rejected to the next round in the release sequence using the TGT/MSL REJ switch.

Once lock on the correct target is attained, the missile is launched using the bomb button. To initiate lock on of the next target, the process is started over with the squeezing of the trigger.

With the above in mind for the electro-optical AGM-65A and B, the AGM-65D has a few minor alterations to the procedure. The seeker of the 65D has two FOV settings, wide and narrow, and initial video signal is provided in the wide setting. In this setting, a quartet of L shaped brackets define the region of the display that will be zoomed in upon selecting the narrow field of view. Pressing the trigger a second time changes the video to the narrow setting, allowing for a more precise selection of the target.

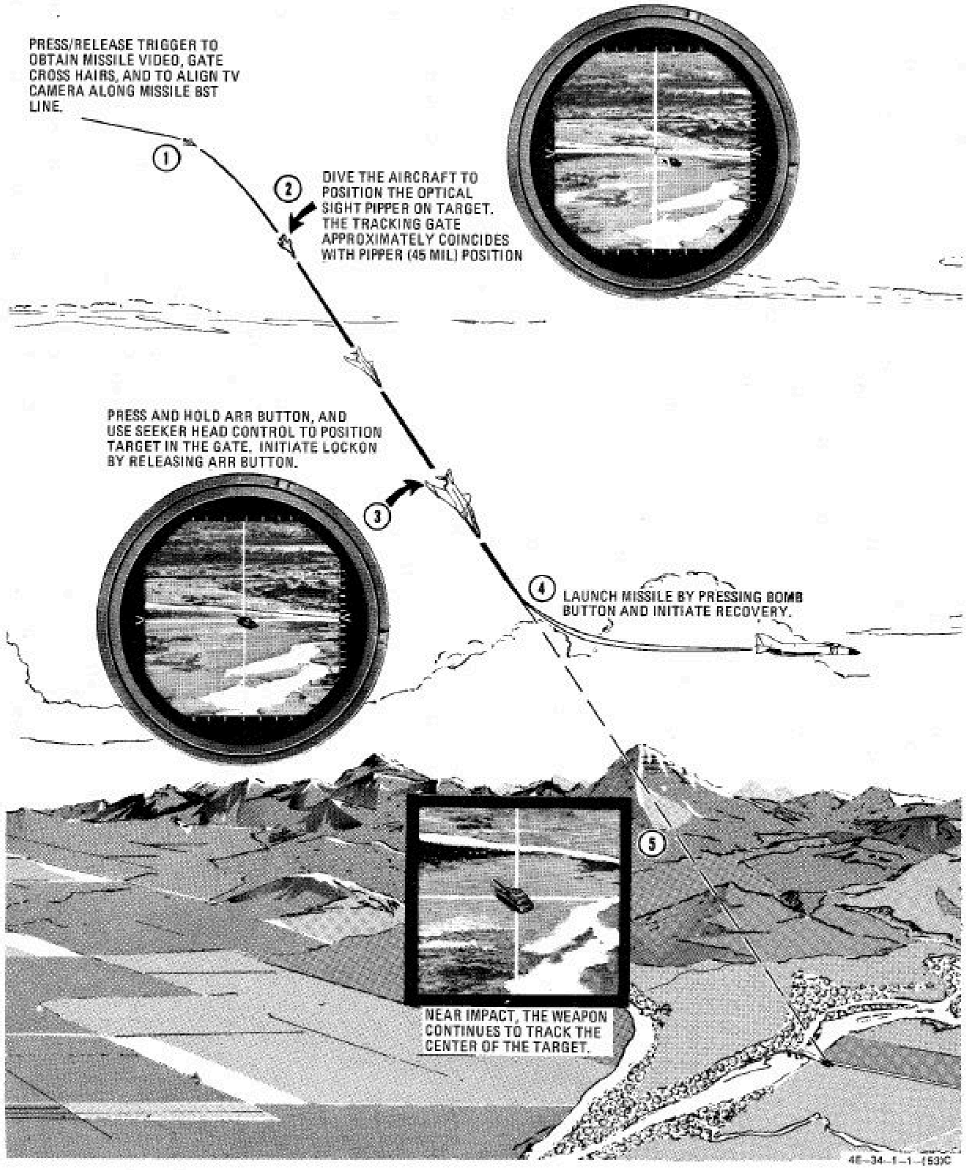
WSO

The WSO performs the same sequence of actions for the seeker guidance, and can initiate video upon pilot confirmation of pipper location using the trigger of his own flight stick in the rear cockpit. From this point, the WSO uses the antenna hand control stick to manage the seeker head placement, lock, and in the case of AGM-65D employment FoV controls. Rather than pressing and holding the ARR button to activate slew, the WSO selects the half-action trigger position, and then slews the seeker using the cursor control.

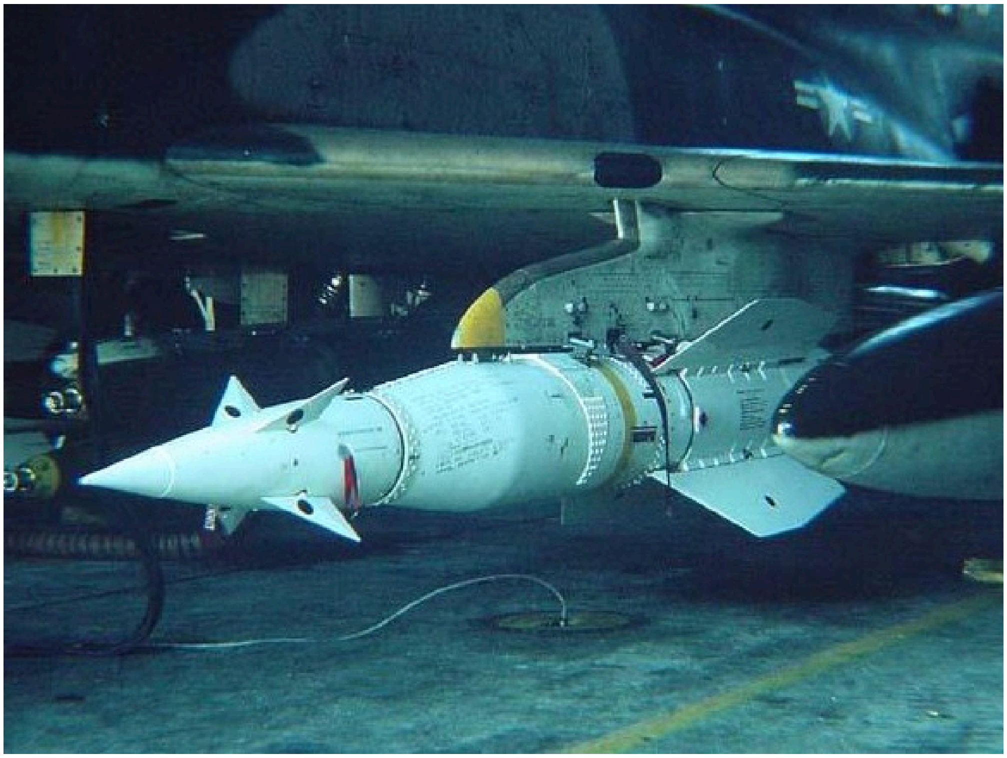
Once the applicable target is under the crosshair, lock is achieved using the full action command. Should the WSO need to change 65D FoV to narrow, a subsequent press of half action will do so. The WSO can change the contrast mode with the Contrast Switch on RWR Panel on the right side. And, once lock is achieved, the WSO can fire the missile using the Missile Launch button found on his flight stick - in the same position as the Bomb Release button on the front stick.

AGM-65 DELIVERY

DSCG AIRCRAFT (AGM-65A DISPLAY SHOWN)



AGM-12 Bullpup



The AGM-12, nicknamed Bullpup, is a guided short-range air-to-ground missile that can be steered manually by the crew.

Steering commands are send via radio by utilizing the lower UHF antenna of the Phantom.

It was the first of its kind that reached series production and was used in service during the early 1960s until it was later supplanted by the AGM-62 Walleye.

Variants

Available variants include:

Variant	Warhead	Description
A	250 lb	solid-fuel

Variant	Warhead	Description
B	250 lb	liquid fuel, extended range
C	1000 lb	liquid fuel, further extended range

Employment

Basic cockpit setup

Before any AGM-12 Bullpup can be employed a few things have to be set in the cockpit by the pilot:

1. Select the station for the AGM-12 Bullpup via the station select buttons
2. Select AGM-12 on the weapon select knob
3. Select Direct on the delivery mode knob
4. (optional) Turn the LCOSS to A/G
5. Turn MASTER ARM on

To launch the AGM-12 Bullpup the only thing left to do is to put the reticle on the target and press and hold the bomb release button until the missile has left the rail.After launch, the weapon can be steered either by the pilot using the mini-stick next to the throttle, or by the WSO using the Antenna Hand Control Stick.

Rockets

Mk 4 Series 2.75 Folding Fin Aerial Rockets - FFAR

Also known as the Mighty Mouse, the Mk 4 series of unguided aerial rockets originated as an air-to-air weapon. Given the rocket's undirected nature, tendency for wide dispersion in salvo usage, and overall poor performance in its intended role - most notably an incident in which over 200 rounds were fired by a pair of F-89 Scorpions in a failed attempt to down an un-commanded target drone, the Mighty Mouse was wholly unfit for purpose. However, the rocket's peculiar traits were ingeniously capitalized upon by transitioning it to the role of an air to ground area effect weapon.

Having become a useful tool, the original Mk 4's capability was expanded upon with a wide array of warheads, including smoke, anti-personnel flechette, and those used by the USAF on the Phantom - the M156 White Phosphorous, Mk 1 High Explosive, and the Mk 5 High Explosive Anti Tank. Depending on the hardpoint location and configuration, up to 3 LAU-3 pod launchers can be installed per hardpoint, each carrying 19 FFARs.

Variants

Available variants include:

Variant	Description
White Phosphor	For marking target areas
HE	Against infantry and light armored targets
HEAT	Against armored targets, such as vehicles

Bombs

As a multi-role fighter aircraft, the Phantom II is equipped with a versatile array of bombs that cater to a diverse range of operational scenarios.

At the core of the F-4E's bomb armament is the Mark 80 series, a family of general-purpose bombs aviation for decades, offering a balance of destructive power and simplicity. that includes the MK-82, MK-83, and MK-84. These unguided bombs have been mainstays in military

For missions requiring widespread target coverage, the F-4E Phantom II can be configured to carry cluster bombs. These munitions disperse smaller bomblets over a designated area, effectively saturating the target zone.

The F-4E can be armed with laser-guided bombs, such as the GBU series. These munitions laser guidance systems to home in on designated targets with exceptional accuracy.

Also equipped on the F-4E were TV Guided bombs such as the GBU-8 HOBOS (Homing Bomb System) and the AGM-62 Walleye I and II. These guided munitions featured optical sensors to track and hit the target.

Conventional Bombs

Mk 80 Series

The Phantom II's bread and butter in the air to ground role, the Mk 80 series conventional bombs were first dropped in combat over North Vietnam. The F-4E is able to deliver the 500 lb Mk 82, the 1000 lb Mk 83, and 2000 lb Mk 84. Of note is the selectable drag option Mk 82 variant known as Snakeye. With the selectable fin arrangement on the round, the deployable fins remain in position in the low drag profile, and deploy as a cruciform aerobraking device in the high drag setting. This change in setting is managed with the Nose/Tail Arming switch.

Variants

Available conventional unguided bombs are:

Variant	Warhead	Description
Mk-81	250 lb	Low Drag

Variant	Warhead	Description
Mk-82	500 lb	Low Drag
Mk-82 AIR	500 lb	Low/High Drag Chute
Mk-82 Snakeye	500 lb	Low/High Drag
Mk-83	1000 lb	Low Drag
Mk-84	2000 lb	Low Drag
Mk-84 AIR	2000 lb	High Drag Chute
M-117	750 lb	Low Drag

BDU Series Training Bombs

Depending on the training requirements and range needs, the Phantom II can carry the BDU-33 25 lb training bomb, the BDU-45 500 lb training bomb, or the BDU-50 500 lb training bomb, in either low or high drag configuration, to simulate the carriage and release profile of standard Mk 82 and Snakeye rounds.

BDU Variants

Available variants of the BDU family include:

Variant	Warhead	Description
33	25 lb	Low Drag
50 HD	500 lb	High Drag
50 LD	500 lb	Low Drag
45 LG	500 lb	Laser Guided

Employment

The conventional bombs are deployed using the BOMBS setting on the Weapon Selector Knob.

All bombing modes on the Delivery Mode Knob are supported, see the 4.3.3.6. Employment section for details.

> 💡 MK-82 Air and Snakeye can be switched between Low and High drag configuration depending on the Fuze Arm Switch. The nose fuze arms the bomb, while the tail fuze puts the bomb into High Drag if set and Low Drag if not set.

Cluster Bombs

Available cluster bombs are:

Variant	Sub-Munition	Amount	Description
Mk-20	Mk 118	247	HEAT
CBU-52B	BLU-61A/B	220	HE
CBU-87	BLU-97/B	202	Combined Effects
CBU-1A/A	BLU-4B	513	HE
CBU-2/A	BLU-3	361	HE
CBU-2B/A	BLU-3B	418	HE

Mk 20 Rockeye

Carrying 247 Mk 118 anti-tank bomblets, the Mk 20 Rockeye is used to deliver said potency across a wide dispersal area. The Mk 20 has a base schedule dispersal time depending on variant (4 seconds in the Mod 2 variant, and 1.2 seconds in the Mod 3), along with a ground crew selectable option time that is programmed prior to takeoff. In concert, once over the target area the pilot can select the necessary option through the Nose/Tail Arming switch, and deliver the weapon with the profile most suited to the target.

CBU-52B

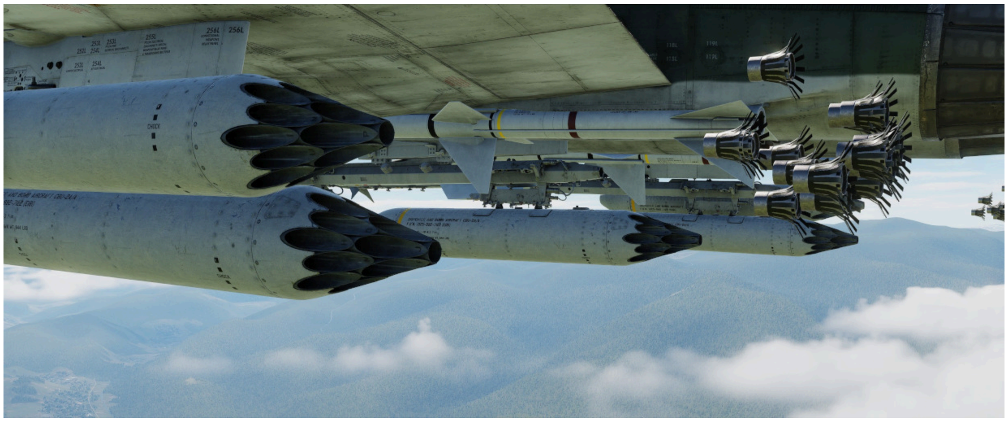
Cluster bomb using a SUU-30 submunitions dispenser loaded with 220 BLU-61A/B anti-personnel and anti-material incendiary high explosive fragmentation bombs.

CBU-87

Free falling bomb consisting of a SUU-65B canister with a timed fuze. Carries 202 BLU-97/B submunitions.

Each bomblet is attached to a a small ballute that slows them down and increases their spread while falling. Upon impact, they have a combined shaped charge, fragmentation and incendiary effect, which makes them suitable for anti-personnel, anti-material and also anti-armor.

CBU-1, CBU-2



Dispensers with 19 tubes each loaded with either 27 BLU-4B, 19 BLU-3 or 22 BLU-3B HE bomblets. Upon impact with the ground, each bomblet discharges high velocity fragments in a radial pattern.

In the case of the CBU-2/A and CBU-2B/A, the carried BLU-3 bomblets are loaded with steel balls suitable even for unarmored vehicles. The CBU-1A/A, carrying BLU-4B bomblets, is loaded with anti-personnel shrapnel material.

Employment

With the exception of the CBU-1 and CBU-2, cluster bombs are deployed using the BOMBS setting on the Weapon Selector Knob.

The CBU-1/-2 however, are dispensers that technically have more similarities with a rocket launcher than they have with a conventional bomb. The setting RKTS & DISP has to be used to employ them properly.

The A setting can also be used as a backup mode which will send a single pulse signal to all selected pylons on each press of the Bomb Button.

Technically, all bombing modes on the Delivery Mode Knob are supported, see the 4.3.3.6. Employment section for details.

However, since bomblets are often deployed by a timed fuze, best results are achieved if they are dropped directly above the target area with laydown modes DL or L. Modes DT and TGT FIND, as well as Direct, TL or OFFSET can also be used effectively.

Laser Guided Bombs

GBU-10, 12, and 24

Built around the Mk 80 series of conventional bombs, the Paveway series precision bomb kits install a guidance section and directional maneuvering fin section to the Mk 82 (GBU-12) and Mk 84 (GBU-10 and 24) general purpose rounds, respectively. Utilizing the Pave Spike laser targeting pod or buddy lasing, the Paveway's resulting performance delivered a substantial increase to the Phantom's bombing accuracy, with the later GBU-24's larger fin arrangement providing greater glide range for the 2000 lb round over the original GBU-10.

Variants

Available variants of the GBU family include:

Variant	Warhead
10	2000 lb
12	500 lb
24 A/B	2000 lb

The laser guided BDU-45 LG can be used for training purposes.

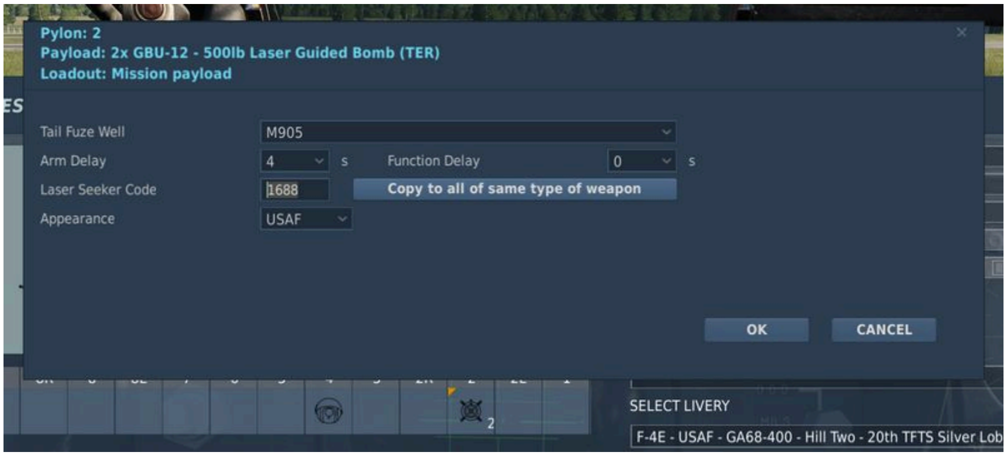
Employment

GBUs are deployed using the BOMBS setting on the Weapon Selector Knob.

Technically, all bombing modes on the Delivery Mode Knob are supported, see the 4.3.3.6. Employment section for details.

However, unless guided by another aircraft, TGT FIND in combination with a Pave Spike targeting pod is the main mode to employ GBUs with.

The laser code used by bombs can be set on the ground during rearming or in the Mission Editor. The laser used for guiding with the Pave Spike is set on the Laser Coder Control by the WSO.



TV Guided Bombs

The F-4E Phantom II was equipped with TV-guided bombs, notably the GBU-8 and AGM-62 Walleye, enhancing its precision strike capabilities.

The GBU-8, also known as the "HOBOS" (Homing Bomb System), its successor the GBU-15, and the AGM-62 I and II Walleye are electro-optical, TV-guided glide bombs. They are precision-guided munition equipped with a television camera in their nose.

The GBU-15 can be steered after being launched via a data-link interface, leading to pinpoint precision and increasing the F-4E's effectiveness in attacking well-defended and high-value targets, providing a "man-in-the-loop" guidance solution.

> 💡 The earlier DSCG variant does not support the data-link interface. Thus, it can launch the weapons only in a backup mode *"Lock-On Before Launch"* similar to Mavericks, without any manual steering after launch.

Historically, also both Walleye variants received data-link upgrades (ER/DL). However, the F-4E has never been adjusted to support the Walleyes specific data-link interface for man-in-the-loop guidance.

Both the GBU-8/15 and AGM-62 Walleye were crucial additions to the F-4E's arsenal, enhancing its ability to conduct precise strikes with reduced collateral damage. These TV-guided bombs showcased the adaptability of the F-4E Phantom II in integrating advanced munitions to meet evolving mission requirements.

Variants

Available TV guided bombs include:

Variant	Warhead	Description
AGM-62 Walleye I	1000 lb	
AGM-62 Walleye II ER	2000 lb	extended range
GBU-8 HOBOS	2000 lb	

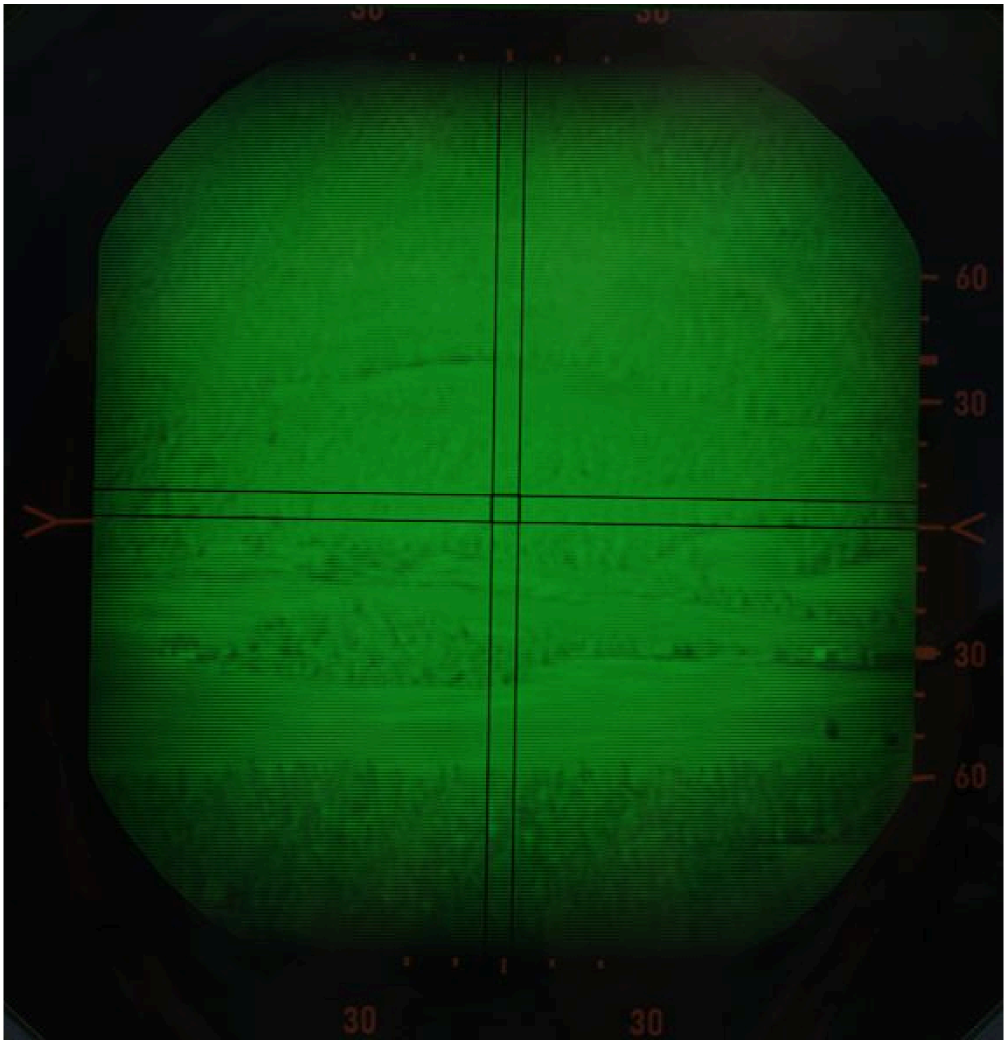
Employment

During the three-minute warmup period, it is helpful to set the optical sight to A/G mode, and enter a depression of **17 mils**, so that the sight alignment be that of the missile seeker. This way, the pilot can put the target on the pipper and it will be within the weapons view.

After the warmup either bomb is released by, selecting the corresponding stations, putting the Weapon Selector to TV and the Delivery Mode Knob to DIRECT.

Enable the TV mode for the DSCG screen and press the trigger. This activates the sensor and video feed will be displayed on the screen.

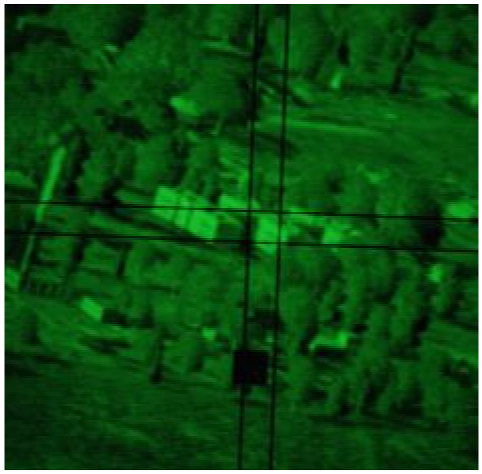
> 💡 WSO controls are on the actual flight stick, not the Antenna Hand Control.



The camera sensor **can not be slewed**. Place the crosshair in the general direction of the target area, or in case of launching in *"Lock-On Before Launch"*-mode, directly over the target. Press and hold down the trigger to command a lock.

The seeker attempts to lock via contrast. If it fails to lock, the target likely does not stand out enough to its background.

> 💡 Due to TV based contrast-locking, the weapons effectiveness may decrease during dusk, dawn or in heavy overcast situations.



Once locked, a black square is added to the symbology, indicating the seeker head position.

Then, press and hold the bomb button for a few seconds to release the weapon.

> 💡 Effective range varies a lot with release altitude and speed. The release mechanism does not check if the ordnance is within parameters. To reduce the risk of the weapon missing its target, prefer launching it from increased altitude and speed.

Other

SUU-25 Target Marker Flares

Container loaded with 8 parachute illumination flares for marking target areas or providing battlefield illumination at night.

To employ, select DIRECT Delivery Mode and RKTS & DISP on the Weapon Selector Knob. Release them directly over the target area. The flares last for around 4 minutes and should be dropped below 5000ft (1500m) AGL if battlefield illumination is desired.

Bomb Employment

The Phantom has a wide range of weapon modes to employ bombs. Most modes require the WSO to make inputs into the ARBCS/WRCS.

For assistance in calculation see Bombing Calculator Chapter. You can open and close it by pressing RCTRL + B in game.

> 💡 When flying with Jester, use the Bombing Calculator Tool to plan your attack and to tell Jester to prepare the aircraft for this profile.

The delivery modes can be roughly categorized into:

Category	Modes	Remarks
Accurate	DT, TGT FIND	direct sight, no preparation, targets of opportunity
Offset delivery	OFFSET	target not directly visible
Level release	TL	e.g. safe high altitude delivery from above clouds
Laydown modes	DL, L	low level, high drag or CBUs
Lofting and Tossing	LOFT, O/S, INST O/S, T LAD	keep distance to target
Manual	DIRECT	backup, classic mil-based bombing

Pilot

After setting the desired delivery mode on the Delivery Mode Knob, the pilot has to select BOMBS on the Weapon Selector Knob.

> 💡 CBU-1 and CBU-2 must be deployed using the RKTS & DISP setting instead of BOMBS.

The corresponding stations to deploy bombs from are then selected and armed by using the Master Arm Switch and the Station Select Buttons.

Some bombs support fuze settings selectable using the Nose/Tail Arming Switch.

Next, the pilot can set the quantity of bombs to drop per release pulse and the interval between pulses by using the switches on the AWRU panel.

Once everything is set up, bombs are generally released by pressing the Bomb Button on the flight stick.

WSO

Depending on the selected mode, the WSO must setup the aircraft for the desired attack profile. Only modes DT and TGT FIND generally require no preparation.

WRCS Panel

Most relevant settings can be found on the WRCS panel. In order for the WRCS to compute proper ballistic solutions during non-dive deliveries, the WSO has to enter a drag coefficient suitable for the desired bomb and altitude by entering it using the Drag Coefficient Control.

> 💡 Drag coefficient numbers can be computed with the Bombing Calculator Tool. The kneeboard also provides lookup tables.

With the exception of the DT mode, it is necessary to enter the altitude of the target or the IP using the Target/IP Altitude Control.

If multiple bombs are supposed to be dropped in one attack, their pattern can be shifted forward or aft using the Release Advance Control.

> 💡 Release Advance can be computed easily using the Bombing Calculator Tool.

For offset attacks, the offset is entered as distance in N/S and E/W direction to the reference point (IP, VIP, RIP) using the Target Distance Controls.

> 💡 Target Distance in N/S and E/W can be converted from direct distance and heading using the Bombing Calculator Tool.

Certain modes, such as DL and L require entering the range to the target from a precomputed point. This can be done using the Release Range Control.

Bomb Release Angle Computer

For lofting modes, the desired release angle can be set with the Low Angle Control, while the High Angle Control is used for tossing modes.

Bombing Timers

Modes LOFT, O/S and T LAD require setting a Pull Up timer which will start counting down when overflying the IP. Once ran out, it gives the pilot cues to initiate the pull-up maneuver. The timer has to be computed accordingly to the distance and altitude of the target in relation to the desired speed and altitude of the aircraft, as well as the desired release angle.

> 💡 Pull-Up timer values can be computed using the Bombing Calculator Tool.

Further, modes TL and T LAD utilize a release-timer.

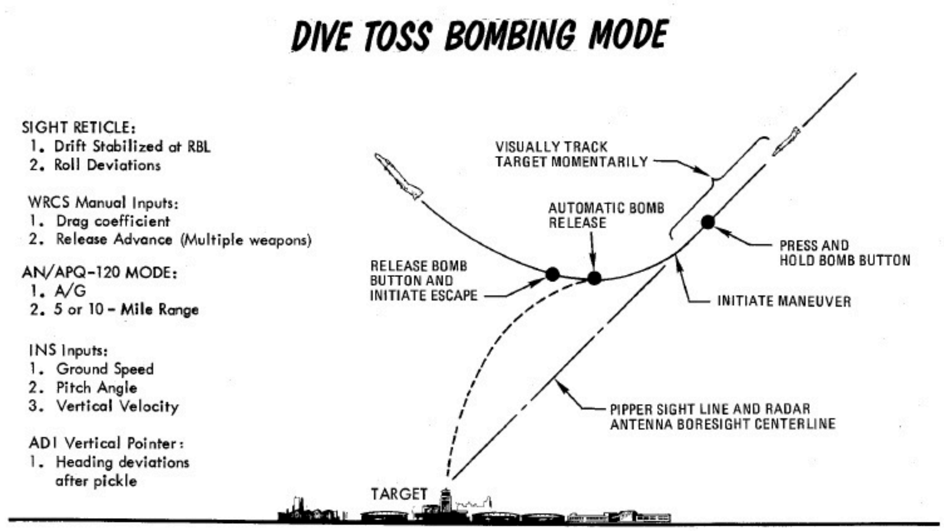
Accurate Modes

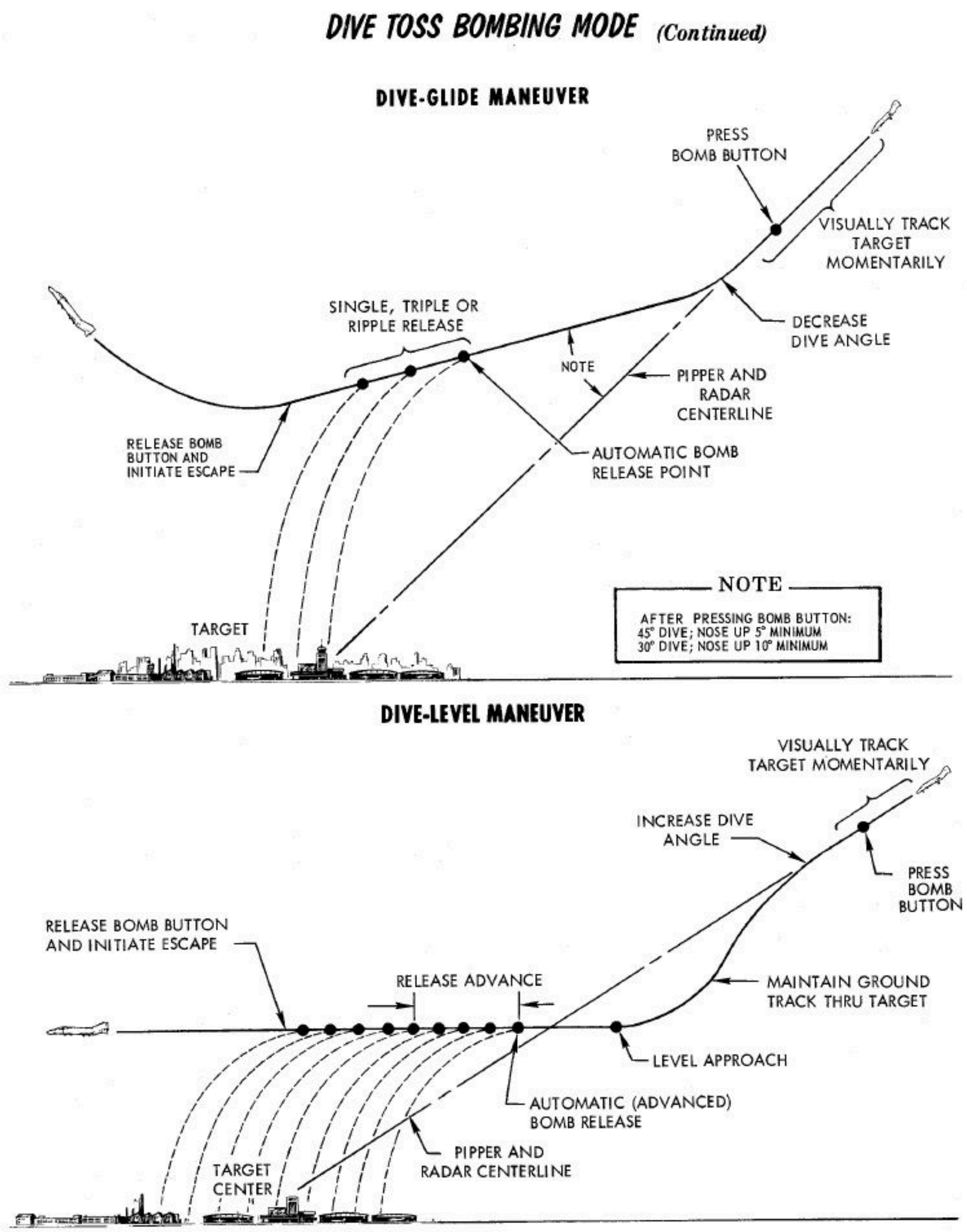
Dive Toss - DT

One of the most accurate and easiest bombing modes to use is Dive Toss.

It requires no specific setup or planning and can hence also be used for targets of opportunity. It requires a direct line of sight.

The pilot flies a dive attack on the target while the WSO obtains accurate target range information using the radar. Once the target is designated, the pilot simple holds down the Bomb Button and begins to gently pull out of the dive. Weapons automatically release at the right moment during the maneuver.





Dive Toss uses the WRCS and radar tracking, in conjunction with other aircraft sensors, to calculate the release solution in real time. The target can be approached from any direction, airspeed, and dive angle, and the WRCS computes the proper release point relative to the acquired track, munition drag coefficient setting, and any release advance control input (in conjunction with AWRU settings).

Procedure

To perform a Dive Toss attack, the radar must be set in AIR-GRD mode, with a 5 or 10-mile range setting. Once set, the pilot initiates the attack with the Optical Sight in Air-to-Ground mode, and the reticle automatically cages in elevation along the RBL. The pilot then selects DT on the Delivery Mode Knob, places Weapon Selector Knob in BOMBS, and selects the desired Interval and Quantity on the respective AWRU knobs. At this point, the pilot can initiate the attack.

The attack is initiated in a dive. The required dive is roughly 20% higher than that required for a Direct mode attack, as to achieve effective radar ground lock; that is, the radar must get a solid ground return, rather than see the actual target being bombed. Once lock-on is achieved, the pilot then maneuvers to place the pipper over the intended target, wings level, then presses and holds the bomb button to insert radar range to the WRCS, and then begins the desired pullout maneuver, maintaining wings level. After the pilot pushes the bomb release button, radar ground lock is no longer required. The pullout maneuver must maintain as constant a rate of turn as possible for maximum precision.

At the point where the bomb computed trajectory will intersect the target, the WRCS provides the release signal, dropping rounds based on the settings chosen for number and interval.

Target Find - TGT FIND

Target Find was originally just a utility mode derived from OFFSET mode; where it does not provide a standard release signal to the fire control and AWRU to initiate bomb drop, but was instead used to confirm target location without release, for training purposes, or, if necessary, perform an INS system update.

However, with the Pave Spike targeting pod installed, Target Find will instead signal the WRCS to use the target defined by the pods line of sight for a Dive Toss delivery, instead of defining the target by radar lock.

In this case, the Pave Spike is placed on the target (activate the laser for a more accurate slant range) and the bomb button is pressed and hold down. Similar to a regular Dive Toss delivery, steering cues appear on the HUD. The system will automatically release the bombs when the parameters for the ballistic solution are met.

> 💡 It is not necessary to perform a dive maneuver as the target is simply designated by the pods line of sight together with the measured slant range instead of the radar.

> 💡 TGT FIND with the Pave Spike is comparable to CCRP modes in newer aircraft. Designate the target with the pod, hold down the bomb button and weapons automatically release at the right moment.

Offset Delivery - OFFSET

Offset bombing provides a blind bombing capability, with high and low level bombing profiles, using the full integration of the WRCS, INS, and radar in combination. Offset bombing can be used in both visual and instrument conditions, to release either bombs or dispensed munitions (with the RKTS & DISP mode).

The crew chooses a known reference point (IP) and obtains target position by a means of an offset to that reference point. After setting up the aircraft with the corresponding values, the attack is then flown by designating the reference point instead of the actual target. The aircraft can then automatically release weapons based on the offset values.

Identification Point

The setup for an Offset bomb attack is based around the selection of an IP relative to a known target location. For a visual attack, it is called VIP - the Visual Identification Point, and initiation of the navigation assistance is performed with a direct flyover of the VIP.

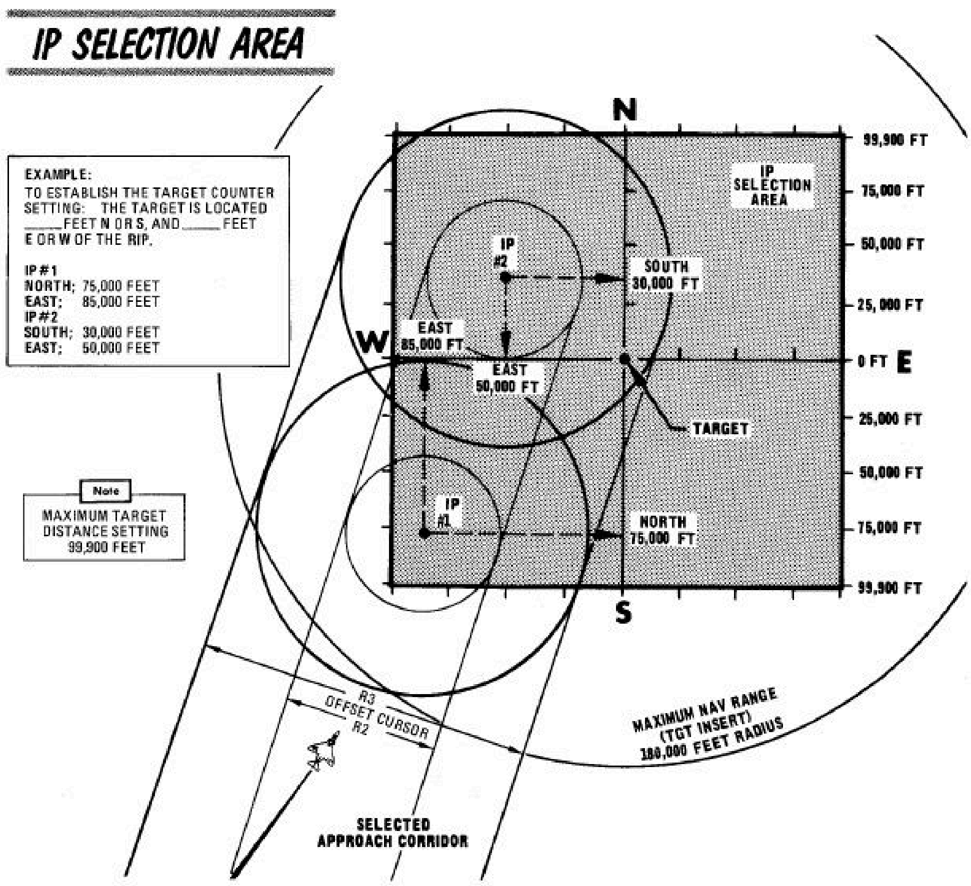
In an instrument conditions attack, the IP is called the RIP - the Radar Identification Point, and acquisition of this point using a radar lock in MAP-PPI mode generates a navigation solution to the target.

When chosen during planning, the VIP or RIP's position relative to the target determines a pair of offset values (hence the name of the mode); one in the North/South axis, the other East/West. Both offsets are noted in feet, and the maximum amount of offset in each axis is 99,900', or 16.44 nautical miles.

Also found during mission planning is the altitude of the IP, and selection is made using the lookup tables for the respective weapon, altitude above target, and speed, taking note of the bomb range. When preparing the WRCS entries, the offsets are always referenced from the IP to the target. Selection of an IP should be as close as possible to the target to minimize

system drift by way of smaller navigation time and distance, and approach to the IP should be flown with a focus on minimizing maneuvering required to put the target nose on after IP acquisition (RIP) or flyover (VIP).

> 💡 The Bombing Calculator Tool can be used to convert offset values from direct range and direction to the required N/S and E/W distances.



RIP Low Altitude Considerations

Of special note in the RIP mode is the need to compensate for altitude difference in the event the ingress to target will be flown below the altitude of the RIP itself. Because the computations performed by the WRCS and navigation system are mechanical, selecting a RIP target

altitude above the course can cause interference damage. To alleviate this, perform the following:

1. Note the approach altitude above MSL.
2. Subtract the approach altitude MSL from the RIP altitude above MSL.
3. Subtract the resulting value found in 2. from the approach altitude.

The resulting value is used for the target altitude value, and the pilot flies the planned approach attitude during the target freeze and insert operations as per normal.

Procedure

Visual IP

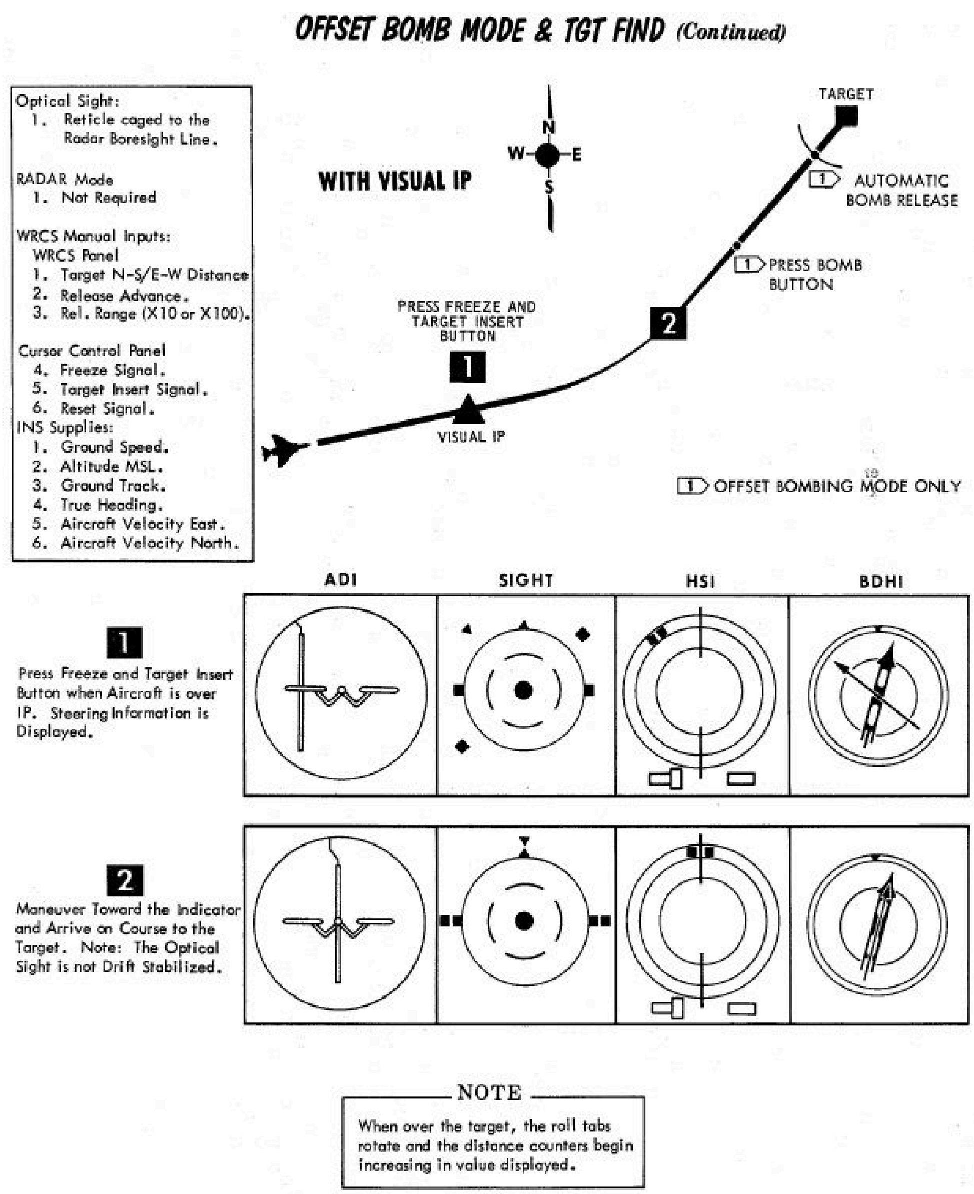
Prior to IP overflight, the N/S and E/W offsets, release range (x10 per the window, or using the x100 switch modifier on the WRCS initiate panel), and any desired release advance setting should be entered. Additionally, the desired release timing and count should be selected on the AWRU.

The Offset Visual IP attack commences on overflight of the VIP, with the aircraft at the desired release altitude and speed; as the aircraft overflies the VIP, the WSO simultaneously presses the Freeze Signal and Target Insert Signal buttons on the Cursor Control Panel; doing so initiates INS target tracking. At this time, the vertical ADI, Sight, BDHI, and HSI navigation aids will all show offset from the calculated release point, as well as target range on the HSI and BDHI.

Completion of the attack is performed by the pilot through maneuvering the aircraft to align course to the release point, maintaining the planned release airspeed and altitude, and, prior to reaching the release point, pressing and holding the bomb release button. If the bomb release button is released prior to munitions release, but at a range greater than the programmed release range, the attack can be recovered by pressing and holding the bomb release button until release occurs. When this takes place, the pull-up light will illuminate to confirm drop initiation.

Should the bomb release button not be pressed until after the release point is passed, the bombs will not release until the target is passed; ergo, the bomb button should be released to cancel the run prior to errant bomb drop.

Once an attack is completed, the navigation program against the set target is maintained. The aircraft can attempt a re-attack, although natural INS drift may reduce the accuracy of this second attack.



Radar IP

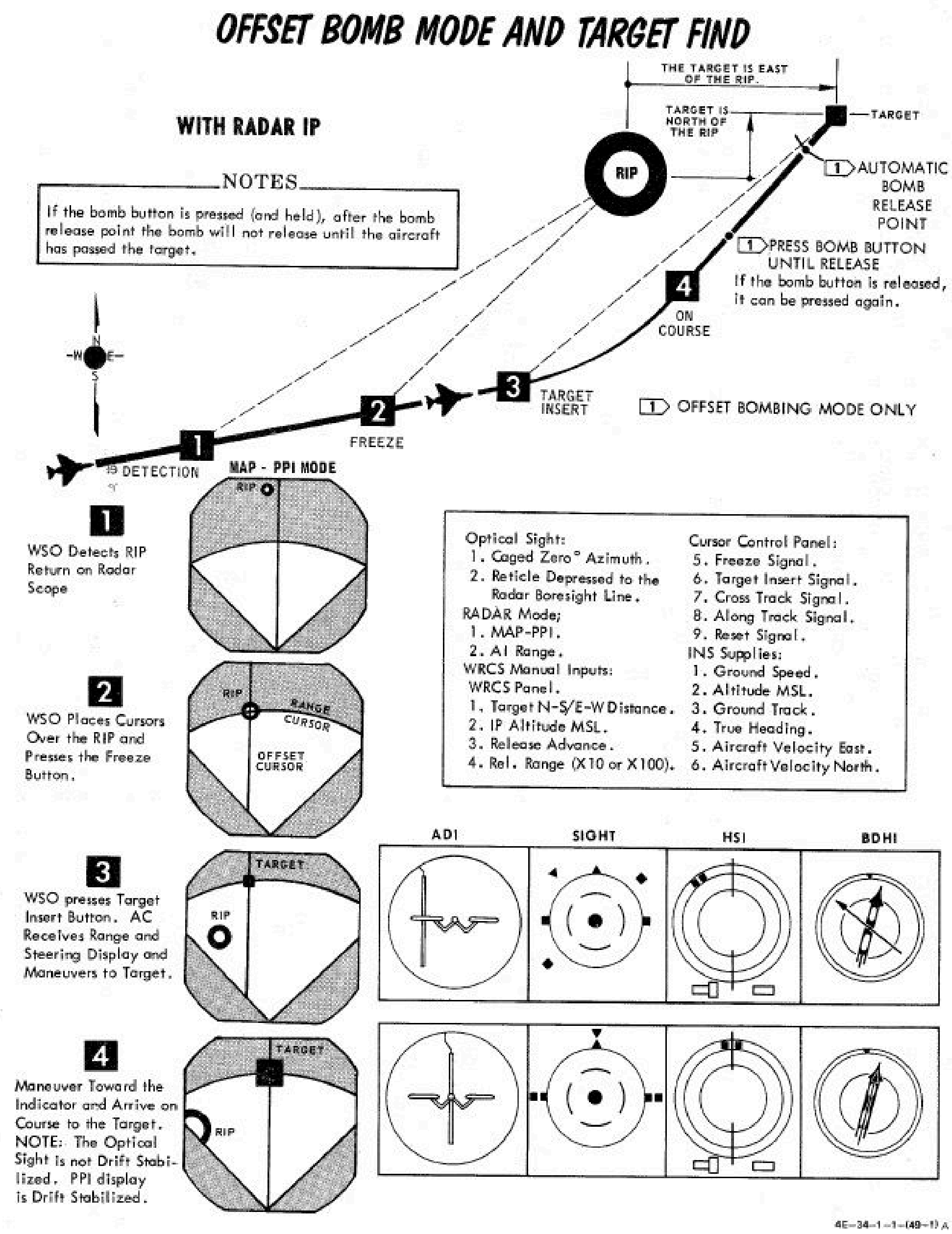
Prior to RIP Freeze and Target Insert, the N/S and E/W offsets, RIP altitude, release range (x10 per the window, or using the x100 switch modifier on the WRCS initiate panel), and any desired release advance setting should be entered. Additionally, the desired release timing and count should be selected on the AWRU. Prior to initiation, the pilot should enter the target area at the desired profile altitude and airspeed. The WSO should have the APQ-120 prepared for the attack with a good radar picture in MAP-PPI mode, NOR stab mode, WIDE scan, and a range of 10 or 25 miles, with an observed return from the RIP.

Initiation of the attack begins with placing the Along Track cursor (presented as a growing hemisphere on the radar display defining range to the RIP) in proximity to, but below, the intended RIP return. When this is set, the Cross Track cursor (a vertical line) is slewed over the RIP. Once the intersection is defined, the WSO waits momentarily until the RIP range decreases and falls onto the intersection. At this time, the WSO pushes the Freeze button. This initiates radar tracking of the RIP, and provides the opportunity for the WSO to better the intersection point between the Along Track and Cross Track cursors. Once the precise point is attained, the WSO pushes the Insert Target button, which hands target guidance off to the INS and performs an immediate slew of the Along Track and Cross Track cursors from the RIP to the offset target.

At this time, the INS presents guidance and range information on the ADI, the sight, the BDHI, and the HSI. The WSO should continue to monitor the radar display - should the actual target appear on the display as range decreases, the actual known altitude of the target can be entered on the WRCS panel and the Along Track and Cross Track cursors can be touched up using their controls to further increase release precision.

Prior to release range, the pilot must press and hold the bomb release button. Once the bombs have released, the pull-up light will illuminate to confirm release.

In the event that a RIP profile, due to breaking weather conditions, transition to a VIP-possible profile, the offsets can be kept in the WRCS, and the pilot simply fly over the RIP, with the WSO pressing the Freeze and Target Insert buttons simultaneously, just like a VIP attack.



Practice

If no Pave Spike targeting pod is installed, the TGT FIND mode can be used as a practice mode for OFFSET.

It then functions identical to the OFFSET mode with the difference of not sending an actual release signal to the weapons.

Level Release

Multiple modes can be used to release bombs from level flight. This chapter focuses on the TL mode. See the other sections for level release from DIRECT, TGT FIND, OFFSET or L modes.

Timed Level - TL

Timed Level bombing is the most basic ARBCS mode, utilizing only the Release Timer.

Once the Bomb Button is pressed and hold down, the timer counts down. As soon as it reaches zero, weapons are deployed.

Because it is so simple, it can be utilized for attacks from high altitude that do not require to be accurate, dropping bombs safely from above cloud cover.

Procedure

The setting for the Release Timer is found based on the bomb range value determined for the chosen weapon, referencing the desired flight altitude above the target and airspeed. This range determines the point where the munition(s) will be released from the aircraft. An IP is chosen relative to the bomb range distance, and the Release timer value is then calculated using the distance between the point of release and the IP based on the chosen airspeed.

The pull-up timer should be set to 000, and the High and Low Release settings can be left at any value.

The attack is performed by entering the necessary Release Timer value, pushing and holding the bomb release button upon IP flyover, and maintaining straight and level flight at the planned airspeed and altitude at the target until the weapons are released from the aircraft. Unlike the other LABS modes, there is no pull-up audio or ADI needle takeover to

illustrate pitch or roll deviation- it is simply dependent on the pilot to maintain wings level flight.

Laydown Modes

Laydown delivery allows for releasing weapons from a wings level attitude by designating the target visually either by using the pipper set to a certain sight depression or the radar.

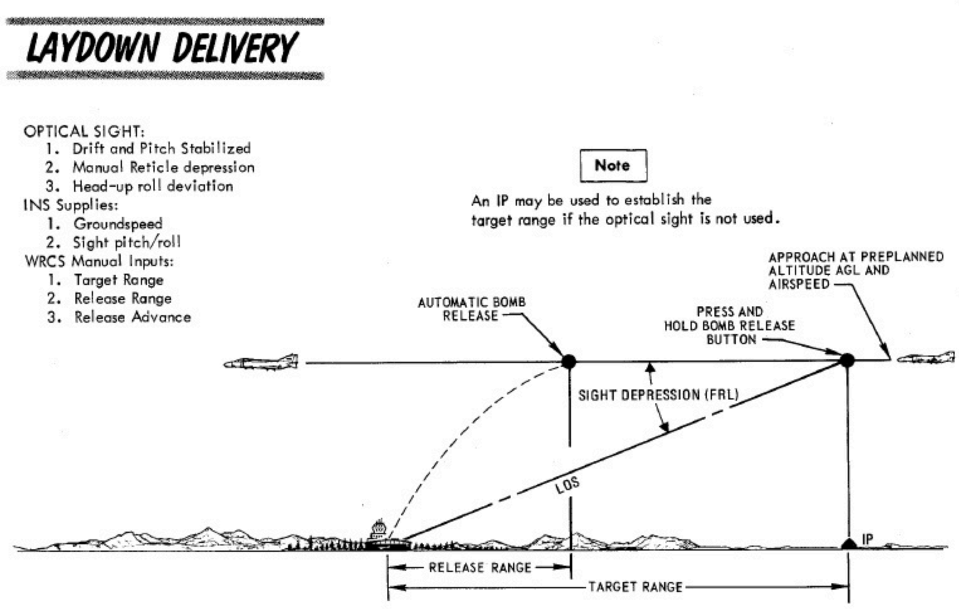
They are most effective if used for low altitude attacks, as well as deploying CBUs or high drag bombs.

Laydown - L

In this mode, the target is designated by means of a distance to a point prior to the target (IP). Once over that point, the Bomb Button is held down and weapons automatically release after passing the setup release range.

As a visual aid, the sight should be depressed in a way that it will be exactly over the target when at the IP. That way, as soon as the pipper is over the target, the Bomb Button can be held down and weapons will impact.

> 💡 The correct sight depression can be computed using the Bombing Calculator Tool.



Procedure - L

Setup for the Laydown attack requires the bombing table target range and altitude above target to be entered on the WRCS panel.

The Optical Sight should be set to the depression noted from the tables in Air-to-Ground mode, and the approach to the target should be flown at the true airspeed (or ground speed) listed in the bombing tables for the parameters, wings level

The AWRU and WRCS Release Advance settings should be entered as desired, and the Weapon Select Knob placed in BOMBS or RKTS & DISP (for dispensers like CBU-1 and CBU-2 only).

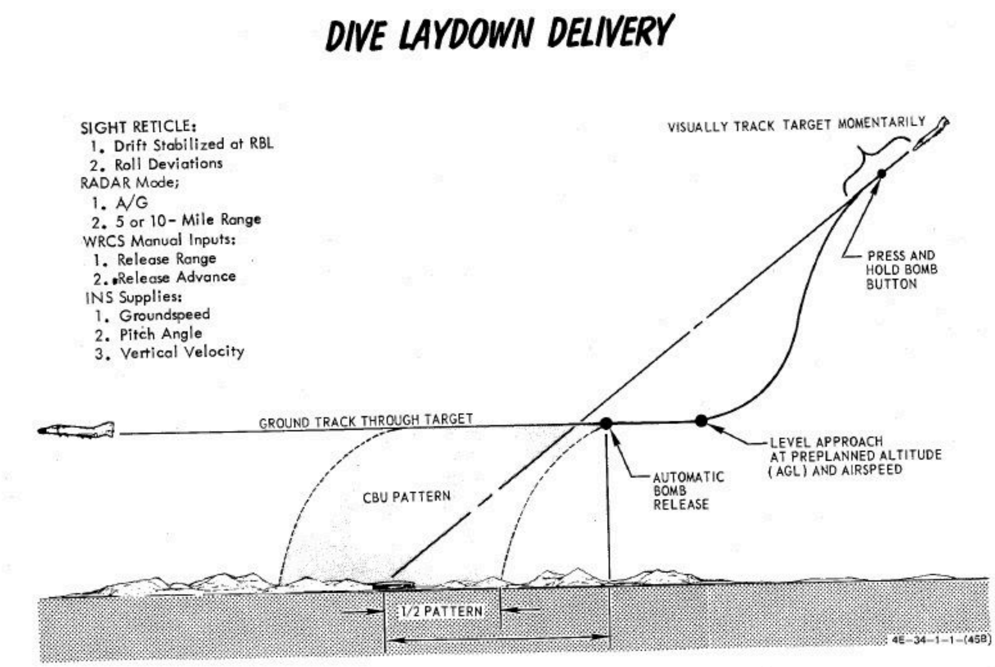
As the pipper crosses the target, the bomb button should be held until the set spread of munitions has released.

Dive Laydown - DL

This mode is a variation of the regular Laydown mode, where the target is designated by using the radar instead.

Therefore, the pilot flies a dive attack similar to the Dive Toss mode, while the WSO obtains accurate range information to the target by obtaining a radar lock.

After target designation, the pilot levels out at the planned altitude and weapons release automatically at the set range to the target.



Procedure - DL

The bombing table release range must be set directly in the WRCS panel, and the pilot flies the ballistic schedule speed (true airspeed or ground speed) at the given altitude above the target to produce the given release range.

Dive Laydown is selected by placing the Delivery Mode Knob in DL, and choosing either RKTS & DISP (for dispensers like CBU-1 or CBU-2 only) or BOMBS. Desired release range is entered on the WRCS panel, and, if necessary, the release advance control.

The start of the attack is the same as Dive Toss; a higher than normal dive angle is flown, with the radar in AIR-GRD mode at 5 or 10-mile range, a solid return is generated, and the pilot then positions the pipper on the intended target and holds the bomb release button.

Once this is completed, the pilot pulls out of the dive at the bombing table plan altitude, maintains the target speed and heading with wings level, and the bombs release automatically at the desired range.

The key factors for accuracy in this mode are correct altitude and pitch angle at the point of release.

Lofting and Tossing

The Phantom supports a variety of ways to loft and toss bombs on targets with minimum expose to ground fire while sacrificing accuracy.

These modes are mostly designed to be used with nuclear weapons, but can also be used effectively with conventional bombs when employing a high amount of ammunition while attacking a larger area target.

They are categorized into either lofting or tossing modes.

Category	Modes	Release Angle
Lofting	LOFT, T LAD	below 90°
Tossing	O/S, INST O/S	above 90°

The benefit of lofting is that target flyover can be avoided, greatly minimizing the risk of getting attacked. Weapons can be dispensed from great distances, allowing the aircraft to turn around before entering the dangerous zone.

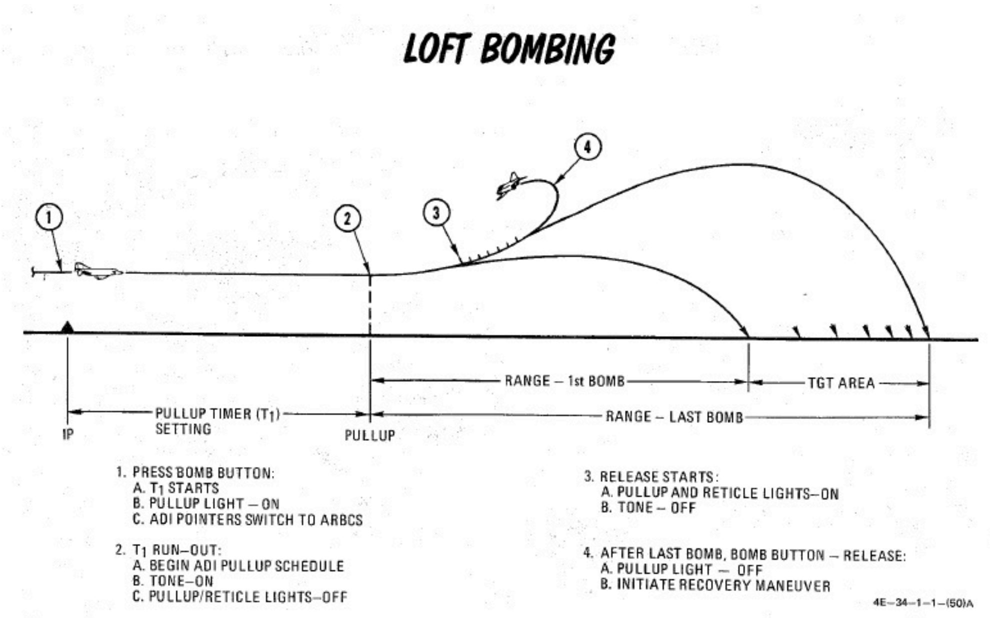
If target flyover is possible, tossing modes allow for more accuracy by designating the target visually by initiating the maneuver over the target area. The advantage compared to other visual release modes is that the time until weapon impact is greatly increased, allowing the aircraft to gain some distance before impact. This is crucial when employing nuclear weapons.

LOFT

As the name entails, the aircraft transitions from a low altitude to a higher one in a pull-up, thus lofting the released munitions at a pre-calculated point that reaches the target.

The mode revolves around computing and setting a pull-up timer based on the desired release parameters, such as altitude, speed and loft angle.

The pilot flies to the reference point, holds the bomb button and starts initiating the pull-up maneuver the moment the aircraft gives the pull-up cue. Weapons automatically release when reaching the setup loft angle.



Procedure - LOFT

Planning for a loft attack requires a known target location, so that distances for the IP and respective bomb ranges can be calculated. The ballistics tables are references to determine delivery pattern and pull-up-to-target range.

With this information, the number of bombs can be decided, which determines the spread, and knowing the pull-up to target range - the pull-up point distance to the IP can be chosen.

As the path from IP to pull-up is flown at a constant speed, this can then be used to determined time from said distance for pull-up Timer entry. And with the ballistic table reference for the LOW angle, the profile is set.

> 💡 The Bombing Calculator Tool can be used to compute the proper value for the Pull-Up Timer.

Upon entry to the target area, the pilot flies the intended course to the IP, and once over, presses and holds the bomb release button to initiate the run. Flying direct or crabbed to the pull-up point, the pilot maintains the bomb release button in the down position, and holds it until the desired munitions have released.

In LOFT mode, the ARBCS programs for a **4 G pull-up schedule**, and will automatically release the selected munitions once the bombing run is initiated, timer runout has occurred, and pre-set LOW pitch (gyro) angle is achieved.

At the initiation of the bomb run, upon pressing the bomb button, the ARBCS overrides any other navigational guidance provided on the ADI and assumes command of the pointers to show deviation relative to the programmed attack profile. The vertical pointer offsets in the direction requiring yaw input to maintain target alignment. On approach to the loft point, the horizontal needle shows deviation from a 1.0 G flight path.

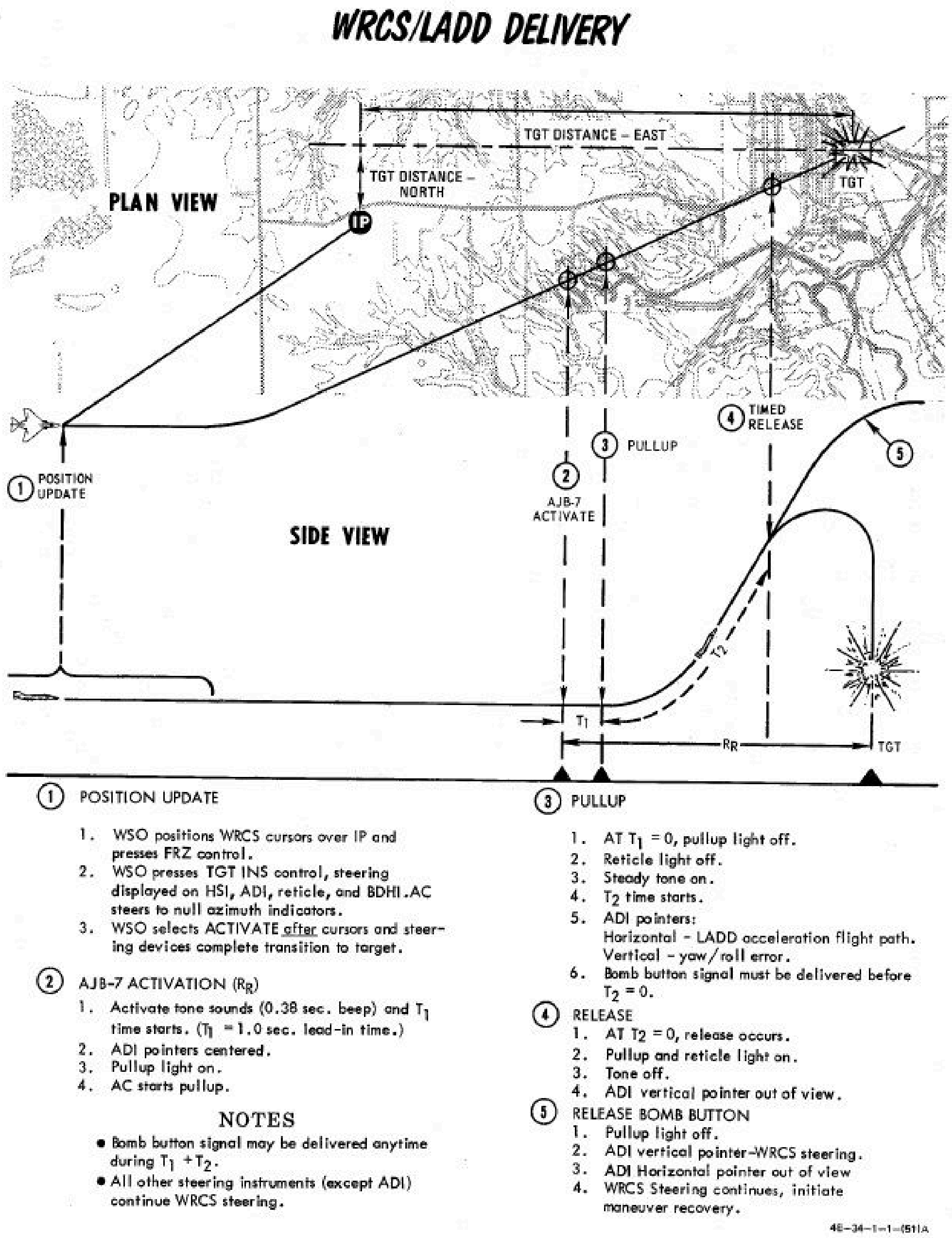
When the pull-up timer completes signaling the **4 G pull-up**, deviation of the horizontal needle is relative to the desired constant 4 G pull, with the initial drift representing achieving 4 G of load in two seconds. Maintaining the horizontal needle centered means the pilot has increased and held G at the proper rate for maximum accuracy. Control of the ADI by the AN/AJB-7 is maintained until the pilot releases the bomb button after the last desired munition is released.

Timed Low Angle Drogue Delivery - T LAD(D)

Conceived as a delivery method for tactical nuclear bombs, Timed Low Angle Drogue Delivery is a variation of LOFT to maximize the time to impact by lofting a bomb with drogue at maximum distance to the target.

The mode performs a low altitude ingress, transitioning through a 3.5 G pull-up into a 45 degree climb profile that allows for a lofted release of a weapon at the top of the climb, allowing an escape attempt as the munition's deployed drogue slows the decent to the target. While

originally designed with nuclear intent, the method provides yet another option for accurate bomb delivery with a high, or high to low, escape option for appropriate targets.



Procedure - T LAD(D)

Planning of the T LADD engagement begins in the bombing tables, determining the correct entry altitude and airspeed for the selected weapon, as well as the resulting altitude gain and time from pull up

initiation to release - which will be used as the Release control timer value, as well as the distance downrange this climb maneuver will take the aircraft.

Using this range as a baseline, an appropriate approach angle is determined, and a suitable IP waypoint is chosen. The distance between the IP and the pull-up point is evaluated against the planned profile speed, which provides another time entry - this will be the pull-up timer value.

> 💡 Timer values can be obtained using the Bombing Calculator Tool.

The attack is performed by flying over the IP along the desired intercept heading to the target at the correct speed and altitude, and actuating the bomb release button upon flyover of said IP, holding it down throughout the maneuver.

This begins the pull-up timer. The ADI needles will center, then show deviation against the initial heading course - vertical being roll, horizontal being level to maintain current altitude.

At timeout of the pull-up timer, a pull-up warning tone will be provided, and the pull-up Lamp will illuminate; subsequently, the Release timer will begin its count, the horizontal ADI needle will transition into show deviation from the intended 3.5 G pitch angle, and then stabilize once **45 degrees** nose up pitch is attained. Proper timing and loading of the **3.5 G pull-up** will maintain the needle centered.

At timeout of the Release timer, the programmed munitions will release, the pull-up light will turn off, and the ADI needles will be stowed. Once the last round is ejected, the bomb release button can be released, and the desired escape maneuver performed.

Timed Over the Shoulder - O/S

Similar to LOFT, this mode allows deploying weapons based on a pull-up timer that represents the distance from IP to target.

Weapons are released during a pull-up maneuver when reaching the setup release angle. In this mode, release angles are beyond 90°; effectively tossing the weapon over the shoulder, in contrast to lofting it ahead.

The mode revolves around computing and setting a pull-up timer based on the desired release parameters, such as altitude, speed and toss angle.

The pilot then flies to the reference point, holds the bomb button and starts initiating the pull-up maneuver the moment the aircraft gives the pull-up cue. Weapons automatically release when reaching the setup toss angle.

Procedure - O/S

Setup of the LABS system requires time (calculated using the known distance from the set IP to the target flyover point and the intended airspeed) and calculated release angle for the resulting airspeed and munition, which is entered into the High Angle setting; this value must be in excess of 90 degrees, and the Low Angle and secondary timer settings can be left at any value.

> 💡 The Pull-Up Timer value can be computed using the Bombing Calculator Tool.

Flying the appropriate heading at the correct speed guarantees target flyover, and upon timer runout an audible tone will be heard to initiate pull-up, along with the Pull-Up Lamp illuminating. This timing action is initiated by pressing the bomb button over the IP, and holding it throughout the attack run.

Like LOFT mode, the pull-up signal indications will also trigger the horizontal and vertical pointers on the ADI to display appropriate pitch and angle indications to maintain proper aircraft orientation for accurate release point entry, and the **target pull rate is 4 G**. The guidance drives the attacking aircraft through an Immelmann, and the bombs will release at the entered High Angle value.

Maximum accuracy is achieved through maintaining a centered horizontal needle during the entire bombing run, and like LOFT, the ADI reverts back to the previous function once the bomb button is released after the last intended munition for the run has been dropped.

Instantaneous Over the Shoulder - INST O/S

Further, derived from the Timed O/S mode, Instantaneous Over the Shoulder bombing provides the same combined attack/escape profile as the former against targets of opportunity.

In this mode, setting up an IP and a timer are not needed. Instead, the target is designated by pressing the Bomb Button once over the target and executing the pull-up maneuver shortly after.

Procedure - INST O/S

Similar to Timed O/S, a desired release angle over 90° has to be configured.

Once the aircraft is directly over the target, the pilot presses and holds the bomb release button and initiates the **4 G wings level pull up** into the Immelmann maneuver.

The LABS computer performs the same ADI display overrides as Loft and Timed O/S, placing the horizontal director needle at the pitch appropriate for a 4 G pull, and the vertical director displays deviation to maintain proper angle of bank through the maneuver.

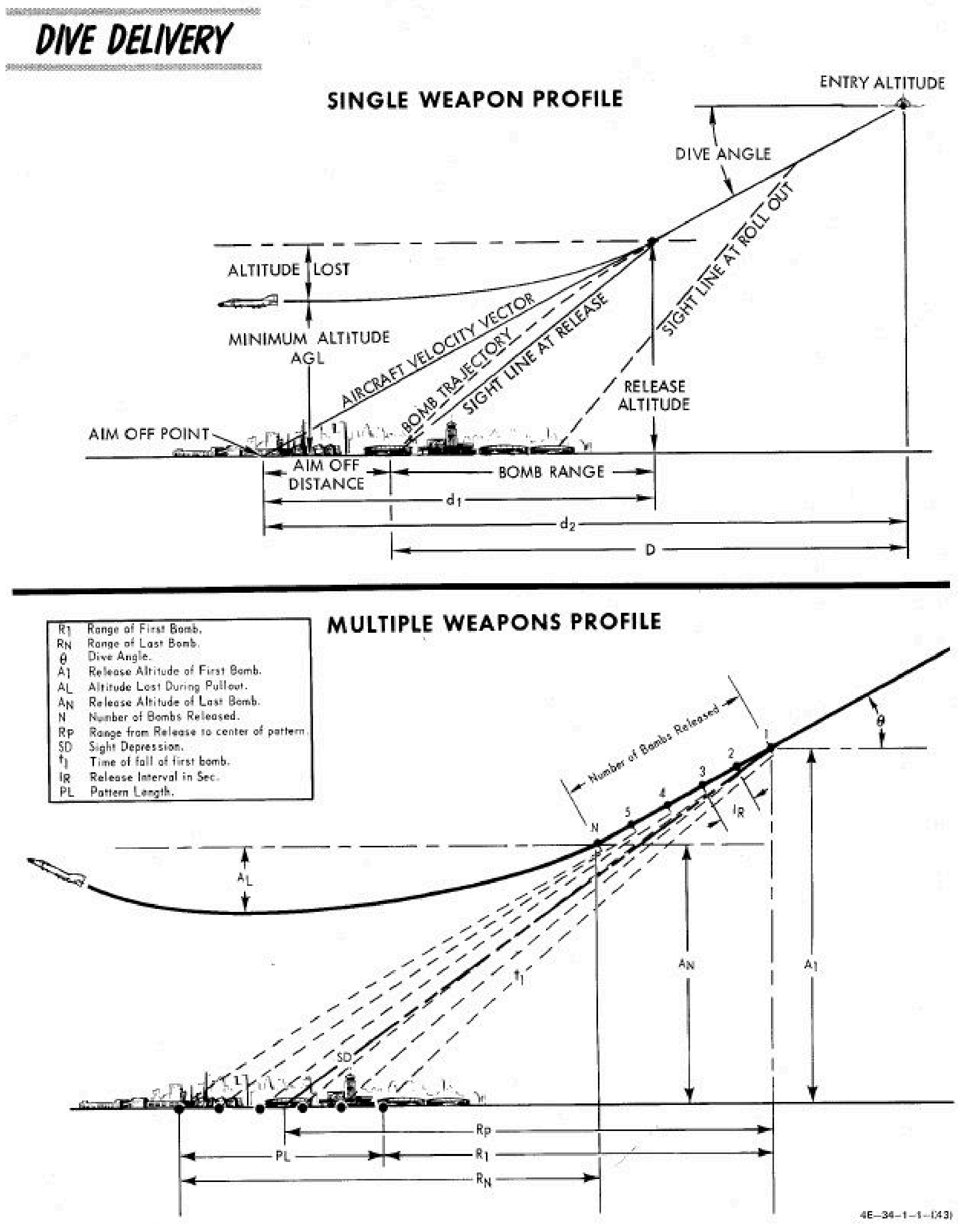
Upon reaching the necessary angle of pitch, the munitions separation begins, and the bomb release button can be released once all desired

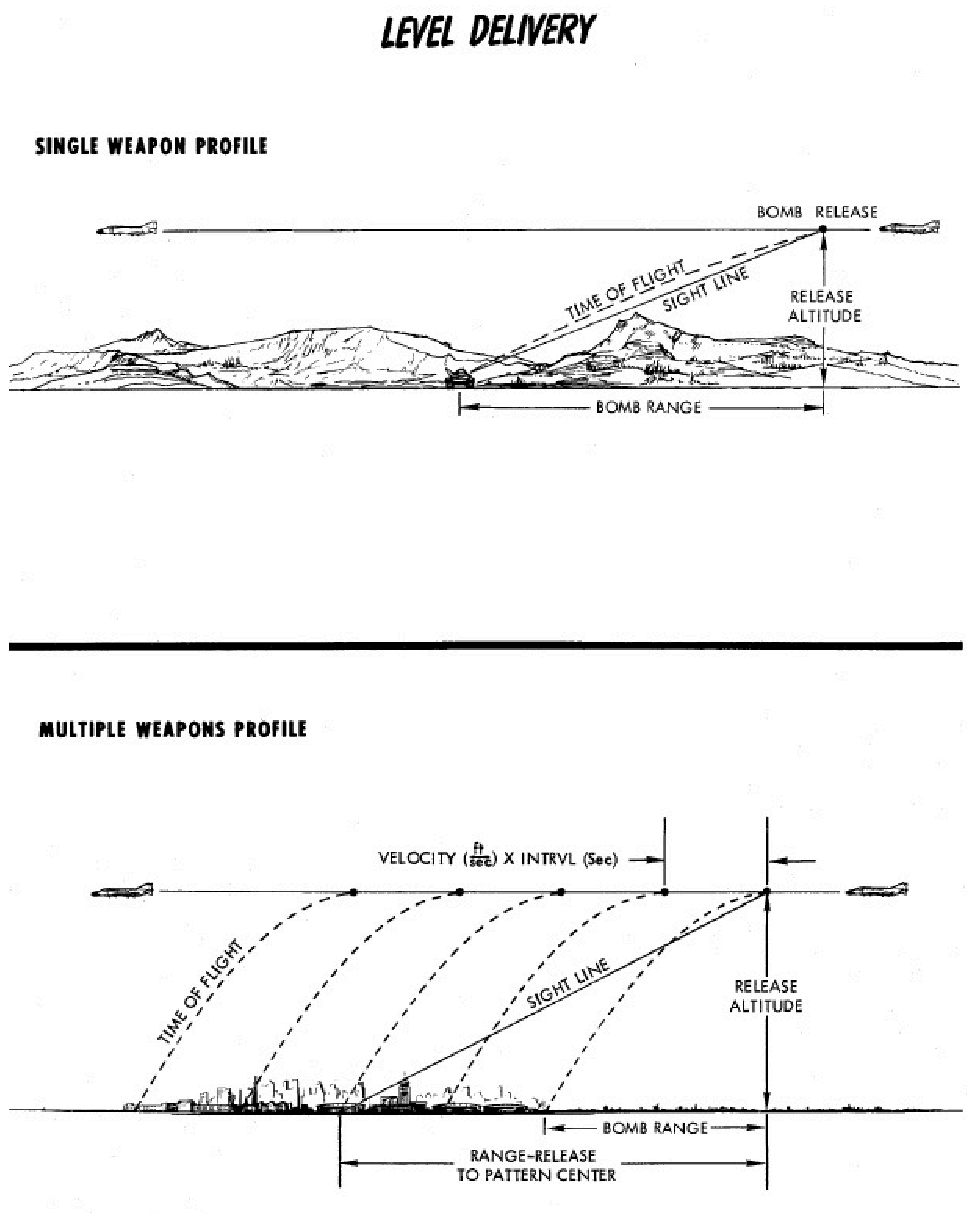
rounds have been ejected from the aircraft, thus resetting the display of the ADI.

Manual Release - DIRECT

Direct bombing is exactly as it sounds: classic, direct visual bombing, with both dive and level bombing release passes possible. Both the ARBCS and WRCS. are excluded from this release mode, and the pilot flies the profile as found for the intended munition in the bombing tables, setting the sight depression to match, and hand flying the aircraft to place the pipper directly onto the target in accordance with the desired type of attack.

Once pipper on is achieved, the bomb release button is pressed, and the selected number of munitions with the given program settings will be released.


DIVE DELIVERY
SINGLE WEAPON PROFILE
ENTRY ALTITUDE
DIVE ANGLE
SIGHT LINE AT ROLL OUT
ALTITUDE LOST
MINIMUM ALTITUDE AGL
AIRCRAFT VELOCITY VECTOR
BOMB TRAJECTORY
SIGHT LINE AT RELEASE
RELEASE ALTITUDE
AIM OFF POINT
AIM OFF DISTANCE
BOMB RANGE
d1
d2
D
MULTIPLE WEAPONS PROFILE
R1 Range of First Bomb.
RN Range of Last Bomb.
θ Dive Angle.
A1 Release Altitude of First Bomb.
AL Altitude Lost During Pullout.
AN Release Altitude of Last Bomb.
N Number of Bombs Released.
RP Range from Release to center of pattern.
SD Sight Depression.
t1 Time of fall of first bomb.
IR Release Interval in Sec.
PL Pattern Length.
Number of Bombs Released
N
5
4
3
2
1
θ
IR
AL
AN
A1
t1
SD
RP
PL
R1
RN
4E-34-1-1-(43)



While the most basic mode available to the Phantom, Direct remains a reliable method when conditions permit, and can be used against any target the crew can see - namely, targets of opportunity, or in the CAS environment.

It can also be very useful as wingmen when dropping bombs in a formation, pressing the Bomb Button the moment the flight lead initiates the attack.

Or also when employing rockets or special ordnance such as Target Marker Flares.

> 💡 The kneeboard provides bombing and lookup tables for manual bombing, as well as various mil-settings for sight depression in various situations.

> 💡 Similar to Laydown (L) mode, the Bombing Calculator Tool can compute sight depression values for attacks at given distances to a target.

Pods

SUU-23/A Gun Pod

External gun pods holding 1200 rounds of ammunition, firing at a rate of 6000 rounds per minute. See the gun section for more.

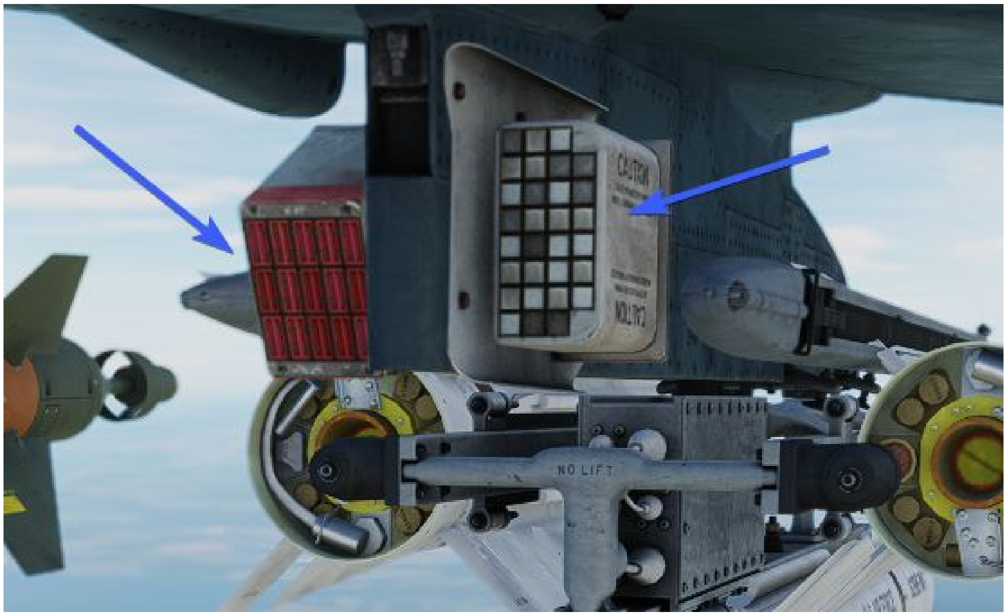
AN/AVQ-23 Pave Spike

The AN/AVQ-23 Pave Spike targeting pod, capable of spotting and tracking targets during daylight-conditions and using a laser to guide weapons on target. See the systems section for more.

ALQ-131 ECM Pod

Pod for electronic countermeasures, such as jamming radars and radar guided missiles. See the ECM section for more.

ALE-40 Dispenser



Countermeasure dispensers holding chaff and flare. See the countermeasures section for more.

Tanks

To extend reach, the Phantom can equip up to three external fuel tanks, nicknamed *Sargent Fletcher Tanks*:

- 1x 600 gallons external centerline
- 2x 370 gallons external wing tank

They can also all be loaded simultaneously, increasing the total amount of fuel from 12896 lb without any tanks to a striking 21606 lb, doubling the reach.

With one center tank loaded, the total amount is 16796 lb, while with both wing tanks it is 17706 lb.

See the 3.2.2. Fuel chapter for details on how to operate the tanks.

Jester

"You not only get a weapons system officer, folks. You get yourself an admin officer, you get yourself a flight planner, you get yourself a watchdog, and he carries a full array of maps and pubs."

Flying the Phantom is already a challenge in itself - doing that alone even more.

Jester is your AI buddy who can take the role of the WSO, so that you can focus on doing that pilot stuff.

Among his responsibilities are:

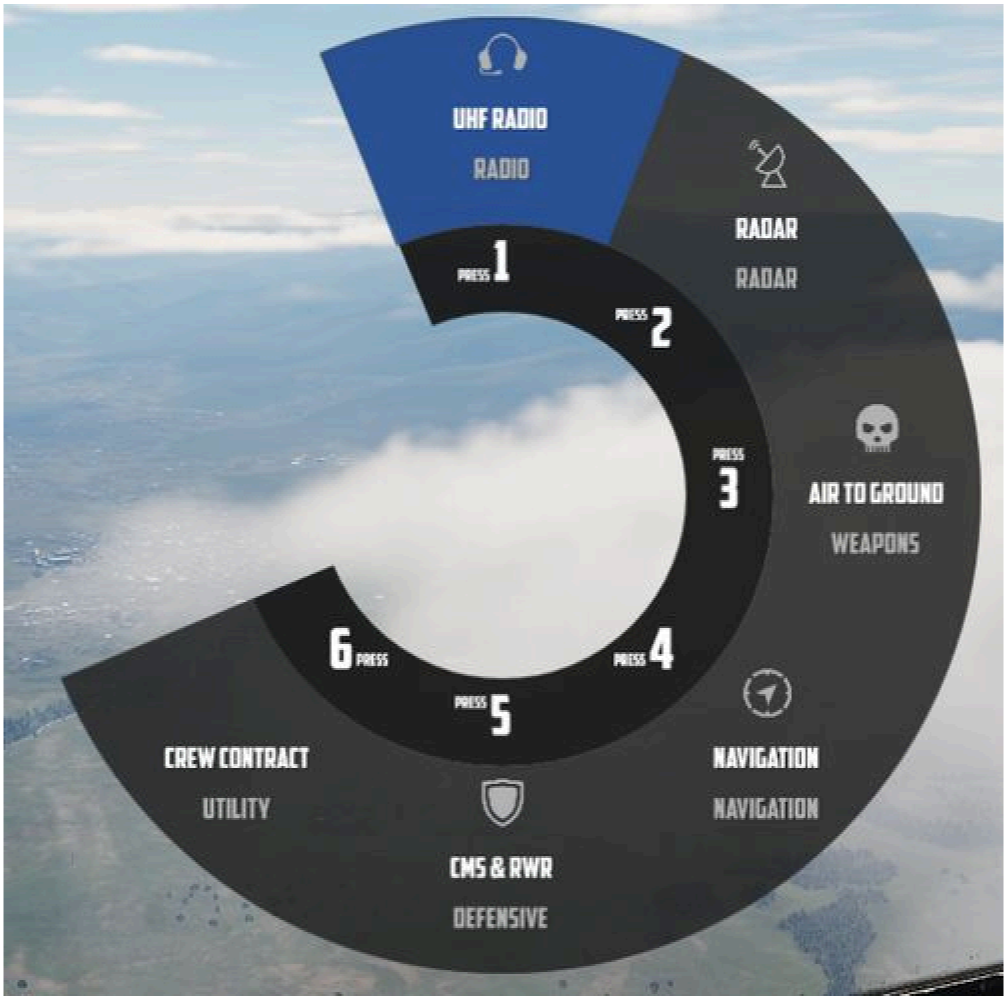
- providing assistance during take off, aerial refueling and landing
- assisting with navigation
- helping in operating the countermeasures
- operating the radar
- controlling the targeting pod
- spotting other aircraft and missiles

and more...

Interface

Jesters user interface allows for easy communication and access to various settings mid-flight, conveniently even during high stress situations.

Wheel



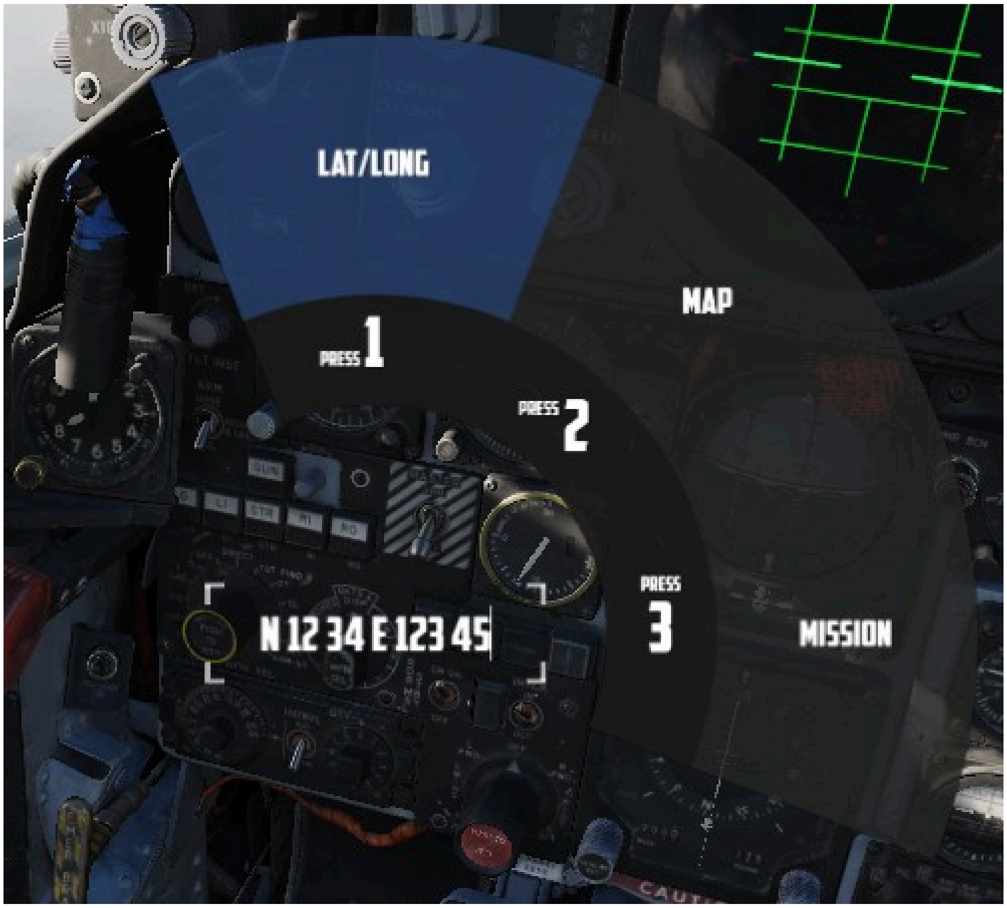
The main interface to interact with Jester consists of a circular menu with several sub-menus.

Confirming an option, such as the highlighted *UHF Radio*, will enter its sub-menu, giving access to more related options.

In some cases, options are also presented on an outer menu.

The UI also supports direct text-entry when applicable, for example to enter the coordinates of a new waypoint. For this, full keyboard control is allowed.

> 💡 While focused on a text-field, input is disabled to DCS.



To confirm and send the data, select the option (LAT/LONG in this case) again.

Wheel Controls

The Jester Wheel can be opened by pressing `A` short and closed by pressing `A` long.

The entire UI is accessible via mouse by left-clicking options or clicking on the center area of circle to navigate back.

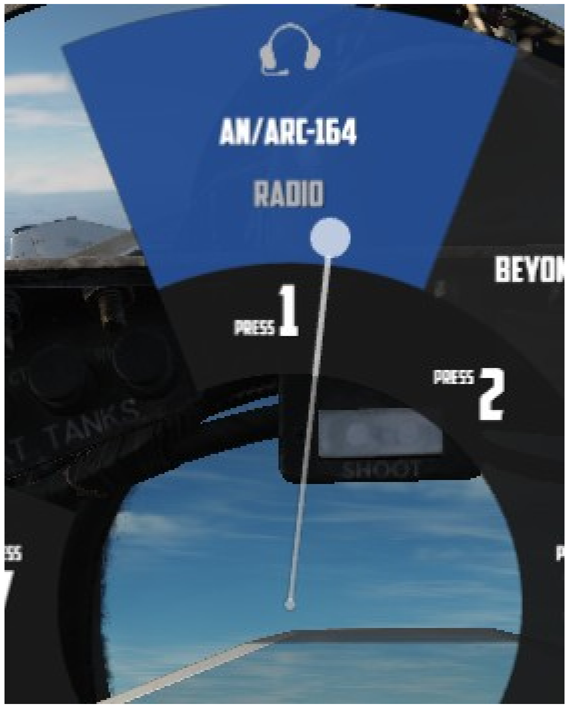
Options can also be bound directly to keyboard or other input devices. The default hotkeys to access the options are `LCTRL` + `1` through `LCTRL` + `8`.

Options on the outer ring are selectable via:

- `Q` - move cursor CCW

- W - confirm selection under cursor
- E - move cursor CW

Additionally, the cursor can also be moved freely either via an assignable axis for a mini-stick, or via head-tracking. See 9.2 Special Options for configuring head-tracking.



When moving the cursor without the mouse, pressing A **short** will confirm the selection under the cursor, while A **long** can then be used to close the UI.

> 💡 Most individual actions also offer a direct bind, if desired. See 9.1. Controls for details.

Dialog

Jester can pro-actively ask the pilot questions. In this case, a menu with actions pops up at the bottom of the screen.

Most actions are temporary and expire if not engaged with, in which case Jester will either ignore the question or will assume a reasonable response.

It is possible for up to 3 actions to be available at the same time, the pilot can then select which question to engage with.

Once selected, multiple responses are available. Some can also lead to follow-up questions.

Dialog Controls

The entire dialog UI is accessible via mouse by left-clicking options.

To engage in a dialog, it is also possible to use either of `Q`, `W` or `E`, respectively.

Responses can also be bound directly to keyboard or other input devices. The default hotkeys to access the options are `LCTRL` + `1` through `LCTRL` + `4`.

Additionally, the cursor can also be moved freely either via an assignable axis for a mini-stick, or via head-tracking. See 9.2 Special Options for configuring head-tracking.

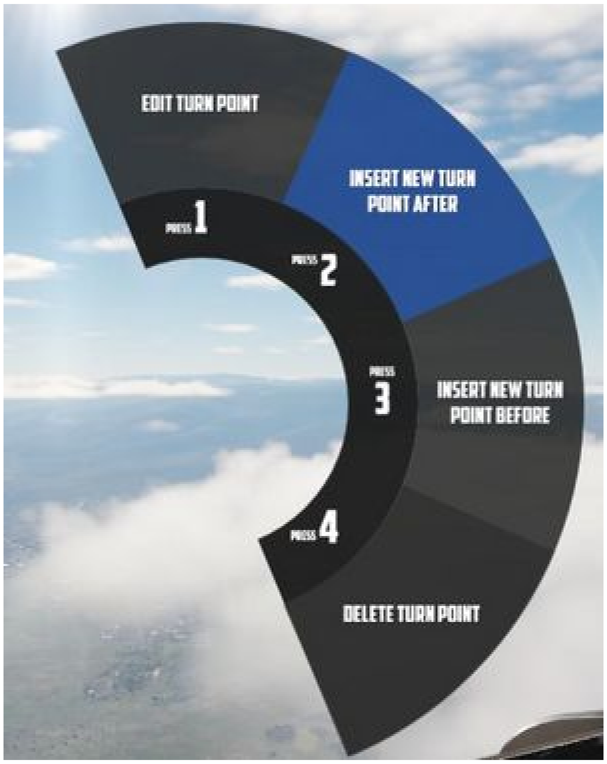
When moving the cursor without the mouse, pressing A will confirm the selection under the cursor.

Navigation

Navigation with Jester revolves around managing turn points for two flight plans: the Primary Flight Plan and the Secondary Flight Plan. Both can be edited and followed by Jester in the same manner, although Primary Flight Plan is considered the main one and the Secondary Flight Plan serves as a backup.

Flight Plan

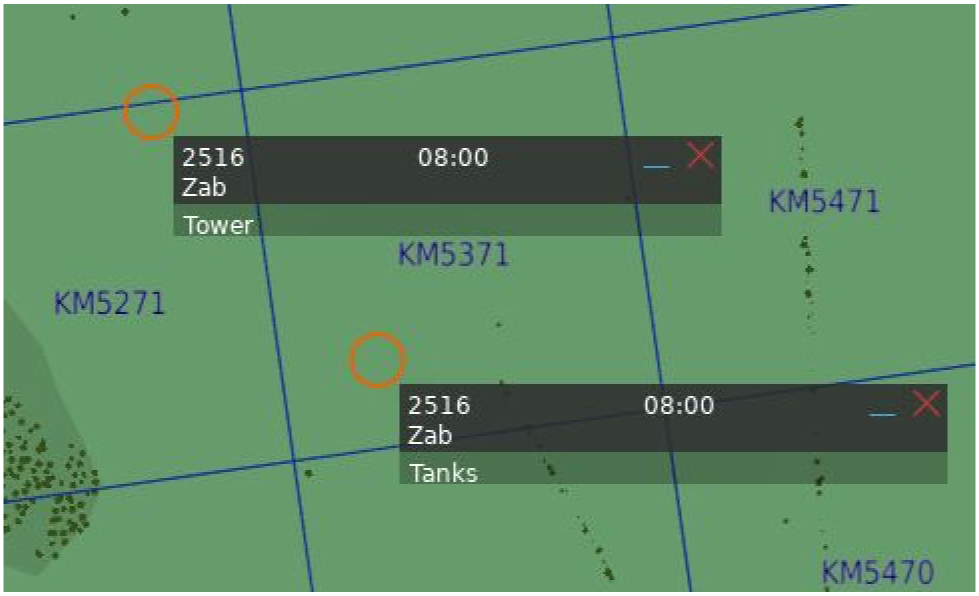
A flight plan consists of multiple turn points. They can be inserted, deleted or edited by the player through the UI, map or mission editor.



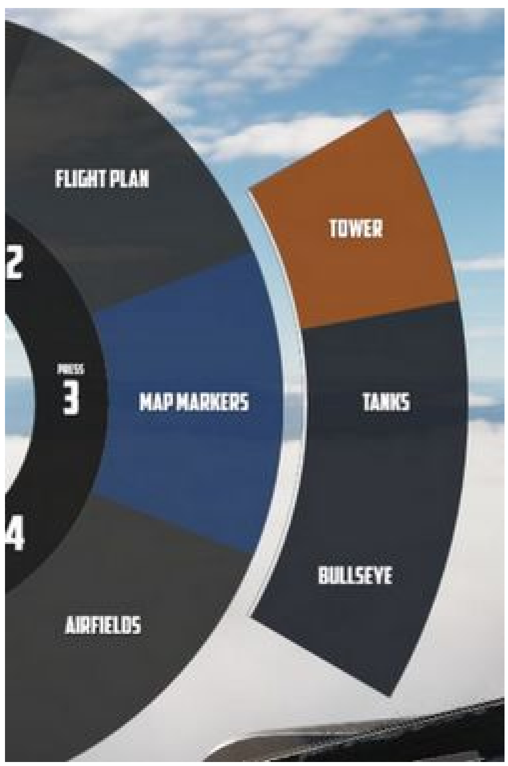
If the mission has assigned the aircraft a series of waypoints through the mission editor, this will be available by default as the Primary Flight Plan.

Map Marker

Using the `F10` map view in DCS, players can create named markers on the map simply by double clicking the desired position after selecting **Mark Label** at the top row in the UI.



Through the UI, these map markers can then be imported as turn points to the flight plan.



Tune Asset

The UI offers a list of nearby assets, such as ships, tankers or ground stations.

Their current position can be imported as turn point directly.

> 💡 For moving assets like tankers, their actual position might vary from the planned coordinates. Use TACAN or ADF for more precise navigation.

Tune Airfield

Similar to tuning for assets, the UI provides a list of nearby airfields to navigate to.

Enter Coordinates

One way to add a turn point is by entering the corresponding LAT/LON through the UI.

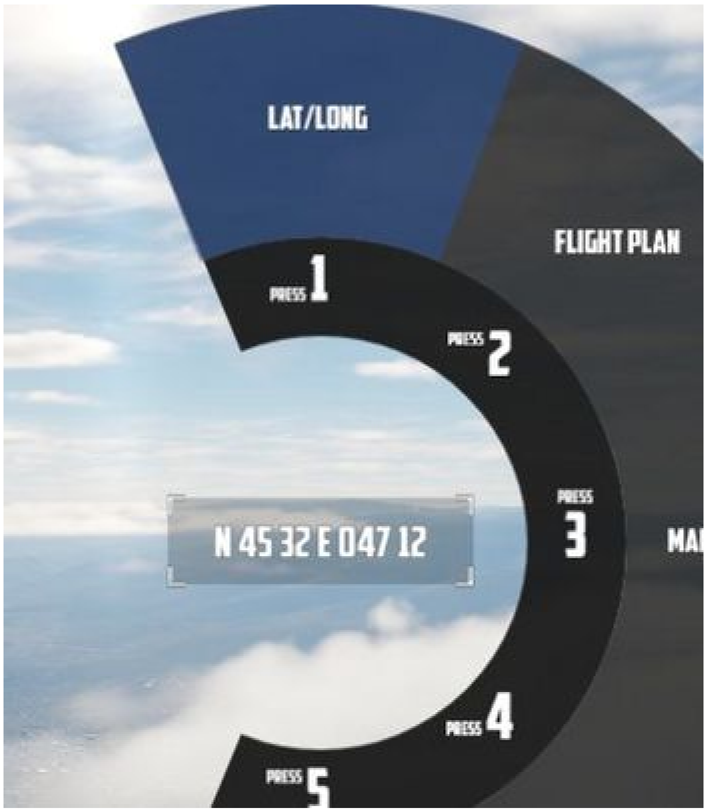
The format is `H DD MM H DDD MM`,

- where `H` represents the hemisphere (`N` or `S` for latitude and `E` or `W` for longitude);
- `D` signifies Degrees (`00` to `89` for latitude and `000` to `179` for longitude);

- and `M` stands for Minutes (`00` to `59`).

A valid example could be `N 45 32 E 047 12` or `S 05 55 W 105 00`.

> 💡 Spaces are optional, `N4532E04712` is also valid.



Operation

Jester navigates by utilizing a technique called **leapfrogging**. The aircraft only provides a single slot to memorize a waypoint (called **TGT 2**).

Planned Route

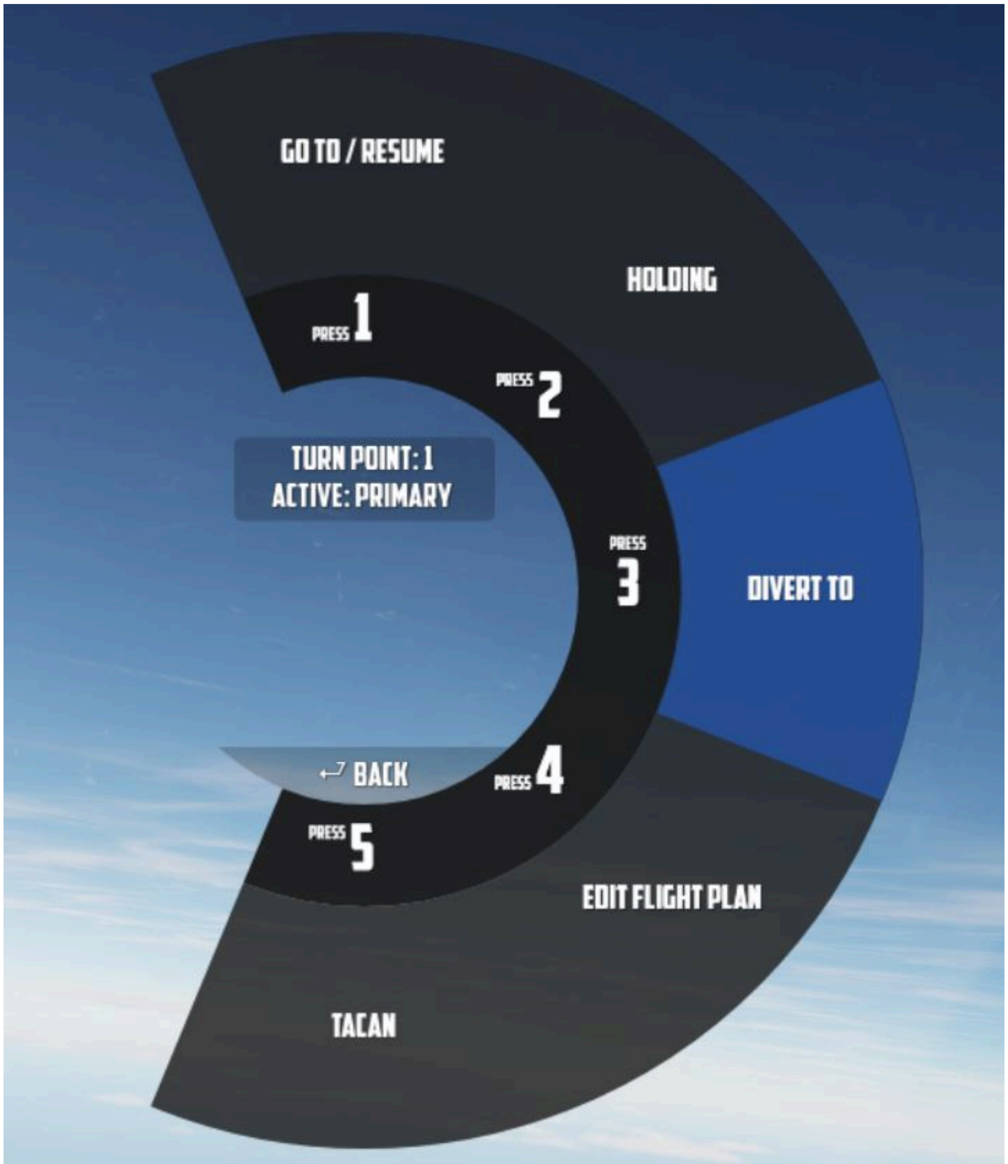
When leapfrogging, **TGT 2** always indicates the next turn point of the current active flight plan. As the aircraft approaches this turn point (±2 nautical miles), Jester will automatically update TGT 2 to the next turn point in the sequence.

This enables the pilot to follow the entire route of the flight plan by selecting NAV COMP on the Navigation Function Selector Panel and following the corresponding indication on the HSI.

Divert

Besides following the flight plan, Jester is capable of diverting to a different unplanned turn point using **TGT 1**.

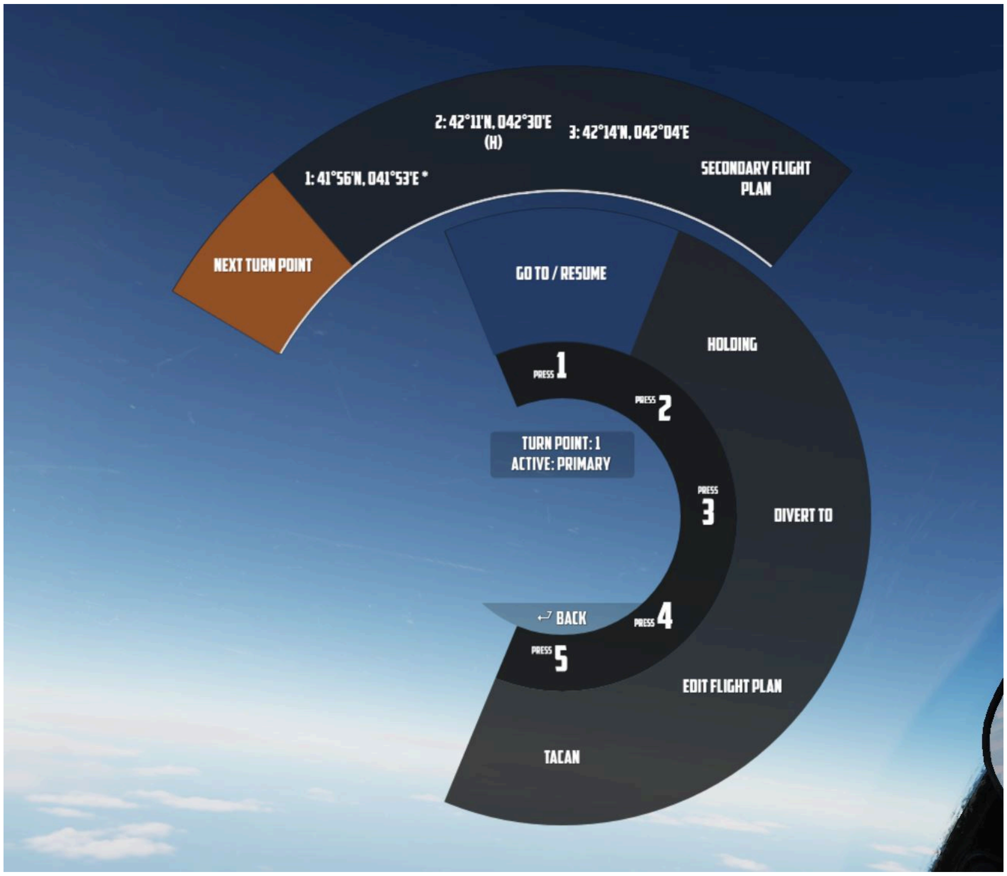
Through the **UI**, players can switch between the diversion (TGT1) and flight plan (TGT2) at any time.

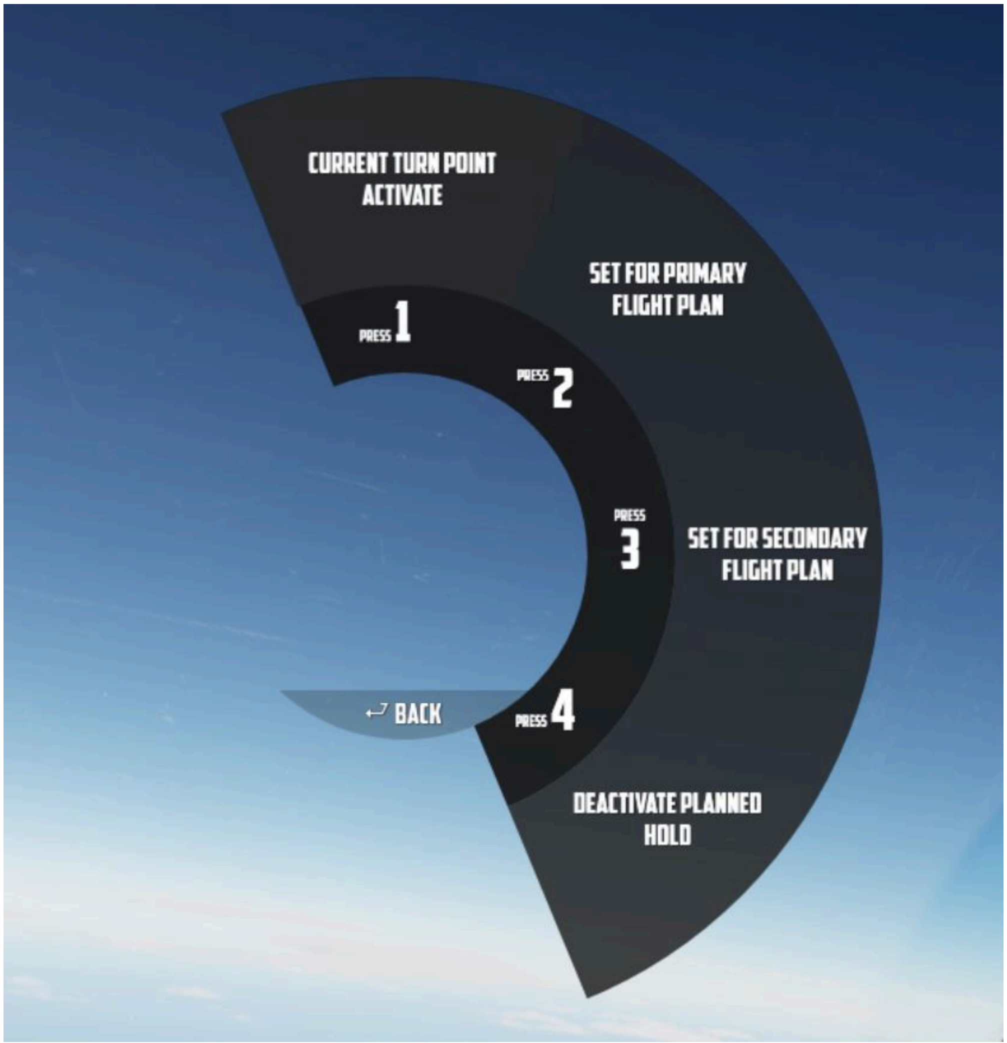


Pause & Resume Route

An active flight plan is indicated by the UI using an asterisk `*` next to the current turn point.

Automatic turn point switching can be temporarily disabled per turn point using the **Holding** option. Turn points designated for holding are marked with a `h`.


2: 42°11'N, 042°30'E
(H)
3: 42°14'N, 042°04'E
1: 41°56'N, 041°53'E *
SECONDARY FLIGHT
PLAN
NEXT TURN POINT
GO TO / RESUME
HOLDING
PRESS 1
PRESS 2
TURN POINT: 1
ACTIVE: PRIMARY
PRESS 3
DIVERT TO
BACK
PRESS 4
PRESS 5
EDIT FLIGHT PLAN
TACAN



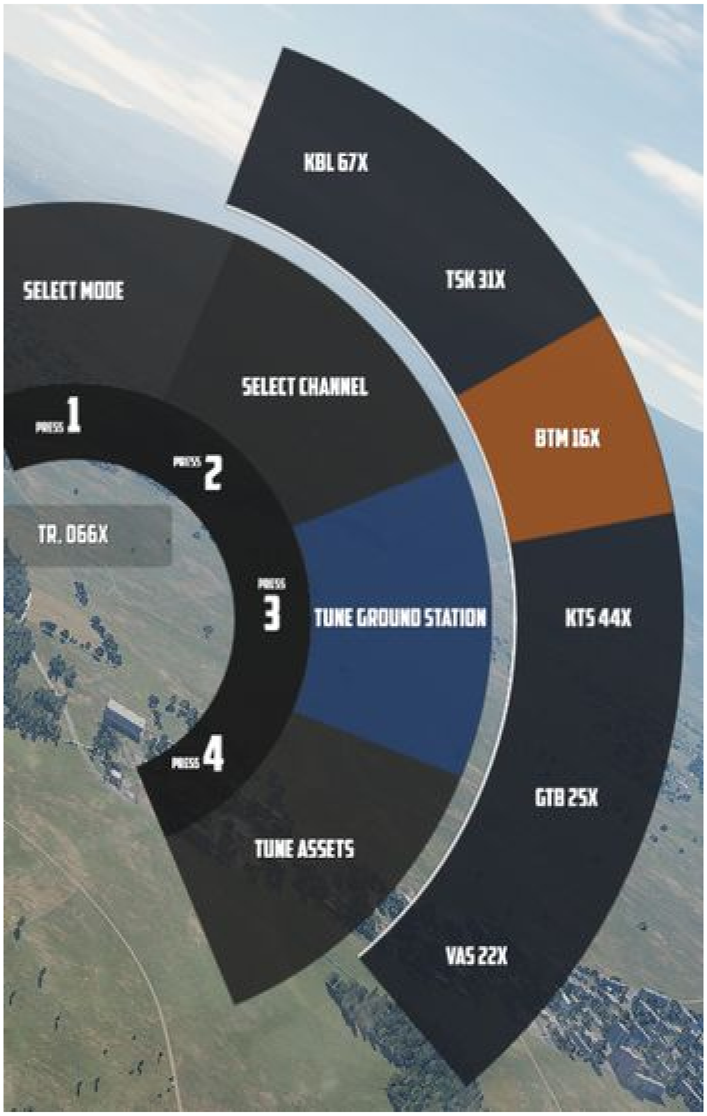
When a flight plan has been paused, for example, because the pilot diverted to a different point (using TGT 1), it can be reactivated through the UI again by using the **Go To/Resume** option.

This also offers the possibility to skip turn points by jumping directly to any turn point in its sequence, as well as returning to previous points or resuming from a point designated for holding.

TACAN

The TACAN equipment can be operated by both crew members independently and then swapped between Pilot and WSO by using the **Command Button** on the panel.

Further, Jester is able to tune directly to any TACAN capable asset or ground station.



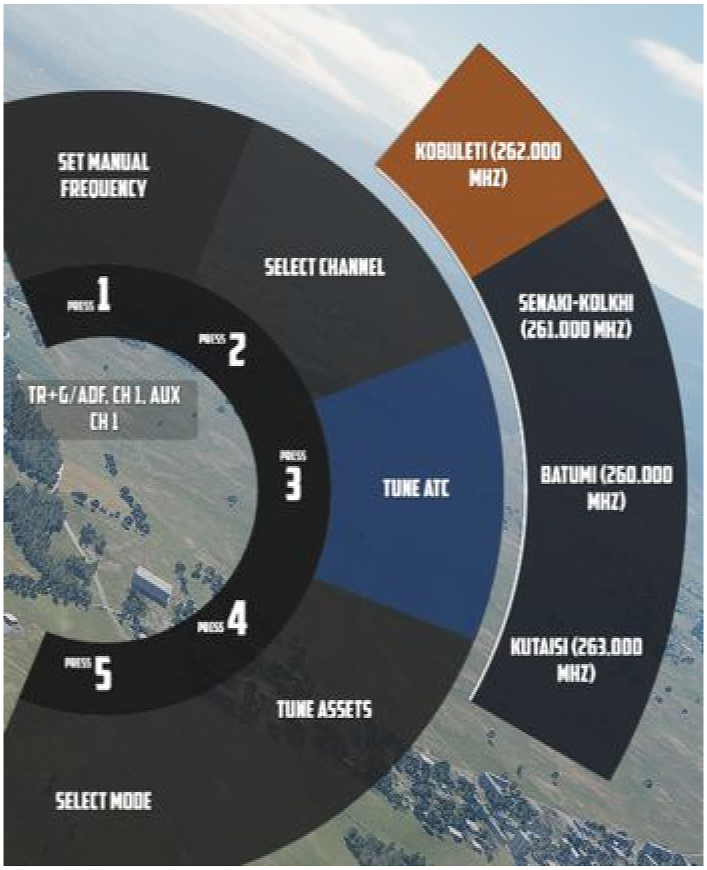
This also allows the pilot to set up Jesters TACAN panel with a secondary setup to then switch between both with a single click on the Command Button.

UHF

The UHF radio is duplicated between both crew members and can be operated independently. Using the **Command Button** allows the pilot to swap control between their and Jesters setup. This enables the pilot to

setup two configurations and then swap between them fast with a single button press.

Jester is able to tune the radio directly to any nearby asset or ATC to enable and open a communication channel conveniently and quick. Via ADF, this can also be used for navigation.



Combat

Jesters assistance for combat situations is generally divided into options on the Jester Wheel, whenever not in a high action environment yet, and a smart **Context Action** for use during situations that require acting quick, such as during a fight.

Context Action

The context command (by default V) allows for intuitive cooperation and exchange between Pilot and WSO based on the following contexts:

- Pave Spike - TGT FIND selected on the Delivery Mode Knob
- Dive Toss - DT or DL selected on the Delivery Mode Knob
- Dogfight - CAGE mode
- Beyond Visual Range - other

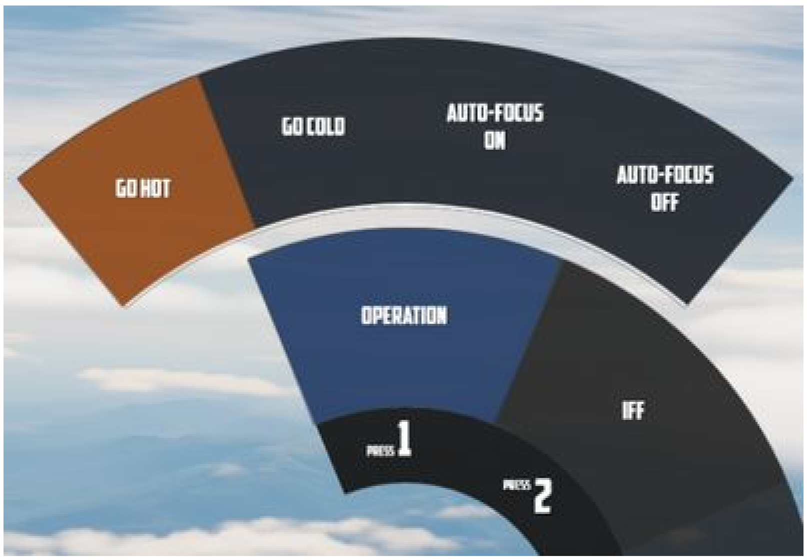
The context action can change semantics if pressed only momentarily, if hold or if clicked twice (double-click).

Context	Duration	Action
BVR - Scan	●	Select next target
	■	**Lock** selected target
	●●	Reset target selection
BVR - Lock	●, ■	Drop lock, but keep target in focus
	●●	Drop lock and focus
Dogfight	●, ■	Lock/Unlock contact ahead
	●●	Exit CAGE mode
Dive Toss		Lock/Unlock ground return
Pave Spike		Lock/Unlock target next to reticle

Radar

During flight, Jester will constantly operate the radar and search for contacts.

In certain situations, such as during landing, on the ground or when performing AAR, the radar will be in Standby mode. This can also be commanded manually by selecting `Radar > Operation > Go Cold` in the UI.



When using the radar, Jester generally differentiates between two phases:

- Scan
- Lock

The phases are commanded and switched by the pilot using the Context Action.

Additionally, Jester will behave differently during a dogfight, indicated by the pilot entering CAGE mode.

Scan

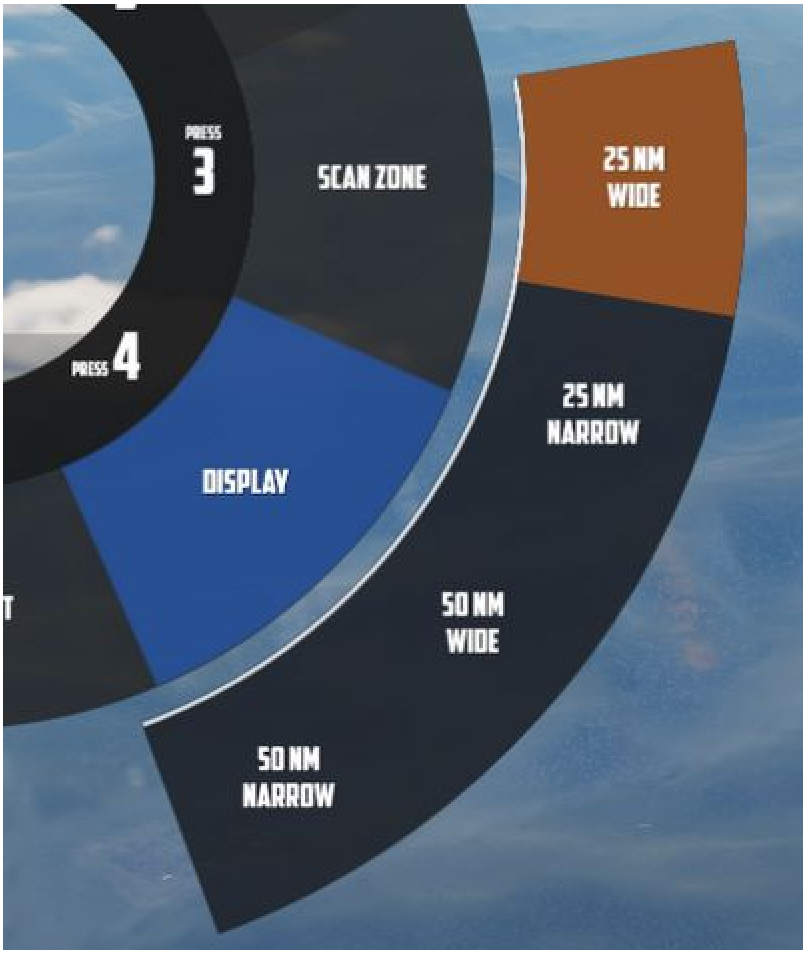
This is the default phase Jester will be in. He will automatically point the antenna at different altitudes and ranges in order to scan the entire space ahead of the aircraft.

Jester will automatically identify any new contact and call them out to the pilot.

If desired, the player can request Jester to perform an IFF challenge manually at any time through the UI (this action can also be bound directly to a key). Should the situation require, the player can manually set a zone for Jester to scan outside of his regular pattern through the UI.

He will then scan this zone for a while first before proceeding back to his regular pattern.

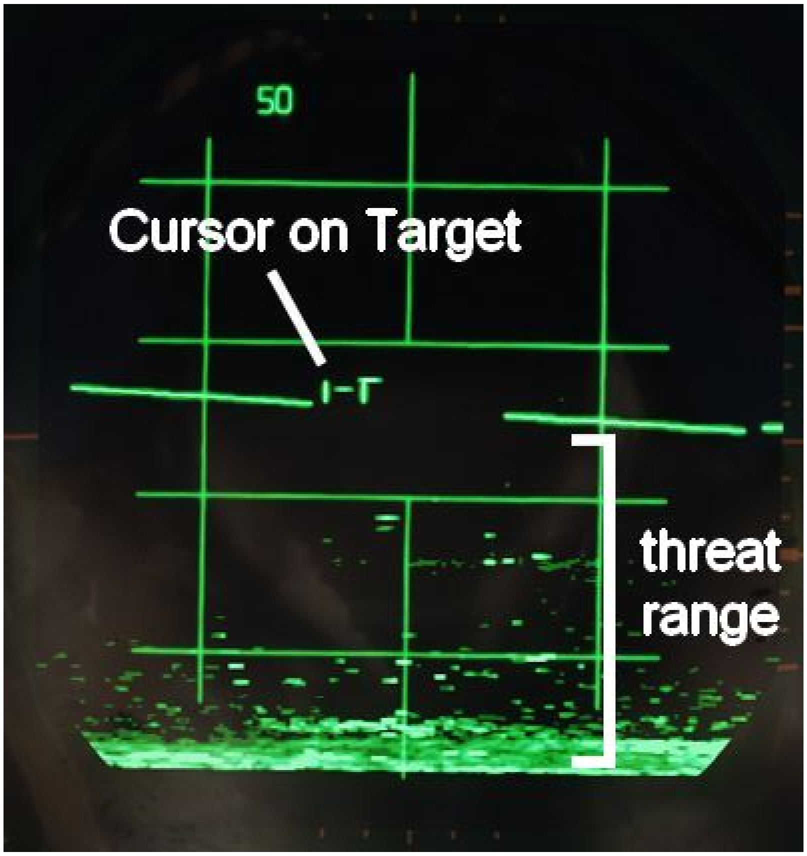
Likewise, the display range and scan type (wide or narrow) to be used during scanning can be selected as well.



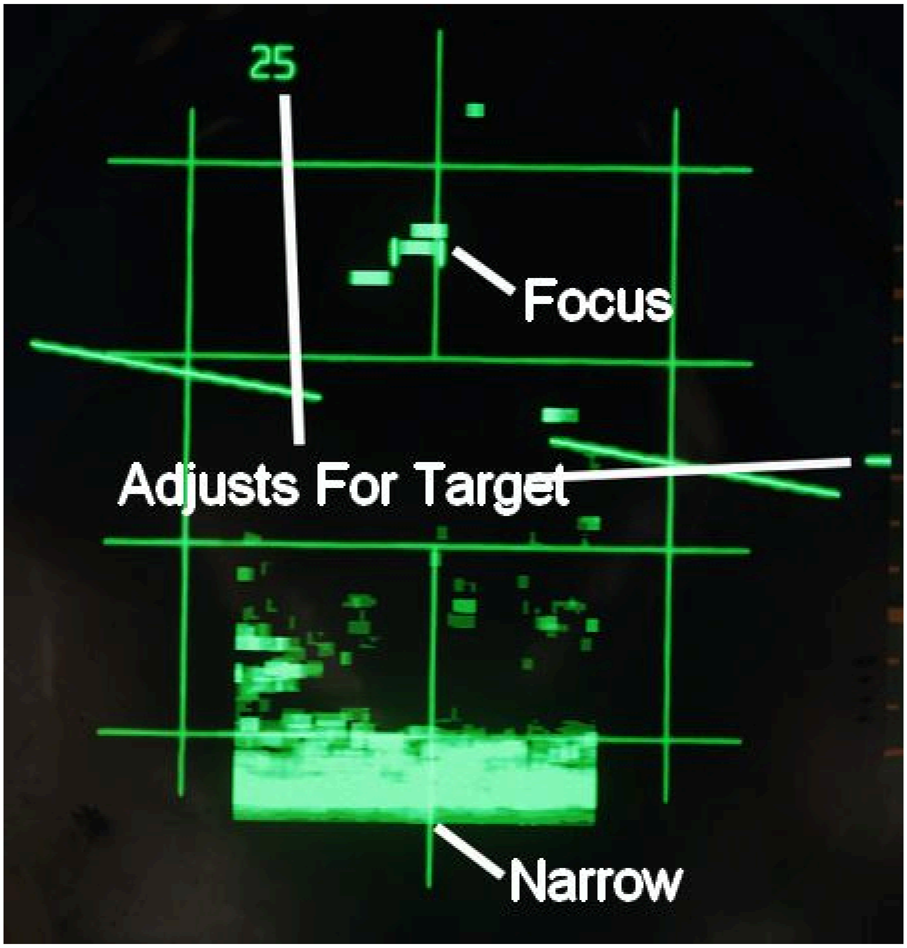
Target Selection

Whenever a bandit becomes a threat (closer than 25 nm), Jester automatically **selects** the target by moving and keeping the cursor on the corresponding radar return.

The player can command target selection at any time by using the context actions. This way, targets outside of the threat-range can be selected as well.

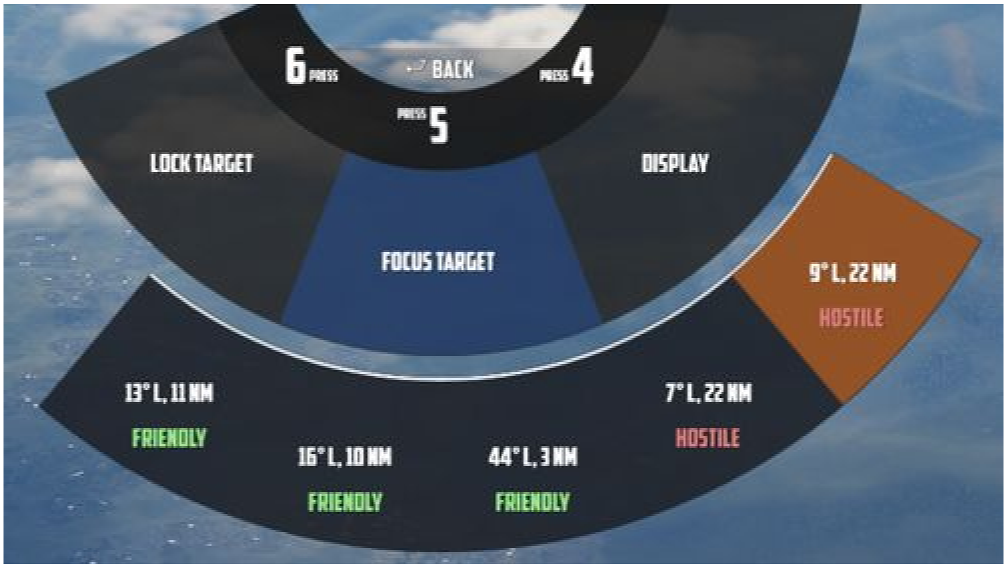


Whenever a target within threat-range is selected, Jester will **focus** them, stop the regular search pattern, automatically enter Narrow View and point the antenna at the target in order to maximize tracking quality.

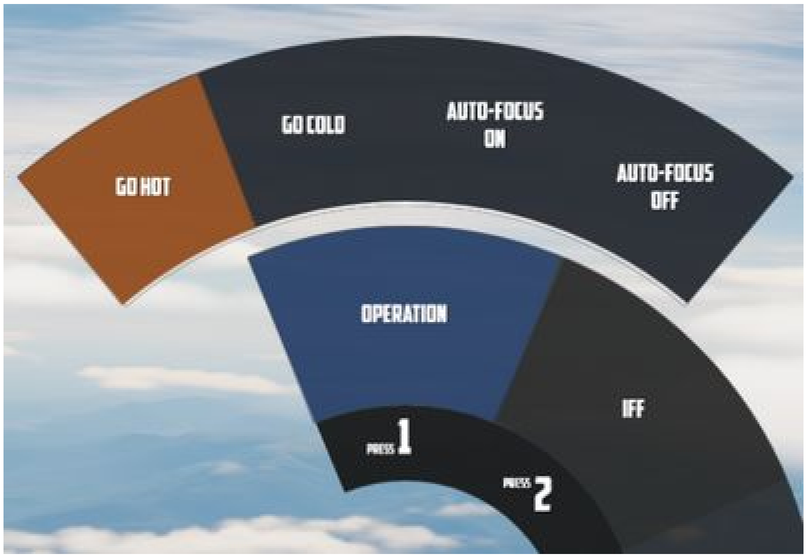


This mode can be understood as *"Track While Scan"*, where Jester keeps the radar on a specific contact, while still scanning the surrounding space, identifying and calling out any new contact spotted.

Context actions only allow selection of hostile aircraft. Should the situation require, other targets can always be focused directly through the UI instead.



Automatic target selection and focus behavior can be deactivated in the UI. This can be useful if flying through a hostile zone, expecting contacts, while not wanting to engage them and instead keep an overview and continuing the scan pattern. For example when having an escort of fighters that will take care of the bandits instead.



Context Action

Duration	Context Action
•	Select next target
■	**Lock** the currently selected target

Duration	Context Action
●●	Reset target selection

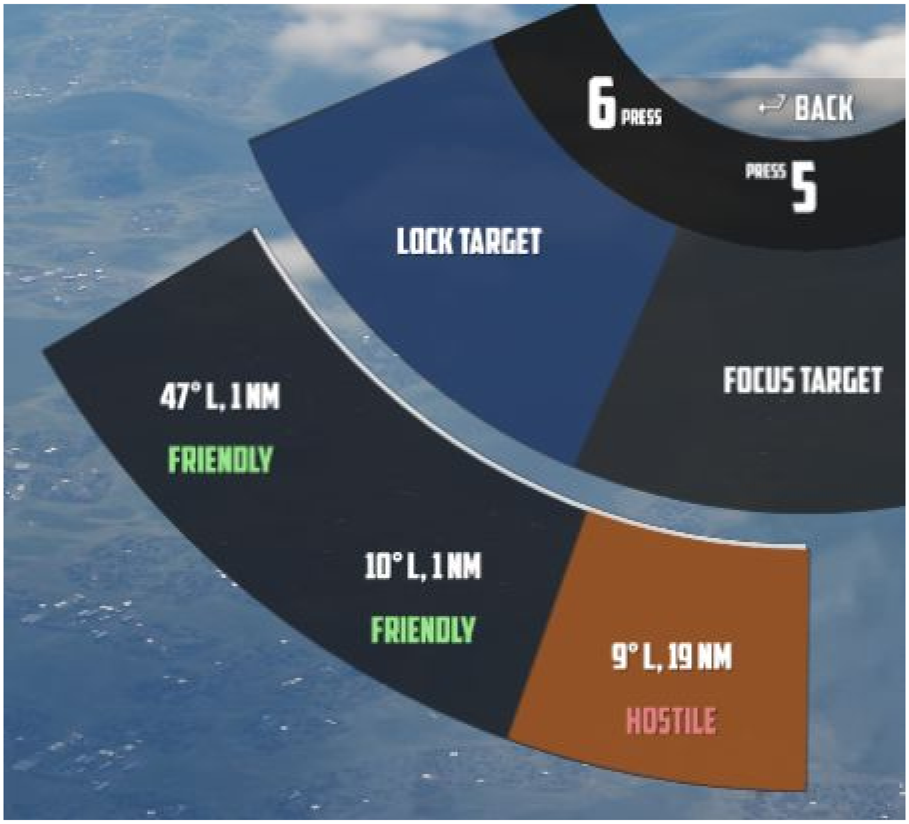
Unless only a single bandit shows on the screen, locking via ■ (long) requires prior target selection. Either automatically through Jester or by using ● (short). In an ambiguous situation, pressing ■ (long) will first select the target with highest priority.

Pressing ●● (double) will reset the currently selected target and return Jester to his standard behavior of automatically selecting the highest threat, if any. Should one desire to ignore a target within threat range, automatic target focus has to be deactivated through the UI first. ●● (double) can then be pressed to deselect the target.

Lock

During a lock, Jester works the radar to keep the lock as long as possible.

The UI also allows selecting a target to lock manually without using context action.



If a contact should drop while Jester attempts to lock it, he will wait a few seconds for the radar return to reappear.

Duration	Context Action
•, ▄	Drop lock, but keep target in **focus**
••	Drop lock and focus

> 💡 Should a lock be faulty and Jester does not notice it (for example odd movement of the steering dot, or unexpected closure rate readouts), press ▄ to unlock and then ▄ again to attempt to lock the target again.

Dogfight

A within-visual-range situation is entered by the pilot activating CAGE mode.

In this mode, the radar is automatically boresighted forward and Jester will be able to lock a return.

Further, the pilot can enter CAA mode where the system will automatically lock any close contact.

Duration	Context Action
•, ▬	Lock or Unlock contact ahead
••	Exit CAGE mode

To lock a target in CAGE mode, press • (short) or ▬ (long) once ready. Jester will now automatically lock the first target return he can identify. If no target could be found within a few seconds, Jester will abort the process and • or ▬ have to be used again.

> 💡 Targets have to be within 5 degrees of the boresight or a lock attempt would result in a bad lock. When Jester does not lock the return yet, it is because he is waiting for the pilot to put it within that zone first.

Pave Spike

If equipped, Jester will ensure the targeting pod is ready for a 12-VIS dive attack when required.

This can also be commanded manually by selecting either `Air To Ground > Pave Spike > Operation > Standby` or `Air To Ground > Pave Spike > Operation > Ready` in the UI.

Additionally, the UI allows the pilot to change the laser code used by Pave Spike.

The pilot can command Jester to focus on operating the targeting pod by selecting TGT FIND on the Delivery Mode Knob.

> 💡 Due to DSCG limitations, operation of the Pave Spike and the radar system are mutually exclusive.

12-VIS Dive

Pressing the **Context Action** will command Jester to lock the ground target next to the reticle. A subsequent press will unlock the target again.

This can be used effectively in 12-VIS mode where the pilot points the nose on the target in a short dive. After locking the target, the pilot can

pull out of the dive and either keep observing the target through the pod, or start an attack. See 4.3.3.4. Employment for details.

> 🚧 Jester Pave Spike operation will be expanded throughout Early Access. To overcome current limitations, the Pilot is provided with temporary binds to control the WSOs Antenna Stick. This allows the pilot to use the targeting pod more effectively.

Bombing

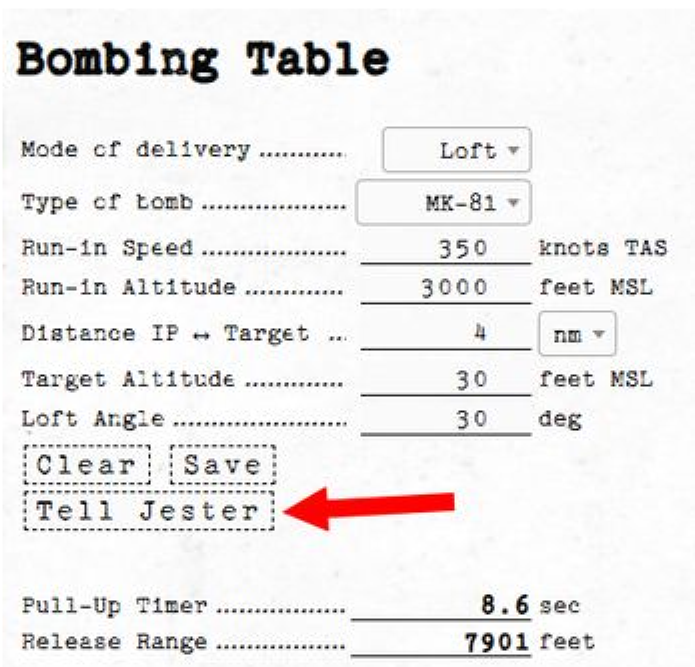
Dropping ordnance on ground targets with Jester consists of two phases. Initially, Jester has to prepare for the attack by entering corresponding data into the panels. For most modes, the attack run itself can be executed by the pilot alone. However, for Dive Toss and Dive Laydown modes, Jester must lock the ground return using the radar.

Preparation

To prepare a bombing run, both pilot and WSO have to enter several settings throughout the cockpit.

For Jester, this includes the WRCS panel, such as the **Release Range**, **Target Altitude** or **Release Advance**, as well as the LABS angles and timers.

To prepare Jester for a bombing run, use the Bombing Computer tool and transfer the solution by utilizing the **Tell Jester** button.



Once activated, Jester will do his part in preparing the aircraft for the desired attack.

Dive Toss

During a Dive Toss or Dive Laydown attack, indicated by DT or DL selected on the Delivery Mode Knob, the **Context Action** can be used to command Jester to lock the ground return after placing the nose on the target. A subsequent press will unlock the target again.

This way, ground targets can be attacked effectively during a dive. The pilot places the reticle on the target, commands Jester to lock the return

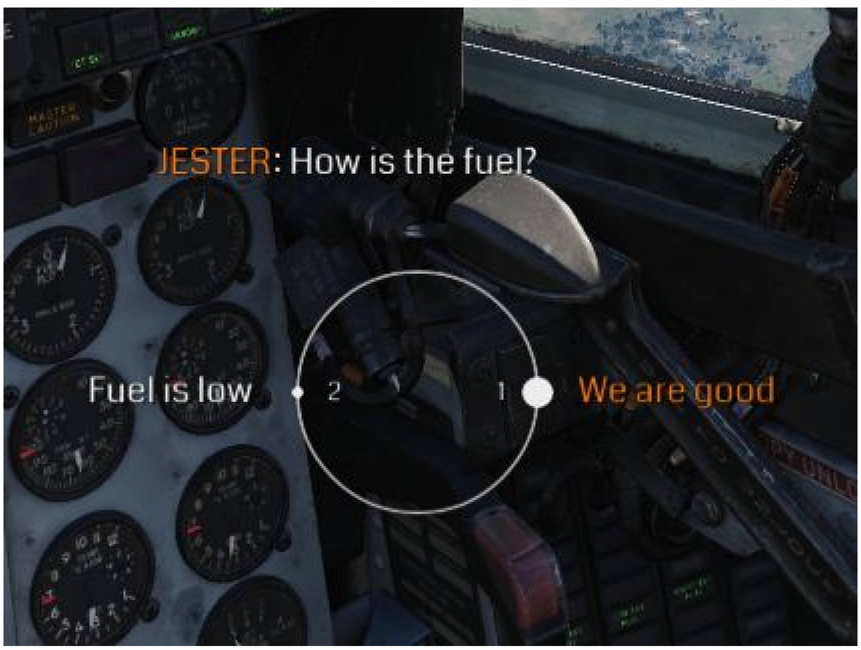
and then pulls up while holding down the Bomb Button. Weapons will be released automatically shortly after.

Other

During the entire flight, Jester will assist the pilot in all situations.

He will call out bandits during a dogfight and give the pilot steering tips. Jester might tell the pilot in which direction to evade when attacked by a missile, make him aware of any friendly traffic spotted or also simply when the AVTR cassette is full.

While lacking a fuel gauge in his cockpit, he will observe the clock and the pilots flying style to remind him about checking the fuel level or consumption when forgetting to leave the Fuel Dump switch activated.



Jester is able to assess and report battle damage to a certain degree and much more.

Startup

Whenever the pilot performs a cold start of the aircraft, Jester will automatically get his cockpit ready for flight as well.

Most notably, this includes the INS alignment. During startup, Jester will ask the pilot if he is ready for alignment and which alignment option to choose.

Alignment should only be started once the pilot is sure that power will remain stable and the aircraft will not have to be moved until the procedure is finished.

> 💡 Jester is able to abort an alignment if the pilot really has to start moving already. Expect degraded INS performance in this case.

Takeoff and Landing Assistance

When taking off, Jester will report key values for the airspeed, indicating to the pilot when to initiate the roll.

By default, Jester will assist the player during landing by giving altitude callouts, similar as seen in civilian aviation. This way, the pilot can better estimate the current position, especially given the reduced forward visibility in the Phantom.

> 💡 This option can be disabled, see 9.2. Special Options.

Aerial Refueling

Jester provides steering assistance to the pilot during AAR.

In the initial phase, he will guide the pilot towards the right spot for the tanker to connect the boom, for example by saying

> *"Move 5 feet forward."*

Once connected, he will look up and focus on the booms colored marks. Jester calls out whenever the pilot is drifting too much in either direction, indicated by the boom showing the yellow or red marks.

The perfect mark in the middle is called the *donut*.

See 3.2.2. Air Refueling System for details on how to perform AAR.

Crew Chief

A crew chief signals to the pilot of an RF-4C Phantom II aircraft to stop the aircraft after taxing into parking position. The aircraft is being used in support of Exercise FUERZAS UNIDAS PERU'87

Crew chief (often called "Chief") is the main technician who is responsible for the assigned aircraft when it's on the ground. This important role involves not only keeping the aircraft in good shape by conducting maintenance, but also preparing it for flight. The preparation for take off begins long before the aircraft crew arrives, but the chief also directly assists the crew during startup and shutdown.

> 💡 Never upset your crew chief. Make sure you operate your aircraft properly and take good care of it, or you will be scrubbing tires and packing chutes for the rest of your flying career.

Features

Our F-4 crew chief has expertise in many fields including:

- External power (provided by ground cart)
- External air (provided by ground cart)
- Engine start cartridges
- Wheel chocks
- Boarding ladder and boarding steps
- Conducting different ground checks (listed below)

"We'll throw in a start cart, boarding ladder, extra drag chutes. Inspect your burner cans, change your hydraulic fluid, top off your liquid oxygen, take SOAP samples and clean the canopies."

Ground Checks

Overview

The F-4 procedures include several ground checks, which objective is to make sure that certain systems are working and set correctly. Our F-4 crew chief can assist the pilot during following checks:

- **Pitot Heat**
- **Spoiler Actuator**

- Air Refuelling Door
- Speed Brakes
- Slats and Flaps
- **Flight Controls**
- **ARI Disengage**
- **Stab Aug**
- **Trim Neutral**
- Tail Hook

Some of them are triggered automatically (e.g. when the chief notices speed brakes extending/retracting, he will announce it). More advanced checks (**bold ones**) have to be initiated manually.

Some of them can also be conducted without crew chief, by acquiring visual confirmation from the WSO, but not all of them because of the limited visibility from the cockpit.

Details

More advanced checks are explained here in detail:

Pitot Heat Check

Set the **pitot heat to ON** and wait for the ground crew to confirm it's warm. After that, put the **pitot heat to OFF**.

> 🟡 CAUTION: Pitot heat should not be used for more than 1 minute during ground operations.

Spoiler Actuator Check

With the right/left engine operating, **slowly deflect control stick approximately 1 inch to the left/right**. Have ground crew or rear seat occupant verify that the spoiler does not fully deflect and that it returns to a flush position when the stick is returned to neutral. Abort if the spoiler check is not good.

Flight Controls Check

The Crew Chief should confirm all flight control positions. Slats and Flaps should be **OUT AND DOWN**.

- Pitch trim - 1 TO 3 UNITS NOSE DOWN
- Control stick - PULL FULL AFT AND RELEASE
  - Movement forward should be smooth and free of any restriction. The stick may not return to the full forward position. The stick should move forward at least to the ½ travel position and further movement toward the stop should require no more than one pound push force. (Chief should report stabilator positions)
- Rudder - CHECK FULL TRAVEL LEFT AND RIGHT (Chief should report rudder positions)
- Ailerons/ARI - CHECK
  - Move control stick full left. Confirm left spoiler up, right aileron down and rudder slightly left. Engage yaw stab aug. Confirm rudder move further left (Chief should report "KICK"). Depress emergency quick release lever. Confirm rudder move toward neutral (Chief should report). Release emergency quick release lever, neutralize stick and disengage yaw stab aug. Repeat check substituting right for left.

> 💡 The MASTER CAUTION and CHK HYD GAGES lights may illuminate momentarily during this check. If pressure recovers without delay, disregard this indication.

ARI Disengage Check

Set Slats & Flaps to NORM. Move stick full right and left. Confirm no rudder movement (Chief should report).

Stab Aug Check

Engage each axis of stab aug individually. Confirm no movement of any control surface (¼ inch allowable) (Chief should report). If an aileron/spoiler deflects during roll stab aug engagement, it may take up to 4 seconds to resettle after roll stab aug is disengaged. Allow enough time for the aileron/spoiler to resettle before reengaging roll stab aug to check the other aileron/spoiler.

Trim Neutral Check

Check operation of the trim indicator. Receive a signal from the ground crew/rear cockpit occupant that the ailerons and rudder are **set at neutral**.

Communication

Both crew-members can communicate with the chief using one of two methods:

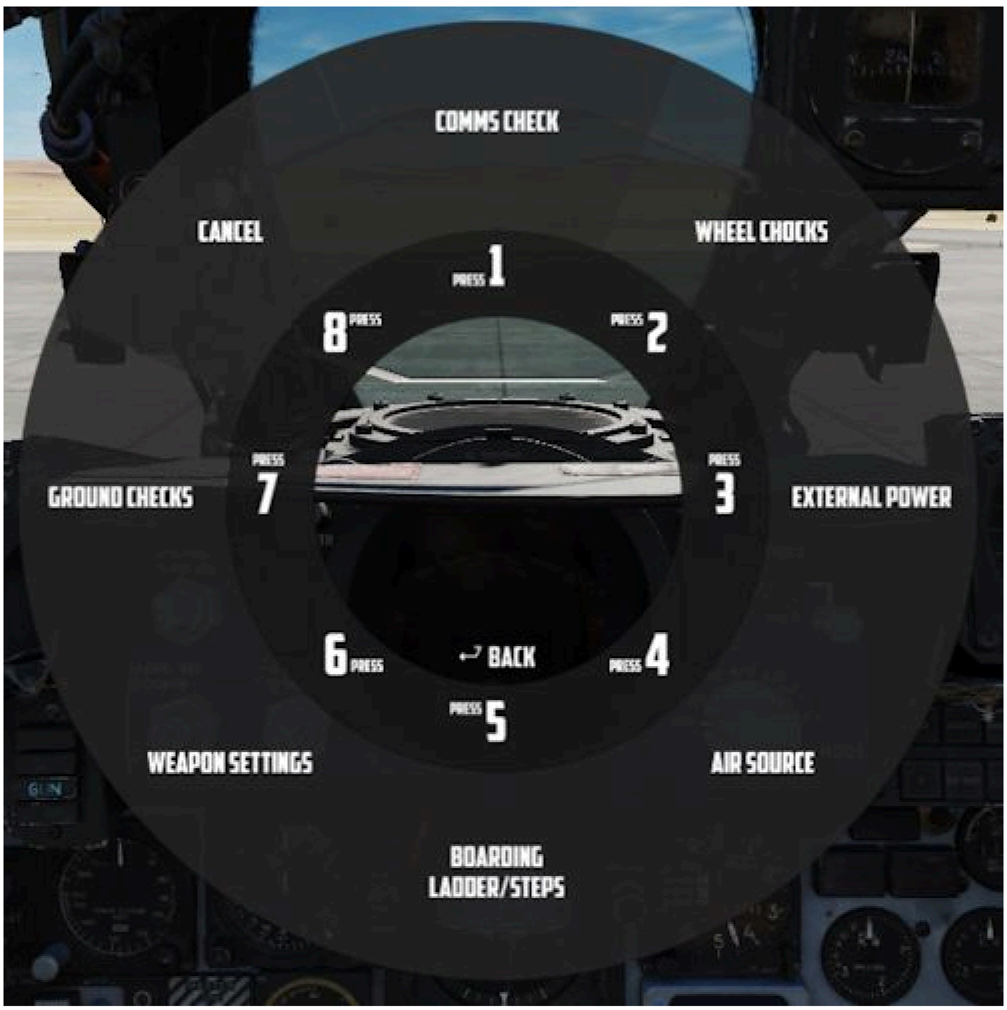
- Intercom - crew chief's headset is connected to the aircraft intercom system using a cord providing 2-way communication similar to the communication between Pilot and WSO
- Hand signals - the aircraft crew communicates with the chief in 1-way fashion using hand signals; when this method is used, the crew chief features are limited; you will be able to ask for the simpler actions like the wheel chocks removal but the crew chief won't help you in conducting visual checks

In both modes you can communicate with the crew chief using Jester wheel **"Crew Chief"** menu. The aircraft has to be stationary.

If the intercom system is set up correctly and powered up and the wheel chocks are placed, the intercom mode will be active, otherwise hand signals mode will be used and the "(hand signals)" text will be added to the "Crew Chief" menu name to indicate that.

> 💡 Since the external intercom is wired in parallel with the WSO's microphone and headset, the ground crew and WSO can block each other during simultaneous transmissions. In addition, the WSO's function selector switch must be in **HOT MIC** to allow aircraft to ground communications.

You can verify the 2-way communication by using "Comms Check" option.



MAJ Strangler, an F-4 Phantom II aircraft pilot, speaks to his crew chief about the readiness of the aircraft

Normal Procedures

This chapter contains standard procedures for operating the F-4E Phantom II.

The aircrew procedures through the Before Taxi paragraph are separated into individual procedures for the **pilot** and **weapon system officer**. These separate procedures allow the individual crew-member to perform the checks without requiring him to read the checks performed by the other crew-member. The remaining procedures are combined and are coded for applicable crew-member action. Items coded **(P-WSO)** are applicable to both the pilot and weapon system officer. Items coded **(WSO)** are applicable to the weapon system officer only, and items **not coded** are applicable to the pilot only.

> 💡 Real procedures and checklists evolved over time. The procedures provided in this manual are based on a time range around the 80s and tailored to our simulation of the Phantom specifically. Procedures provided in other resources may differ slightly.

See the Definitions for an explanation of the symbology used.

Ground crewmen from the 37th Tactical Fighter Wing perform maintenance on an F-4 Phantom II aircraft during Exercise Gallant Eagle '82

Preparation for Flight and Interior Inspection

> 💡 If a battery start is to be made, those checks requiring electrical power will have to be performed after the engines have been started.

WSO

Before Electrical Power (WSO)

Step	System	Action
1.	Helmet	PUT ON
2.	AN/ALE-40 Chaff Dispenser	OFF
3.	Throttles	AFT
4.	UHF radio	OFF
5.	AVTR Switch	OFF
6.	Radar power	OFF
7.	DSCG	OFF
8.	ECM equipment	OFF
9.	INS	OFF
10.	Nuclear store consent switch	SAFE
11.	Nav computer	OFF
12.	Battery bypass switch	OFF
13.	Circuit breaker panels	CHECK
14.	Publications and flight data	CHECK

After electrical power (WSO)

Step	System	Action
1.	**Instrument ground power switch**	**ACTUATE⚡**

Step	System	Action
2.	Navigation Computer	SET
	a. NAV Comp Mode	**STBY**
	b. Wind Counters	SET
	c. Variation Counter	SET
	d. POS Update Switch	NORM
	e. Present POS Counter	SET
	f. Target Counters	SET FOR TGT 2
	g. NAV Comp Mode	RESET
	h. NAV Comp Mode	STBY
	i. Target Counters	SET FOR TGT 1
3.	**INS Alignment**	**AS DESIRED**

💡 To avoid electrical power interruption which could result in an INS NO-GO indication, ensure INS is not in the ALIGN mode when the generator switches are placed to ON. If a power interruption does occur, switch the power control knob to OFF. When power is restored, go from OFF to ALIGN pausing momentarily at STBY.

INS Full Gyrocompass Alignment (WSO)

Time depends on ambient temperature and BATH alignment accuracy.

Step	System	Action
1.	NAV Comp Mode	STBY
2.	INS Power Knob	STBY
3.	Gyro Heat Up	WAIT
	a. HEAT Light	OUT
4.	INS Power Knob	ALIGN
5.	Alignment	WAIT
	a. ALIGN Light	FLASHING
6.	INS Power Knob	NAV
7.	INS Light	OUT

INS Fast BATH Alignment (WSO)

Takes roughly 2 minutes 15 seconds.

Step	System	Action
1.	NAV Comp Mode	STBY
3.	INS Power Knob	STBY
4.	INS Power Knob	ALIGN
5.	Alignment	WAIT
	a. HEAT Light	IGNORE
	b. ALIGN Light	STEADY
6.	INS Power Knob	NAV
7.	INS Light	OUT

INS Stored Heading Alignment (WSO)

Takes roughly 2 minutes 15 seconds.

Step	System	Action
1.	NAV Comp Mode	STBY
2.	Align Mode Switch	HDG MEM
3.	INS Power Knob	ALIGN
4.	Alignment	WAIT
	a. HEAT Light	IGNORE
	b. ALIGN Light	FLASHING
5.	INS Power Knob	NAV
6.	INS Light	OUT
7.	Align Mode Switch	GYRO COMP

Interior Check (WSO)

Step	System	Action
1.	Rudder pedals	ADJUST
2.	Ejection seat height	ADJUST
3.	Stick grip and boot	CHECK

Step	System	Action
4.	Communication-Navigation control panel	SET
	a. Communication frequency control knobs	AS REQUIRED
	b. Communication channel control knob	AS REQUIRED
	c. Mode select switch	AS REQUIRED
	d. Communication Volume control knob	AS DESIRED
	e. Auxiliary channel control knob	AS REQUIRED
	f. Auxiliary volume control knob	AS DESIRED
	g. COMM-AUX Pushbutton	TR + G - ADF
	h. Navigation volume control knobs	AS REQUIRED
	i. TACAN function selector knob	OFF
	j. Communication command button	AS DESIRED
	k. Navigation command button	AS DESIRED
5.	VOR/ILS/marker beacon volume	AS DESIRED
6.	Emergency slats flaps handle	FORWARD
7.	Intercom control panel	SET
	a. Volume control	AS DESIRED
	b. Amplifier select knob	NORM
	c. Function selector switch	HOT MIC
8.	Emergency gear handle	IN AND SECURE
9.	Emergency brake handle	IN AND SECURE
10.	Slats flaps position indicators	GEAR DOWN INDICATION
11.	Canopy emergency jettison handle	FORWARD

Step	System	Action
12.	Radar scope	SECURE
13.	Attitude indicator	CHECK AND SET ⚡
	a. Rotate pitch trim knob to check travel (-10° to +5°)	
	b. Set horizon bar level with miniature aircraft	
14.	Clock	WIND AND SET
15.	Accelerometer	SET
16.	Navigation computer function selector knob	AS DESIRED
17.	KY-28 power selector knob	OFF
18.	KY-28 mode selector	P
29.	Canopy manual unlock handle	FORWARD
20.	Aural tone	AS REQUIRED
21.	Cockpit lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	a. White floodlight switch	OFF
	b. Instrument panel lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	c. Console lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	d. Standby compass light switch	AS REQUIRED
	e. Console floodlight switch	AS REQUIRED
	f. Indexer lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
22.	Warning and indicator lights	TEST ⚡
23.	Intercom system	CHECK
24.	Oxygen quantity gage	CHECK ⚡
	Check quantity sufficient and OFF flag not visible.	
25.	Oxygen supply system	CHECK AND SET
26.	RWR Systems	CHECK THEN OFF ⚡

Pilot

Before Interior Check (Pilot)

Step	System	Action
1.	Helmet	PUT ON
2.	Lower ejection handle guard	UP (not applicable)
3.	Generator switches	OFF
4.	AN/ALE-40 flare select switch	NORMAL
5.	Internal wing dump switch	NORM
6.	Throttles	OFF
7.	External stores emergency release	CHECK NO YELLOW SHOWING INSIDE CIRCULAR GUARD
8.	Landing gear handle	IN & DOWN
9.	Missile jettison selector	OFF
10.	Armament Switches	OFF/SAFE
11.	Pitot Heat	OFF
12.	Battery	CHECK
	To determine battery relay closure turn on Engine Master switch and check for proper positioning of gear and slats flaps position indicators.	
13.	Engine Master Switches	OFF
14.	Formation Lights	OFF
15.	Emergency attitude reference system circuit breaker	IN
16.	UHF Radio	OFF
17.	Reference system selector	STBY

Step	System	Action
18.	Publications and flight data	CHECK
19.	Gun Camera magazine	INSTALL
20.	Gun Camera dust cover	STOW (with 780 equipment)
21.	External Power	ON🔧 AND CHECK ON
22.	Generator switches	EXT ON
23.	Transformer-rectifier	CHECK ⚡
	Both transformer-rectifiers operating if the landing gear indicators indicate gear down with the Engine master switches OFF and the generator switches in EXT.	

Interior Check (Pilot)

Step	System	Action
1.	Rudder Pedals	ADJUST
2.	Ejection Seat Height	ADJUST ⚡
3.	Stick grip and boot	CHECK
	Check Stick grip firmly attached to stick and stick boot in place with no tears	
4.	Auxiliary armament control panel	SET
	a. Gyro Switch	NORM
	b. Aural tone control knob	LOW
	c. Boarding Steps position indicator	PROTRUDING
5.	Slats override switch	NORM
6.	Intercom control panel	SET
	a. Volume control	AS DESIRED

Step	System	Action
	b. Amplifier select knob	NORM
	c. Function selector switch	HOT MIC
7.	ALE-40 flares switch	NORMAL
8.	Fuel control panel	SET
	a. Internal wing transfer switch	NORMAL
	b. Internal wing dump switch	NORM
	c. Refuel select switch	ALL TANKS
	d. External transfer switch	AS REQUIRED
	e. Air refuel switch	RETRACT
9.	Stab Aug Switches	OFF
10.	Boost Pumps	CHECK⚡
	Actuate left boost pump check switch observe that the left boost pump pressure indicator reads 30 ±5 PSI. Allow 3 seconds after release of the left switch, then repeat with right boost pump. Ensure that the test switches return to NORMAL	
11.	VOR/ILS Panel	SET
	a. Volume control knob	AS DESIRED
	b. Marker volume knob	AS DESIRED
	c. Frequency	AS DESIRED
	d. VOR/MKR test switch	TEST⚡
12.	Slats/Flaps switch	AS REQUIRED
	Slats/Flaps switch should correspond with indicators	

Step	System	Action
13.	Emergency Slats/Flaps handle	FORWARD
14.	Drag Chute control handle	DOWN AND SECURE
15.	Speed brake switch	IN
16.	Throttle friction lever	SET DESIRED
17.	Comm Antenna Select Switch	UPR
	Anti-skid and Nose wheel steering may malfunction while transmitting on the lower antenna due to electromagnetic interference.	
18.	Engine Anti-icing switch	NORMAL
19.	Anti-Skid	CHECK ⚡
	a. Anti-Skid switch on	LIGHT OFF
	b. Emergency quick release lever	DEPRESS/LIGHT ON AND RELEASE LIGHT OFF
	c. Anti-Skid Switch off	LIGHT ON
20.	ARI circuit breaker	IN
21.	Landing and taxi lights switch	OFF
22.	Slats flaps position indicator	SELECTED POSITION
23.	Landing gear position indicators	GEAR DOWN INDICATION
24.	Emergency brake control handle	IN AND SECURE
25.	Canopy emergency jettison handle	FORWARD
26.	Multiple weapons control panel	SET
	a. Master Arm Switch	SAFE
	b. Delivery mode knob	OFF

Step	System	Action
	c. Weapon select knob	C
	d. Radar missile power switch	OFF
	e. Selective jettison knob	OFF
	f. Interlock switch	IN
	g. CL TK Light	ON IF CENTERLINE TANK IS INSTALLED
27.	Accelerometer	SET
28.	Flight Instrument Light Control	AS REQUIRED
29.	Clock	WIND AND SET
30.	Optical sight reticle	CHECK
31.	Film magazine/dust cover	SECURE
32.	ADI	CHECK AND SET⚡
	a. Rotate pitch trim knob to check travel (-10° +5° minimum)	
	b. Set horizon bar level with miniature aircraft	
33.	Emergency attitude Indicator	CHECK
	a. Cage and do not lock	
	b. Set miniature aircraft level with horizon bar	
34.	Navigation function selector panel	SET
	a. Bearing distance selector switch	AS DESIRED
	b. Mode selector knob	AS DESIRED
35.	Fire warning lights	TEST
36.	Canopy manual unlock handle	FORWARD
37.	Arresting hook handle	UP
38.	Communication-Navigation control panel	SET

Step	System	Action
	a. Communication frequency control knobs	AS REQUIRED
	b. Communication channel control knob	AS REQUIRED
	c. Mode select switch	AS REQUIRED
	d. Communication Volume control knob	AS DESIRED
	e. Auxiliary channel control knob	AS REQUIRED
	f. Auxiliary volume control knob	AS DESIRED
	g. COMM-AUX Pushbutton	TR + G - ADF
	h. Navigation volume control knobs	AS REQUIRED
	i. TACAN function selector knob	OFF
	j. Communication command button	AS DESIRED
	k. Navigation command button	AS DESIRED
38.	Emergency vent knob	IN
40.	Rain removal switch	OFF
41.	Pitot heat	CHECK ⚡ 🔧
42.	Defog-footheat control handle	AS DESIRED
43.	IFF Mode IV function switch	AS DESIRED
44.	IFF Master control knob	OFF
45.	Circuit breakers	CHECK
46.	Temperature control panel	
	a. Temperature control knob	AS DESIRED
	b. Mode selector switch	AUTO

Step	System	Action
47.	DCU-94/A bomb control monitor panel	SET
	a. Station selector switches	AFT
	b. Master release lock switch	AFT
	c. Option selector knob	OFF
48.	Cockpit lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	a. White floodlight switch	OFF
	b. Instrument panel lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	c. Console lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
	d. Standby compass light switch	AS REQUIRED
	e. Console floodlight switch	AS REQUIRED
	f. Indexer lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
49.	Warning and Indicator lights	TEST ⚡
50.	Instrument flood lights	OFF
51.	Aural stall warning volume	AS DESIRED
52.	Compass control panel	
	a. Latitude compensator	SET
	b. Mode control knob	SLAVED
	c. Synchronization indicator	CHECK
53.	Exterior lights control panel	SET
	a. Fuselage lights switch	AS REQUIRED
	b. Wing lights switch	AS REQUIRED
	c. Tail lights switch	AS REQUIRED

Step	System	Action
	d. Exterior lights flasher switch	AS REQUIRED
	e. Formation lights control knob	AS REQUIRED
54.	Instrument lights intensity control panel	SET
55.	Intercom System	CHECK
56.	Oxygen quantity gage	CHECK (Cannot be done with battery start)
	Check quantity sufficient, OFF flag not visible, OXYGEN LOW light extinguished. Press oxygen test button and check OXYGEN LOW light and MASTER CAUTION light illuminate at 1 litre. Notify rear crewmember, if applicable that test is in progress.	
57.	Oxygen supply system	CHECK AND SET
58.	RWR Systems	CHECK THEN OFF ⚡
59.	Eject light	CHECK

Startup

💡 If Pre-Start procedures were skipped, crew should remember to put on the **helmets** and connect the **ground power** (unless battery start is made).

Before starting engines (Both)

Step	System	Action
1.	Seat pins	CHECK REMOVED AND STOWED
2.	Fore and Aft Area	CLEAR
3.	Fire Guard	POSTED
4.	Throttles	OFF

Starting engines (Pilot)

Step	System	Action
1.	**External Air source**	**CONNECT RIGHT**🔧
2.	**Engine Master Switches**	**ON**
3.	**External airflow**	**ON**🔧
4.	**At 10% RPM**	
	a. Right Ignition Button	**PRESS AND HOLD**
	b. Right Throttle	**HALF THEN IDLE**
5.	**At Lightoff (EGT INCR)**	
	a. Right Ignition Button	**RELEASE**
6.	**At 45% RPM**	
	a. External airflow	**STOP**🔧
7.	Check Parameters	
	a. Exhaust Gas Temperature	220 - 420 °C
	b. Fuel Flow Indicator	800 - 1400 pph

Step	System	Action
	c. Idle RPM	65 ± 1%
	d. Right Boost Pump	30 ± 5 PSI
	e. Oil Pressure	12 - 50 PSI
	f. Hydraulic Pressure	WITHIN LIMITS
8.	**Right Generator**	**ON**
9.	Spoiler Actuator	CHECK (LEFT)🔧
10.	Air Refueling door	CHECK🔧 (if required)
11.	**Left Engine**	**START PER STEPS 1-8**
12.	Right Generator	CYCLE OFF/ON
13.	Bus Tie Open Light	OUT
14.	**External Air**	**DISCONNECT🔧**
15.	**External Power**	**DISCONNECT🔧**
16.	Interior Check	COMPLETE

Taxi

Before Taxi

Pilot

Step	System	Action
1.	COMM & NAV Equipment	ON & CHECK
2.	IFF	STANDBY
3.	**Radar Altimeter**	**ON & CHECK**
4.	**Altimeter & SPC**	**SET & CHECK**
5.	Speed Brakes	CHECK🔧
6.	Slats & Flaps	CHECK🔧
7.	Flight Controls	CHECK🔧
8.	**Slats & Flaps**	**NORM**
9.	ARI Disengage	CHECK🔧
10.	STAB AUG Switches	ENGAGE AND CHECK 🔧
11.	**Reference Sys Select**	**PRIM (INS in NAV)**
12.	Compass Mode Control Knob	SYNC
13.	AFCS	CHECK (if required)
14.	STAB AUG Switches	DISENGAGE
15.	**Trim**	**CHECK🔧 & SET**
		1-3 UNITS NOSE DOWN
16.	Slats & flaps	OUT & DOWN🔧
17.	**Optical Sight**	**STBY/CAGE**
18.	Pneumatic Pressure	CHECK
19.	IFF	CHECK
20.	Radar Altimeter	CHECK & SET
21.	**Wheel chocks**	**REMOVE🔧**

🟡 CAUTION: Do not move aircraft with INS in ALIGN mode.

WSO

Step	System	Action
1.	Interior Check	COMPLETE
2.	COMM & NAV Equipment	ON & CHECK
3.	**Target Designator**	**POWER ON & STOWED**
4.	Radar BIT Checks	INITIATE
5.	WRCS BIT Checks	INITIATE
6.	NAV Computer Mode	AS DESIRED
7.	**Altimeter & SPC**	**SET & CHECK**

Taxiing

Step	System	Action
1.	Wheel Brakes	TEST
2.	**Nose Gear Steering**	**ENGAGE & CHECK**
3.	(P-WSO) Flight Instruments	CHECK
4.	(P-WSO) Oxygen Diluter	AS REQUIRED

🟡 CAUTION: Taxi with canopies full open or full closed; with the canopies open, maintain taxi speeds below 60 knots to prevent damage to the canopy operating mechanism.

🟡 CAUTION: Adequate distance between aircraft must be maintained during formation taxi. An open canopy may be damaged by engine exhaust blast.

> 🟡 CAUTION: While taxiing during high gross weight conditions, the turning radius should be increased to relieve excessive side loads on the main landing gear struts, wheels, and tires.

Takeoff

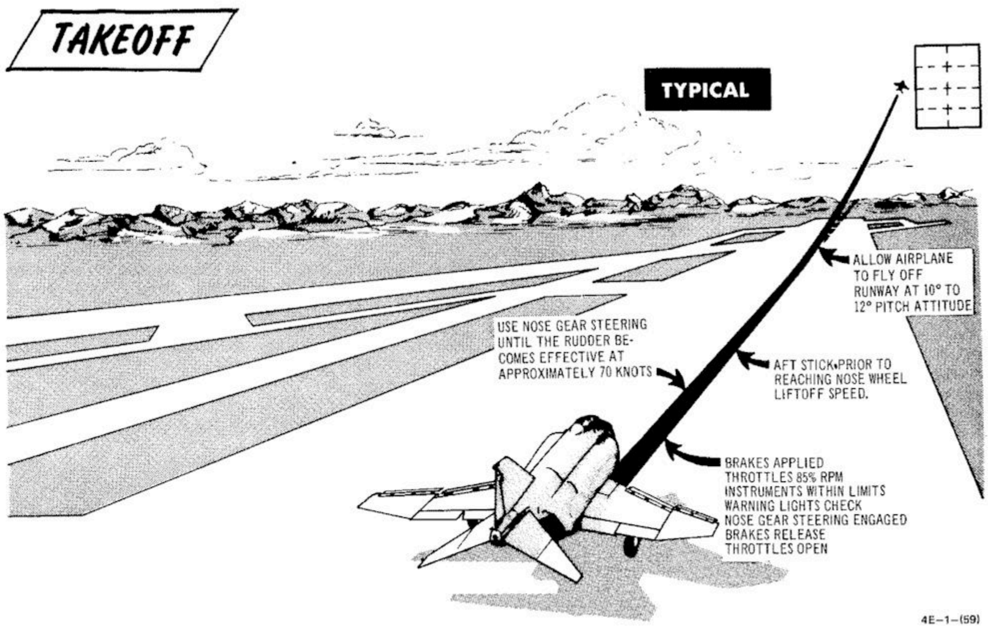
A right front view of an F-4 Phantom II aircraft taking off from Shiraz Air Base during exercise Cento

Normal Takeoff

The slats out-flaps down position is recommended for all takeoffs. After line-up on the runway and completing necessary pre-takeoff checks, engines can be run to 85% with brakes held and nose gear steering engaged to ensure nose gear alignment. With both engines operating in excess of 85% and the brakes locked, there is a possibility of rotating the tires on the wheel rims or skidding the tires. Check for normal rpm response and approximate readings of 450°C EGT, 4000 pph fuel flow, ¼ nozzles, and 30-40 psi oil pressure. After releasing brakes, advance both throttles rapidly to full military power and check rpm, exhaust temperatures and nozzle position. WSO check the ramps fully retracted.

If an afterburner takeoff is desired, shift the throttles into the afterburner detent and advance full forward for max thrust. Maintain directional control with nose gear steering or rudder as required. The rudder becomes effective for steering at approximately 70 knots. Wheel braking should not be used for directional control during takeoff roll. Nose gear steering should be disengaged when rudder steering becomes effective. If it becomes necessary to re-engage nose gear steering at the higher speeds, rudder pedals should be returned to neutral prior to engagement since rudder displacement necessary for rudder steering will generally be excessive for nose gear steering. Sufficient aft stick should be applied prior to nose wheel liftoff speed to attain the desired pitch attitude. As the nose rises, pitch attitude must be controlled to maintain a 10° to 12° (first pitch mark) nose high attitude for aircraft fly-off. Caution must be exercised to preclude over-rotation due to excessive aft stick rate or an extended takeoff roll due to late lift-off. The basic takeoff attitude should be held during acceleration and transition to a clean configuration. Trim change and control action during this period are normal. The AUX AIR DOORS, WHEELS, and MASTER CAUTION lights may illuminate momentarily as the landing gear and flaps are retracted.

> 🟡 CAUTION: Rapid full aft movement of the stick between takeoff airspeed and 30 knots below takeoff airspeed may result in the stabilator hitting the runway with the possibility of stabilator actuator damage.



No-Flap Takeoff

No-flap takeoffs are not recommended. However, if it is determined that no-flap takeoffs must be performed to satisfy mission requirements, aircrews should be aware that takeoff roll and airspeed will be increased and: the takeoff attitude will be slightly steeper. Stabilator effectiveness is considerably increased and extreme caution must be exercised to prevent over-rotation which could result in the stabilator striking the runway.

> 🔴 WARNING: Due to increased stabilator authority with the flaps up, aircraft rotation can be initiated at lower than normal airspeeds and over-rotation is a definite possibility. If it appears that over-rotation is occurring, positive control movement (stick forward) must be taken to prevent the stabilator from contacting the runway and/or loss of aircraft control.

Minimum Run / Heavy Gross Weight Takeoff

A minimum run/heavy gross weight takeoff (aircraft over 55,500 pounds) is accomplished in the same manner as a normal takeoff with the following exceptions: It is recommended that all minimum run/heavy gross weight takeoffs be made with afterburner. During the takeoff-run, full aft stick must be applied prior to reaching 80 knots. As the aircraft starts to rotate, the stick should be adjusted to maintain 10° to 12° pitch attitude for aircraft fly-off. The possibility of a main landing gear tire failure increases with an extended takeoff ground run under heavy gross weight conditions. Nose wheel liftoff speed and takeoff speed is increased during heavy gross weight conditions. In the event of an aborted takeoff, it must be remembered that stopping distance is greatly increased as abort speed increases.

> 🟡 CAUTION: With a combination of light gross weight and aft CG, the minimum run takeoff technique (i.e., full aft stick prior to reaching 80 knots) produces rapid pitch rates during nose rotation. This combination can exist when the radar package and nose gun (or equivalent ballast) are not installed.

Crosswind Takeoff

Under crosswind conditions, the aircraft tends to weather vane into the wind. The weathervaning tendency can be easily controlled with nose gear steering. As forward speed increases, weathervaning tendency decreases. At speeds above 70 knots rudder effectiveness will normally be sufficient to maintain directional control. After the nose is lifted to takeoff attitude, the aircraft will have a tendency to drift toward the downwind side of the runway. Therefore, when a long time period is expected between nose lift-off and aircraft fly-off, or when the crosswind effect is particularly severe, nose lift-off can be delayed accordingly. Under normal operational conditions this action should not be required.

As the aircraft leaves the ground, it should be crabbed into the wind, wings level, to maintain runway alignment. Takeoff in gusty crosswind or severe wake turbulence conditions can result in an abrupt wing low attitude at or near lift-off. When these conditions are anticipated, use higher than computed takeoff speed to provide additional lateral control after lift-off.

After Takeoff

When the aircraft is definitely airborne:

Retract the gear. Check that the landing gear position indicators display the word UP, and that the landing gear handle warning light is out.

> 🟡 CAUTION: The landing gear and gear doors should be completely up and locked before the gear limit airspeed of 250 knots is reached, otherwise, excessive air loads may damage the landing gear mechanism and prevent subsequent operation.

Set slats and flaps to NORM. Check that slat flap indicators display IN and UP. Rudder jumps may occur during flap retraction with a lateral stick input. If an audible (noticeable in head phones) chattering associated with slat flap and utility hydraulic pressure indicator fluctuating in unison occurs during slats flaps retraction, maintain airspeed below 250 knots and cycle slats flaps. If slat chatter occurs during maneuvering at altitude, it may require opposite slats positioning from where chatter occurs. If chatter persists, extend slats flaps and land as soon as practical. If cycling (slats repositioning) eliminates chatter, continue mission and make an appropriate entry in AF Form 781.

Climb

A simplified climb can be made by maintaining a 10° to 12° (first pitch mark) nose high attitude until reaching 350 knots and then vary pitch as

necessary to maintain 350 knots until reaching cruise Mach/TAS. Vary pitch as necessary to maintain cruise Mach/TAS until reaching cruise altitude. A simplified Maximum thrust climb, at normal gross weights, can be made by maintaining a 10° to 12° nose high attitude until reaching 350 knots and then vary pitch as necessary to maintain 350 knots until reaching Mach 0.9. Vary the pitch attitude as necessary to maintain Mach 0.9 until reaching cruise altitude.

> 💡 During the climb, it may be necessary to place the antenna selector switch to the LWR position to maintain ground communication.

Rig Check

A rig check shall be performed if an out-of-rig or unintentional asymmetric load condition is suspected and before maximum-performance/high-AOA maneuvering. With all axes of the stab aug engaged, center the rear cockpit ball and check that aircraft does not roll more than 2°/second with ailerons and spoilers trimmed neutral. Ifa large amount of lateral trim (equivalent to more than 1 inch aileron down at 350 knots) is required to prevent roll, an out-of-rig, malfunctioning stab aug, or asymmetrical load condition exists. Do not maneuver at high angle of attack if this condition exists.

Stab Aug Check

A stab aug check shall be performed before maximum-performance/high-AOA maneuvering. Do not perform maximum performance maneuvers if any of the following checks are unsatisfactory.

1. Pull nose up with 2G acceleration and release the stick. Aircraft should stabilize in one cycle.
2. Yaw aircraft to one ball width and release rudder. Aircraft should stabilize in one cycle.

3. Roll to 30-45° bank and release stick. Aircraft should maintain bank angle. Roll to level flight and release stick. Aircraft should maintain wings level.
4. Gradually increase AOA through 11 1/2 units and ensure slats extend together. Decrease AOA below 10 1/2 units and ensure slats retract together.

Takeoff Checklists

Before Takeoff (Pilot)

Step	System	Action
1.	Optical Sight	CHECK
2.	Internal Wing Transfer	NORMAL
3.	**STAB AUG Switches**	**ENGAGE**
4.	Flight Controls	UNRESTRICTED (WSO confirm)
5.	Slats & Flaps	CHECK OUT & DOWN
6.	Anti-Ice	AS REQUIRED
7.	STAB Trim	CHECK 1-3 UNITS NOSE DOWN
8.	Fuel Quantity	CHECK
9.	**(P-WSO) Canopies**	**CLOSE & CHECK (WSO then Pilot)**
10.	Warning Lights	TEST
11.	Defog & Temperature	AS REQUIRED
12.	(WSO) Command Selector	AS BRIEFED
13.	(P-WSO) Ejection Seats	ARM (not applicable)

After Runway Line-Up

Step	System	Action
1.	External Transfer	AS DESIRED
2.	**Anti Skid**	**ON & LIGHT OUT**
3.	Compass Heading	CHECK
4.	**Pitot Heat**	**ON**
5.	IFF	AS REQUIRED

Step	System	Action
6.	(P-WSO) Circuit Breakers	CHECK IN
7.	Warning Lights	CHECK

Normal Takeoff

Step	System	Action
1.	Wheel Brakes	APPLY
2.	Throttle	85% RPM MAX
3.	Engine gauges	CHECK
	a. Exhaust gas temperature	450°C
	b. Fuel flow	4000 pph
	c. Nozzles	1/4
	d. Oil pressure	30-40 psi
4.	Wheel brakes	RELEASE
5.	Throttle	MIL
6.	Engine gauges	CHECK
7.	Throttle	AFTERBURNER (IF DESIRED)
8.	Nose gear steering	DISENGAGE at 70 KNOTS
9.	Stick	MOVE AFT at 80 KNOTS
10.	Pitch attitude	MAINTAIN 10° to 12°
11.	Trim	AS REQUIRED

After Takeoff - Climb

Step	System	Action
1.	**Gear**	**UP**
2.	**Slats & Flaps**	**NORM (180 knots MIN)**
3.	Pitch	ADJUST 10°-12° TILL 350 KIAS
4.	Airspeed	ADJUST PITCH TO HOLD 350 KIAS

Step	System	Action
5.	Heading	ACCORDING TO FLIGHT PLAN

Cruise

Step	System	Action
1.	(P-WSO) Altimeters	
		SET
		CHECK STBY
		RESET
		COMPARE
2.	Radar Altimeter	AS REQUIRED
3.	(WSO) Command Selector	AS BRIEFED
4.	(P-WSO) Ops Check	
	a. Oxygen Quantity/Pressure/Blinker	CHECK
	b. Cockpit Pressure	CHECK
	c. Fuel Quantity/Transfer Switches	CHECK
	d. STBY Compass	CHECK
	e. Circuit Breakers	CHECK
5.	Anti-Ice Switch	AS REQUIRED

Landing

This chapter describes landing techniques.

An AIRMAN retrieves a drag chute from a 70th Tactical Fighter Squadron F-4E Phantom II aircraft at the end of a runway during Exercise PROUD PHANTOM'80

Visual Landing

An Air Force Reserve F-4 Phantom II aircraft lands during Exercise GUNSMOKE '85

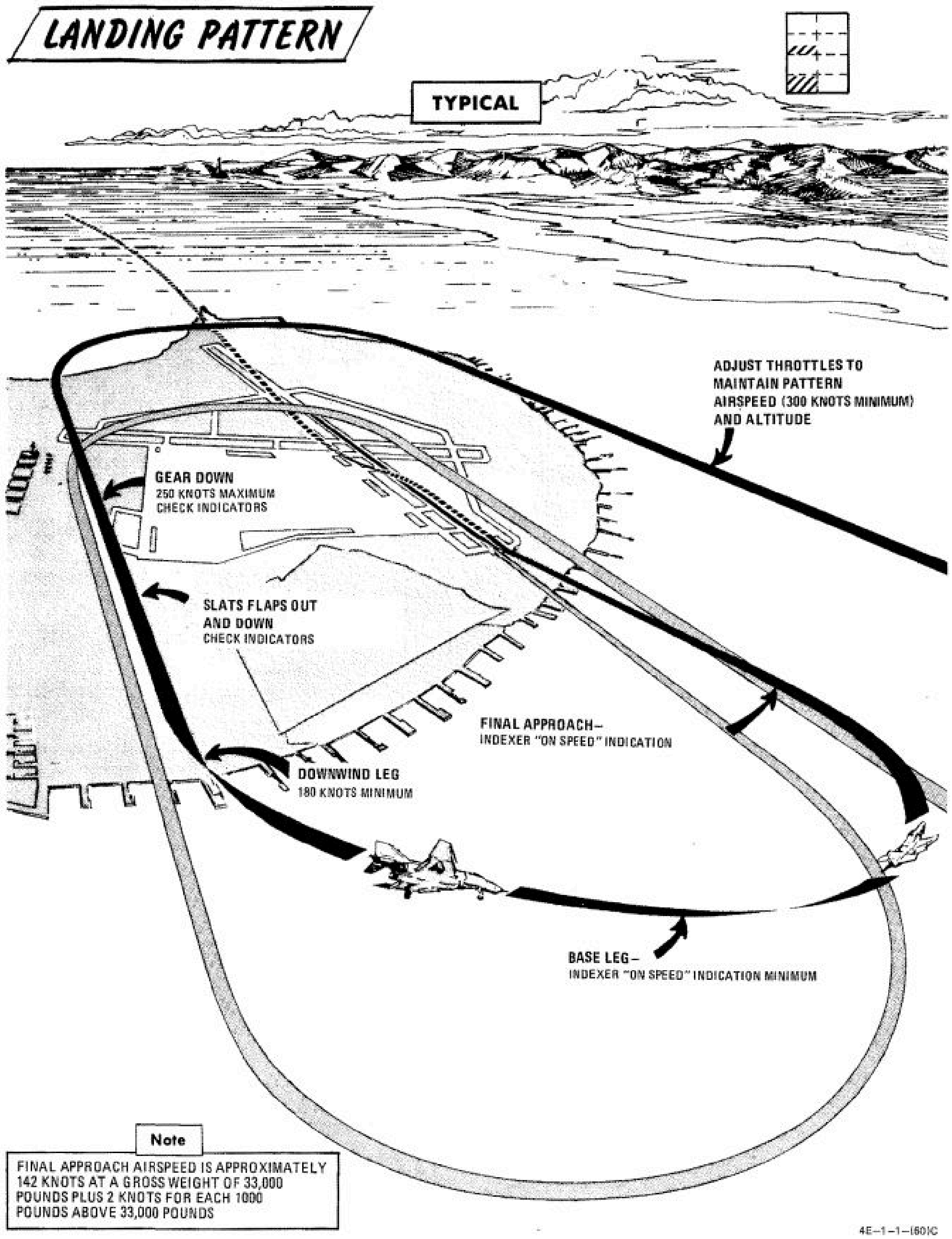
Descent / Before Landing

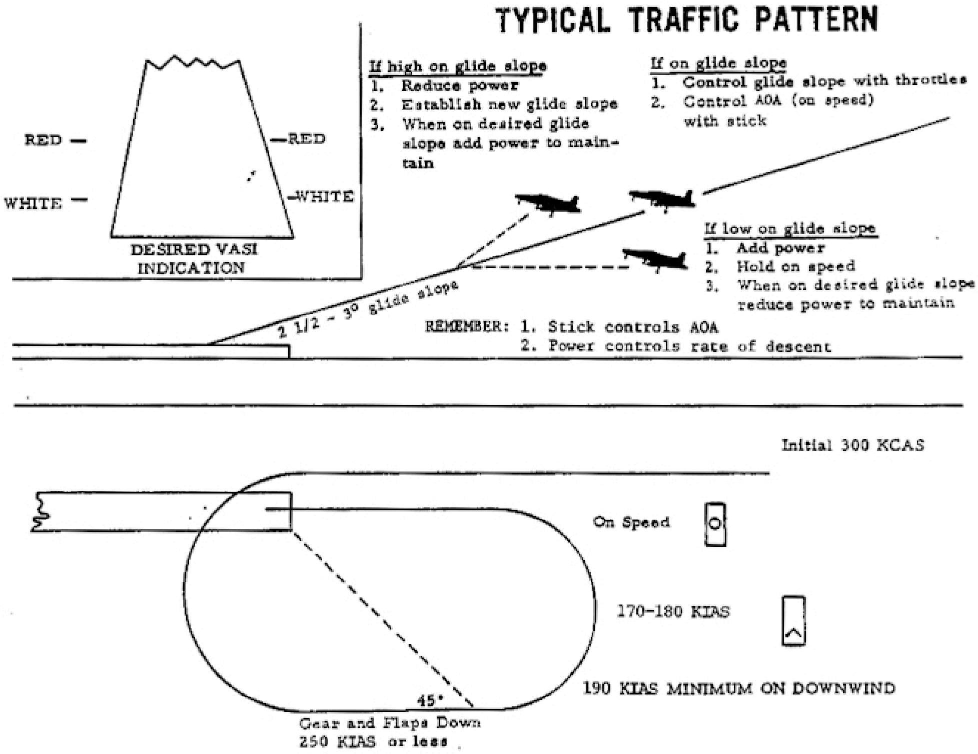
The Descent/Before Landing check should be accomplished above 10,000 feet AGL and at a time when mission/flight demands are not critical. Prior to performing a rapid descent, the windshield and canopy surfaces should be preheated to prevent the formation of frost or fog. If it becomes necessary to dump fuel during a descent, thrust settings in excess of 85% rpm may be required to ensure rapid inflight dumping.

> 💡 Due to limited forward visibility, it is advisable to raise the seat up before entering the pattern.

Landing Technique

For a normal landing, fly the pattern as illustrated in figure. Enter the pattern as local policy dictates.





🔴 WARNING: If high angles of attack develop during the turn to downwind, the rudder should be used as a primary means of rollout since adverse yaw may be introduced by the use of ailerons. Altitude may be insufficient for recovery if uncontrolled flight is encountered.

Avoid buffet throughout the landing pattern. Adjust power, as necessary, to attain allowable gear lowering airspeed. Extend landing gear and slats and flaps in level flight on downwind. Actual flap extension may not occur until slowing to 210 knots. Ensure slats out-flaps down prior to initiating turn to base leg. The optimum indicated AOA for approach is 19.2 units, and is adequate for all gross weight and normal slat flap configurations. The AOA aural tone system provides an audible cue to maintain an on-speed approach (steady tone played at medium pitch). During very gusty flight conditions, full aileron may not be sufficient to correct a wing low condition. When landing in gusty or crosswind conditions, with wake turbulence, with high internal fuel load (aft CG), or

with an abnormal configuration (slats in, asymmetric slats or slats partially extended), a 17 unit AOA approach is recommended. A transition to ON SPEED and a flared landing will reduce the touchdown speed. The AOA indexer and aural tone indications remain unaffected. Establish and maintain On Speed angle-of-attack on the base leg or final approach, adjusting pitch attitude to maintain AOA and power to maintain desired glide slope/rate of descent. Cross-check computed airspeed and On Speed AOA to detect gross errors in AOA. When the aircraft reaches 20 to 30 feet altitude above the ground, ground effect will tend to rotate the aircraft in the nose-down direction. Maintaining pitch attitude will result in transition to a slightly slow indication at touch-down which is desired. Flying a 2 1/2° to 3° glide slope will produce an approach rate of descent of about 700 feet per minute. Sink rate at touchdown will be appreciably reduced by ground effect.

> 🟡 CAUTION: Flying a steeper than normal final approach or not maintaining pitch attitude when entering ground effect, can cause touchdown sink rates to exceed the design limit of the main landing gear struts.

At touchdown, reduce power to idle and deploy drag chute. Use full aft stick to help decelerate. Use rudder and ailerons for directional control down to 70 knots then use differential braking. Nose gear steering should not be required for directional control in light crosswind conditions. However, if rudder, aileron, and/or differential braking are not effective in maintaining directional control, use nose gear steering as required. Engage nose gear steering only with the rudder at or near neutral.

> 🔴 WARNING: Nose gear steering malfunctions can cause loss of directional control if engaged at high ground speed; therefore, it should not be engaged above taxi speed unless required to maintain directional control during crosswind landing conditions. If no response is noted or unscheduled steering responses are

> detected when engaging nose gear steering, disengage immediately and do not reengage.

During braking, cycling of the anti-skid system can be detected by a change in longitudinal deceleration. Cycling may not be apparent when braking at high speed immediately after landing, with drag chute failure, or with a wet or icy runway. Do not misinterpret this as anti-skid failure.

> 💡 Drag chute should not be dropped on the runway or a taxiway. A popular technique is to leave it on the side of a taxiway by appropriately orienting the aircraft, inflating the chute with the engines and then releasing it in the desired direction.

No-Flap Landing

Refer to EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

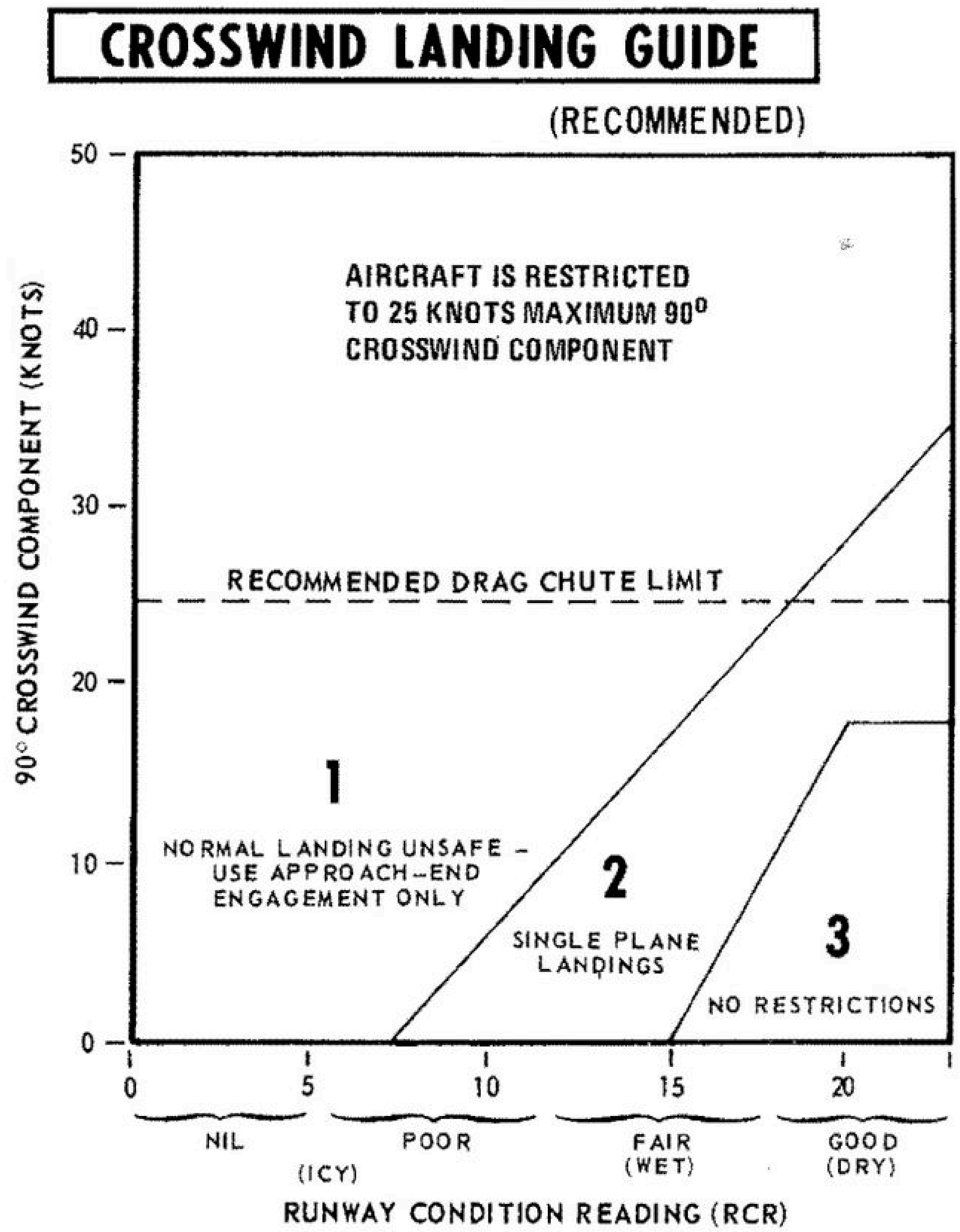
Short Field Landing

Short field landings require that normal final approach procedures be followed with precision and the aircraft be touched down as close to the end of the runway as safety permits. Full aft stick throughout the landing roll increases both aerodynamic drag and wheel brake effectiveness. Apply maximum braking by fully depressing the brake pedals to the pedal stops as soon as the nose gear is on the ground and nose gear steering is engaged. Nose gear steering should be used to maintain runway alignment and supplemented with differential braking only if required.

Operation on the AM-2 aluminum mat is similar to that conducted on a concrete runway of equivalent size. Arrestment should be regarded as an emergency procedure. However, since the aircraft is fully suitable for arrested landings, extremely adverse meteorological or operational conditions may warrant consideration of landing into a suitable approach-end arresting gear.

Crosswind Landing (Dry Runway)

Carefully compensate for crosswind in the traffic pattern to guard against undershooting or overshooting the final turn. Fly the final approach course with the aircraft ground track properly aligned with the runway. The crosswind may be compensated for either by using the wing low method, the crab method, or a combination of the two. When using the wing low method, the ARI can be overpowered by use of the rudder pedals or the ARI can be disengaged by pulling the rudder trim circuit breaker. If the crab method is employed, the aircraft heading should be aligned with the runway just prior to touchdown. After touchdown, use rudder, aileron and spoiler, and nose gear steering as required to maintain directional control. Crosswind effect on the aircraft is not severe; however, rudder, differential braking, and/or nose gear steering must be used as required to maintain alignment with the runway. Use of the drag chute intensifies the weather vane effect for any given deployment condition. The weather vane effect increases as the forward velocity of the aircraft decreases, therefore, if the drag chute is to be used, it should be used at the initial portion rather than the latter portion of the landing roll. This also assures use of the drag chute in the speed region where it is most effective. If the drag chute is used and excessive weathervaning is encountered, jettison drag chute. Since the nose gear will rapidly assume a position relative to the rudder pedals, nose gear steering should be initiated with the rudder pedals at or near the neutral position. For this reason the use of nose gear steering is advocated early in the landing roll rather than at a time when large amounts of rudder are required to hold the aircraft aligned on the runway. Keep in mind that only really tiny amounts of nose gear steering should be used as there is a high risk of a nose gear steering hardover. The most important aspect of directional control under crosswind conditions is keeping the aircraft precisely aligned with the runway rather than trying to correct back to the runway centerline after it has deviated.



Wet or Icy Runway Landing

Wet or icy runway conditions pose severe problems in directional control and braking effectiveness. On wet runways, these problems are primarily the result of hydroplaning where the tire rides on a thin layer of water and produces little or no traction. The probability of hydroplaning increases with increased water depth, increased ground speed, decreased

tire pressure and decreased tire tread depth and is also affected by runway surface texture and tire tread design. Hydroplaning can occur on runways which appear only damp if severe braking is applied at high speeds. Hydroplaning and glare ice present essentially the same problems. Due to the reduced directional control, all landings on a wet or icy runway should be made utilizing a crosswind technique. Refer to the Crosswind Landing Guide (figure 2-7) to determine the advisability of making an approach-end engagement. The pilot should also consider the desirability of delaying the landing to permit the runway to dry or diverting to another field. Gross weight should be reduced to the minimum practicable. Plan the pattern to be well established on final with the aircraft tracking straight down the runway centerline with an ON SPEED indication. Use a wings - level crab, if required, to maintain the track. Establish the rate of descent at 800 fpm (slightly steeper than normal) and plan to touchdown on the centerline within the first 500 feet. Make a firm touchdown (500-600 fpm) while maintaining the wings-level crab. Immediately after touchdown retard the throttles to idle. Do not attempt to align the aircraft heading with the runway as this will result in a drift off the runway if the aircraft is sliding or hydroplaning. Maintain full forward stick to increase nosewheel traction. As wheel cornering capability overcomes aerodynamic effects the aircraft will align itself with the runway. Do not attempt to hasten this process. When the aircraft heading is aligned with the runway centerline, deploy the drag chute. Be prepared to jettison the drag chute if the weathervaning effect interferes with maintaining the track straight down the runway centerline. Nose gear steering is the primary method of directional control and should be utilized as early as possible. Nose gear steering should be engaged only with the rudder pedals at or near neutral. When directional control is firmly established utilize maximum anti-skid braking. Brake pedals must be fully depressed to achieve maximum deceleration. At high speeds the braking potential will be very low and little deceleration will be felt. As braking potential increases with decreasing speed, the anti-skid system will increase deceleration accordingly. Unless the pilot is familiar with the variables in braking potential, the low deceleration at high speed may be mistakenly interpreted as a brake or anti-skid failure.

🟡 CAUTION: Rubber deposits on the last 2000 feet of wet runway make directional control a difficult problem even at very low speeds. Braking should be started in sufficient time so as not to require excessive braking on the last portion of the runway.

Heavy Gross Weight Landing

The heavy gross weight landing pattern is the same as the basic pattern shown in figure 2-6 with the exception that it should be expanded slightly to compensate for the lower maneuvering capability of the heavy gross weight aircraft at low speeds. As in the normal pattern, an on-speed indication on the indexer will provide the optimum angle of attack and airspeed for the aircraft in the landing configuration for both level flight and maneuvering flight. Refer to Performance Data, appendix A, for airspeed versus gross weight at approach AOA.

Go-Around

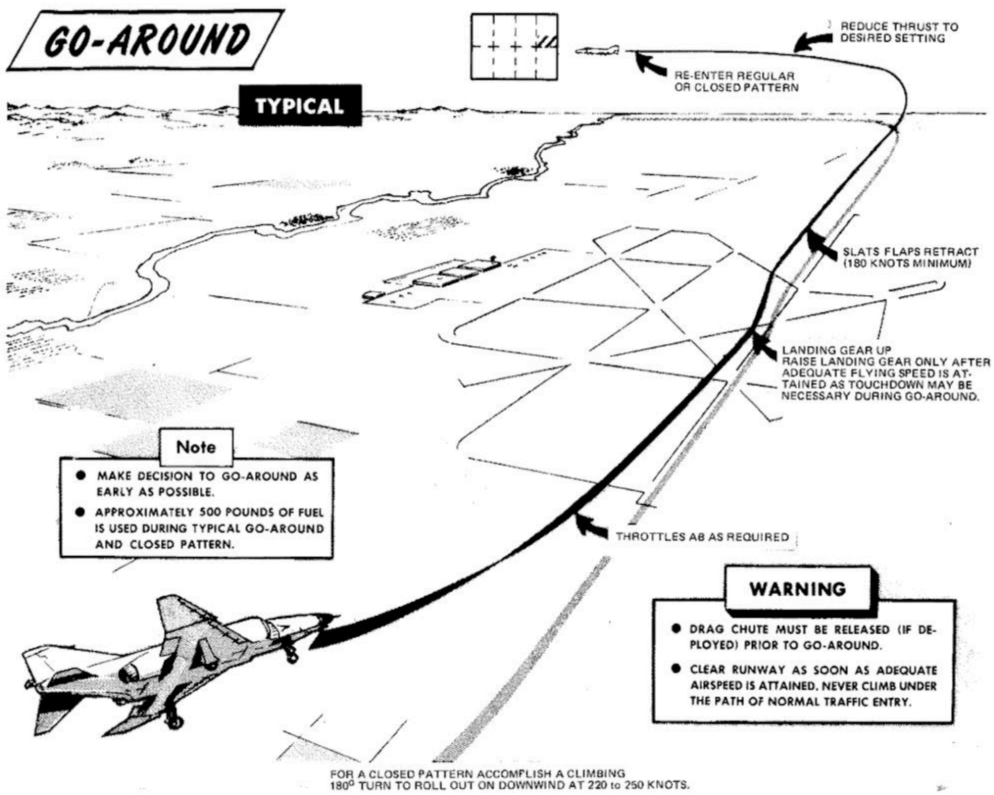
Any decision to go around should be made as early as possible. When the decision to go around is made, smoothly increase thrust to military (afterburner if required). Do not attempt to rotate the nose or stop rate-of-descent until adequate airspeed is built up. Continue to use the on speed indication as the optimum angle of attack until level flight is attained. As airspeed increases, establish normal takeoff attitude, retract gear when a positive rate of climb is established, retract slats and flaps at a safe airspeed (180 knots minimum) and go around. Rudder jumps may occur during flap retraction with lateral stick input. For a closed pattern, accomplish a climbing 180° turn to roll out on downwind at 220 to 250 knots. Refer to Go-Around, figure 2-8. During go-around a rapid trim change is required to preclude high forward stick forces.

🔴 WARNING: Do not exceed 18 units AOA during go-around

with gear retracted.

Touch-And-Go

After making a normal approach and touchdown, smoothly advance throttles to full military power. Apply aft stick until the nose rotates 10° to 12° of pitch attitude maintaining this attitude until the aircraft is flying. When definitely airborne retract the gear, followed by the flaps as the aircraft accelerates through 180 knots minimum.



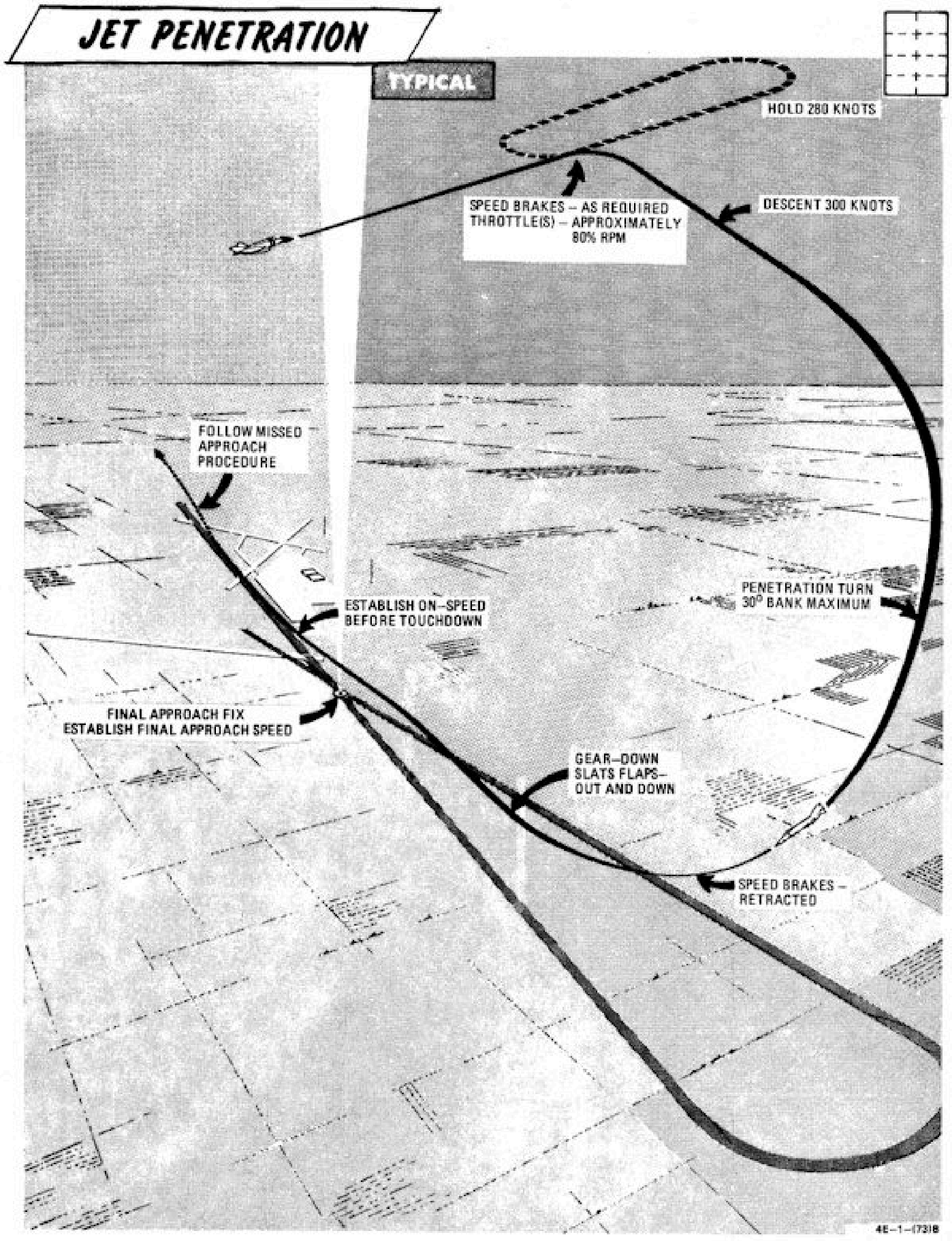
Instrument Approach and Landing

Holding / Loiter

Holding patterns or loitering flight may be flown at most altitudes at 280 knots, using approximately 30° of bank.

Instrument Descent

This figure represents typical penetration pattern.

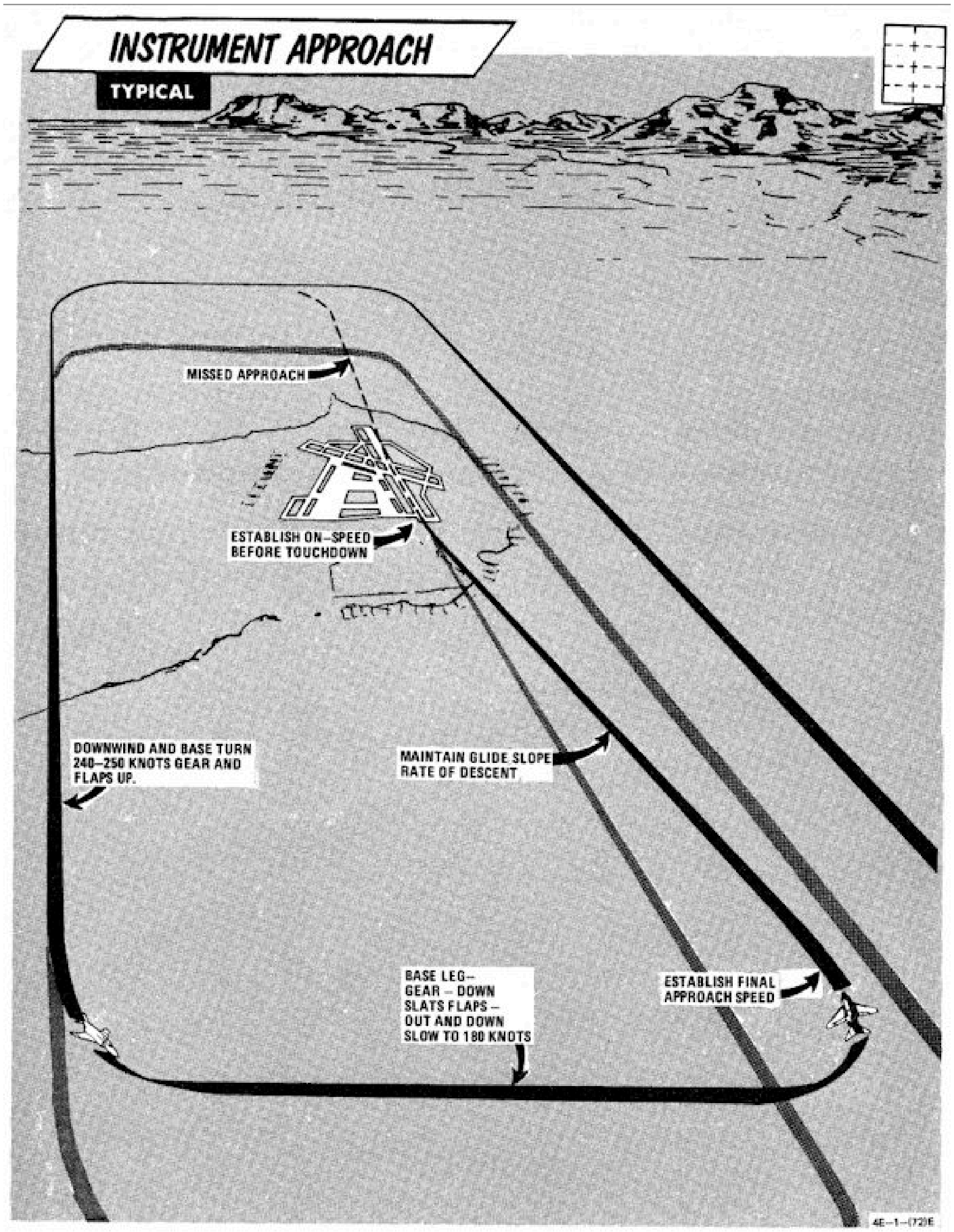


💡 Do not reduce thrust below 80% rpm (85% single engine) to ensure adequate windshield defogging/rain removal/engine anti-ice effectiveness. If the throttle is retarded to idle in heavy precipitation a lower than normal idle rpm indication may be noted.

💡 The pressure altimeter should be crossed checked with the radar altimeter to confirm terrain clearance at low altitude.

Precision Approach

This figure represents typical penetration pattern.



1. Descend to GCA pick-up altitude and transition to landing configuration approximately 10 miles out on final or base leg (as appropriate).
2. Maintain minimum on-speed angle of attack.

When directed to commence descent:

1. Retard power to approximately 82-84% rpm.
2. Adjust power and pitch as necessary to maintain desired rate of descent.

A straight-in TACAN penetration followed by a GCA or ILS final requires approximately 500-800 pounds of fuel. A missed approach followed by a second GCA requires an additional 1000 pounds of fuel.

Circling Approach

Recommended airspeed from TACAN final approach fix for a circling TACAN approach, is 180 knots with gear and flaps extended.

Missed Approach

1. Throttles - MILITARY
2. Gear - UP
3. Slats flaps - NORM (minimum of 180 knots)
4. Power as required to maintain 240-250 knots and maintain a 1500 to 2500 feet per minute climb.
5. Follow published missed approach procedures.

Landing Checklists

Descent / Before Landing

Step	System	Action
1.	Defog & Temperature	AS DESIRED
2.	ALE-40 Flares/Norm Switch	NORMAL
3.	**STAB AUG Switches**	**ENGAGED**
4.	COMM Antenna Select Switch	UPR
5.	**Landing/Taxi Light**	**LANDING**
6.	Armament Switches	OFF/SAFE/STOW
7.	Sight	STBY/CAGE
8.	Radar & BARO Altimeter	SET
9.	Fuel	CHECK

In Pattern (below 210 knots)

Step	System	Action
1.	**Gear**	**DOWN**
2.	**Slats & Flaps**	**OUT & DOWN**
3.	Hydraulic Pressure	CHECK
4.	Warning Lights	CHECK
5.	**Anti Skid**	**ON & LIGHT OUT**

Missed Approach

Step	System	Action
1.	**Throttles**	**MILITARY OR AB**
2.	**Gear**	**UP**
3.	Slats & Flaps	NORM (180 knots MIN)

Step	System	Action
4.	Throttles	AS REQUIRED

Landing

Step	System	Action
1.	Above runway	Gently flare
2.	At touchdown	Throttles to IDLE
3.	**Drag Chute**	**DEPLOY**
4.	**Wheel Brake (below 70 knots)**	**ENGAGE**

After Landing

Step	System	Action
1.	Anti Skid (below 30 knots)	OFF
2.	Cockpit Pressure	CHECK
3.	Ejection Handle	SAFE (not applicable)
4.	Landing/Taxi Light	AS REQUIRED
5.	Slats & Flaps	NORM
6.	**Drag Chute**	**JETTISON**
7.	Mode 4 Sel	HOLD
8.	**ECM/ALE/RWR/APX-76**	**OFF**
9.	**Radar/CW Power**	**OFF**
10.	STAB AUG Switches	OFF
11.	Internal Wing Dump	NORMAL
12.	VOR/ILS Control Panel	OFF
13.	Engine Anti-Ice	NORMAL
14.	Radar Altimeter	OFF
15.	STAB Trim	1-3 units NOSE DOWN
16.	**Reference Sel Switch**	**STBY**
17.	Rain Removal	OFF
18.	**Pitot Heat**	**OFF**

Step	System	Action
19.	IFF	OFF
20.	Temperature	FULL HOT
21.	Defog Handle	DEFOG
22.	TACAN	OFF
23.	Formation Lights	OFF
24.	Sight Shutter	CLOSED

Shutdown

Engine Shutdown (Pilot)

Step	System	Action
1.	Wheels	CHOCKED🔧
2.	UHF Radio	OFF
3.	Ejection Seat	RAISE
4.	Defog-footheat	FULL AFT
5.	Temperature	12 O'CLOCK
6.	Air Refuel Switch	EXTEND if AAR was done
7.	**Right Throttle**	**OFF**
8.	AVTR Tape	REMOVE
9.	Spoiler Actuator	CHECK (RIGHT)🔧
10.	**Left Throttle**	**OFF**
11.	**Engine Master Switches**	**OFF**

Engine Shutdown (WSO)

Step	System	Action
1.	UHF Radio	OFF
2.	Ejection Seat	RAISE
3.	INS	OFF
4.	NAV Computer	OFF
5.	Target Designator	OFF

Before Leaving Cockpit

Step	System	Action
1.	(P-WSO) All Switches and Controls	OFF

Step	System	Action
2.	(P-WSO) Oxygen Diluter	100%

Special Procedures

This subchapter contains special procedures for operating the F-4E Phantom II.

Pilots scramble to their F-4 Phantom II aircraft on alert during exercise William Tell '80

Cartridge Start

This procedure is based upon external power not being available. During routine (other than scramble/exercise) cartridge starts, it is advisable to use external electrical power, if available, as this will allow use of the CNI, fire and overheat warning circuits, and all engine instruments during the start. If external power is used, normal generator switching should be used. To avoid possible irritation caused by cartridge exhaust smoke/gases, it may be advisable to close canopies and select 100% oxygen during start cycle.

> 🔴 WARNING: Never attempt to load or unload a cartridge in either starter with the engine master switches on, ground refueling switch on, or external electrical power applied. If a malfunction in safety circuits occurs, serious injury could result.

Step	System	Action
1.	**Engine master switches**	**ON**
2.	**Right generator switch**	**GEN ON**
3.	**Ignition button**	**PRESS AND HOLD**
4.	**Throttle**	**HALF THEN IDLE**
5.	**Engine start switch**	**R (right)**
6.	**At Lightoff (EGT INCR)**	
	Ignition Button	**RELEASE**
7.	Check Parameters	
	a. Exhaust Gas Temperature	220 - 420 °C
	b. Idle RPM	65 ± 1%
	c. Right Boost Pump	30 ± 5 PSI
	d. Oil Pressure	12 - 50 PSI
	e. Fuel Flow Indicator	800 - 1400 pph
	f. Hydraulic Pressure	WITHIN LIMITS
8.	Spoiler Actuator	CHECK (LEFT)🔧

Step	System	Action
9.	Air Refueling door	CHECK🔧 (if required)
10.	**Left Engine**	**START PER STEPS 1-7**
11.	**Left Generator**	**ON**
12.	Right Generator	CYCLE OFF/ON
13.	Bus Tie Open Light	OUT
14.	Interior Check	COMPLETE

Single Engine Taxi

When required left engine may be shut down first.

Step	System	Action
1.	Right generator switch	OFF
2.	BUS TIE OPEN light	OFF
3.	Utility hydraulic pressure	WITHIN LIMITS
4.	Right engine throttle	OFF

Hot Refueling

Before refueling:

Step	System	Action
1.	Single-engine taxi procedures	COMPLETE
2.	Internal wing transfer switch	NORMAL
3.	External transfer switch	OFF
4.	Air refuel switch	EXTEND
4.	After entering hot pad area, establish voice contact (intercom with pilot and refueling supervisor).	
5.	Refuel selection switch	AS DESIRED

During refueling:

Step	System	Action
1.	Remain alert to all visual and voice signals from the refueling supervisor.	
2.	Monitor ground control frequency.	

After refueling:

Step	System	Action
1.	Air refuel switch	RETRACT
2.	Refuel selection switch	INT ONLY

Scramble

The following scramble procedures assume that the following actions have been completed prior to the aircraft being placed on an alert status (subject to scramble type activities):

- Complete preflight inspection to include a power-on cockpit inspection, engine operational check, and operational check of speed brakes, flaps, flight controls and stab aug in accordance with normal BEFORE TAXIING (FRONT COCKPIT) checks.
- INS aligned and placed in heading memory.
- Aircraft is cocked for scramble per local policy and instructions.

If the above actions are not completed prior to scramble, normal procedure should be used.

Before Taxiing (Front Cockpit)

Step	System	Action
1.	Communication and navigation equipment	ON AND CHECK
2.	Emergency attitude indicator	SET
3.	Altimeter & SPC	SET & CHECK
4.	Takeoff trim	CHECK
5.	Slats flaps	OUT & DOWN🔧
6.	Clearance to taxi from WSO	
7.	Reference system selector	PRIM
8.	Seat pins	CHECK REMOVED & STOWED
9.	Personal equipment	CHECK
10.	Wheel chocks	REMOVE🔧

Before Taxiing (Rear Cockpit)

Step	Description	Action
1.	Communication and navigation equipment	ON & CHECK
2.	APX-80 mode switch	PASSIVE/OFF
3.	Pressure altimeter	SET & CHECK
4.	Radar power	STBY
5.	Radar overtemp light	OFF, MONITOR
6.	NAV Computer Mode	STBY
7.	Heading memory alignment	COMPLETE
	If the inertial navigation set has not been previously aligned for heading memory, attitude reference can be obtained by performing a coarse alignment (ALIGN - wait 40 seconds - NAV).	
8.	NAV Computer Mode	AS DESIRED
9.	Seat pins	CHECK REMOVED & STOWED
10.	Personal equipment	CHECK
11.	Notify pilot	CLEAR TO TAXI

Before Takeoff

Step	Description	Action
1.	Flight instruments	CHECK & SET
2.	Stab aug switches	ENGAGE
3.	Flight controls	UNRESTRICTED (WSO visually check ailerons and spoilers)
4.	(P-WSO) Canopies	CLOSE & CHECKED

Step	Description	Action
13.	(WSO) Command selector valve	AS BRIEFED
5.	(P-WSO) Lower ejection handle guards	CLEAR (not applicable)
6.	Fuel panel	SET & CHECKED
	a. Internal wing transfer	NORMAL
	b. External transfer	AS REQUIRED
7.	Slats flaps	CHECK OUT AND DOWN
8.	Anti-skid	ON; LIGHT OFF
9.	Warning lights	CHECKED
10.	Anti-ice	AS REQUIRED
10.	Pitot heat	ON
11.	IFF	AS REQUIRED
14.	(P-WSO) Circuit breakers	CHECK

AIM-7 Missile

AIM-7E Tuneup

Step	System	Action
1.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	CW ON
	a. RDR tuned lights	STDY FOR 4 MIN
2.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	STBY
	a. RDR tuned lights	OFF

AIM-7F Tuneup

Step	System	Action
1.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	CW OFF FOR 1 MIN
2.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	CW ON
	a. RDR tuned lights	ON
3.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	STBY
	a. RDR tuned lights	REMAIN ON

AIM-7 Launch

WSO

Step	System	Action
1.	RADAR POWER	OPR
2.	RADAR MODE	RDR,MAP-B OR BST
3.	POLAR SWITCH	LIN OR CIR 1
4.	ASPECT KNOB	AS REQUIRED

Step	System	Action
5.	MANEUVER SWITCH	AS REQUIRED
6.	STAB SWITCH	AS REQUIRED

Pilot

Step	System	Action
1.	RADAR MISSILE POWER SWITCH	CW ON
	a. RDR tuned lights	ON
2.	MISSILE INTERLOCK SWITCH	AS REQUIRED
3.	SIGHT MODE	A/A
4.	GUNS/MISSILE SWITCH	HEAT (OR AS REQUIRED)
	a. Head-up RADAR light	ON
5.	MASTER ARM	ON
	a. Head-up ARM light	ON
6.	TARGET LOCKON	ACCOMPLISH
	For ACM Mode:	
	a. CAGE Button	PRESS
	b. Align target in Boresight	
	c. Nosewheel steering Button	PRESS TO ACCOMPLISH CAA LOCK
7.	GUNS/MISSILE SWITCH	RADAR
8.	IN-RANGE LIGHTS	ON
9.	SHOOT LIGHTS	ON
10.	TRIGGER	SQUEEZE AND RELEASE

AIM-9 Missile

AIM-9 Launch

Pilot

Step	System	Action
1.	SIGHT MODE	A/A
2.	GUNS/MISSILE SWITCH	HEAT
	a. Head-up HEAT light	ON
3.	MISSILE AURAL TONE	ADJUST
4.	MASTER ARM	ARM
	a. Head-up ARM light	ON
5.	UNCAGE SEEKER	
	a. ARR BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
	b. NOTE: Seeker is only uncaged while ARR button is pressed and held	ON
6.	SHOOT LIGHTS	FLASHING
7.	TRIGGER	SQUEEZE AND RELEASE

Pilot with ACM Mode

Step	System	Action
1.	SIGHT MODE	A/A
2.	GUNS/MISSILE SWITCH	HEAT
	a. Head-up HEAT light	ON
3.	MISSILE AURAL TONE	ADJUST
4.	MASTER ARM	ARM
	a. Head-up ARM light	ON
5.	ACCOMPLISH RADAR LOCK	

Step	System	Action
	a. CAGE Button	PRESS
	b. Align target in Boresight	
	c. Nosewheel steering Button	PRESS TO ACCOMPLISH CAA LOCK
5.	UNCAGE SEEKER	
	a. ARR BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
	b. NOTE: Seeker is only uncaged while ARR button is pressend and held	ON
6.	SHOOT LIGHTS	FLASHING
7.	TRIGGER	SQUEEZE AND RELEASE

M61A1 Nose gun and SUU-23

Pilot

Step	System	Action
1.	SIGHT MODE	A/G OR A/A AS REQ
2.	RETICLE DEPRESSION KNOB	SET (A/G ONLY)
3.	RATE SWITCH	HIGH/LOW
4.	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	OFF
5.	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	NOT TV OR ARM
6.	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	GUN
	FOR GUN PODS:	
	a. STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
7.	FOR A/A:	
	b. GUNS/MISSILE SWITCH	GUN
8.	TRIGGER	SQUEEZE

AGM-45 Missile

AGM-45 Tuneup

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) INS MODE	NAV
2	SIGHT MODE	A/G
3	(WSO) BOMBING TIMER	SET
	a. Pullup timer	SET
4	(WSO) RELEASE ANGLE	SET
	a. Low angle (LOFT)	SET
5	(WSO) WRCS INPUTS	SET
	a. Target altitude	SET
	b. Release advance	SET
6	DELIVERY MODE	SET
	a. WRCS mode	AGM-45
	b. AN/AJB-7 mode	LOFT
	c. Direct mode	DIRECT
7	MASTER ARM	SAFE
8	WEAPON SELECT	ARM
9	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATION
10	REJECT SWITCH	SET
	a. WRCS mode	DF REJ
	b. LOFT mode	NORM

AGM-45 Launch

Step	System	Action
1	MASTER ARM SWITCH	ARM
2	ADI VERTICAL DIRECTOR POINTER	NULL

Step	System	Action
3	BOMB BUTTON	PRESS

AGM-65 Missile

AGM-65 Tuneup

Step	System	Action
1	OPTICAL SIGHT	SET
	a. Sight mode	A/G
	b. Reticle depression	45 MILS
2	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	TV
3	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	DIRECT
4	STATION SELECT BUTTON	SELECT STATION
	(3-MINUTE WARM UP)	
5	(WSO) DSCG SCOPE MODE	TV OR STBY
6	(P) WEAPON VIDEO (PULL TRIGGER)	ON

Pilot

Step	System	Action
1	PIPPER POSITION	OVER TARGET
2	ARR BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
3	SEEKER	SLEW OVER TGT
4	ARR BUTTON	RELEASE TO LOCK TGT
5	(P OR WSO) BOMB BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
6	FOR NEXT MISSILE	REPEAT STEP 2 TO 5

WSO

STEP	System	Action
1	ACTION SWITCH	HALF ACTION
2	SEEKER	SLEW OVER TGT

STEP	System	Action
3	ACTION SWITCH	FA/RELEASE TO LOCK TGT
4	(P OR WSO) BOMB BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
5	FOR NEXT MISSILE	REPEAT STEP 2 TO 4

AGM-12 Bullpup

AGM-12 Bullpup launch

Step	System	Action
1	OPTICAL SIGHT	SET
	a. Sight mode	A/G
2	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	AGM-12
3	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	DIRECT
4	STATION SELECT BUTTON	SELECT STATION
5	PIPPER POSITION	OVER TARGET
6	BOMB BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
7	AFTER LAUNCH OF MISSILE	GUIDE TO TARGET WITH HAND SLEW CONTROL

EO-Guided Bombs

GBU-8 HOBOS and AGM-62 Walleye 1/2 Tune-Up

Step	System	Action
1	OPTICAL SIGHT	SET
	a. Sight mode	A/G
	b. Reticle depression	17 MILS
2	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	TV
3	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	DIRECT
4	STATION SELECT BUTTON	SELECT STATION
	(3-MINUTE WARM UP)	
5	(WSO) DSCG SCOPE MODE	TV OR STBY
6	(P) WEAPON VIDEO	ON

Launch

Step	System	Action
1	PIPPER POSITION	OVER TARGET
2	TRIGGER	FIRST STAGE AND HOLD TILL RELEASE
3	BOMB BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD TILL RELEASE
4	FOR NEXT MISSILE	REPEAT STEP 2 TO 3

Bomb Procedures

There are different bombing modes found in the F-4E, in the following chapter you can find procedures for the different modes.

Bomb Delivery - Direct

Step	System	Action
1	OPTICAL SIGHT	SET
	a. Sight mode	A/G
	b. Reticle depression knob	SET
2	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	DIRECT
3	WEAPON SELECT	BOMBS
4	AWRU	SET
	a. Interval controls	SET
	b. Quantity knob	SET
5	NOSE/TAIL ARM SWITCH	AS REQ
6	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
7	MASTER ARM	ARM
8	BOMB BUTTON	PRESS

Bomb Delivery - Dive Toss and Dive Laydown

Step	System	Action
1	SIGHT MODE	A/G
2	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	DT / DL
3	HSI MODE SWITCHES	NAV COMP
4	(WSO) RADAR MODE	AIR-GRD
5	(WSO) RADAR RANGE	5 OR 10 NM
6	(WSO) RADAR POWER	OPR
7	(WSO) ANTENNA STAB SWITCH	NOR
8	(WSO)(DT ONLY) WRCS DRAG COEFF	SET
9	(WSO)(DL ONLY) WRCS RELEASE RANGE	SET
10	(WSO)(IF REQ) WRCS RELEASE ADVANCE	SET
11	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	BOMBS
12	AWRU	SET
	a. Interval controls	SET
	b. Quantity knob	SET
13	NOSE/TAIL ARM SWITCH	AS REQ
14	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
15	MASTER ARM SWITCH	ARM

Dive on Target (DT ONLY)

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) RECEIVER GAIN	MIN
2	(WSO) LOCK ON TGT (CALL OUT)	

Step	System	Action
3	BOMB BUTTON (PRESS AND HOLD)	AFTER BOMB RELEASE
4	BOMB BUTTON (RELEASE)	

Bomb Delivery - Laydown

Step	System	Action
1	SIGHT MODE	A/G
2	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	LAYDOWN(L)
3	RETICLE DEPRESSION KNOB	SET(IF REQ)
4	HSI MODE SWITCHES	NAV COMP
5	(WSO) WRCS TARGET RANGE	SET
	a. Set the distance IP <-> TGT	
6	(WSO) WRCS RELEASE RANGE	SET
7	(WSO) WRCS RELEASE ADVANCE	SET(IF REQ)
8	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	BOMBS
9	AWRU	SET
	a. Interval controls	SET
	b. Quantity knob	SET
10	NOSE/TAIL ARM SWITCH	SET
11	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
12	MASTER ARM SWITCH	ARM
13	BOMB RELEASE BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
	AFTER BOMB RELEASE	
14	BOMB RELEASE BUTTON	RELEASE

Bomb Delivery - Loft

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) ACTIVATE SWITCH	NORMAL
2	(WSO) LOW ANGLE KNOB	SET
3	(WSO) PULLUP TIMER	SET
4	(WSO) RELEASE TIMER	SET ZERO
5	DELIVERY MODE KNOB	LOFT
6	WEAPON SELECT KNOB	BOMBS
7	AWRU	SET
	a. Interval controls	SET
	b. Quantity knob	SET
8	NOSE/TAIL ARM SWITCH	AS REQ
9	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
10	MASTER ARM SWITCH	ARM

Over IP

Step	System	Action
1	BOMB BUTTON	PRESS AND HOLD
2	AT PULL-UP POINT	INITIATE PULL-UP
	AFTER BOMB RELEASE	
3	BOMB BUTTON	RELEASE

Bomb Delivery - LABS, TGT FIND and OFFSET

Step	System	Action
1	Sight mode knob	A/G
2	Delivery mode knob	OFFSET BOMB or TGT FIND
3	(WSO) Target find switch	HOLD
4	Navigation mode knob	NAV COMP
5	HSI mode switches	NAV COMP
6	(WSO) INS mode knob	NAV
7	(WSO) Navigation mode selector switch	NAV COMP
8	(WSO) WRCS input counters	SET
		a. Target distance N IS -100-foot increments
		b. Target distance E/W - 100-foot increments
		c. IP altitude MSL - 100-foot increments
		d. Release range - 10-foot or 100-foot increments (OFFSET BOMB)
		e. Release range - LABS pullup range, 10-foot or 100-foot increments
		f. Release advance - Milliseconds (OFFSET BOMB if required)
9	Weapon select knob	BOMBS (OFFSET BOMB)
10	AWRU	SET
		a. Interval controls - SET
		b. Quantity knob - SET

Step	System	Action
11	Nose/tail arm switch	ON (as required)
12	Station select	LOADED STATION(S)
13	Master arm switch	ARM
14	(WSO) Dual timers	SET
		a. Pullup timer - T1
		b. Release timer - T2
15	(WSO) Release gyro	SET
		a. Low angle (LOFT) - DEG

Before Bomb Run

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) Radar power	OPR
2	(WSO) Radar mode	MAP PPI
3	(WSO) Antenna stab switch	NOR
4	(WSO) Cursor intensity	ADJUST
5	(WSO) Antenna elevation	ADJUST
6	(WSO) Scan switch	WIDE
7	(WSO) Radar range	AI 10 or AI 25

Bomb Run - Offset Radar IP

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) Operate along track control	Position range cursor over RIP
2	(WSO) Operate cross track control	Position offset cursor over RIP
3	(WSO) Freeze button	PUSH ON
4	(WSO) Target insert button	PUSH ON
		The steering instruments display steering

Step	System	Action
		commands when the target insert button is pushed ON, and the cursor intersection will position over the target location and track the target. If the target is on the scope, set the target elevation on the ALT RANGE counter and touch up the cursors over the target.
5	Bomb release button	PRESS and HOLD (OFFSET BOMB)
		a. At bomb release, pullup light - ON
		b. When a station is empty, station ARM light - OFF
	When the aircraft is on course to the target and at the preplanned release altitude and airspeed, press and hold the bomb release button until the bomb is released, as indicated by illumination of the pullup light.	

Bomb Run - Visual IP Flyover

Step	System	Action
1	(WSO) When over IP, freeze button and target insert button	PUSH ON
2	Bomb release button	PRESS and HOLD (OFFSET BOMB)
		a. At bomb release, pullup light - ON

Step	System	Action
		b. When a station is empty, station ARM light - OFF
		When the aircraft is on course to the target and at the preplanned release altitude and true airspeed, press and hold the bomb release button until bomb release occurs, indicated by the illumination of the pullup light.

Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find

Step	System	Action
1	Delivery mode knob (LABS)	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find AS REQUIRED Select the planned delivery mode. NOTE: With the target find switch on HOLD, the delivery mode selector may be positioned to any LABS mode without losing WRCS function.
2	(WSO) Along track and cross track controls	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find AS REQUIRED (Visual or Radar IP)
3	(WSO) Freeze button	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find PUSH ON
4	(WSO) Target insert button	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find PUSH ON
5	(WSO) After target insert, activate switch	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find ON Select the ON position only after steering instruments have transitioned to the target.
6	At warning tone (T 1 start)	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find INITIATE PULLUP

Step	System	Action
7	Bomb button	Bomb Run LABS/TGT Find PRESS and HOLD

Rockets

Rocket Firing

Step	System	Action
1.	DELIVERY MODE SELECTOR KNOB	DIRECT
2.	SIGHT MODE SELECTOR KNOB	A/G
3.	RETICLE DEPRESSION KNOB	SET
4.	WEAPON SELECTOR KNOB	RKTS & DISP
5.	AWRU QTY	SINGLE OR RIPPLE
6.	STATION SELECT BUTTONS	SELECT STATIONS
7.	MASTER ARM	ARM
8.	BOMB BUTTON	DEPRESS

KY-28 Operations

Prelaunch

Step	System	Action
1	KY-28 Power	OFF and mode switch set to P
2	Code Setting	Determine that a proper code has been set by personnel qualified in voice security equipment. In DCS and in combination with SRS (Simple Radio) this is done through the ground crew communication menu in the DCS communications menu.
3	UHF Radio	ON
4	Mode Switch	P
5	Power Knob	ON
6	Ground Test	If a ground test of equipment is desired, establish two-way, plain-text radio communications on the plain-voice radio with a suitable remote station and request an equipment check. (In DCS another player is needed)
7	Mode Switch	C
8	Alarm Check	The KY-28 will perform an automatic alarm check when the mode switch is set to C and the power knob is set to On. The check will continue for

Step	System	Action
		about 2 seconds after power is applied. During this time a steady, unbroken 1200 Hz tone is heard in the headsets. Upon successful completion of the check, the 1200 Hz tone is interrupted at a 2.3 Hz rate.
9	Clear Interrupted Tone	Momentarily position the microphone button to UHF to clear the interrupted tone. When the microphone button is released, the KY-28 reverts to the standby condition and is ready for either transmission or reception. If the unit fails to pass the alarm check, the steady 1200 Hz tone continues and further cipher operation is inhibited.
10	Alarm Check Failure	Note: If the KY-28 fails the alarm check, the power knob must be set to OFF and the mode switch to P (plain) to enable conventional UHF communications.
11	Transmit Ciphered Messages	To transmit ciphered messages, position the microphone button to UHF and wait until a momentary tone is heard before voice input. With the power knob set to ON, the momentary tone is delayed 0.5 seconds after pressing the microphone

Step	System	Action
		button. During this time, an encryption check is performed and the sync preamble is transmitted to receiving stations. If the encryption check fails, a 1200 Hz tone interrupted at a 2.3 Hz rate is presented in the headsets and cipher transmission is not possible. If the encryption check succeeds, a momentary tone is heard in the headsets.
12	Cipher Radio Communications	After the momentary tone is heard, establish two-way cipher radio communications with a cooperating station and check for readability and signal strength and/or transmit your message. Upon releasing the microphone button, the KY-28 will return to the standby condition. Simultaneous transmission by two or more stations on the same frequency is not possible and may result in garbled messages or loss of synchronization.
13	Resume Normal Communications	Resume normal, non-crypto communications if desired at any time by setting the mode switch to P (plain) again.
14	In-Flight Check	Note: The above procedures may be used

Step	System	Action
		to perform an in-flight check of the equipment.

Postlaunch

Step	System	Action
1	Equipment Operation	The speech security equipment shall be operated as briefed.
2	**Warning:**	If ZEROIZE is pressed during flight, ciphered communication is not possible. The code can only be reset (or changed) through the ground crew communications menu after landing.

After Landing

Step	System	Action
1	Zeroize as briefed.	
2	Power Off	OFF

Pave Spike Operations

Turn on

Step	Action	Button
1	Ensure power to the aircraft (main AC bus and main DC bus)	
2	Ensure corresponding CBs are not pulled	No. 4 CB Panel, WSO left wall
3	POWER ON Button (WSO, Target Designator Set Control)	Press and confirm lamp lit
4	BIT 1	Confirm MALF not lit
5	Video Select Switch	ASQ-153 (WSO, main panel)
6	DSCG Mode	TV (pilot or WSO)
7	Un-stow	Press STOW button and wait 5 seconds and confirm lamp off
8	Confirm DSCG on and displaying pod camera feed	

Built-In-Test (BIT) Procedures

This chapter contains every Built-In-Test (BIT) Procedure for the Radar System, including Air-to-Ground BITs and Air-to-Air BITs, the DSCG Screen itself, the Pave Spike Targeting pod, the TACAN system and the VOR/ILS System.

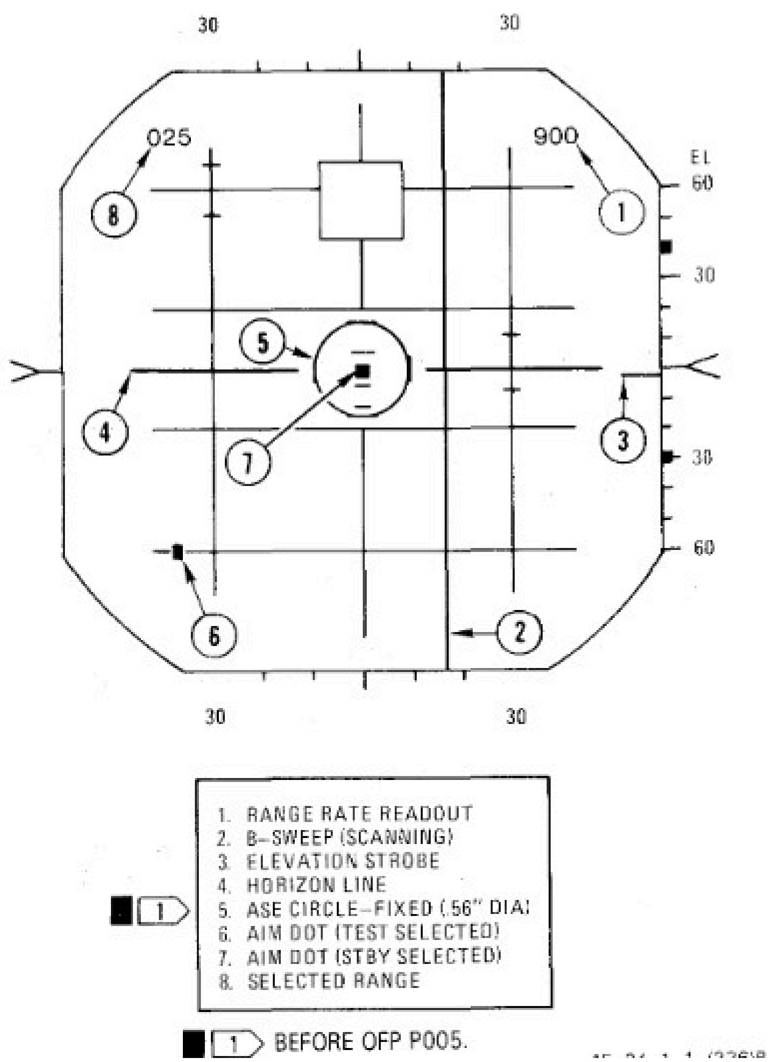
Radar Air-to-Air Bits

BIT 0 Aim Dot and Range Rate Calibration

Step	System	Action
1.	Radar Power Knob	STBY
2.	DSCG Mode Knob	RDR BIT
	a. Test Grid	Aligned ±1/16 inches
3.	Test Knob	DOT BAL and HOLD
	a. Aim Dot	Centered
	b. Range Rate	±20 knots
4.	Radar Power Knob	TEST
5.	Test Knob	DOT BAL and HOLD
	a. Aim Dot	In Calibration Area
	b. Range Rate	900 ±50 knots
6.	Adjust Horizon Line	Zero Pitch
7.	Radar Range Knob	AI 10
8.	DSCG Mode Knob	DSCG TEST
	a. Search Display	Eight Shades of Gray
	b. Adjust BRT	Optimal
	c. Adjust CONTR	Optimal
9.	DSCG Mode Knob	RDR BIT
10.	Radar Range Knob	AI 25
11.	Position EL Strobe	30° Down
	(Prevents radar antenna from hitting stops)	
12.	Stab Switch	OUT
	a. Horizon Line	Removed

Step	System	Action
13.	Stab Switch	NOR
14.	Radar Power Knob	STBY

BIT 0 DSCG

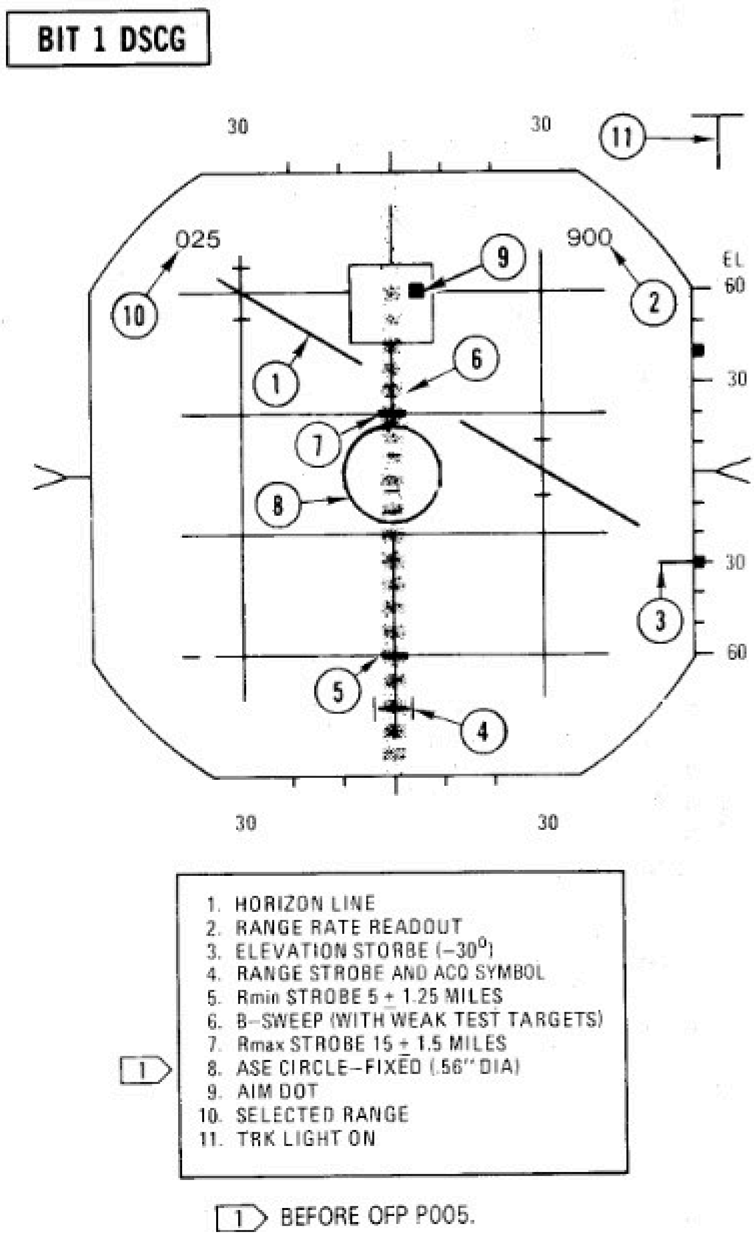


BIT 1 Minimum Discernible Signal, Lockon Sensitivity, Range Track Memory

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 1

Step	System	Action
2.	Radar power knob	TEST
	a. Monitor meter (RDR MAG)	Indicates 1.4 to 1.8.
	b. Horizon line	Within limit markers as shown.
3.	Adjust indicators	For optimum contrast (CONTR) and brightness (BRT).
	a. Minimum targets	11 targets visible in search.
	b. Position range knob	To 5, 10, 50, 100, 200, and 25 while checking video.
4.	Place acquisition symbol beyond the last target.	
5.	Move range strobe down while holding full action.	
	a. Range strobe locks on before passing seven targets.	
	b. Maintain lockon for 5 seconds.	
6.	Test knob	Set 0
	a. System unlocks in 4 to 6 seconds.	
7.	Test knob	Set 1
8.	Pulse switch	SHORT
	a. Monitor meter (RDR MAG)	Indicates 0.9 to 1.15.
	b. Minimum targets	Eight targets visible in search.
9.	Place acquisition symbol beyond the last target.	
10.	Move range strobe down while holding full action.	
	a. Range strobe locks on before passing eight targets.	

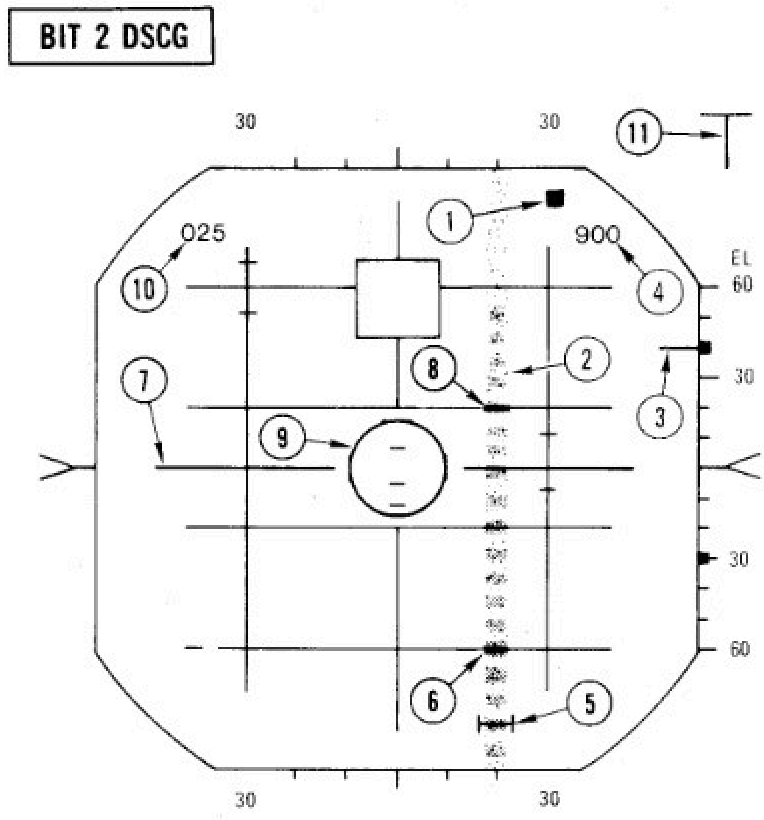
Step	System	Action
	b. Maintain lockon for 5 seconds.	
11.	Test knob	0 for 3 seconds then select TEST 1
	a. System goes into memory for 3 seconds, then re-acquires lockon.	
	b. Range rate readout flashes at 4 HZ for 3 seconds.	
12.	(P) Radar missile power	STBY FOR 1 MINUTE
13.	(P) Radar missile power	CW ON
	a. RDR light	ON STEADY 1 MINUTE
14.	Meter selector	KLY
	a. Meter reads	0.25 to 1.25
15.	Lock on third target	
	a. Aim dot in box	
	b. Range rate 900 ±200 knots	
	c. Break lock	



BIT 2 Range Track Acceleration, Antenna Position

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 2
2.	Lock on 10th target	
	a. System breaks lock in less than 30 seconds.	

Step	System	Action
3.	Lock on second target	
	a. System maintains lock for at least 30 seconds.	
	b. Range rate readout 900 ±200 knots	
4.	Break lock	
5.	Pulse switch	AUTO
	BEACON CHECK	
6.	Radar mode knob	BEACON
	a. BIT targets disappear and at least one beacon target reappears.	
7.	Radar mode knob	MAP



1. AIM DOT
2. B–SWEEP (DITHERED, AT 20° RIGHT WITH STRONG TARGETS)
3. ELEVATION STROBE (40° UP)
4. RANGE RATE READOUT 900 ± 200 KNOTS
5. RANGE STROBE (ON 2nd TARGET) AND ACQ SYMBOL
6. Rmin STROBE 5 ± 1.25 MILES
7. HORIZON LINE
8. Rmax STROBE 15 ± 1.5 MILES
9. [1] ASE CIRCLE – FIXED (.56" DIA)
10. SELECTED RANGE
11. TRK LIGHT ON

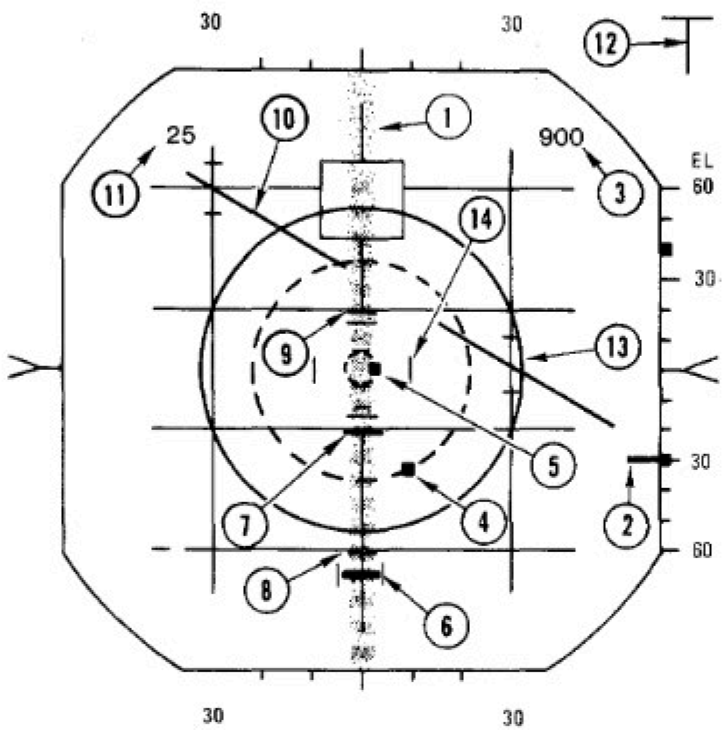
[1] BEFORE OFP P005.

BIT 3 Angle Track

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 3
	a. B-sweep and EL strobe at 0 ±0.2° (before lockon).	
2.	Lock on fourth target	

Step	System	Action
	a. Aim dot rotates between ASE circle and the segmented circle (not exceeding either by more than 1/4 inch).	
	b. Rmax and Rmin at 15 and 5 miles.	
	c. ASE circle as shown.	
	d. EL strobe goes 30° down (after lockon).	
3.	Break lock and lock on 10th target	
	a. Aim dot rotates inside ASE circle.	
4.	Maintain lockon for BIT 4.	

BIT 3 DSCG

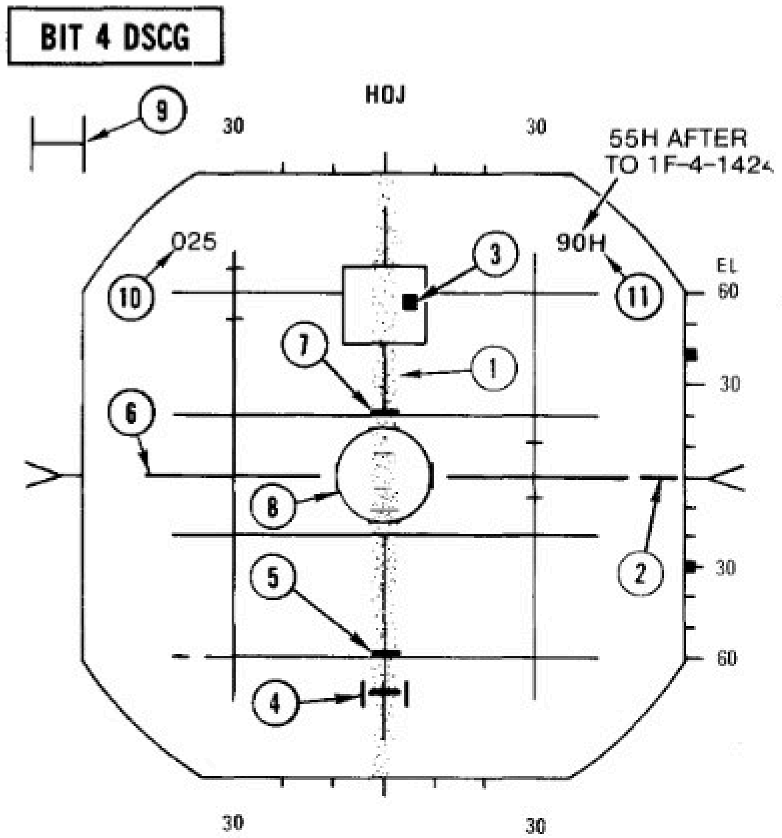


1. B–SWEEP (DITHERED, AT 0^{0} WITH STRONG TEST TARGETS)
2. ELEVATION STROBE (-30^{0}) AFTER LOCKON
3. DISREGARD RANGE RATE
4. AIM DOT (ROTATING) LOCKED ON 4th TARGET
5. AIM DOT (ROTATING) LOCKED ON 10th TARGET
6. RANGE STROBE ON 4th TARGET AND ACQ SYMBOL
7. RANGE STROBE ON 10th TARGET
8. Rmin STROBE AND 5th TARGET ALIGNED ON FIRST RANGE GRID LINE
9. Rmax STROBE AND 15th TARGET ALIGNED ON 3rd RANGE GRID LINE
10. HORIZON LINE
11. SELECTED RANGE
12. TRK LIGHT ON
13. ASE CIRCLE (INTERSECTS 10 AND 15 MILE GRID AT 30^{0})
14. OUTER LIMIT MARKS

BIT 4 HOJ, Angle Track Memory, AOJ, Pseudo & Simulated Doppler, Corridor Scan

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 4 (figure a).
	a. All BIT targets disappear but lockon	

Step	System	Action
	presentation remains.	
	b. H light ON	
	c. Range rate readout flashing, indicates 900 ±.200 knots, and last digit is replaced with the letter H.	
2.	(P) Radar missile power switch	OFF (or when AIM-7 missiles are turned).
3.	Position B-sweep and EL strobe	At 0° for reference.
4.	Radar power knob	STBY.
	a. B-sweep and EL strobe drift less than +5° before unlock.	
5.	Radar power knob	TEST.
6.	Action switch	FA (figure b).
	a. AOJ display appears.	
	b. Range rate readout disappears And H light OFF.	
7.	Track switch	AOJ OUT.
	a. System returns to search.	
8.	Track switch	AUTO.
9.	Display	VI.
	a. B-sweep covers 3 bars on selected CAA corridor.	
	b. EL-strobe scans from -21° to +57°.	
10.	Display	B-wide.



1. B–SWEEP (DITHERED, at 0°, NO VISIBLE TARGETS)
2. ELEVATION STROBE (0°)
3. AIM DOT IN TEST LIMIT BOX (NOT MANUALLY POSITIONABLE)
4. RANGE STROBE (AT 4 MILES) AND ACQ SYMBOL
5. Rmin STROBE 5 ± 1.25 MILES
6. HORIZON LINE
7. Rmax STROBE 15 ± 1.5 MILES
8. ASE CIRCLE – FIXED (.56" DIA)
9. HOJ LIGHT ON
10. SELECTED RANGE
11. RANGE RATE READOUT (FLASHING) LAST DIGIT DISPLAYS H

1

Figure a

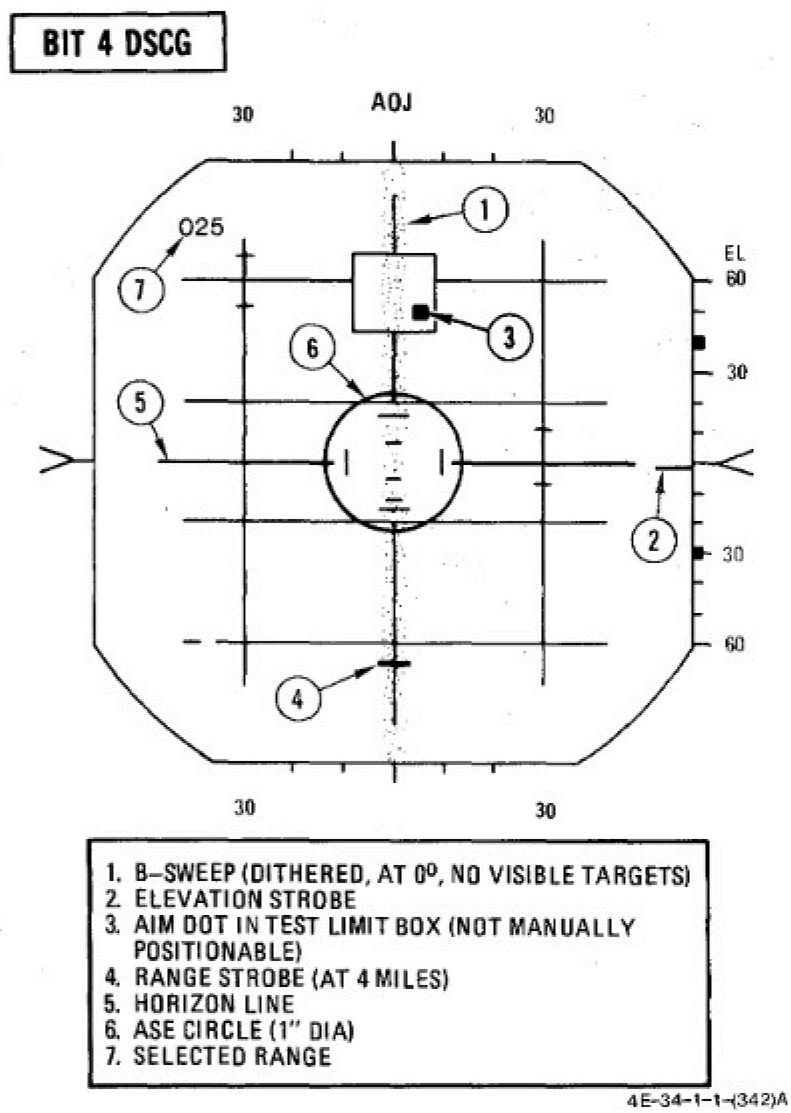


Figure b

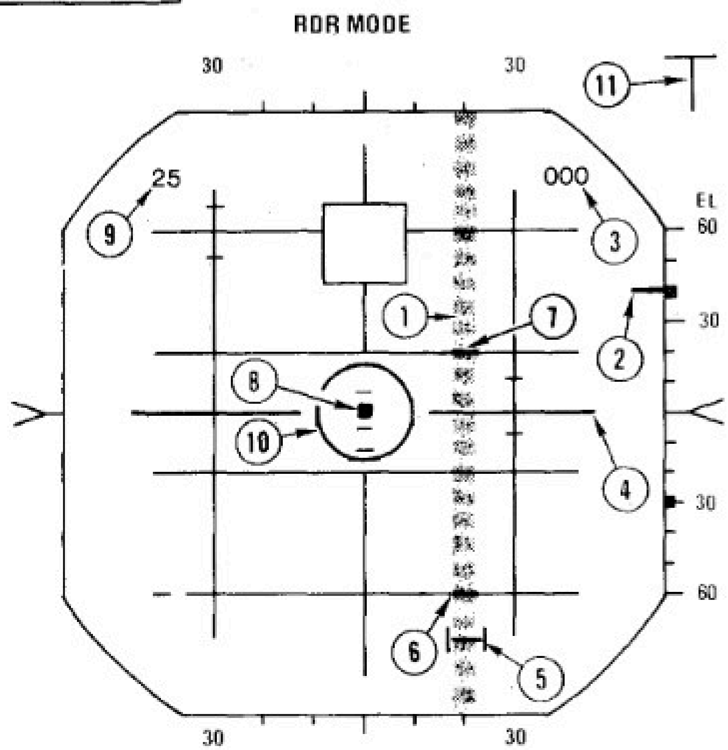
BIT 5 Range Rate Noise, PLMS, CAA

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 5
2.	Lock on third target	
	a. Range rate readout 0 ± 300 knots.	
	b. Aim dot inside of ASE circle.	
	c. ASE circle 0.56 inch diameter.	

Step	System	Action
3.	Break lock	
4.	Pulse switch	SHORT
5.	(P) Sight mode knob	A/A
6.	Radar mode knob	BST
7.	Range knob	AI 5
8.	(P) Auto acq button	PRESS and RELEASE
	a. Radar locks on first target	
9.	(P) Auto acq button	PRESS and RELEASE
	a. Radar breaks lock, range gate sweeps to next target and locks on.	
	b. Repeat this step through all targets.	
10.	Air-to-air button	PRESS
	a. Air-to-air light	OFF
	b. Radar control transfers to RCP.	
11.	Break lockon	
12.	Radar mode knob	MAP
13.	Range knob	AI 25
14.	Pulse switch	LONG
15.	Lock on fifth target	
	a. RDR MAG indicates 1.4 to 1.8.	
16.	Pulse switch	AUTO
	a. RDR MAG indicates 0.9 to 1.15 (PLMS).	
17.	Aspect knob	TAIL
	a. Range rate readout displays fighter heading (0°-360°)	
18.	Display knob	VI
	a. Updates fighter heading display.	

Step	System	Action
19.	Display knob	B-WIDE
	a. Discontinues fighter heading update.	

BIT 5 DSCG



1. B SWEEP (DITHERED, AT 20° RIGHT WITH STRONG TEST TARGETS)
2. ELEVATION STROBE (40° UP)
3. RANGE RATE READOUT, 000 - 300/ FIGHTER HEADING READOUT + 10°
4. HORIZON LINE
5. RANGE STROBE ON 3rd TARGET AND ACQ SYMBOL
6. Rmin STROBE 5 + 1.25 MILES
7. Rmax STROBE 15 + 1.5 MILES
8. AIM DOT POSITION WANDERING WITHIN ASE CIRCLE
9. SELECTED RANGE
10. 1 ASE CIRCLE FIXED (.56" DIA)
11. TRK LIGHT ON

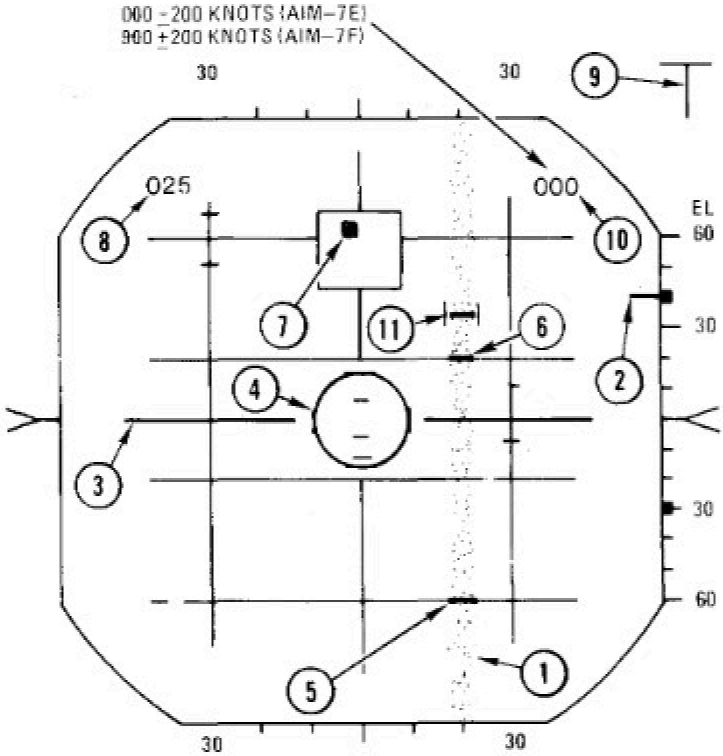
1 BEFORE OFP P005.

BIT 6 AIM-7 Attack Display and Interlocks

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	Set 6
	The T (track) light illuminates but SKIN TRK light remains OFF during this test. This is a normal indication with the DSCG.	
2.	Radar power knob	TEST
3.	Missile power switch	STBY
4.	Position range strobe	Beyond 15 miles.
	a. Rmax at 15 ± 1.5 miles, Rmin at 5 ± 1.25 miles.	
	Range rate 000 knots Indicates AIM -7E missiles/plugs installed or stations empty. 900 knots indicates AIM-7F missiles/plugs installed. After OFP P005, the OFP version number will be displayed for the first 10 seconds in place of range rate readout; for example, OFP version P005 will be approximately 500 knots.	
5.	Move range strobe down	(with half action or full action)
	a. Aim dot stationary inside box.	
	b. HOLD ALT light ON beyond 15 miles, OFF at 15 miles.	
	c. IN RANGE and SHOOT lights ON when range strobe is between Rmax and Rmin.	
	d. ASE circle remains fixed in size.	

Step	System	Action
	e. Break X occurs, ASE Circle and range rate readout disappear, IN RANGE/SHOOT lights OFF at 5 miles or less.	
6.	Radar power knob	STBY

BIT 6 DSCG

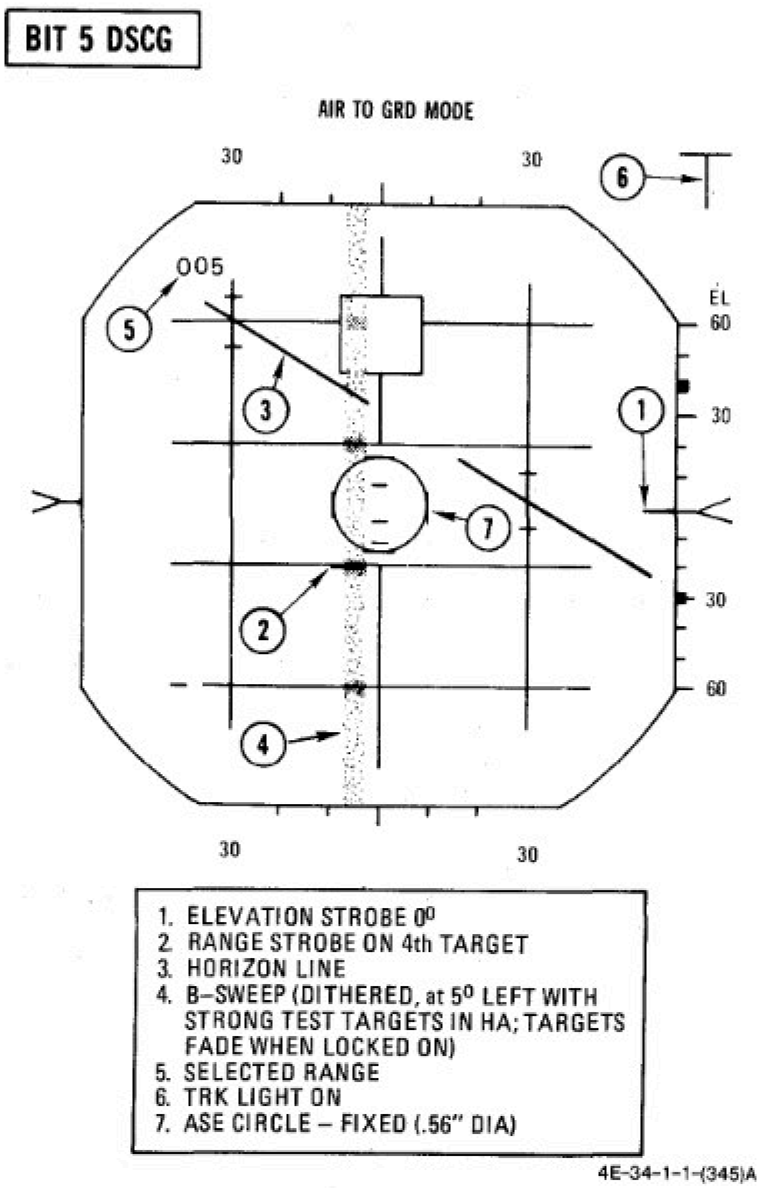


1. B-SWEEP (DITHERED, NO TARGETS, 20° RIGHT)
2. ELEVATION STROBE (40° UP)
3. HORIZON LINE
4. ASE CIRCLE FIXED (.56" DIA) ■ 1
5. Rmin STROBE AT 5 MILES
6. Rmax STROBE 15 ± 1.5 MILES
7. AIM DOT (STATIONARY IN AIM DOT TEST LIMIT BOX)
8. SELECTED RANGE
9. TRK LIGHT ON
10. RANGE RATE READOUT (NO MANUAL CONTROL)
    000 KNOTS – INDICATES AIM-7E MISSILES/PLUGS INSTALLED OR EMPTY STATIONS.
    900 KNOTS – INDICATES AIM-7F MISSILES/PLUGS INSTALLED, CW ON OR STBY.
11. RANGE STROBE (MANUAL CONTROL) AND ACQ SYMBOL

■ 1 BEFORE OFP P005.

Radar Air-to-Ground Bits

BIT 5



Range Slope and Zero

Step	System	Action
1.	(P) Sight mode knob	A/G

Step	System	Action
2.	Radar power knob	TEST
3.	Radar range knob	AI 5
4.	Radar mode knob	A/G
5.	Test knob	5
	a. Monitor (RDR MAG) 0.9 to 1.15	
	b. B-sweep 5° ±3° left of center.	
	c. Acquisition symbol centered on B-sweep (before lockon).	
	d. Horizon line indicates 30° left bank and 30° dive.	
6.	Lock on first target	
	a. ASE circle appears and B-sweep fades (AGC). AGC action reduces the B-sweep intensity and the weaker test targets fade. However, it is not abnormal for the stronger test targets to be visible in the B-sweep.	
	b. (P) Range bar at 5:00 within ±.5° (6000 feet).	
7.	Lock on second target	
	a. (P) Range bar at 3:00 within ±.5° (12,000 feet).	
8.	Lock on third target	
	a. (P) Range bar at 1:00 within ±.5° (18,000 feet).	

Bomb Range Strobe Calibration

Step	System	Action
1.	Test knob	1
2.	Display knob	PPI WIDE
3.	Radar mode knob	MAP
4.	Radar range knob	AI 10
	a. PPI sweep scans 1200 sector.	
	b. PPI sweep drift Offset 5.6°.	

Step	System	Action
	c. Far edge of bombing Strobe just touches appropriate BIT target.	

WRCS BITs

WRCS BIT

Step	System	Action
1.	INS	ALIGN or NAV
2.	Target alt/range knob	170
3.	ARBCS bombing timers	SET
	a. Pullup	5.0
	b. Release	10.0
4.	(P) BRG/DIST switch	NAV COMP
5.	(WSO) Nav mode switch	NAV COMP

Laydown Mission

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	LAYDOWN
2.	BIT button	PUSH and HOLD
3.	After 5 seconds, FRZ button.	PUSH ON
	a. Range indicator	ON
	b. After 15 seconds	GO/NO GO

Dive Laydown Mission

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	DIVE LAYDOWN
2.	BIT button	PUSH and HOLD
3.	After 5 seconds, FRZ button.	PUSH ON
	a. Alt indicator	ON
	b. After 15 seconds	GO/NO GO

Dive Toss Mission

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	DIVE TOSS
2.	BIT button	PUSH and HOLD
3.	After 5 seconds, FRZ button.	PUSH ON
	a. Alt indicator	ON
	b. After 15 seconds	GO/NO GO

AGM-45 Mission

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	AGM-45
2.	BIT button	PUSH and HOLD
	a. BDHI and HSI miles 7.6 ± 1.0 NM	
	b. Alt indicator	ON
3.	After 5 seconds, FRZ button.	PUSH ON
	a. BDHI and HSI miles DECREASE	
	b. AOA lower indexer	PULL UP COMMAND
	c. After 10 seconds, AOA center indexer	LEVEL COMMAND
	d. After 5 seconds	GO/NO GO
	e. After 5 seconds, AOA upper indexer	DIVE COMMAND

Target Find/Offset Bomb Mission

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	TGT FIND/OFFSET BOMB
2.	BIT button	PUSH and HOLD
	a. Alt indicator	ON
3.	After 5 seconds, along track cursor control	MOVE

Step	System	Action
4.	Cross track control	MOVE
5.	Cursor intensity	ADJUST
6.	Reset button	PUSH
	a. Cursors return to zero range and azimuth.	
7.	Target insert button	PUSH ON
	a. Along track cursor	6.5 NM on 00 grid line (±.2000 feet)
	b. Cross track cursor	30° +1.5° RIGHT
	c. (P) HSI bearing pointer	23° ±.2.5° (right of lubber); HSI TGT light - ON
	d. TGT INS light	ON
	e. BDHI #1 needle	23° ±.5° (right of top index)
	f. (P-WSO) HSI and BDHI miles	4.8±.1.0 NM
	g. (P) Sight roll tabs	ROTATED CLOCKWISE
	h. (P) ADI vertical pointer	DEFLECTS FULL RIGHT
8.	After 5 seconds, FRZ button.	PUSH ON
	a. (P-WSO) HSI and BDHI miles	DECREASE TO ZERO, THEN INCREASE
	b. (P) Sight roll tabs	ROTATES (as miles passes through zero)
	c. After 15 seconds	GO/NO GO

Bomb Range Calibration/Integration Check

Step	System	Action
1.	INS mode	NAV
2.	WRCS control panel	SET
	a. Target distance N/S	N120
	b. Target distance E/W	000
	c. Target altitude	SET PRESENT

Step	System	Action
		AIRCRAFT HSL (29.92)
	d. Release advance	000
	e. Release range	000
3.	Weapons delivery panel	SET
	a. Activate switch	NORM
	b. Target find switch	HOLD
	c. Range switch	X100
4.	Front cockpit switches	SET
	a. Delivery mode	T LAD
	b. Weapon select	BOMBS
	c. Station select buttons	OFF
	d. Armament override	PUSH IN
5.	Timers	SET (values for delivery)
	a. Pullup timer	
	b. Release timer	
6.	Target insert button	PUSH ON
	a. Along track cursor	Jumps to second BIT target
7.	WRCS distance counters N/S	Increase or decrease until near edges of along track cursor and second BIT target coincide.
	a. Note difference between counter and N120.	
	b. For larger counter value, correction is +; for smaller counter value the correction is -.	
8.	Target distance N/S	RESET
	a. Set preflight release range adjusted for calibration error in step 7.	
	b. Release range switch	NORM or X100 (as required)
	c. Activate switch	ON

Step	System	Action
9.	Release range counter	INCREASE (slowly until 1/3 second tone)
	a. Check timer accuracy.	
	b. (P) Check LABS indications.	
	c. Note difference between derived RR counter reading and preflight release/activation range and apply as correction to all ranges.	
	(1) For larger counter value, correction is+; for smaller counter value, the correction is-.	

WRCS turn off

Step	System	Action
1.	WRCS BIT selector	RELEASE and OFF
2.	Target alt/range counter	000
3.	Weapons delivery panel	
	a. Activate switch	NORM
	b. Target find switch	NORM
	c. Range switch	NORM
4.	WRCS control panel	RESET

Navigation Tests

TACAN Test

Step	System	Action
1.	Function selector knob	T/R
	Allow 90 seconds for warmup	
2.	Course	SET TO 180°.
3.	Tacan test button	PRESS AND RELEASE
4.	Observe the following:	
	a. Test indicator	Flashes momentarily.
	b. Course and range flags	In view.
	c. Bearing pointer	Slews to 270° for about 7 seconds.
	d. Course and range flags	Out of view.
	e. Distance	Indicates 0.0 +0.5 miles (-0.5 miles indicated as 399.5 miles).
	f. Bearing pointer	Slews to 180° +3°.
	g. Course deviation indicator	Within 1/2 dot from center.
	h. TO-FROM indicator	Indicates TO.
	i. After about 15 seconds, Course and range flags in view until test complete.	

VOR/ILS Test

Step	System	Action
1.	ILS frequency Selector	Select frequency on indicator.

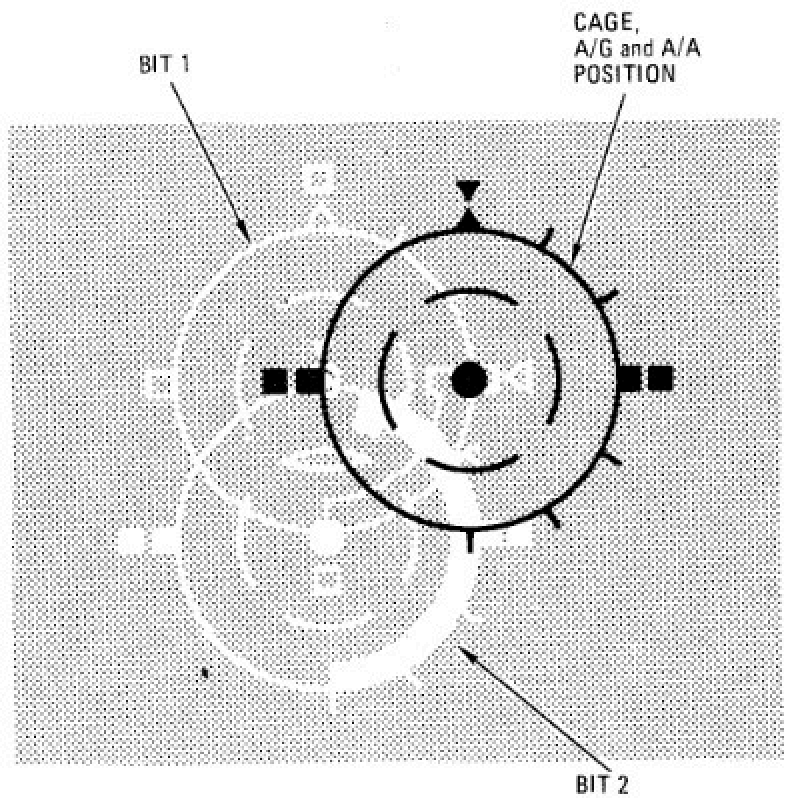
Step	System	Action
2.	Press VOR/MKR Test pushbutton	Marker beacon lights illuminate.
3.	VOR Frequency selected	Must be selected with a valid VOR Signal present.
4.	Course selected	315° on the HSI course selector.
5.	HSI mode	In VOR/ILS.
6.	Press the test pushbutton	Initiates the test.
	a. Course deviation indicator moves to center (with a maximum allowable error of ±4°).	
	b. "To-from" indicator on HSI indicates TO.	
	c. Marker beacon lights illuminate	
	d. Bearing pointers on HSI and BDHI swing to 315°	

Optical Sight Test

Step	System	Action
1.	Pinky switch	RADAR
2.	Sight shutter lever	OPEN
3.	Sight mode knob	CAGE
4.	Reticle depression knob	35 MILS
5.	Reticle intensity knob	AS REQUIRED
6.	Armament switches	OFF/SAFE
	a. Station green/amber lights	OFF
7.	Delivery mode knob	DIRECT
8.	Armament safety override button	PUSH IN
9.	Sight mode knob	CAGE to A/G to A/A
	a. Pipper (at RBL) Moves no more than ±2 mils.	
10.	Reticle depression knob	10 MILS
11.	Sight mode knob	BIT 1 (figure 2-21)
	a. Reticle jumps 25 ±4 mils left.	
	b. Roll tabs rotate 90° clockwise.	
	c. Range bar indicates 4000 feet (3 o'clock within ±15°.)	
12.	Sight mode knob	BIT 2 (figure 2-21)
	a. Reticle drops down 25 ±4 mils.	
	b. Roll tabs indicate Level flight.	
	c. Range bar indicates 6700 feet (12:30 o'clock within ±15°).	
13.	Sight mode knob	A/A
	a. Pipper returns to RBL.	
14.	(WSO) Radar power knob	TEST
15.	(WSO) Test knob	SET 5
16.	(WSO) Range knob	AI 5

Step	System	Action
17.	(WSO) Radar mode knob	BST
18.	(WSO) Lock on first BIT target	
19.	Pinky switch	RADAR to HEAT
	a. Pipper remains at RBL.	
20.	Pinky switch	GUNS
	a. Head-up GUN light	ON
	b. Range bar indicates 6000 feet (1 o'clock within ±15°).	
	c. Reticle slowly depresses according to the corresponding AOA:	
	AOA Units	(Mils)
	0	(36)
	5	(31)
	10	(27)
	15	(22)
	20	(17)
	25	(13)
	30	(8)
21.	Cage button	PRESS AND HOLD
	a. Pipper moves to 1000 feet cage range (approx 2 mils below RBL).	
	b. Range bar remains at 6000 feet (1 o'clock within ±15°).	
22.	(WSO) Break radar lock	
	a. Range bar	OFF
	b. Pipper moves to	RBL.
23.	Cage button	RELEASE
	a. Pipper moves to 1000 feet cage range (approx 2 mils below RBL).	
24.	Sight mode knob	STBY or CAGE

Step	System	Action
25.	Delivery mode knob	OFF
26.	Armament safety override button	RESET



Notes

a. 10 mils must be set into manual depression window for proper read-out of BIT functions.

b. Rear cockpit radar power switch must be out of "Off" position for at least 30 seconds.

Mission Planning

Captain Joe Fagan, left, and First Lieutenant Randy Chow prepare flight plans prior to a "mission" in their F-4G Phantom II Advanced Wild Weasel aircraft

simulator. PHOTO from November 84 AIRMAN Magazine

> 🚧 This section is under construction.

Optimum use of the aircraft to obtain maximum performance with minimum fuel consumption requires careful preflight planning for the mission. The planning of a mission involves many things which are beyond the scope of this publication. As used here, mission planning will cover certain key phases of a mission and explain the use of performance charts.

The following sample Counter Air mission demonstrates features of performance data. Although the sample problem does not cover the many mission capabilities of the aircraft, it familiarizes the aircrew with the use of performance data so that any mission may be preflight planned in a short time.

The sample problem illustrates, through a graphical solution, how performance charts can be integrated to form a complete mission flight plan. The steps used to develop such a plot are shown with the problem.

Counter Air Mission Profile

Perform maximum thrust takeoff and climb at military thrust. Cruise at optimum altitude and maximum range speed to a combat zone 500 miles from the air base. Drop external tanks when empty. Perform combat maneuvering at maximum thrust for the full duration — allowed by return and landing fuel requirements. Missiles and gun rounds are assumed to be expended at the end of the combat period. Return to the airfield at optimum altitude and airspeed. Descend at maximum range descent, arriving at the destination with 2000 pounds landing fuel reserve. The Counter Air Mission Overview and the Sample Mission Plan depict the overall mission plan.

Mission Data

Configuration

- (4) AIM-9 Missiles, Pylons and Launchers
- (4) AIM-7D Missiles
- (1) Nose-gun (639 rounds ammo)
- (2) 370 Gallon External Wing Tanks
- (1) 600 Gallon Centerline Tank
- Useable Fuel (includes external tanks) 20,768 pounds

Mission Factors

Takeoff:

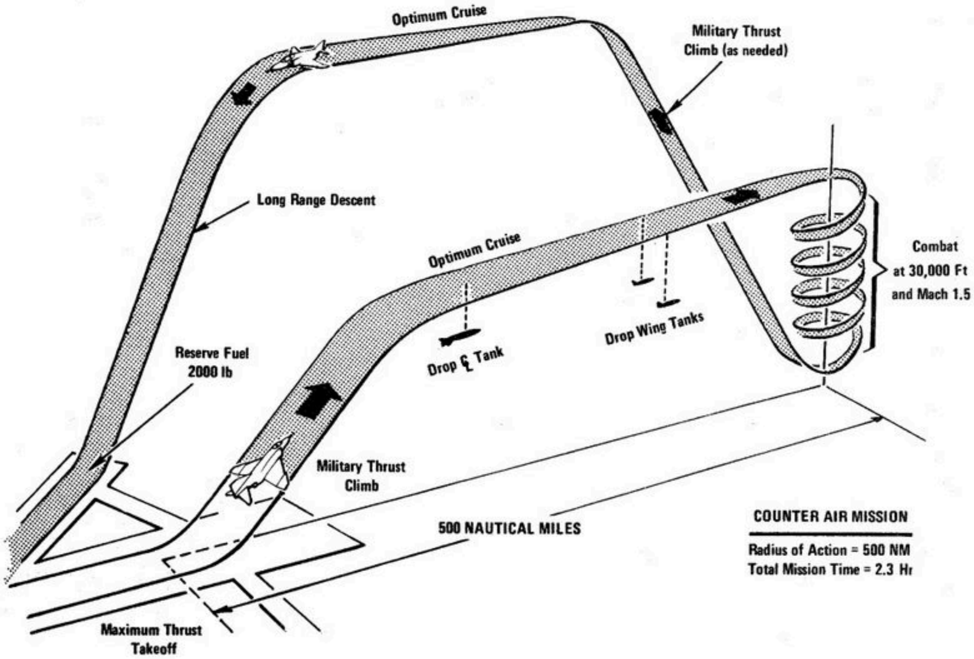
Parameter	Value
Wind	Calm
Pressure altitude	2000 Ft
Temperature	+38.5°C
Runway	020°
Runway length	9000 Ft
Climb out wind	(headwind) 20 Kt
Cruise out wind	(headwind) 50 Kt
Cruise return wind	(tailwind) 50 Kt
Descent wind	(tailwind) 20 Kt

Landing:

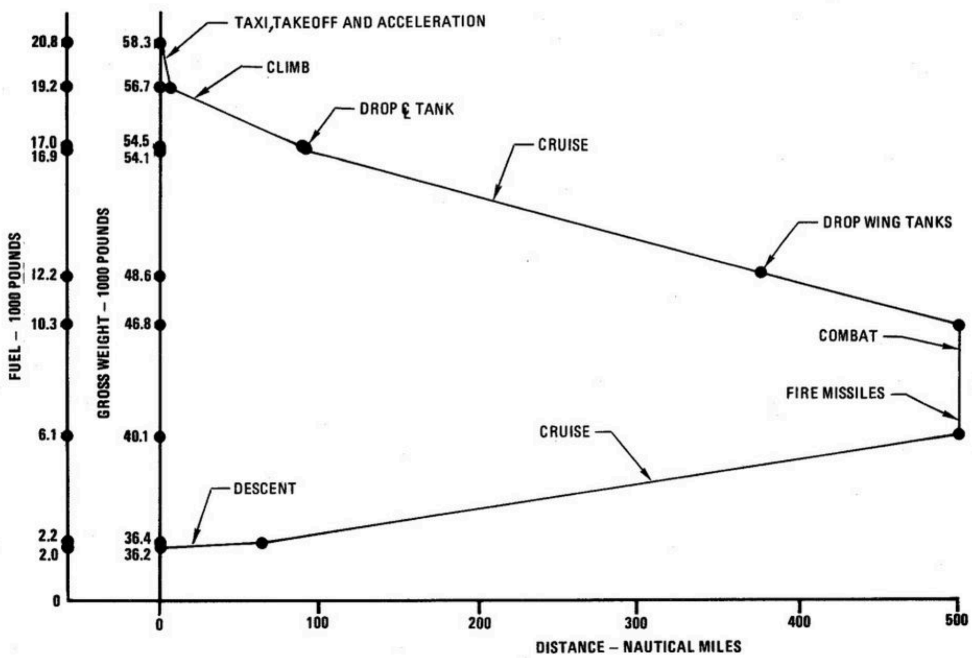
Parameter	Value
Wind	020°/10
Pressure altitude	2000 Ft
Temperature	+20°C
Runway	020°
Runway length	9000 Ft

Figures

COUNTER AIR MISSION OVERVIEW



SAMPLE MISSION PROFILE



Emergency Procedures

This section contains procedures to be followed to correct an emergency condition. These procedures will insure maximum safety for the crew and/or aircraft until a safe landing or other appropriate action is accomplished. The procedures are arranged in the most desirable sequence for the majority of cases; therefore, the steps should be performed in the listed sequence unless the pilot can determine a good cause for deviation. Multiple emergencies, adverse weather, and other peculiar conditions may require modification of these procedures. The critical items **(BOLD FACE LETTERS)** contained in the various emergency procedures cover the most adverse conditions. **Aircrew members should be able to accomplish bold face procedures without reference to the checklist.** The nature and severity of the encountered emergency will dictate the necessity for complying with the critical items in their entirety. It is essential, therefore, that aircrews determine the correct course of action by use of common sense and sound judgement. As soon as possible, the pilot should notify the WSO, flight or flight leader, and tower of any existing emergency and of the intended action.

The terms "Land as soon as **possible**" and "Land as soon as **practical**" are used in this section. These terms are defined as follows:

Land as soon as possible - An emergency will be declared. A landing should be accomplished at the nearest suitable airfield considering the severity of the emergency, weather conditions, field facilities, ambient lighting, aircraft gross weight, and command guidance.

Land as soon as practical - Emergency conditions are less urgent, and although the mission is to be terminated, the degree of the emergency is such that an immediate landing at the nearest adequate airfield may not be necessary.

The following basic rules apply to all aircraft emergencies and should be thoroughly understood by all aircrew:

1. Maintain aircraft control.

2. Analyze the situation and take proper action.
3. Land as soon as practical.

See the Definitions for an explanation of the symbology used.

Captain (CPT) Drew Nelson, F-4E Phantom II aircraft pilot, and Lieutenant (LT) Steven Skinner, weapons officer, both of the 336th Tactical Fighter Squadron, checks maintenance log on thier aircraft during Exercise AMALGAM CHIEF'88. The exercise is a test of the Air Force's ability to intercept enemy missiles and aircraft in the event of an attack on the continental United States

> 💡 This section contains only the most important emergency procedures.

> 🚧 This section is under construction.

Inflight Emergencies

OUT-OF-CONTROL RECOVERY

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	STICK	FORWARD
2.	AILERONS AND RUDDER	NEUTRAL
3.	IF NOT RECOVERED	MAINTAIN FULL FORWARD STICK AND DEPLOY DRAG CHUTE
4.	Throttles	IDLE (unless at low altitude)

UPRIGHT SPIN

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	STICK	MAINTAIN FULL FORWARD
2.	AILERONS	FULL WITH SPIN (TURN NEEDLE)
3.	AIRCRAFT UNLOADED	AILERONS NEUTRAL
4.	If out of control at or below 10,000 feet AGL	EJECT

ENGINE FAILURE DURING FLIGHT

SINGLE ENGINE FAILURE

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Airspeed	300 KNOTS / 0.6 MACH MINIMUM
2.	Land as soon as practical	

AIRSTART

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Engine master switch	ON
1.	Throttle	OFF
2.	Ignition button	HOLD DEPRESSED
3.	Throttle	IDLE
4.	RPM, EGT, oil pressure & fuel flow	MONITOR

MECHANICAL MALFUNCTION

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Throttle bad engine	IDLE
2.	Fire test button	PRESS

If any FIRE/OVERHEAT light does not come on:

3.	Ignition button	HOLD DEPRESSED

If engine malfunction is still evident (vibrations, noises, surges, etc.) or if engine has failed (insufficient rpm or fuel flow for start):

3.	Generator	OFF
4.	Throttle	OFF
5.	Engine master switch	OFF
6.	Airspeed	300 KNOTS / 0.6 MACH MINIMUM
7.	Land as soon as practical	

DOUBLE ENGINE FAILURE DURING FLIGHT

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Either engine	AIRSTART

Step	System/Condition	Action
2.	Reference system selector	STBY

If neither engine starts:

Step	System/Condition	Action
3.	Fuel status	CHECK
4.	Engine master switches	CHECK ON
5.	Either throttle	OFF
6.	Other engine	AIRSTART
7.	Remaining engine	AIRSTART
8.	If neither engine starts	Hold boost pump check switches in CHECK position while pulling left and right main fuel control circuit breakers, (H3, J1, No. 2 panel) then attempt airstart

If neither engine can be started:

9.	Eject	

ENGINE FIRE OR OVERHEAT DURING FLIGHT

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Throttle bad engine	IDLE
2.	If warning light goes out, fire test button	PRESS
3.	If all FIRE/OVERHEAT lights come on when test button is pressed	LAND AS SOON AS PRACTICAL

If warning light on, detection system inoperative, trailing vapor, or fire confirmed:

4.	Maintain 300 knots minimum, anticipate utility hydraulic failure, and avoid turns into bad engine.	
5.	Generator bad engine	OFF
6.	Throttle bad engine	OFF
7.	Master switch bad engine	OFF
8.	Air refuel switch	EXTEND
9.	If fire persists	EJECT
10.	If fire ceases	LAND AS SOON AS POSSIBLE

🟡 CAUTION: Do not attempt to restart the bad engine. If the fire ceases, and a landing is to be accomplished, make a single engine landing.

COMPRESSOR STALL

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Throttle	IDLE

If stall does not clear:

2.	Generator switch	OFF
3.	Throttle	OFF
4.	Inlet ramps	CHECK FULLY RETRACTED
5.	Ignition button	HOLD PRESSED
6.	Throttle	IDLE
7.	RPM, EGT, oil pressure & fuel flow	MONITOR
8.	Generator switch	ON

GLIDE DISTANCE

With both engines failed, the aircraft will glide approximately 6 nautical miles for each 5000 feet AGL. The recommended glide airspeed for maximum range with both engines out is 215 knots. This speed will allow the windmilling engines to maintain power control hydraulic pressures within safe limits but may not be optimum for airstart.

EJECTION

At ground level with wings level, canopy closed, and no sink rate, ejection may be initiated between 0 and 550 knots if neither crewmember’s boarding weight is over 247 pounds. Boarding weight includes the crewmember and all personal equipment with which he boards the aircraft. If either crewmember’s boarding weight is over 247 pounds, the minimum ejection airspeed is 50 knots. Initiate ejection below 450 knots if possible. Although the seat is qualified to 600 knots, ejection above 450 knots exposes the crewmember to forces which can cause serious injury. If airspeed is over 550 knots, minimum ejection altitude is 50 feet. In controlled level flight, eject above 2000 feet AGL if possible. If out-of-control at or below 10,000 feet AGL, eject.

LANDING EMERGENCIES

SINGLE-ENGINE LANDING

Step	System/Condition	Action
1.	Reduce the airplane gross weight to minimum practical.	
2.	Inlet ramp on good engine	CHECK FULLY RETRACTED
3.	All unessential electrical equipment	OFF
4.	Make a fully configured 17 unit AOA apporach	

EMERGENCY LANDING PATTERN

The emergency landing pattern is a pattern to be flown when engine thrust is available and an emergency exists or there is a malfunction which could result in an emergency. The primary objective of the pattern is to land the aircraft safely in the first attempt with least amount of risk. Because of the many variables involved, such as type of emergency, position and altitude in relation to the field, gross weight, fuel remaining, weather, populated areas, runway length, availability of arresting gear, etc., astandard pattern cannot be prescribed. Depending on the circumstances it might be desirable to utilize GCA, make a straight-in approach, enter the pattern from downwind or base leg, or make a 360° overhead pattern. Because of the various circumstances, the pilot's evaluation of all factors and his judgment will determine the type of landing pattern to be flown. However, there are some general guidelines which are applicable regardless of approach selected: Reduce gross weight to minimum practical. In the pattern and before establishing the landing configuration, maintain a minimum maneuvering airspeed of 230 knots (250 knots, single engine). The pattern should be planned to avoid

abrupt, steep or hard turns and large or abrupt power changes especially with a flight control malfunction or a hydraulic system failure. Circumstances permitting, a long straight-in final should be planned and the landing configuration established when on final. The air refuel switch should be placed to EXTEND prior to landing to depressurize the fuel tanks. Should the nature of the emergency or other factors dictate establishing the landing configuration prior to final, 230 knots — flaps up, or 200 knots - slats flaps OUT AND DOWN should be maintained until established on final. These airspeeds will provide a margin of safety for maneuvering flight. If the pattern must be entered on downwind, base or from an overhead pattern, the pattern should be expanded, the landing configuration established prior to final, and roll-out on final should be at least 2- 3 miles out. A normal 2-3° glide slope should be flown. For most emergencies, final approach airspeeds are increased and AOA decreased to provide adequate aircraft handling characteristics.

FLAME-OUT APPROACH

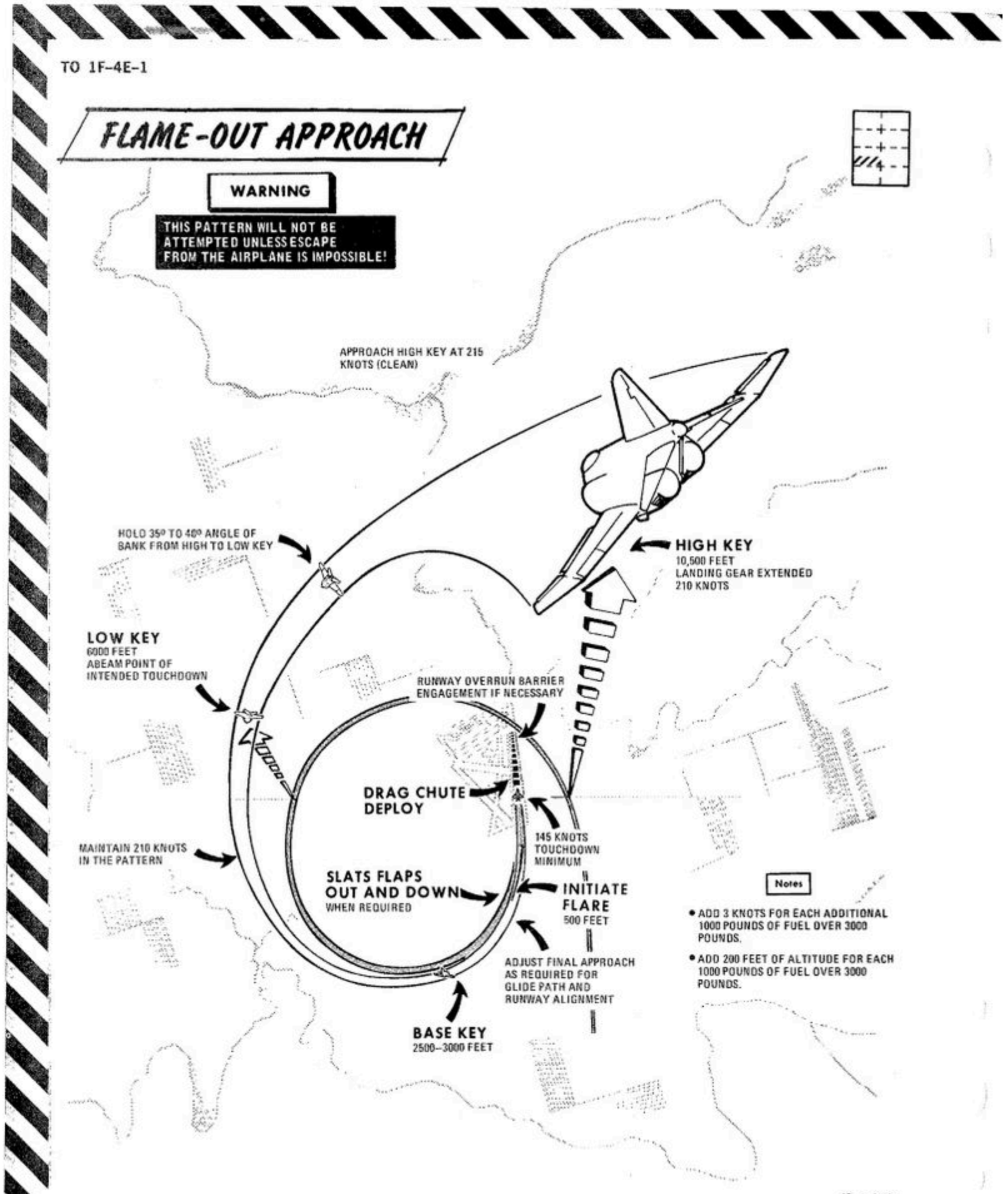


Figure 3-10

Supplement

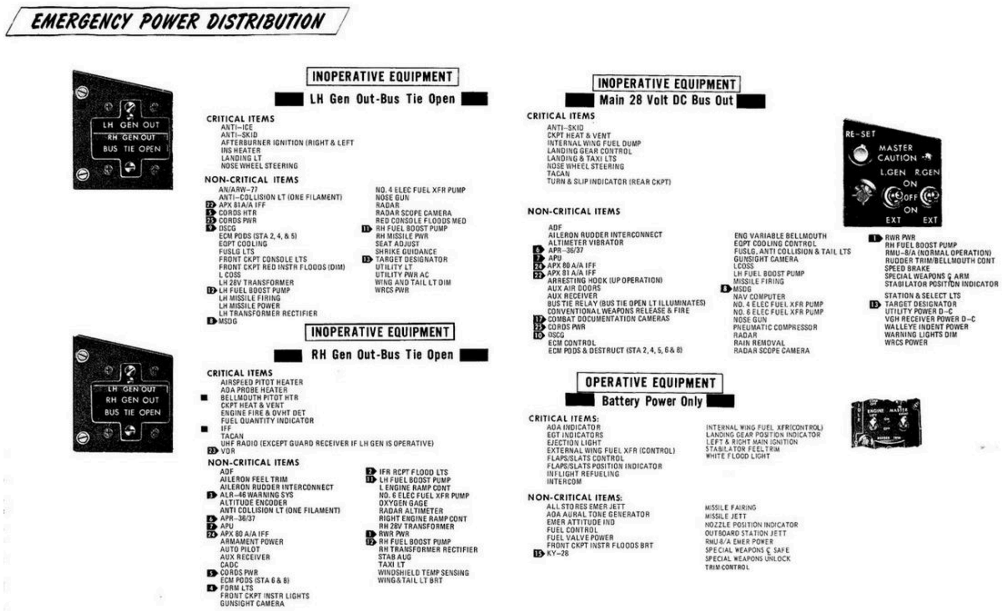
Warning/Indicator Lights

WARNING / INDICATOR LIGHTS

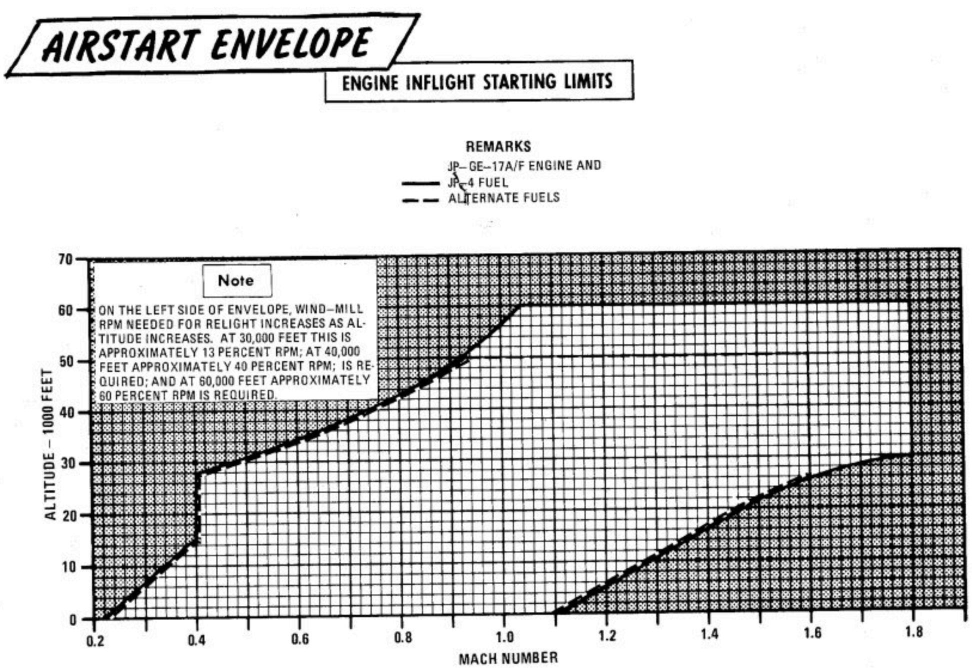
LIGHT	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION/REMARKS
WHEELS	BELOW APPROX 230K – GEAR UP	LOWER GEAR OR ACCELERATE ABOVE FLAP BLOW-UP SPEED
FIRE OVERHT	EXCESSIVE TEMPERATURES IN ENGINE OR AFT COMPARTMENT.	CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
MASTER CAUTION	CAUTION CONDITION EXISTS	CHECK TELELIGHTS
ALT ENCODER OUT	UNRELIABLE OR NO SIGNAL FROM ALT ENCODER	IF LIGHT STAYS ON: USE VOICE COMMUNICATIONS IF LIGHT FLASHES CONTINUOUSLY: PULL AEU CB (H9, NO. 2 PANEL)
IFF	MODE 4 FAILED	LIGHT INOPERATIVE UNTIL MODE 4 INSTALLED
CANOPY UNLOCKED	CANOPY UNLOCKED	GROUND: • REFER TO CANOPY MALFUNCTION PROCEDURE INFLIGHT: • COCKPIT PRESS–DUMP • REDUCE POWER AND AIRSPEED • COMMAND SELECTOR VALVE–VERTICAL IF REAR CANOPY UNSAFE • CANOPY HANDLE–DO NOT MOVE
FUEL LEVEL LOW	FUEL REMAINING: 1800 ± 200 POUNDS BLK 41 AND UP: 1650 ± 200 POUNDS	CHECK ALL FUEL TRANSFERRED
L EXT FUEL CTR EXT FUEL R EXT FUEL	• TANK EMPTY • FLOW STOPPED • TANK FULL (DURING AIR REFUELING).	INTERMITTENT ILLUMINATION DURING TRANSFER IS NORMAL.
CHK HYD GAGES	PRESSURE BELOW 1500 ± 100 PSI IN PC-1, PC-2, SYS OR AT LEAST 1 UTILITY PUMP BELOW THIS PRESS	CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
WINDSHIELD TEMP HIGH	WINDSHIELD OVERHEATED	• RAIN REMOVAL SWITCH – OFF • ILLUMINATES IF R GEN DROPS OFF LINE AND BUS TIE IS OPEN. • INTERMITTENT LT DURING HI MACH FLT. RAIN REMOVAL SYS OFF, IS NORM.
DUCT TEMP HI	INLET TEMP ABOVE 121°C	REDUCE SPEED
SPEEDBRAKE OUT	SPEEDBRAKES NOT CLOSED	INFO ONLY
AUTOPILOT PITCH TRIM	AUTOPILOT PITCH TRIM IS MALFUNCTIONING (OTHER THAN MOMENTARY)	• STICK – GRASP FIRMLY • AUTOPILOT – DISENGAGE
OXYGEN LOW	QUANTITY IS 1 LITER OR LESS	DESCEND TO SAFE ALTITUDE
CABIN TURB OVERSPEED	TURBINE PRESSURE/TEMP. TOO HIGH.	• REDUCE THRUST AND SPEED. • IF LIGHT STAYS ON: EMER VENT KNOB – PULL
R OR L AUX AIR DOOR	DOOR(S) OUT OF PHASE WITH GEAR HANDLE.	CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
R OR L ANTI-ICE ON	NORMAL IF SWITCH ON	IF SWITCH OFF: REDUCE AIRSPEED. • IF LIGHT GOES OUT, ACCELERATE AND DISREGARD LIGHT. • IF LIGHT STAYS ON: REMAIN AT REDUCED SPEED

LIGHT	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION/REMARKS
PITCH AUG OFF	PITCH STAB AUG NOT ENGAGED	DO NOT EXCEED 300 KNOTS BELOW 10,000 FEET
STATIC CORR OFF	SPC INOPERATIVE	• CADC SWITCH – RESET CORR. IF LIGHT STAYS ON: • CADC SWITCH – CORR OFF • USE AS AND ALT CORR DATA
RADAR CNI COOL OFF	EQUIPMENT COOLING TURBINE	• REDUCE AIRSPEED, WAIT 15 SECONDS RESET – PUSH • IF LIGHT STAYS ON: REMAIN AT REDUCED AIRSPEED
AUTOPILOT DISENGAGE	AUTOPILOT IS NOT ENGAGED	INFO ONLY
CHECK FUEL FILTERS	FUEL FILTER(S) ARE CLOGGED	NOTE IN FORM 781
HOOK DOWN	HOOK IS UNLOCKED	INFO ONLY
INERTIAL NAV SYS OUT	INS MALFUNCTION	REFERENCE SYSTEM SELECTOR – STBY
LH GEN OUT RH GEN OUT	GEN OFF THE LINE	CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
BUS TIE OPEN	GEN. ARE OUT OF FREQUENCY PHASE, OR FAULTED CSD UNDERSPEED SWITCH	CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
ANTI-SKID INOPERATIVE	ANTI-SKID HAS MALFUNCTIONED	• CARRY OUT EMERGENCY PROCEDURES • DISREGARD MOMENTARY LIGHT
DC BUS	MAIN 28VDC BUS DISCONNECTED FROM ESS 28VDC BUS BECAUSE OF LOW VOLTAGE ON 28VDC	• CHECK DC OPERATED EQUIPMENT • CYCLE GENERATORS SIMULTANEOUSLY (DAY VMC ONLY) • LAND AS SOON AS PRACTICAL
APU	PC-1 PRESS BELOW 1000 PSI	IF PC-2 SYSTEM NORMAL: APU REJECT SWITCH – AS DESIRED
TANK 7 FUEL	CELL 7 TRANSFER VALVE FAILED TO OPEN	• CELL 7 FUEL NOT AVAILABLE • ONLY FUEL READ ON TAPE IS AVAILABLE
SLATS IN	SLAT OVERRIDE SWITCH AT IN POSITION	INFO ONLY

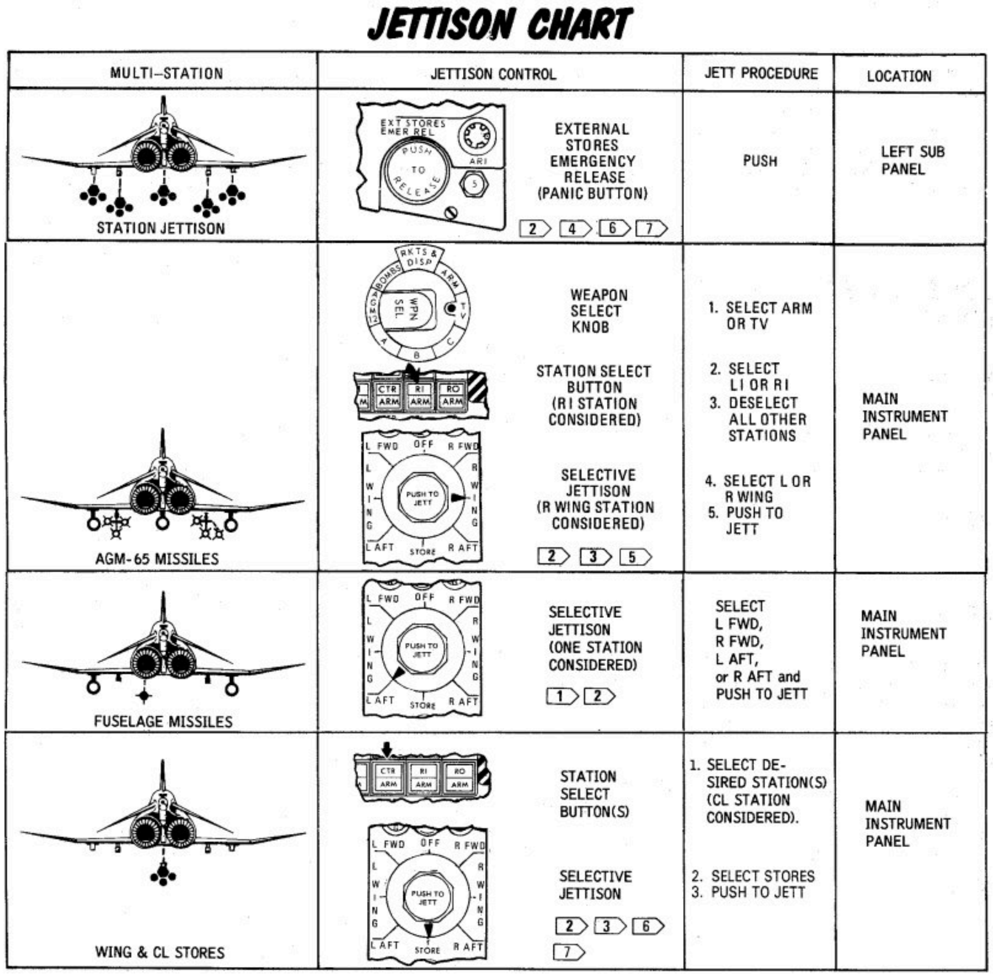
Emergency Power Distribution



Airstart Enevlope



Jettison Chart



JETTISON CHART

MULTI–STATION	JETTISON CONTROL	JETT PROCEDURE	LOCATION
STATION JETTISON	EXTERNAL STORES EMERGENCY RELEASE (PANIC BUTTON) 2 4 6 7	PUSH	LEFT SUB PANEL
AGM-65 MISSILES	WEAPON SELECT KNOB STATION SELECT BUTTON (RI STATION CONSIDERED) SELECTIVE JETTISON (R WING STATION CONSIDERED) 2 3 5	1. SELECT ARM OR TV 2. SELECT LI OR RI 3. DESELECT ALL OTHER STATIONS 4. SELECT L OR R WING 5. PUSH TO JETT	MAIN INSTRUMENT PANEL
FUSELAGE MISSILES	SELECTIVE JETTISON (ONE STATION CONSIDERED) 1 2	SELECT L FWD, R FWD, L AFT, or R AFT and PUSH TO JETT	MAIN INSTRUMENT PANEL
WING & CL STORES	STATION SELECT BUTTON(S) SELECTIVE JETTISON 2 3 6 7	1. SELECT DESIRED STATION(S) (CL STATION CONSIDERED). 2. SELECT STORES 3. PUSH TO JETT	MAIN INSTRUMENT PANEL

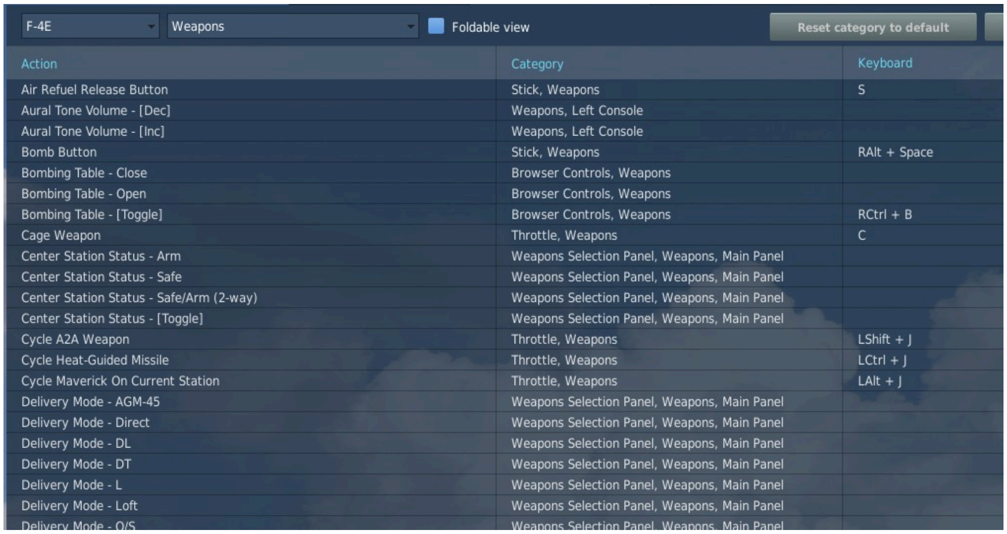
DCS

This chapter contains systems, settings and interfaces specific to the simulation of the Phantom inside DCS.

Of special note is a modding guide and explanation available to mission designers.

Bicentennial themed F-4 Phantom II

Controls



Action	Category	Keyboard
Air Refuel Release Button	Stick, Weapons	S
Aural Tone Volume - [Dec]	Weapons, Left Console	
Aural Tone Volume - [Inc]	Weapons, Left Console	
Bomb Button	Stick, Weapons	RAlt + Space
Bombing Table - Close	Browser Controls, Weapons	
Bombing Table - Open	Browser Controls, Weapons	
Bombing Table - [Toggle]	Browser Controls, Weapons	RCtrl + B
Cage Weapon	Throttle, Weapons	C
Center Station Status - Arm	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Center Station Status - Safe	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Center Station Status - Safe/Arm (2-way)	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Center Station Status - [Toggle]	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Cycle A2A Weapon	Throttle, Weapons	LShift + J
Cycle Heat-Guided Missile	Throttle, Weapons	LCtrl + J
Cycle Maverick On Current Station	Throttle, Weapons	LAlt + J
Delivery Mode - AGM-45	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - Direct	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - DL	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - DT	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - L	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - Loft	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	
Delivery Mode - O/S	Weapons Selection Panel, Weapons, Main Panel	

Available control binds for the Phantom are exhaustive. For any switch, knob or button, you can choose between direct position-binds, increment or decrement binds, a toggle or next option, special binds for 2-way or 3-way switches and assignable axis.

In total, both cockpits feature around 1000 assignable binds and 200 axis each.

As example, the **Speed Brake** switch provides 8 binds:

- Speed Brake - In
- Speed Brake - Stop
- Speed Brake - Out (Hold)
- Speed Brake - [Aft]
- Speed Brake - [Forward]
- Speed Brake - [Next]
- Speed Brake - In/Stop (3-way up)

The **Out**-position is marked **(Hold)** to signal that the position is spring-loaded and will return to center once released.

Binds **[Aft]** and **[Forward]** are directional binds that move the switch from the current position into the given direction.

[Next] is similar, but will not stop at the last position and wrap over to the first position again. Likewise, 2-way switches provide a **[Toggle]** bind that flips the switch between either position.

The **(3-way up)**-bind is intended to be used with actual 3-way hardware switches, such as present on many external devices. They send a signal on either position (up and down), but no signal on the center position. Hence, the bind will return the switch back to the center when no signal is send.

> 💡 The **(3-way down)**-bind is skipped for the Speed Brake, since it would be identical with the spring-loaded **Out (Hold)**-bind.

All binds are generally assigned at least two searchable categories, the **system** the bind belongs to and its **location** in the cockpit. The **Master Arm** switch for example has categories:

- Weapons
- Main Panel
- Weapon Selection Panel

Sim-Pit

Additionally to regular binds, special **[SimPit]**-binds are provided that allow controlling any switch or knob via an axis input.

For example, a switch with 2 positions ON and OFF can be controlled with an axis, while the switch changes its position as soon as the axis is pushed beyond its center position.

This is especially useful for builders of cockpit replicas, working mainly with hardware switches whose electronic components send normalized inputs through the entire movement range.

Jester & Crew Chief Commands

Direct binds to control Jester and Crew Chief commands are provided especially for mission designers or users of voice recognition software, such as **VoiceAttack**.

This allows use of the corresponding actions directly via a bind instead of using the UI to select them.

Binding Guide

When just getting started, a common question is which fundamental controls one should generally bind and have accessible without using the mouse, besides the obvious binds of throttle and stick axis.

> 💡 Items marked **bold** are highly recommended to be bound. *Italic* sections are suggestions of which positions to bind.

Pilot

The pilot should focus at binding the major flight controls, as well as combat relevant switches.

Flight Controls

- **Stick**
- **Throttle**
- **Trim Controls** *(4 + 2)*
- Landing Gear
- Flaps/Slats *(Norm, Out, Out & Down)*
- Airbrake *(Out, Stop, In)*
- Eject
- **Nose Gear Steering / Auto Acquisition Button**
- **Drag Chute** *(Deploy, Cut)*
- Seat Controls *(Up, Down)*

Startup

To execute the cold-start sequence, binds of interest are:

- Crew Chief Command: External Power > Connect
- Crew Chief Command: Air Source > Connect to Right/Left Engine
- Crew Chief Command: Air Source > Start/Stop Airflow
- Crew Chief Command: Air Source > Load Starter Cartridges
- Start Engine Switch Right/Left (fires up Starter Cartridges)
- Generator Right/Left *(On, Off, Ext)*
- Right/Left Engine Master Switch
- **Right/Left Engine Ignition**
- Right/Left Engine Idle Detent

Combat

- **Trigger (2nd stage)**
- **Bomb Button**
- **Weapon Slew** *(4)*

- **Pinky Switch** *(Gun, Heat, Radar, Reject)*
- **CAGE Button**
- **Nose Gear Steering / Auto Acquisition Button**
- DSCG Mode *(Radar, Off, TV)*
- Bombing Tool
- **Dispense Countermeasures**
- HUD Mode *(CW, CCW)*
- Delivery Mode *(CW, CCW)*
- Weapon Selector *(CW, CCW)*

Navigation

- Navigation Input *(Next)*
- Navigation Mode *(Next)*
- AFCS Switch
- ALT Hold Switch
- AAR Release Switch

Communication

- **Microphone Switch** *(UHF, ICS)*
- COMM Channel *(Inc, Dec)*

Jester

- **Jester UI Action**
- **Jester Context Action**

WSO

For the WSO it is optional to bind flight controls such as the flight stick. Controls should be focused at operating the Radar and the Pave Spike targeting pod.

Radar & Pave Spike

- **Antenna Hand Control**

- **Antenna Hand Control Trigger** *(Half Action, Full Action)*
- **Antenna Elevation** *(Inc, Dec)*
- **Antenna Hand Control Challenge Button**
- Screen Mode *(CW, CCW)*

Radar Controls

- **Radar Receiver Gain** *(Inc, Dec)*
- Radar Range *(CW, CCW)*
- Target Aspect *(Next)*
- Radar Mode *(CW, CCW)*

Combat Relevant

- **Dispense Countermeasures**
- Video Select
- Air to Air (CAGE) Mode
- **Freeze Button**
- Insert Target Button
- Move Cursor (Along/Cross Track) *(Inc, Dec)*

Navigation Controls

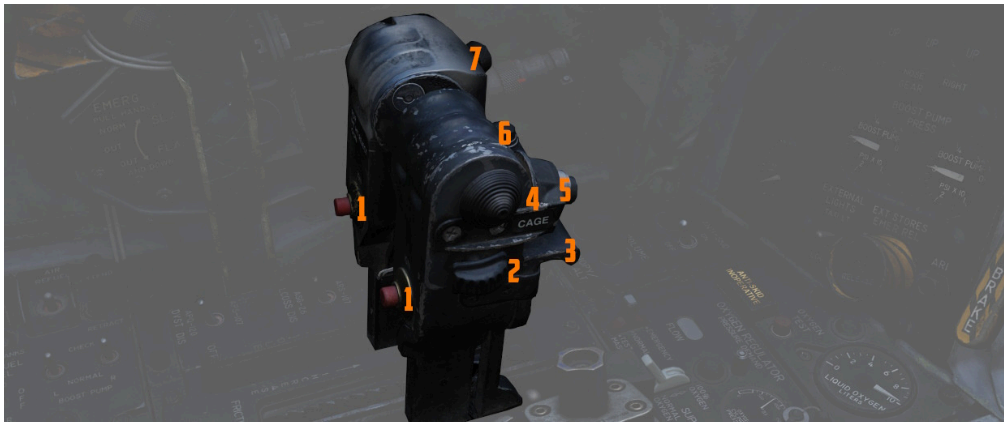
- **Microphone Switch** *(UHF, ICS)*
- COM Channel *(Inc, Dec)*
- **Navigation Function** *(CW, CCW)*

Real Controls

Here are the pictures of the real aircraft controls gathered for reference. For more detailed information see associated subchapters of 2. Cockpit Overview by using the respective hyperlinks.

Pilot Stick

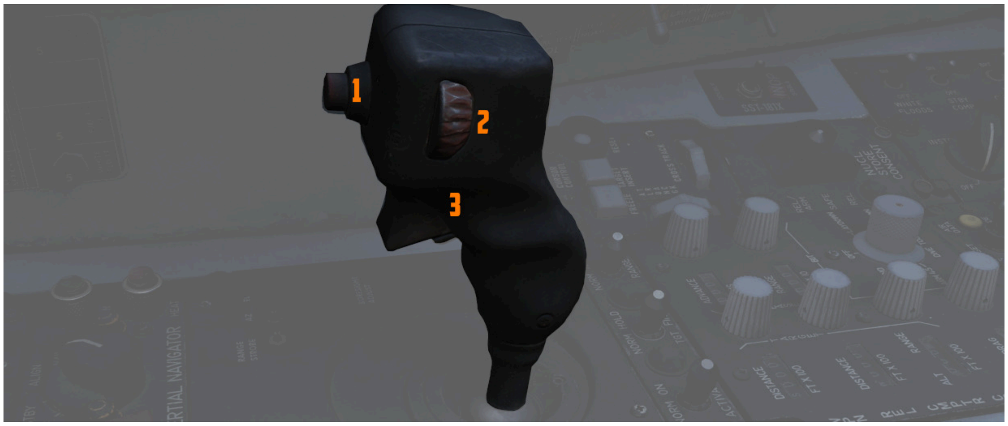
Pilot Throttle



WSO Stick

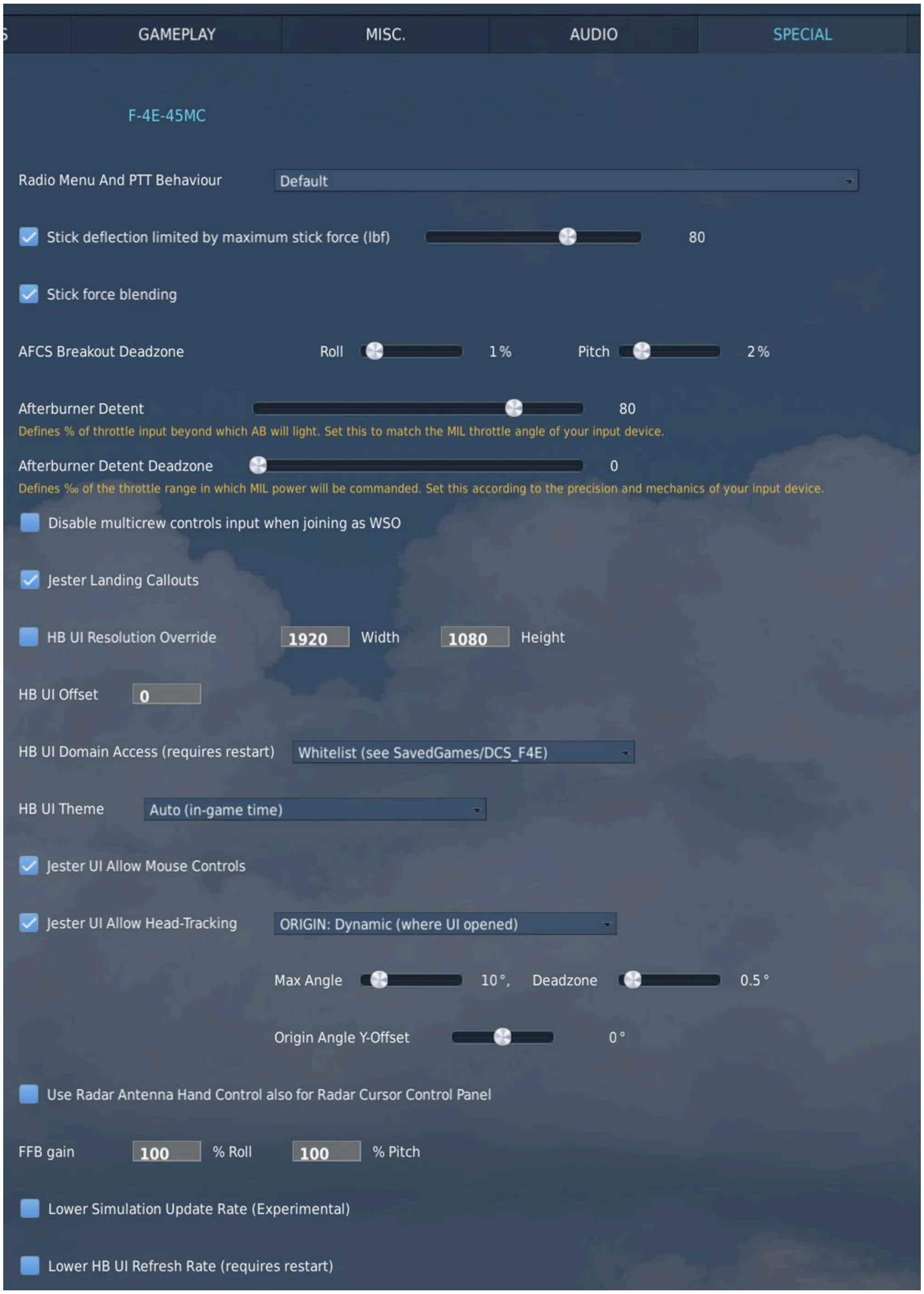
WSO Throttle

WSO Antenna Hand Control



Special Options

The Phantom offers several options that can be set within the *Special Option* menu in DCS.



Radio Menu and PTT Behavior

Dropdown to select the behavior of the push to talk bind for the radio.

Option	Close Menu	Menu must be open	Export Voice
Default	❌	❌	✅
Open Menu	❌	✅	✅
Hide on Release	✅	❌	✅
No Export	❌	❌	❌

The columns have the following effects:

- Close Menu - when releasing the key, the DCS communication menu is automatically closed
- Menu must be open - the key only works when the DCS communication menu is currently open
- Export Voice - when pressed down, voice is exported to tools like SRS

Stick Deflection Limit

Limits the maximum force in lbf (Pound-Force), i.e. strength, the pilot is able to pull the stick with.

This effect is mostly seen when controlling the aircraft during high G maneuvers and can prevent accidentally pulling extreme Gs.

> 💡 As an example, in certain situations it would require beyond human strength to pull the stick all the way back. With this set, when pulling the real joystick beyond that limit, the in-game flight stick is limited and not pulled equally aft. This also prevents for example accidentally pulling 20 G and instantly blacking out, just because the real joystick has no, or reduced, force feedback.

Stick Force Blending

When maximum movement of the stick would result in excessive forces being generated, having this activated will scale down the generated force to improve handling precision, but also can help to prevent accidentally pulling extreme Gs.

AFCS Breakout Deadzone

Percentage of stick input (separate for roll and pitch) after which the AFCS system will recognize the pilot stick was moved from neutral trim position (force transducer switches closed).

This will affect the AFCS roll and pitch channel operation and prevent it from fighting your input. That is, when moving the stick beyond this deadzone, the AFCS understands that the pilot wants to take control and the AFCS will stop trying to correct the movement. The roll breakout will temporarily disable the roll stab aug as well as bank angle hold and heading hold. The pitch breakout will temporarily disable the pitch attitude hold as well altitude hold.

> 💡 This deadzone is *"on top"* of the DCS axis deadzone so the higher basic deadzone set on the axis, the smaller the AFCS breakout deadzone should be set. Keep in mind that setting low values, such as 0%, while having an already low basic deadzone can result in

some of the autopilot functions not engaging even when letting go the stick because the stick may still be not perfectly neutral.

Default values are 1% for roll and 2% for pitch.

💡 To check wheter the breakout is currently activated you can use the controls indicator and look for the text below it.

For more info see Force Transducer.

Afterburner Detent

Two options to define at which point of the physical hardware throttle input (0 to 100%) the aircraft will light the afterburner.

That is, if set to 80%, the MIL power range of the aircraft will be commanded between 0% and 80% of your physical throttle, while the remaining 20% will control the afterburner range.

The deadzone option can be used to split the points in the range at which the afterburner will be turned on and off. For example, setting 2% for the deadzone and 80% for the detent results in afterburner activation at 82% and deactivation at 78% of throttle input.

Disable Multicrew Controls Input When Joining as WSO

If checked, when joining as WSO in multiplayer with a human pilot, your local controls inputs (stick, rudder pedals and throttle) will be ignored by default. You can toggle your local input back with assigned keybind.

Jester Landing Callouts

If enabled, Jester will assist the pilot during landing by calling out aircraft altitude, similar as seen in civilian aviation.

> 💡 Real Phantom WSOs did not assist during landing.

HB UI

Resolution Override

User interface elements, such as the Jester Wheel, the manual, virtual browser and others are scaled and positioned via a fixed resolution that must match the resolution of the in-game surface they are rendered on.

With the option unchecked, this resolution is automatically determined based on screen settings. However, in certain situations, especially when using VR or having a multi-monitor setup, this automatic detection might fail and compute an incorrect resolution.

Should UI elements be misplaced, for example the Jester Wheel not being centered or even cut off, check this setting and edit the resolution manually until the UI is displayed properly.

Offset

Allows to horizontally displace the UI. Positive values shift it to the right, negative values to the left.

Normally, this should be kept at the default value of 0 px. However, in certain cases (e.g. when using VR and setting it to render on the LEFT or RIGHT eye, while having the checkbox for *"Use DCS System Resolution"* not checked) it is possible that the UI gets cut off. This setting then allows to move the UI back into view, but therefore giving up proper alignment on the UI, such as the Jester UI being centered on the screen.

Domain Access

Defines which domains the HB UI is allowed to access.

Full allows for free browsing, allowing to visit any website with the Virtual Browser.

The default option **Whitelist** defines which sites can be accessed by using a whitelist file. Only domains passing the rules setup in the file are allowed. The default rules are setup to support all HB UI features and a hand full of useful websites for the Virtual Browser, such as *YouTube*.

This file is automatically created at

`C:\Users\John Doe\Saved Games\DCS_F4E\hbui_whitelist.txt`

when launching the Phantom for the first time.

Selecting **Offline** will disable the Virtual Browser and any other HB UI features and elements that require an active online connection.

Theme

Allows to select which color theme is used by the UI. All UI elements support a light and a dark theme.

The default option **AUTO** will pick the theme dynamically based on the in-game time. Light during the day and Dark for a night mission.

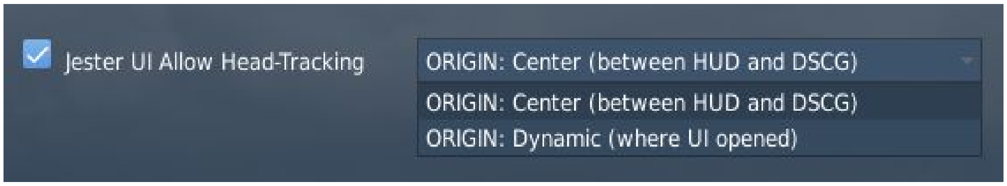
Jester UI

Allow Mouse Controls

When checked, the Jester UI allows interaction with the mouse moving it over items and left clicking.

The option can be disabled if for example only head-tracking is preferred and the automatic mouse detection is perhaps triggering too often, e.g. when having placed the mouse on the arm of the chair.

Allow Head-Tracking



When checked, the Jester UI allows moving the cursor simply by moving the in-game character head. Can be disabled if no convenient head-tracking equipment, such as TrackIR or VR, is available.

> 💡 Tracking options are chosen dynamically based on movement. Even if head-tracking is enabled, other options such as using the mouse or assigning the cursor to an axis are also still available.

The dropdown allows selection of the head-tracking behavior:

- Center - the view-origin is at the aircraft center
- Dynamic - the view-origin is where the UI was opened

Selecting *Center* requires looking forward when operating the UI, whereas *Dynamic* allows using head-tracking from any view position. However, *Dynamic* can lead to having to chase the cursor when closing and re-opening the UI frequently. Also, the *Dynamic* option is less meaningful in VR, as the UI elements are then all rendered on the front always.

> 💡 Jester Dialogs always use the *Center* type, requiring to look forward.

Max Angle

Defines the angle (in degrees) the head has to be moved off-center to reach the corners of the UI.

In other words, reducing this value from its default of 10° makes head-tracking more sensitive to head movement, while increasing it will reduce the sensitivity.

> 💡 VR users might find a lower angle more comfortable, since the head-to-game translation is normally 1:1 in VR.

Deadzone

Defines the angle (in degrees) the head has to be moved off-center to for the UI to recognize head-movement and engage head-tracking.

If the head is moved less than the deadzone (0.5° by default), the cursor is automatically set to the center instead and not moved.

> 💡 Users playing with a high and very sensitive head-to-game translation might find it useful to increase this value slightly.

Origin Angle Y-Offset

Defines the offset (in degrees) to displace the center point of head-tracking vertically. Positive values shift it up, negative values down. The default setting is 0°.

This setting can be useful if the center point should not be properly lined up with the natural forward view. That is, when opening the menu from a natural head position and the cursor already shows a displacement instead of being centered, tweaking this setting mitigates the issue.

Radar Stick for Cursor

When checked, the binds mapped to control the Antenna Hand Control can also be used to move the cursor used for Offset Bombing and similar, making binding the two Track Wheels obsolete.

FFB Gain

For users with force-feedback sticks, this setting can be used to adjust the gain of the forces per axis.

The default setting is 100% for Roll and Pitch axis. Greater values will increase the force used by the stick, while smaller values will decrease it.

Lower Simulation Update Rate

This **experimental option** allows reducing the update rate of the majority of the planes components.

Doing so may reduce the stress on the CPU, improving game performance for machines that are bottlenecked by their CPU.

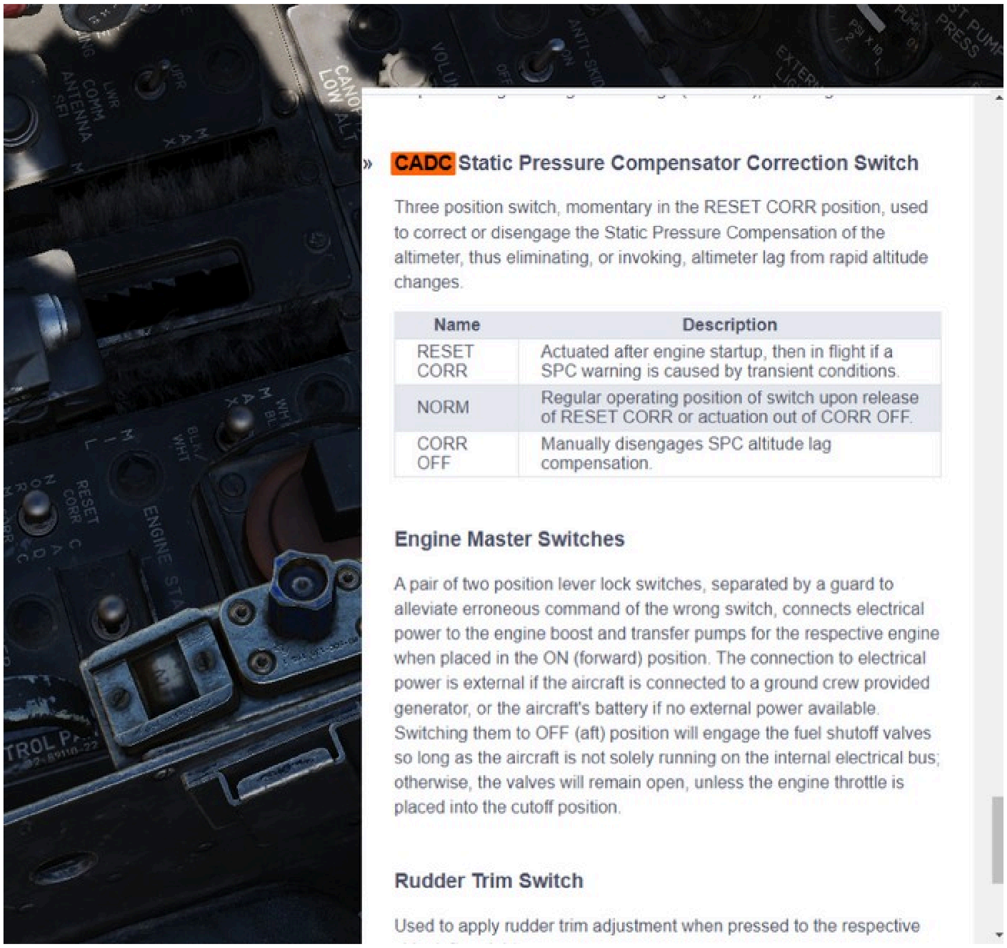
However, it can also result in not only visual cuts, such as animations running slower, but will also cause some systems to degrade. For example the Pave Spike, running slower, can not update its ground stabilization algorithm fast enough anymore. So ticking this option can cause issues and lead to bugs.

Lower HB UI Refresh Rate

When checked, all HB UI elements are rendered at a significantly lower rate.

This can help improving performance while HB UI elements are shown by reducing CPU load. However, it can also cause UI animations to not look smooth anymore.

Embedded Manual



This manual is embedded into the game and can be read while flying.

It also offers a way to explain switches in the cockpit directly by opening the manual scrolled right to the spot explaining the corresponding switch.

Controls

The default bind `M` can be used to toggle the manual. When holding it down while clicking a switch in the cockpit, the manual will automatically open and scroll to the section explaining that switch.

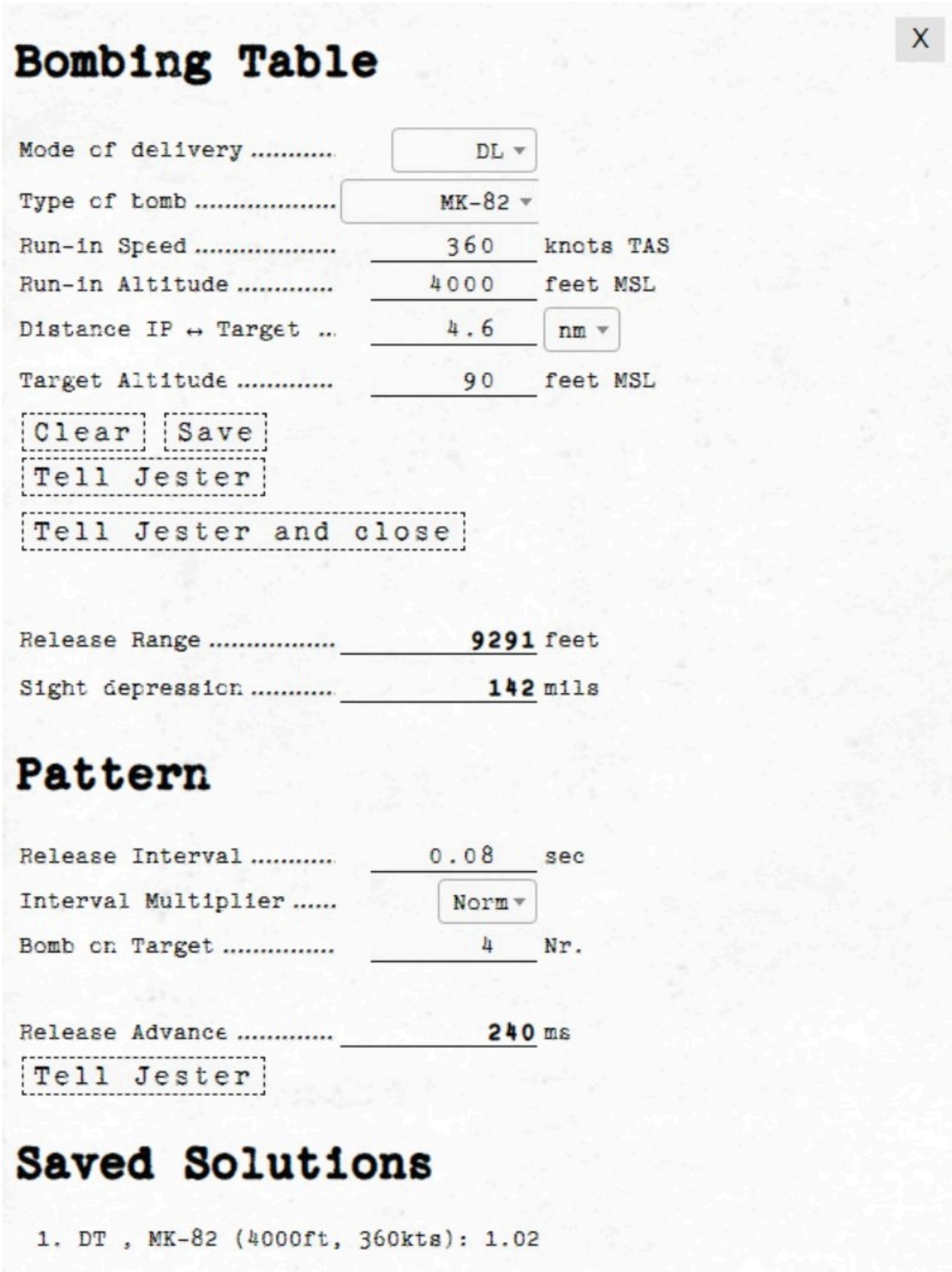
Additionally, the following binds are available as well:

- `RSHIFT` + `M` - open the manual
- `RCTRL` + `M` - close the manual
- `RALT` + `M` - toggle the manual

> 💡 In order to close the manual, make sure to first remove keyboard focus from it by clicking anywhere else in the cockpit.

Bombing Computer

The bombing calculator provides the pilot and WSO with an easy way to calculate the needed values for the different bombing modes. You can use it to calculate every value (except for drag coefficient) that you need to drop precise ordinance on your target. It is opened with the hotkey `RCtrl`+`B` and can be closed with the same hotkey in-game. You can also bind it to a desired button in the controls tab.


Bombing Table
X
Mode of delivery .... DL
Type of bomb MK-82
Run-in Speed .... 360 knots TAS
Run-in Altitude .... 4000 feet MSL
Distance IP ↔ Target ... 4.6 nm
Target Altitude .... 90 feet MSL
Clear
Save
Tell Jester
Tell Jester and close
Release Range .... 9291 feet
Sight depression .... 142 mils
Pattern
Release Interval .... 0.08 sec
Interval Multiplier ...... Norm
Bomb on Target .... 4 Nr.
Release Advance .... 240 ms
Tell Jester
Saved Solutions
1. DT , MK-82 (4000ft, 360kts): 1.02

Bombing Table

Input

Mode of Delivery

The first thing that should be selected is the Mode of delivery. You can choose between the following modes depending on your attack run.

- Direct
- Dive Toss (DT)
- TGT Find
- Dive Laydown (DL)
- Laydown (L)
- Offset
- Loft
- Over-the-shoulder (O/S)
- Over-the-shoulder instantaneous (O/S INST)

Type of bomb

At the Type of bomb selection you can choose which ordinance you want to drop. Always choose the correct ordinance to get correct results. You can select out of the following selection:

- MK-81
- MK-82
- MK-83
- MK-84
- M117
- CBU-87
- MK-82 AIR
- MK-82 Snakeye (SNK)
- BLU-107

Run-in Speed

Sets the speed at which you want to fly from the ingress point to bomb release. The speed is the true air speed and can be set in increments of 5 knots per click.

Run-in Altitude

Sets the altitude at which you want to start your bombing run. The run-in altitude must be held from the identification point till bomb release. You can set it in increments of 100ft per click.

Distance IP <-> Target

Sets the distance between the identification point and the target point. You can select from either setting it in nautical miles with a 0.1 nautical miles increment or switch the unit to feet with the drop-down on the right. The increment in feet is in 100ft per click. Unit conversion also converts your actual input.

Target altitude

Sets the target altitude in feet above msl. You can set it in increments of 10ft per click.

Dive Angle

Sets the desired dive angle for the attack run. Can be set in 1° increments per click. Needs to be set in Direct and Dive Toss mode.

Loft angle

Sets the desired lofting angle for the attack run. Can be set it in 1° increments per click. Only used for LABS modes.

Must also be set in the LABS panel.

Output

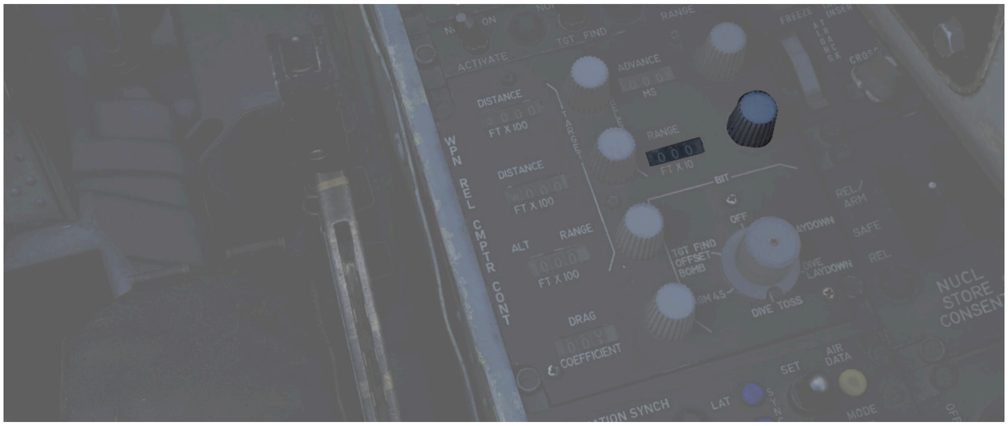
In general the Bombing Calculator will only give you the Output you need to set for the selected attack run.

Pull-up timer

Gives you the calculated pull-up timer in seconds that the WSO can put in the ARBCS computer.

Release range

Gives you the calculated bombing range in feet that the WSO can put in the WRCS panel.



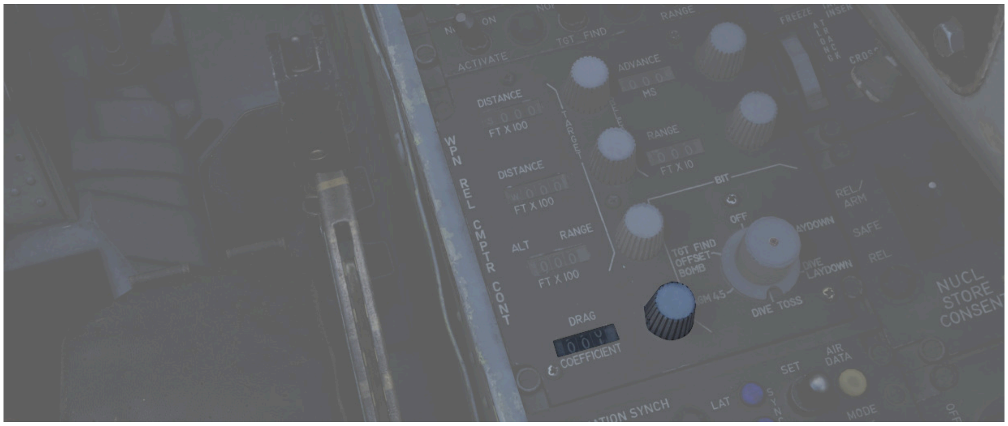
Sight depression

Gives you the calculated manual sight depression in mils.

This can be put into the sight depression knob in order to align the reticle with the target for a manual MIL bombing solution.

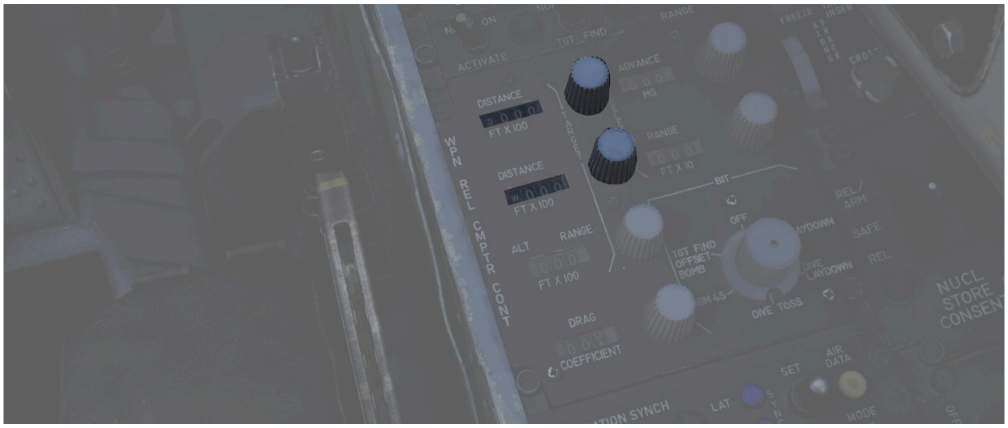
Drag Coefficient

Gives you the Drag Coefficient that the WSO then can set in the WRCS panel.



N/S WRCS and E/W WRCS

Gives you the calculated offset distance values that the WSO then can set in the WRCS panel.



Controls

Clear

Resets all inputs to standard values.

Save

Saves the actual solution under the Bombing Solutions tab at the end of the page.

Tell Jester and Tell Jester and close

With this button the values calculated by the bombing calculator can be transferred to Jester. He will either confirm the input or tell you "can't do" when the input is not correct.

Pattern

Lets you put in values to calculate a release advance.

Pattern Input

Release Interval

Sets the release interval that the pilot sets. You can set it in 0.01 increments per click.

Interval Multiplier

Sets the interval multiplier that the pilot sets. You can select "Norm" or "x10" in the drop-down.

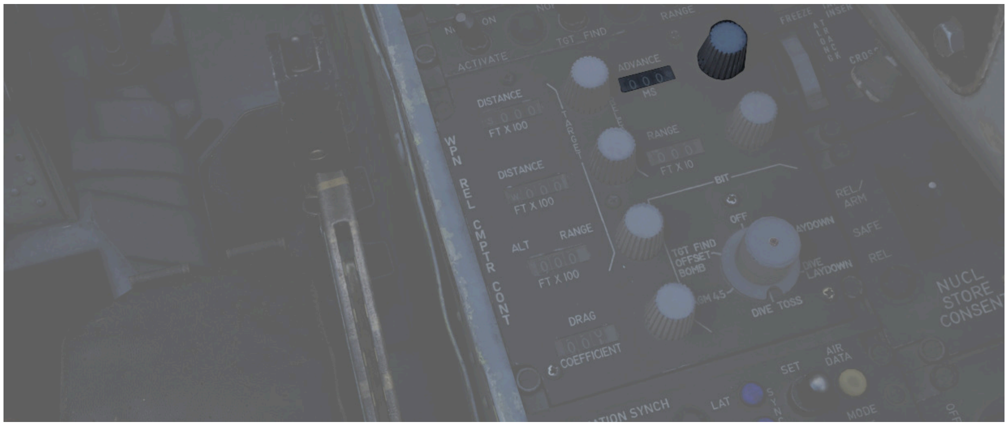
Bomb on Target

Lets you select the number of bomb that you want to hit the target. Every bomb before the selected bomb will hit in front of the target. The rest of the bombs will hit behind the target.

Pattern Output

Release Advance

Gives you the calculated release advance that the WSO can put in.



Bombing Solution

Shows the last saved bombing solutions. The line shows the inputs as following:

- Mode of Delivery
- Type of bomb
- Run-in Altitude
- Run-in Speed

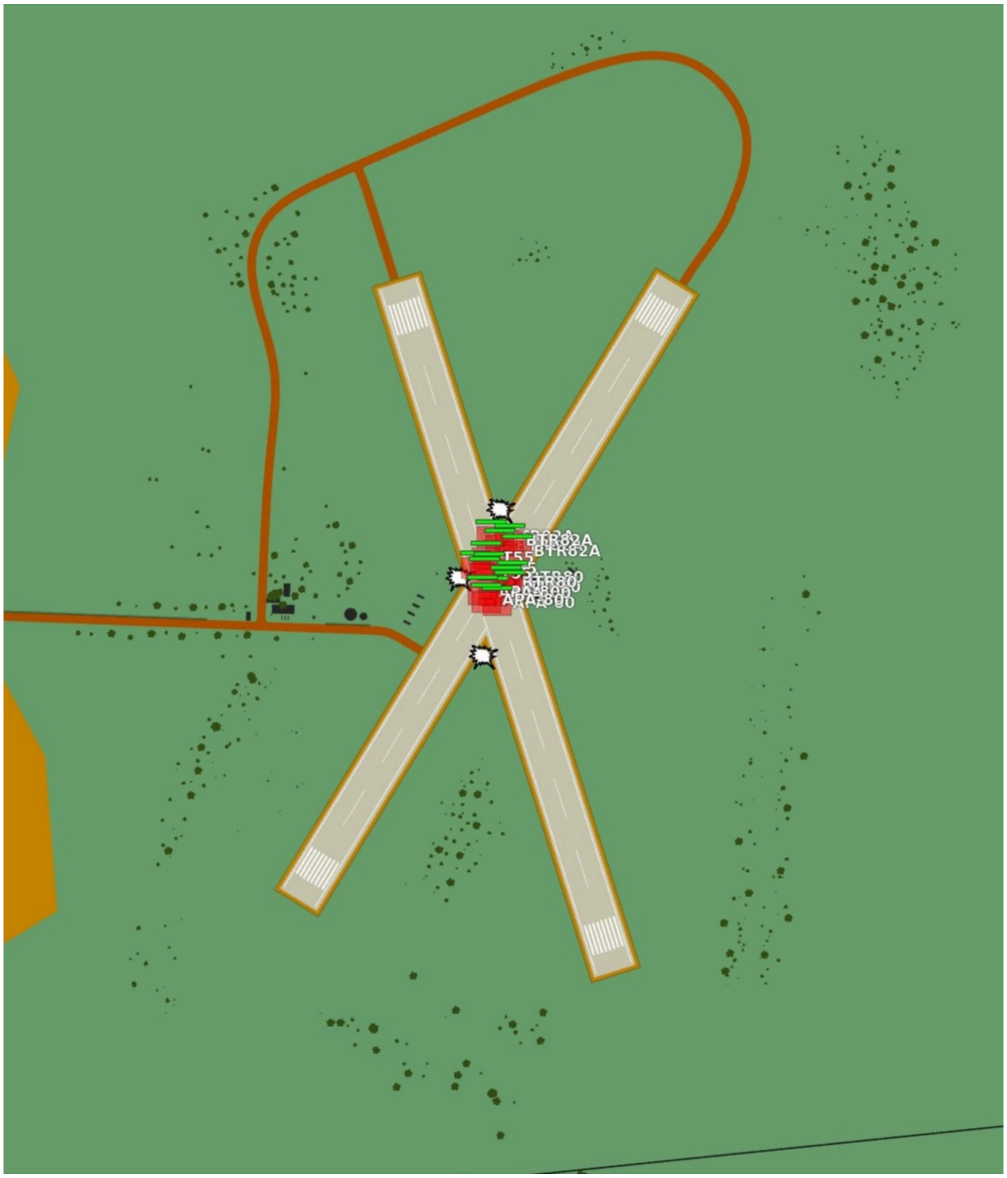
Depending on mode it will also save the corresponding solutions that are needed to fly the attack run.

Example run

This is a step-by-step guide for an example loft bombing run with 12 Mk-82s. In our case we want the fourth bomb to hit the target. The first three should hit in front of the target and the rest should impact behind the target. For that we will use the release advance.

Planning: Advance

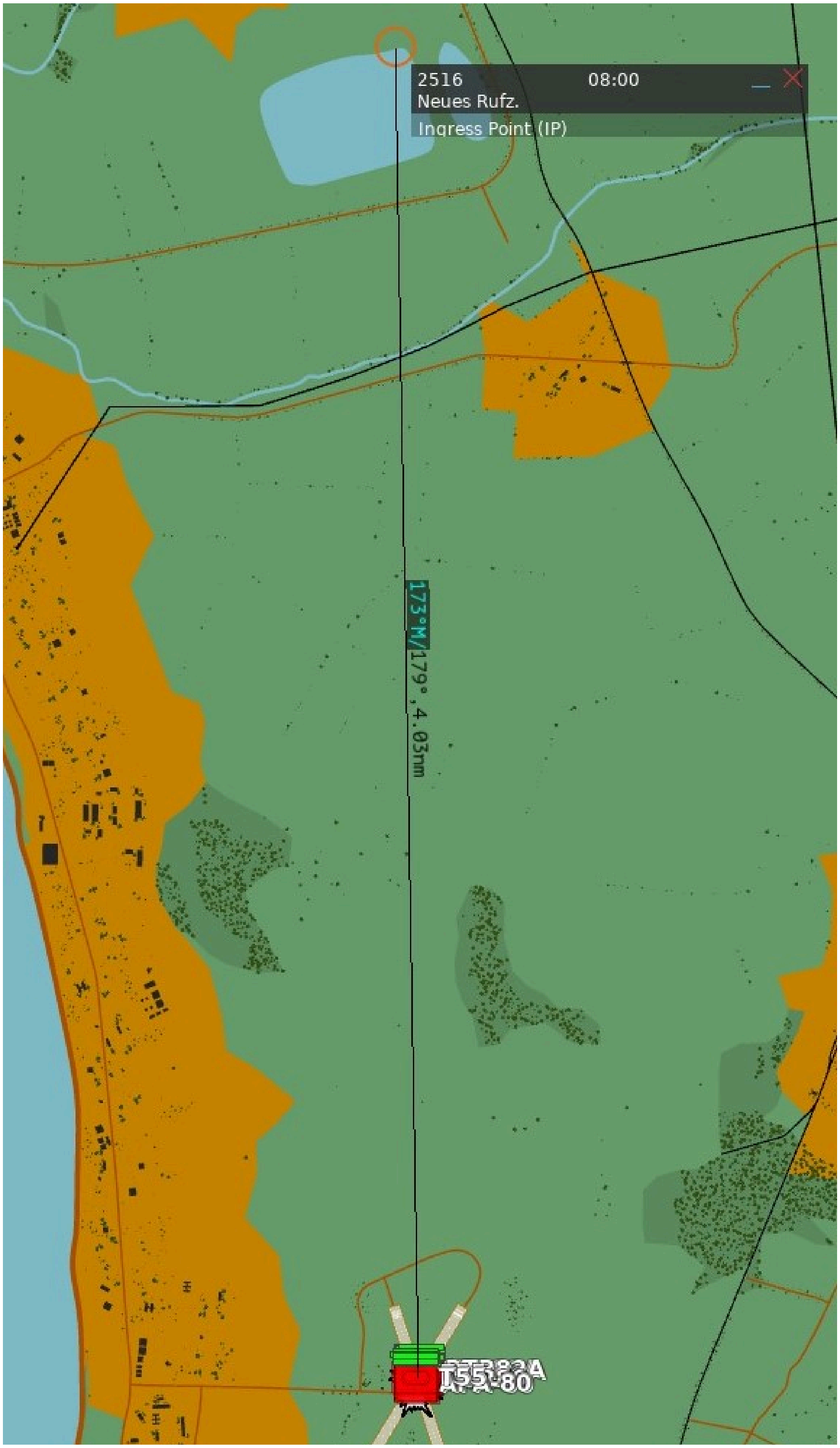
The first step in planning our loft bombing run is to identify and pick a target. In this example run we want to bombard the red units standing on the X.



Planning: IP

In the second step we will take a look at the F10-Map and make out an Identification Point (IP).

> 💡 The IP should always have a good visibility while flying the plane as optical identification of the IP will be the main method of timing the press of the bomb button.

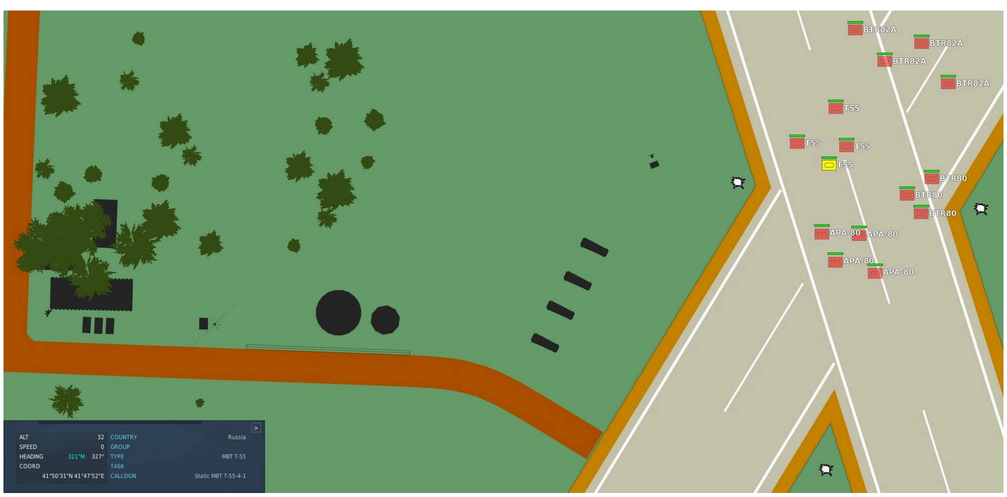

2516
08:00
Neues Rufz.
Ingress Point (IP)
173°M/179°,4.03nm
T55-80

For our target we chose the lake just north of the target as an IP. Now we measure the distance from our IP to the target and note it down as we need to input that to the bombing calculator. In this case the distance is 4.03 NM which we will cut off to 4 NM since the bombing calculator can only take 10ths of a mile.

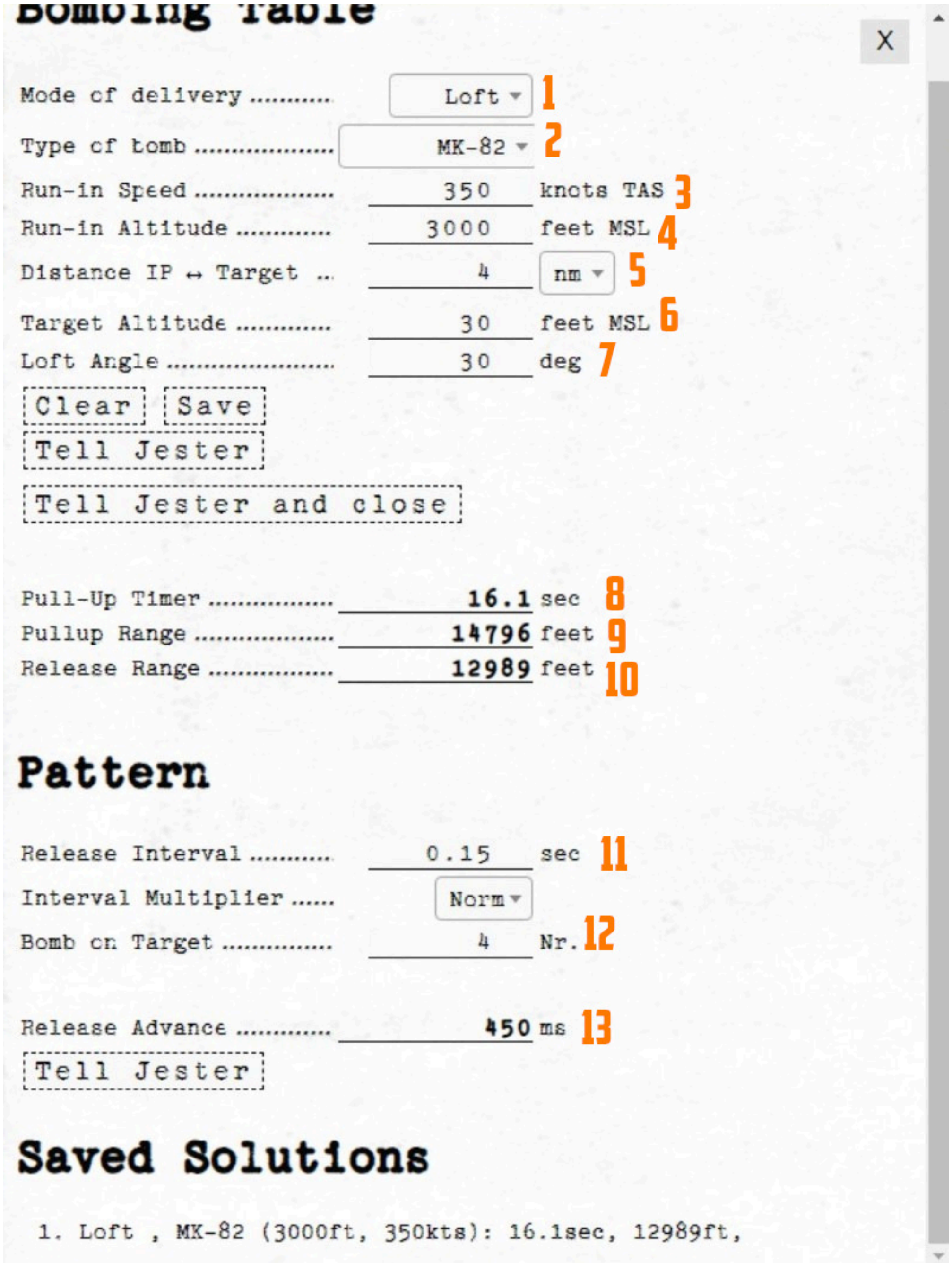
Planning: Target

Now we also need to note the elevation of the target in MSL. To get that information we just click on a unit and read the altitude out of the box in the lower left corner. In this case the target elevation is 32 ft which we will cut down to 30 ft since the bombing calculator can only take values of tens.

> 💡 If the target unit is not visible on the F10 map you can also hover over the position of the enemy unit and read the elevation next to the coordinates in the upper left corner of the map.



Solution



Now that we have all needed values from the map we will put those in the bombing calculator.

(1) Here we can select the mode of delivery which is LOFT in our example.

(2) Here we select the type of our bomb. In our case Mk-82s.

(3) We want to do our run-in at 350 knots true Airspeed.

(4) For our run-in altitude we want it to be at 3000 ft above MSL.

(5) We measured the distance between our Ingress Point and target earlier at the second step. Now we will put that in.

(6) We got our target altitude from the F10 map and can put it in now.

(7) We want our Loft Angle to be at 30°, we put that in.

(8) The bombing calculator now gives us back the Pull-Up Timer that the WSO can than put in at a later step. Alternatively it can be transferred via the "Tell Jester and close" or the "Tell Jester" Button.

(9) The bombing calculator also gives us the Pullup Range. This is only as pilot information.

(10) Further as a pilot information the bombing calculator gives us our release range.

(11) We want to drop our bombs with a release Interval of 0.15 seconds, so we put that in

(12) As we decided on the beginning we want the fourth bomb to be on the target.

(13) In the release advance window the bombing calculator now gives us the value that the WSO can put in later.

Setup

Now the WSO can put in the Loft Angle at the release angle, the pull-up timer at the bombing timers and the release advance in the release advance in the WRCS.

Execution

Now you only need to fly the maneuver for the Loft delivery as precise as possible to make sure you hit the target right. The more precise you fly, the more precise your bombing run will be.

Grease Pencil

Both crew members can use a grease pencil to draw on the side of their canopy.

The interface can be opened by clicking on the corresponding spot on the right front side of the canopy.

Holding down left click allows drawing, while right click will use the eraser.

After closing the window by clicking on the canopy spot again, the results are rendered on the canopy.

💡 Due to engine limitations, the image is not synchronized in multiplayer and is not visible from external view.

Spotting Circle

To aid in crew coordination, during startup and planning, a commonly employed technique is to select a static object at distance, such as a building, vehicle or tree, and drawing a circle around it.

The circle drawn by the Pilot and the WSO will now roughly point in the same direction and, once in air, can be used to enhance coordination.

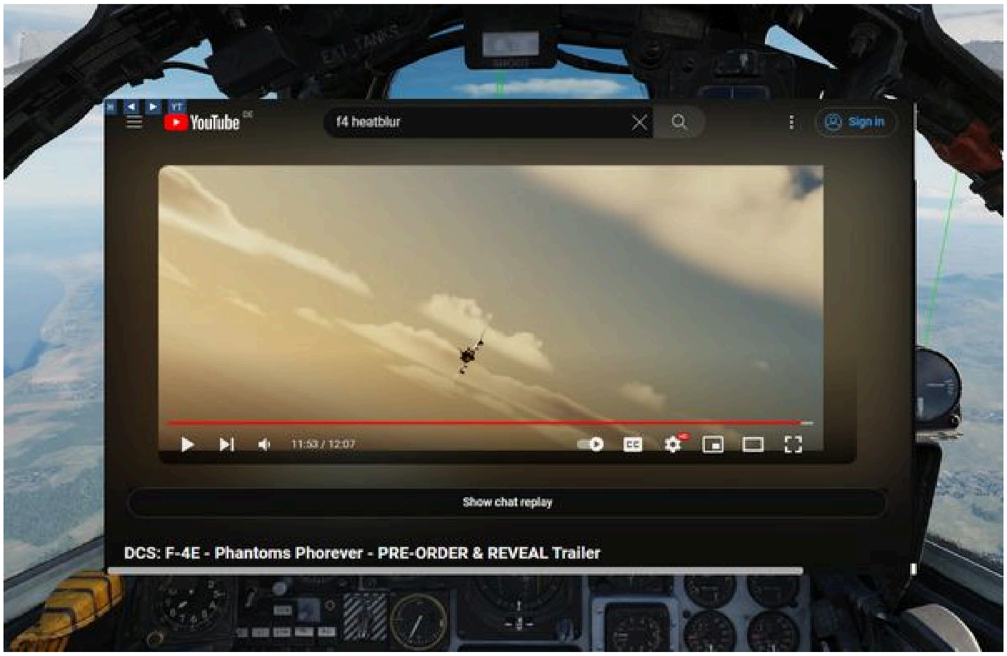
For example, if the Pilot spots a target, they can tell the WSO:

> "There is a target 100m right to the circle."

The WSO can now use his circle marker to locate the right spot.

Virtual Browser

To enhance in-flight studies of the aircraft or simply to overcome some downtime, a virtual browser can be opened (by default RCTRL+V).



The browser enables users to

- watch tutorial videos,
- read documentation provided by third parties,
- listen to a music playlist while flying,
- or also playing some browser games and much more.

The UI is embedded in-game, can be resized and moved around. Buttons on the top left corner allow for quick navigation.

> 💡 To allow free browsing select **Full** for the Special Option *HB UI Domain Access*.

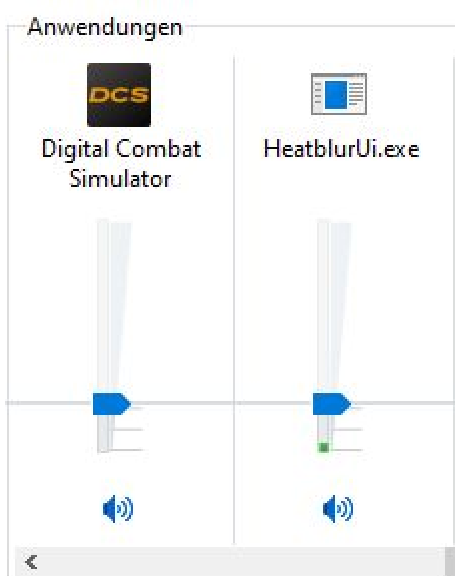
Session

Session data is memorized and saved locally in a folder like

`C:\Users\John Doe\Saved Games\DCS_F4E\cache\`

Clearing this folder will reset all browser preferences and settings.

If required, sound level of the browser can be controlled via the volume mixer provided by Windows through the **HeatblurUi.exe** entry.



Recorders

The aircraft is equipped with multiple recording devices, such as the AVTR or the Gun Camera.

They are capable of recording in-game footage, which is accessible outside of the game in the **Saved Games** folder. A possible path might for example look like:

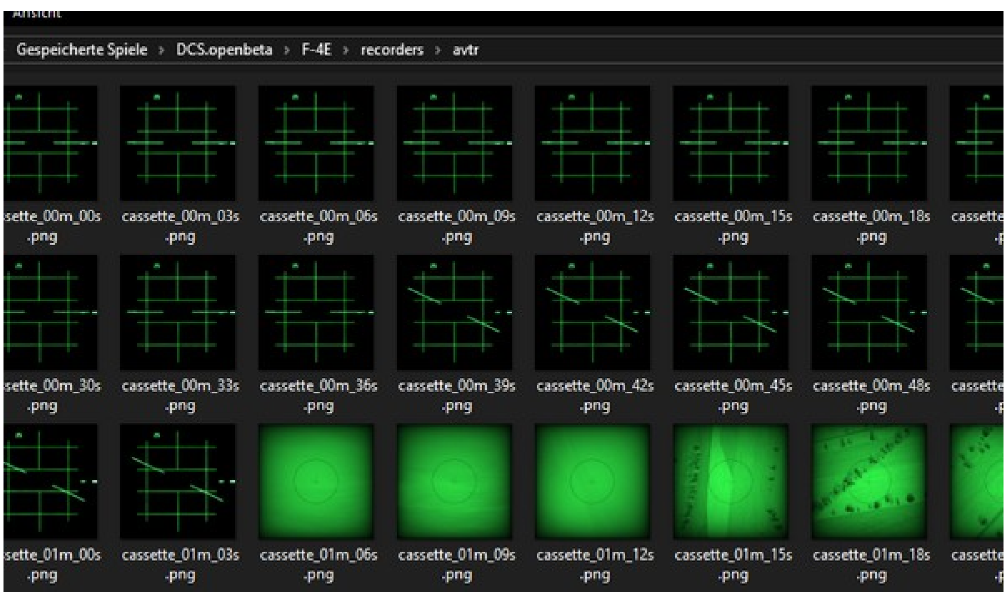
`C:\Users\John Doe\Saved Games\DCS_F4E\recorders\`

Airborne Video Tape Recorder

The AVTR records footage into folder

`C:\Users\John Doe\Saved Games\DCS_F4E\recorders\avtr\`

as PNG files every three seconds, if activated. Each cassette can record up to 20 minutes of footage and, if unthreaded, will overwrite previously recorded footage.



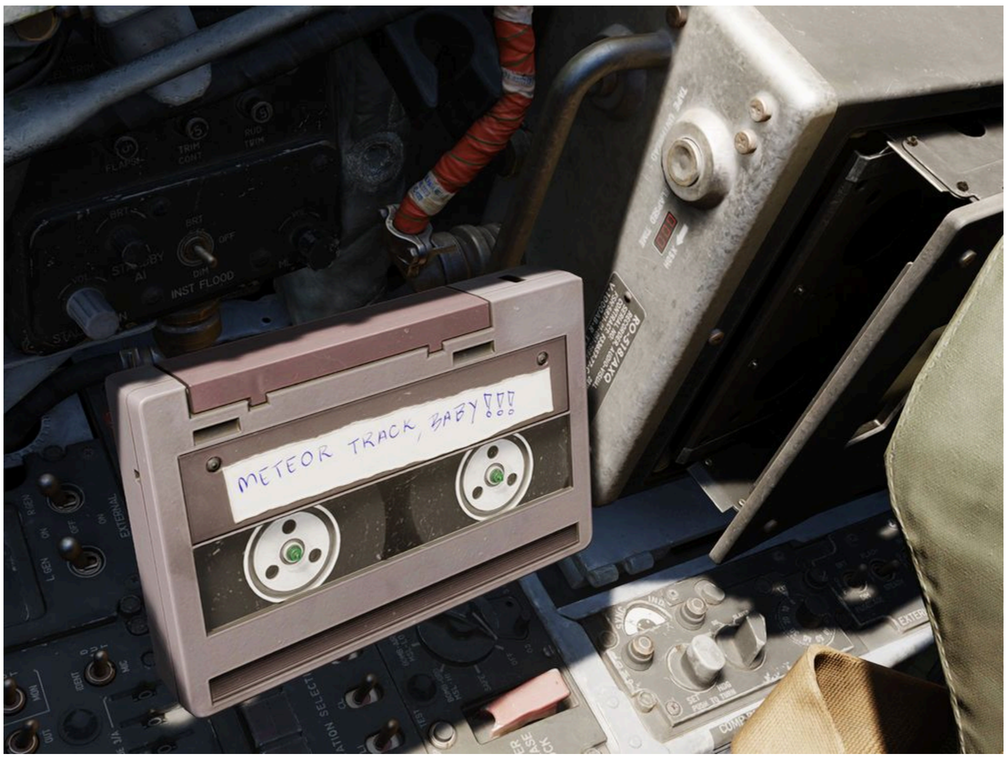
> 💡 This limits the footage to 400 files, each having a size between 50 KB (radar) to 400 KB (TV), totalling to 160 MB.

See 2.1.10.3 AVTR System and 2.2.2 AVTR Control for details on how to operate the device.

Tape Player

Although not present in the real Phantom, our aircraft is equipped with a Tape Player to listen and rock to great tunes in-flight!

Therefore, the **Airborne Video Tape Recorder** doubles as recorder and, if inserting a special music cassette, as music player.



> 💡 The songs can also be found in highest quality in `<DCS Install Folder>\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Music\Of Ghosts and Thunder (Meteor F-4 OST)`.

Controls

The AVTR and most of its controls are to the right of the pilot seat, see 2.1.10.3 AVTR System for details. Status lights and its mode switch can be

found on the main panel in the WSO cockpit, see 2.2.2 AVTR Control.

> 💡 Jester can set the mode from his UI under *"Systems > AVTR Recorder"*.

To swap the cassettes, the AVTR first has to be turned off by setting its mode to OFF. Then, the EJECT button can be pressed to open the cassette holder.

Once the cassette is out, it can be swapped by clicking on it. Insert the cassette back by left clicking the holder.

With the music tape loaded, songs can be played by setting the mode switch to RECORD. The RECORDER ON lamp next to the pilots left knee indicates the status and rotating it will adjust the volume.

The AVTR shows the soundtrack currently playing on its display for Elapsed Time, e.g. `M01` for the first track. Tracks can be skipped by using either the UNTHREAD button or by clicking on the RCD/EOT lamp in the WSO cockpit.

If the tape has finished playing all songs, the EOT lamp illuminates and explicitly commanding the next track will start the first track again.

Custom Songs

The Tape Player automatically fetches any song found in

`<DCS Install Folder>\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Sounds\TapePlayer`

and plays them in alphabetical order.

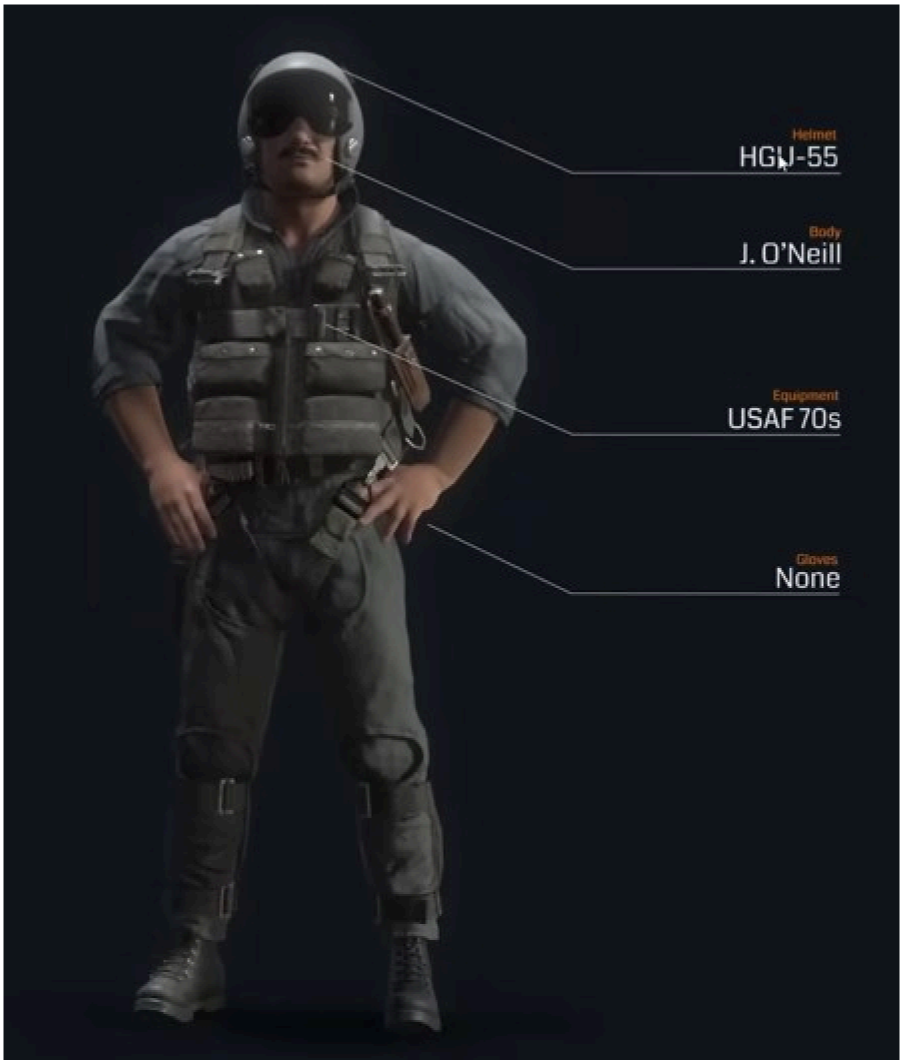
Note that it is necessary for DCS that each song is also set up as a SDEF file in

`<DCS Install Folder>\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Sounds\sdef\TapePlayer`

To add your own songs, simply put them into the above folder and create the corresponding SDEF file. Make sure to restart DCS, as sounds are loaded during start of the game.

Character

Customization



The pilot and WSO character can be customized through an in-game menu, for example selecting one of the many available helmets.

> 🚧 Character customization will be made available later during Early-Access.

Selfie Mode

To enable great screenshots, a special *Selfie Mode* can be entered via an assignable special bind.

In this mode, the character model is rendered even though the player is currently in First-Person-View (`F1`).

The camera can then be moved for example to the front via standard DCS controls:

- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `8` (Numpad): Move up
- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `2` (Numpad): Move down
- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `4` (Numpad): Move left
- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `6` (Numpad): Move right
- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `/` (Numpad): Move forward
- `RCtrl` + `RShift` + `*` (Numpad): Move aft

The view can be turned back to face the pilot by using `LAlt` + `C` and then using the mouse.

Additionally, another special bind exists to freeze the character model movement.

Mission Editor

The F-4 has several special options selectable in the Mission Editor.

Condition and Wear

"And I'll tell you what, since Cal's on it, it's only flown on approved cross-countries and drill weekends. Mint condition, folks, no over-Gs."

All components of the aircraft simulate wear individually, yielding a unique experience on each spawn, but also based on how the F-4 is

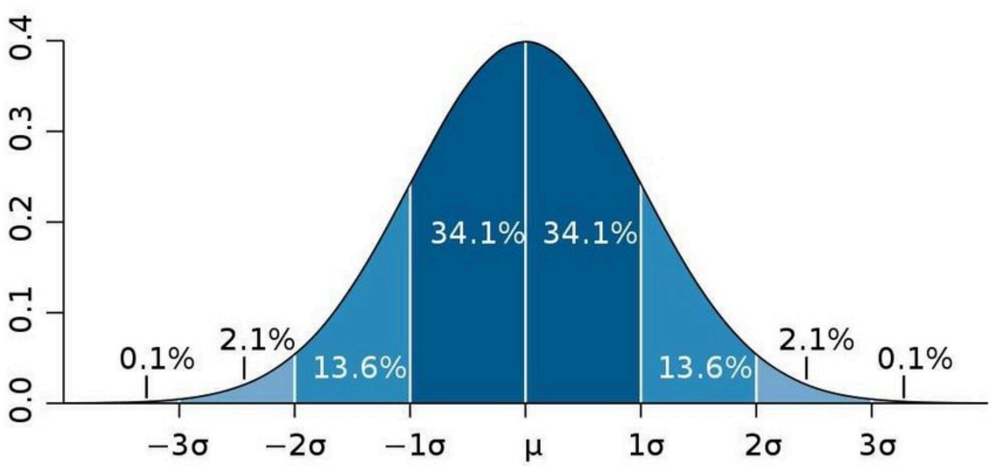
flown.

It is generally differentiated between **Condition** and the **Wear and Tear**, both are dynamic at spawn and can be influenced throughout a mission by various factors such as forces, temperature and also combat damage.

The aircraft has thousands of components that are subject to this system. One concrete example would be the speed of the Pave Spike Targeting Pod elevation gimbal motor. Under perfect condition, it is supposed to have a speed of 60 degrees per second. However, a factory generally can not ensure this to always be the case and accepts a variance, for example it must be within 1% error.

Mathematically, variance is simulated as **normal distribution**, consisting of the parameters

- μ (Mu, mean) - the value it would have under perfect condition
- σ (Sigma) - the variance of the value



Around 70% of times the value will be within one unit of σ, in 95% of cases it will be within 2 units of σ. Extreme cases above 3 units of σ are possible, but very rare.

Said motor has for example a σ value of 3% around 60 degrees per second, meaning that the vast majority of targeting pods will be produced with a motor capable of moving the elevation gimbal between 58 and 62 degrees per second.

> 💡 Variance goes in both directions, your Phantom can also be faster than it is supposed to be.

Aircraft Condition

An aircraft's condition generally refers to its factory and production quality. For example, during war times a factory might run out of supplies and reduce their acceptance criteria during production, generally increasing variance in individual component performance.

Mission designers can control this aspect with the **Aircraft Condition** slider, indicating quality from 0% (poor quality) to 100% (high quality).

For the Pave Spike motor this means that, when set to 0%, its speed variance σ will increase from 3% to 8%, causing majority of pods to be produced with a speed between 55 and 65 degrees per second instead.

Aircraft condition will always still be within limits that a manufacturer might find reasonably acceptable. The aircraft is always still fully functional and operational.

Aircraft Wear and Tear

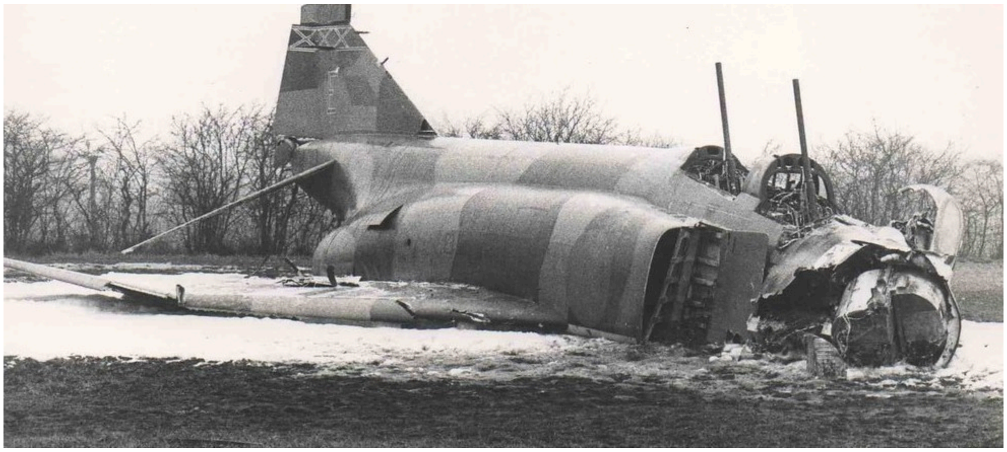
Additionally to production quality, components can degrade during service based on time since the last overhaul, external factors like temperature and weather, aggressive flying involving a lot of forces on the airframe, as well as combat damage.

Mission designers can control this aspect with the **Aircraft Wear and Tear** slider, indicating wear from 0% (no wear) to 100% (a lot of wear), or even beyond that. For an aircraft that was just repaired and came fresh out of service, 0% is appropriate. 100% refers to the latest point at which an aircraft would reasonably be send back for maintenance, as it starts being less effective in practice. Values beyond, such as 500%, can be used to represent scenarios in which pilots are forced to fly an aircraft that operates exceptionally below its expected performance level. It is still

somewhat usable, nothing is straight out broken, but components just do not behave within acceptable parameters anymore.

> 💡 Values beyond 100% cannot be set in the Mission Editor, but are achievable in-flight.

For the Pave Spike motor this means that, when set to 100% wear, its speed variance σ will additionally increase by 20%. Assuming a good initial starting condition, the motor will at that point likely operate between 45 and 75 degrees per second.



Reference Aircraft

The variance system at initial spawn can be turned off with this checkbox, if desired. Components will then start with their mean value μ, without any variance.

That is, with the option checked the setting for condition, as well as wear and tear are ignored and disabled. The aircraft will spawn with all properties set exactly as specified by the manufacturer and according to documentation, without any variance.

This is especially interesting for competitions, where both sides should start with the same conditions for fairness. Or when performing tests and computing performance charts, where the aircraft should always start with the exact same values.

> 💡 Even the reference aircraft is still subject to wear and tear during flight. In a competition, if you pull high Gs, your aircraft's component properties will deviate from your opponents.

INS Reference Alignment Stored

This checkbox allows significant reduction of the time needed for a proper INS alignment during cold-start.

Therefore, the ground crew would previously have started the aircraft and executed a full alignment, then shut it down again, while memorizing parts of the alignment data.

See the INS section for details on how to execute a stored alignment.

Allow Night Vision Goggles

Although F-4E crews never actually operated with NVGs, this option allows mission designers to create modern or fictional scenarios where Phantom crews might have access to such devices.

TACAN Options

Allows to set the TACAN channel and band set when spawning initially.

VOR/ILS Options

Allows to set the VOR/ILS frequency when spawning initially.

KY-28 Encryption Key

Allows to set the encryption key used by the KY-28 communication encryption system.

This setting is especially important when using tools such as ED-VOIP or SRS that simulate encryption while using the radio equipment.

See the KY-28 System for details.

Chaff Double Dispense

An option available to the ground-crew on the AN/ALE-40 countermeasure dispensers.

When selected, each signal to release chaff instead releases chaff on both sides simultaneously.

See the AN/ALE-40 system for details.

IFF Mode 2 Options

Allows to preselect a Mode 2 code for the IFF system.

Laser Options

Allows to preselect a laser code for the targeting pod and laser-guided weapons.

Radio Options

The editor allows to preset all 18 COMM and 20 AUX channels of the UHF radio:

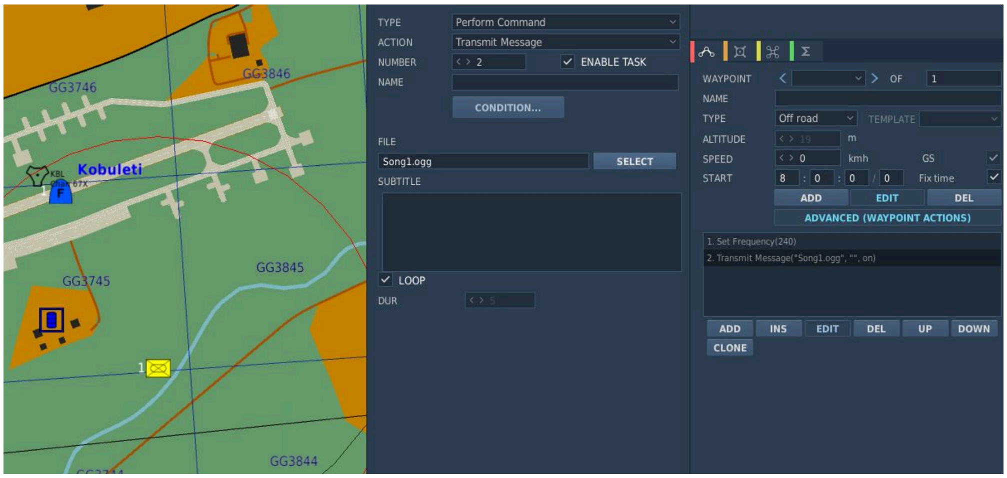
UHF AN/ARC-164 COMM channels

COMM Channel 1	< > 305	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 2	< > 264	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 3	< > 265	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 4	< > 256	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 5	< > 254	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 6	< > 250	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 7	< > 270	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 8	< > 257	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 9	< > 255	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 10	< > 262	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 11	< > 259	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 12	< > 268	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 13	< > 269	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 14	< > 260	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 15	< > 263	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 16	< > 261	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 17	< > 267	MHz	AM
COMM Channel 18	< > 251	MHz	AM

UHF AN/ARC-164 AUX channels

AUX Channel 1	< > 284	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 2	< > 283	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 3	< > 265	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 4	< > 281	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 5	< > 280	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 6	< > 279	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 7	< > 270	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 8	< > 277	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 9	< > 276	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 10	< > 275	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 11	< > 274	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 12	< > 268	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 13	< > 269	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 14	< > 271	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 15	< > 278	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 16	< > 273	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 17	< > 267	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 18	< > 272	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 19	< > 282	MHz	AM
AUX Channel 20	< > 266	MHz	AM

It is possible to set up a station in the Mission Editor for use in ADF navigation. To do this, a unit, such as a ground station, needs to be placed on the map. This unit should then execute a command to tune into the desired AM frequency (*Perform Command > Set Frequency*). Finally, the unit must transmit a message continuously throughout the mission, which requires setting the message to loop (*Perform Command > Transmit Message*).



Also, radio frequency parameters to read currently active UHF Radio frequencies are provided for mission triggers:

Parameter	Description
`COMM_FREQ`	Comm frequency in MHz
`AUX_FREQ`	Aux frequency in MHz

Training Missions

Lessons

These missions, we like to call them "lessons", have been designed in such a way that, as a beginner, everything important that you need for a successful start with your new F-4E Phantom II is explained.

Goals

The stated goal of these lessons is that after completing them once or several times, you can say: "Hey, I think I now know how this thing works (again)". You can use the lessons as "initial training" or as so-called "recurrent training". Whenever you haven't flown for a long time and need a refresher. By the way: We recommend a refresher every 90 days at least ...

Please note that the lessons require a certain level of knowledge and basic flying skills. In the lessons we don't explain flying as such, but rather the aircraft, its systems and their usage, and the behavior. The lessons may therefore be understood as a kind of "interactive type training in the cockpit seat" and not as "basic flying training".

Your way through

Due to the design, systems and age of the jet, it has many pecularities. Precise application of system knowledge in daily duty on this wonderful aircraft is the key to success. With the F-4E Phantom II you will be challenged in so many ways. So be ready! We leave it up to you whether you want to get in the air immediately without studying the manual, or whether you want to read upon it before your first flight ...

Decide for yourself!

If you want to fly immediately, the training lessons will provide you with enough knowledge to successfully complete these flights. You can even study this section or other parts of the manual during your flights; this is another innovation in the DCS F-4E Phantom II. The lessons can be paused at any time if necessary. Of course, you are welcome to practice multi-tasking and fly at the same time as studying the manual; that's not explicitly forbidden! Learning by doing is the basic strategy for the training lessons, but you will be required to read through the manual and carefully study the systems if you want to become a real pro.

Procedures

We have depicted the most important "normal procedures" of the aircraft and have based the lessons very much on reality. These procedures should also be based as closely as possible on the real procedures, although we were aware that it wouldn't be possible to implement everything in the simulation. Think, for example, of the ejection seat harness, the oxygen mask and its test, the transponder, the IFF system, or similar systems. Some steps are left out because they are already set correctly after spawning the aircraft and to really speed up the lesson to get you in the air; of course you may check them as well.

Therefore, not all procedures are depicted as can be found in real aircraft manuals; some of them had to be changed, shortened, or omitted entirely. Nevertheless, for example, we simulated putting on the helmet (including sun protection visor and sun glasses), an immersive innovation in DCS.

Our way

We thought a lot about how best to explain the operation of such a complex aircraft with training missions. Where do you start, where do you end? How detailed should it be so that a "nerd" doesn't miss anything, how superficial can it be so that a "leisure gamer" doesn't lose interest? How tight are the checks whether the player is adhering to the procedures and the planned flight route? A basic idea at Heatblur has

always been to get players "in the air" as quickly as possible, without them having to spend hours watching introductory videos or studying thick books. All of this caused us a lot of headaches...

In any case, we spared no expense, effort and discussions to serve both types of players more or less "equally". As you can imagine, such a project is not entirely trivial, and you have to make a lot of compromises when designing the lessons. Sometimes, you have to tell hardliners: "Hey, this might be too difficult for the players and not really relevant to the simulation, eventhough it would be extra cool!" You have to convince other team members to do things they personally don't like: Hey, that's exactly what the players need, but a little different please!

Fortunately, we had professional help from SME's (real former Phantom pilots and weapons systems officer and even instructors). These guys helped us with so many decisions, and spiced the product with their knowledge and experience. Conversely, they slapped us on the wrist if we left out something they thought was important.

In a complex development process that such a high-quality DCS module requires, there are many obstacles and limitations, but also many opportunities and possibilities. That's why we made it a point right from the start to present the handling of the aircraft's systems as comprehensively as possible.

We hope you like what you have in hands now!

Lessons Overview

This section is limited to the description of the first 4 lessons:

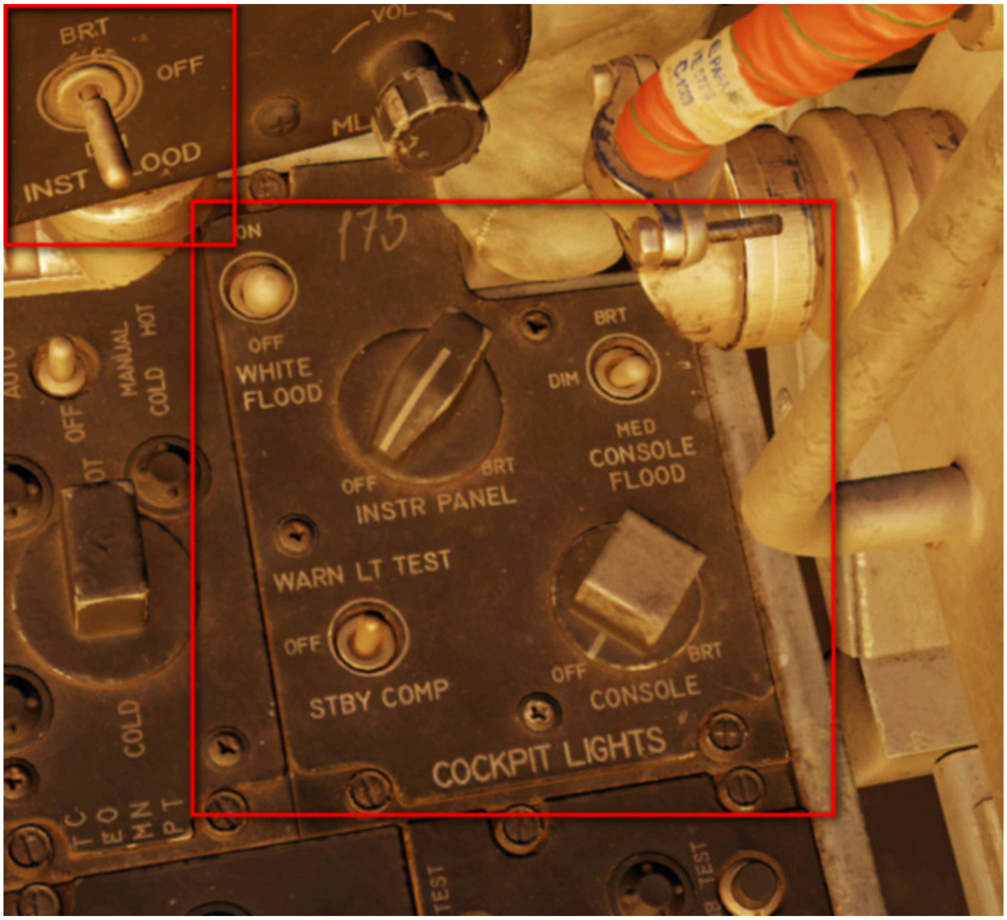
- Lesson 01 - Startup
- Lesson 02 - Taxi
- Lesson 03 - Normal Takeoff
- Lesson 04 - Visual approach

General Tips and Tricks

It rarely happens that you get stuck in a procedure, or you don't know exactly what to do next.

Here are some general tips & tricks as created by testers during the testing phase:

- For lessons starting on the ground, the noise might be very loud. You have three options:
    - Wait until the other jets have taken off before beginning with the lesson.
    - You are allowed to close the canopy whenever you need to (default binding is LCTRL+C), despite the F-4 usually closes it very lately
    - Adjust the audio volume of DCS to suit the autio hardware you are using.
- If you have troubles with a very dark cockpit, a few things can be done:
    - Use the internal cockpit illumination on the COCKPIT LIGHTS panel (right side):
        - The CONSOLE OFF/BRT knob
        - The INSTR PANEL knob
        - The CONSOLE FLOOD light switch
        - The INST FLOOD light switch



- Set the SYSTEM option "Cockpit Global Illumination" to ON
- Set the SYSTEM option "Gamma" to 2.0 or higher values.

Emergencies

There are situations in which the triggers of a lesson no longer work properly for some unknown reason. Fortunately, this only happens very rarely! This usually results in the highlights (the yellow helper boxes) no longer being shown or hidden correctly, or the logic circuits no longer reacting correctly to events in the simulation. We experienced this ourselves during the testing phase and would like to at least inform you about it here and now.

The influence of the time acceleration function on the stability of the lessons is not documented, but to be on the safe side we advise against using the time acceleration function.

If you got stuck in a lesson, you should take the following actions:

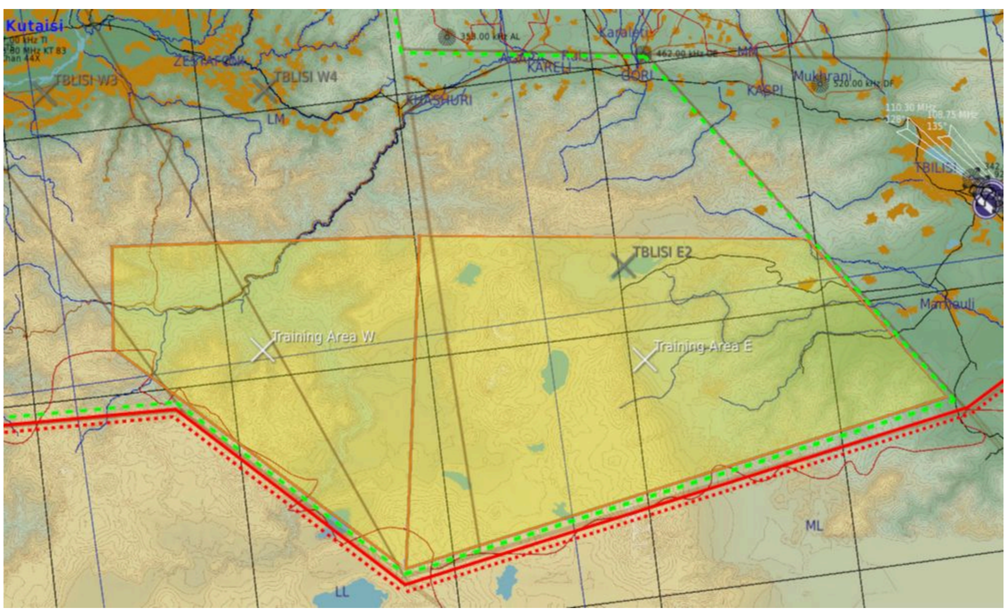
- Stay calm! The two most important pilot rules apply:
    1. Aviate, navigate, communicate.
    2. Don't crash, and above all: don't break anything!
- Check whether everything in the aircraft is actually set up as required according to the checklist/procedure. If necessary, go up the list a few steps and again check each step individually, starting from the top by asking yourself: What is written in the book? > How did I set it up?
- If that doesn't help: Jump back one, or even more steps (how to do this is explained above)
- If that doesn't help either: Jump back to the beginning of the procedure (how to do this is explained above)
- If all that doesn't help:
    - Quit the mission and save the DEBRIEFING (log-file) and the TRACK (trk-file) in the debriefing screen
    - If you suspect a bug, please open a new ticker in the DCS forum > Heatblur Simulations > Phantom area using this link: https://forum.dcs.world/forum/919-dcs-f-4-phantom/. Please add as much information as possible in order to help us finding a possible issue. Thank you for your support!
    - In any case, we recommend to restart DCS and load the mission again. Sorry for that!

Lesson 01 - Startup

Lesson 01 - Kobuleti airfield

The airfield has a picturesque location between the mountains to the south and the Black Sea to the west. Here is a photo of the airfield, taken a month ago from a helicopter, looking S- W.

The entire F-4E Phantom II training for your year (July 1995 syllabus) will be held in Kobuleti. The choice fell on an airfield in the Caucasus region for understandable reasons, as this map is delivered with DCS as standard. The designated training areas in the south of Georgia (designated as "Training Area W" and "Training Area E") offer a sufficiently large playground for training, including supersonic flights.



Lesson 01 - Weather

The weather has been very bad in the last few days. A persistent Black Sea depression had brought a lot of rain. However, stabilization occurred

last night and morning. Dry air mass flows in from the east. The mid-level cloud layer is expected to break up. The weather forecast predicts that the clouds will no longer be a problem in about an hour and the temperature will rise quickly due to strong sunshine. However, ground-level haze is still to be expected as the ground has stored a lot of moisture and heavy evaporation from the sun is to be expected.

Lesson 01 - Slots

Your fellow pilots will begin their flights immediately, your flight a little later. The airfield is a very noisy environment, so wait until the jets currently positioned on the runway have taken off before beginning with the lesson. Then the noise level should be somewhat tolerable... hopefully at least.

Currently registered sorties for this afternoon:

- #1 Dodge 41 (AI, already in the air)
- #2 Dodge 31 (AI, already in the air)
- #3 Dodge 21 & 22 (AI, at the start)
- #4 Dodge 11 (you, at parking position #25)

All Dodge flights complete familiarization and training flights at the airfield.

Lesson 01 - Aircraft

Your aircraft is "cold & dark" on the ramp #25, the nose is pointed towards the runway, and is prepared and fully fueled. The Dash-60 ground power unit is already in place left of your jet.

The technician responsible for the aircraft, also called the "crew chief", is already in front of your aircraft and waiting to support you. You can communicate with him using the Jester menu > CREW CHIEF.

By the way, his assistant is standing by on your left side, next to the Dash-60 ground power unit.

You've just sat down in the ejection seat and are starting to check the cockpit. You may be saying to yourself "Damn, I'm blown away by everything I see, but I guess I don't know what I'm doing...".

Don't worry, your instructor, who is also your WSO for today's flight, will guide you through the lesson!

Lesson 01 - Audio & text

Your instructor speaks from the back seat, always listen carefully. Assume that everything he says is important. As an aid, all of the text he speaks is displayed at the top right of the screen. If you don't notice or understand something, you can always read it above. The text remains visible on the screen for a maximum of 1000 seconds until it either disappears or is replaced by new text.

Note that whenever you missed one of the text messages, you can access the message log by pressing the key "Escape" and then selecting MESSAGES HISTORY and read after.

Lesson 01 - Tasks & steps

The lessons are divided into tasks, which are based on the names of the procedures. These tasks are divided into individual steps, whereby the steps go hand in hand with the individual items in the procedure. The tasks for this lesson are:

- Task 1: Check the aircraft and essential switches before applying external power.
- Task 2: Perform the internal inspection of the aircraft.
- Task 3: Prepare the aircraft for engine start.
- Task 4: Start the engines.

Here are some special tips for lesson 01

- Task 4: Let the instructor speak to the end of each instruction, there is enough time for the actions to be carried out.
- Task 4 > Step 4b: Be careful when opening the fuel, this should not be done before 10% RPM! If you see the EGT rising above 700°C, immediately cut off the fuel by moving the throttle lever to the "OFF" position. Note: engine parameters may vary slightly depending on the environmental conditions. Only the EGT value is to be monitored very closely!

Lesson 02 - Taxi

Lesson 02 - Weather

The weather changes slowly but noticeably. The clouds start breaking up, and the forcast regarding the ground-level haze was correct. Wind speed and direction haven't changed so far.

Lesson 02 - Slots

Slots haven't changed.

- #1 Dodge 41 (AI, already on ground, refuelling)
- #2 Dodge 31 (AI, already on ground, refuelling)
- #3 Dodge 21 & 22 (AI, at the start)
- #4 Dodge 11 (you, at parking position #25)

All Dodge flights complete familiarization and training flights at the airfield.

Lesson 02 - Aircraft

Your aircraft is already "hot on the ramp #25" with both engines running, the nose is pointed towards the runway. All aircraft systems are set to the positions in which you left in the previous lesson. The Dash-60 ground power unit is already removed.

The "crew chief" has changed his position to forward right of your aircraft and is waiting to support you.

His assistant is standing by on your forward left side.

Lesson 02 - Audio & text

Your instructor speaks from the back seat, always listen carefully. Assume that everything he says is important. As an aid, all of the text he speaks is displayed at the top right of the screen. If you don't notice or understand something, you can always read it above. The text remains visible on the screen for a maximum of 1000 seconds until it either disappears or is replaced by new text.

Note that whenever you missed one of the text messages, you can access the message log by pressing the key "Escape" and then selecting MESSAGES HISTORY and read after.

Lesson 02 - Tasks & steps

The lessons are divided into tasks, which are based on the names of the procedures. These tasks are divided into individual steps, whereby the

steps go hand in hand with the individual items in the procedure. The tasks for this lesson are:

- Task 1: Check the aircraft before moving on own power.
- Task 2: Taxi to holding point RWY 07.

Lesson 02 - Tips & tricks

Here are some special tips for lesson 02:

- Task 1 > Step 7: The flight controls check can be omitted in case it becomes too difficult. Use the FIRE TEST BUTTON on the instrument panel before or during performing this check to skip it. The reason for this is that for this check a few things have to be done in parallel:
    - Listening to our instructor
    - Performing the inputs on the flight control system (movements and button/switch presses/settings)
    - Listening to the confirmation given by the crew chief
    - Pressing "Spacebar" after receiving the crew chief's confirmation
- Task 1 > Step 7f & 7h: The crew chief will not respond when you set the rudder to the neutral position.
- Task 2 > Introduction: Observe that the audio containing the taxi clearance by ATC is played through your UHF radio. Therefore, if you turn off or tune down the volume of the radio, or route the audio signal to some other audio device tuned down in volume, you might not hear the call correctly. In any way, the spoken text can be read on the upper right corner of the screen, and the lesson continues normally.
- Task 2 > Step 1a) Use the power levers very gently! Once the aircraft started rolling, pull back the power levers to idle and carefully control the taxi speed using minimum power together with the wheel brakes.

Lesson 03 - Normal Takeoff

Lesson 03 - Weather

The weather is changing noticeably with every minute. The clouds continue breaking up, and the ground-level haze is still there. Wind speed and direction haven't changed so far.

Lesson 03 - Slots

Slots haven't changed.

- #1 Dodge 41 (AI, already on ground)
- #2 Dodge 31 (AI, already on ground)
- #3 Dodge 21 & 22 (AI, already on ground)
- #4 Dodge 11 (you, at the holding point for runway 07)

All Dodge flights complete familiarization and training flights at the airfield.

Lesson 03 - Aircraft

Your aircraft is already "hot on the holding point for runway 07" with both engines running, the nose is pointed towards the runway. All aircraft systems are set to the positions in which you left in the previous lesson.

Lesson 03 - Audio & text

Your instructor speaks from the back seat, always listen carefully. Assume that everything he says is important. As an aid, all of the text he speaks is displayed at the top right of the screen. If you don't notice or understand something, you can always read it above. The text remains visible on the screen for a maximum of 1000 seconds until it either disappears or is replaced by new text.

Note that whenever you missed one of the text messages, you can access the message log by pressing the key "Escape" and then selecting MESSAGES HISTORY and read after.

Lesson 03 - Tasks & steps

The lessons are divided into tasks, which are based on the names of the procedures. These tasks are divided into individual steps, whereby the steps go hand in hand with the individual items in the procedure. The tasks for this lesson are:

- Task 1: Check aircraft while being positioned at the holding point for RWY 07.
- Task 2: Line-up the aircraft on RWY 07
- Task 3: Check essential aircraft systems while being lined up on RWY 07
- Task 4: Perform a normal take-off (slats & flaps "out" & "down") on RWY 07
- Task 5: Perform a normal climb at 350kts or M0.9 (whichever is reached first), by following turnpoints 1, 2 and 3.
- Task 6: Perform cruise checks.

Lesson 03 - Tips & tricks

Here are some special tips for lesson 03:

- Task 1 > Steps 4a - 4e: The flight controls check only requires to check if the stick is moving freely (at least 50% of the stick deflection must be made). You can also check the rudder, but this is not required by that step.

- Task 1 > Step 10: Having the MASTER CAUTION alert active indicates something is or at least was wrong. So reset it, then check if it stays out.

- Task 2 > Step 1: Observe that the audio containing the line-up clearance by ATC is played through your UHF radio. Therefore, if you turn off or tune down the volume of the radio, or route the audio signals to some other audio device tuned down in volume, you might not hear the call correctly. In any way, the spoken text can be read on the upper right corner of the screen, and the lesson continues.

- Task 4 > Introduction Observe that the audio containing the take-off clearance by ATC is played through your UHF radio. Therefore, if you turn off or tune down the volume of the radio, or route the audio signals to some other audio device tuned down in volume, you might not hear the call correctly. In any way, the spoken text

can be read on the upper right corner of the screen, and the lesson continues.

- Task 4 > Step 5: For beginners, we recommend to perform the first take-off without afterburner (just MIL power, which means 100% rpm without afterburner), despite we know that taking off with afterburner is a ton of fun. The reason behind is, that you will then be able to hear all call-outs of your instructor, because the time needed for the take-off is long enough. Whenever you think you manage all steps by heart that are necessary for a safe take-off without any instructions, go for a take-off with afterburner. Please don't tell our SME's that this text exists at all, and never tell someone that you have followed the recommendation ...
- Take-off: Before taking off, go through the takeoff procedure. You need to remember the items by heart:
    - No NGS after 70 knots
    - Full aft STICK by 80 knots
    - Hold 10 to 12° NOSE UP
    - Raise the GEAR & FLAPS as soon as airborne
    - TRIM as needed
- Task 4 > Step 8: In DCS, with the current wind situation (no cross wind component), it is really not necessary to use the nose gear steering. You will only be reminded by the instructor in case you use the nose gear steering above 70 knots.
- Task 4 > Step 11: Pitch trim is best done in a number of quick pulses instead of one long press to avoid over- trimming.
- Task 4 > Steps 13: Make sure to have flaps retracted before reaching 250 knots, but there is a certain safety buffer and they should not be damaged at exactly 250 knots.
- Task 5 > Step 1: Make sure to fly a heading of about 064° and climb after lift-off. Make sure to fly at an airspeed of not more than 350 knots. Fly a shallow climb when using no afterburner (about 10°

pitch angle). Fly a steep climb when using afterburner (about 30° pitch angle).

- After reaching a certain altitude and airspeed with gear and flaps up, the lesson is accomplished. You may continue the climb following the route which is commanded by your instructor. If you got "lost in space", open up the F-10 map, click on your aircraft, and observe the planned flightroute; you may then follow it more easily.
- Task 6 > Step 1d: There is currently no way of comparing the values on both altimeters. This step was kept in the procedure just in case you need it when operating with a real WSO in the rear seat.

Lesson 04 - Visual approach

Lesson 04 - Weather

The weather has become pretty nice. The clouds have disappeared more or less, and the ground-level haze is less visible due to the quickly rising temperature. Wind speed and direction still haven't changed so far.

Lesson 04 - Slots

Slots haven't changed.

- #1 Dodge 41 (AI, already on ground)
- #2 Dodge 31 (AI, already on ground)
- #3 Dodge 21 & 22 (AI, already on ground)
- #4 Dodge 11 (you, in-flight inbound turnpoint 7)

All Dodge flights complete familiarization and training flights at the airfield.

Lesson 04 - Aircraft

Your aircraft is already "in flight" inbound turnpoint 7 at 22,000ft altitude at Mach 0.7. All systems are set in a way as they would be after a typical air-to-air training, thus it will be required to prepare the aircraft for the upcoming approach and landing.

Lesson 04 - Audio & text

Your instructor speaks from the back seat, always listen carefully. Assume that everything he says is important. As an aid, all of the text he speaks is displayed at the top right of the screen. If you don't notice or understand something, you can always read it above. The text remains visible on the screen for a maximum of 1000 seconds until it either disappears or is replaced by new text.

Note that whenever you missed one of the text messages, you can access the message log by pressing the key "Escape" and then selecting

MESSAGES HISTORY and read after.

Lesson 04 - Tasks & steps

The lessons are divided into tasks, which are based on the names of the procedures. These tasks are divided into individual steps, whereby the steps go hand in hand with the individual items in the procedure.

The tasks for this lesson are:

- Task 1: Check aircraft for landing while in cruise flight.
- Task 2: Prepare the aircraft for landing while in the downwind RWY 07.
- Task 3: Land the aircraft on RWY 07.
- Task 4: Secure the aircraft while taxiing back to the parking position PRK 25.

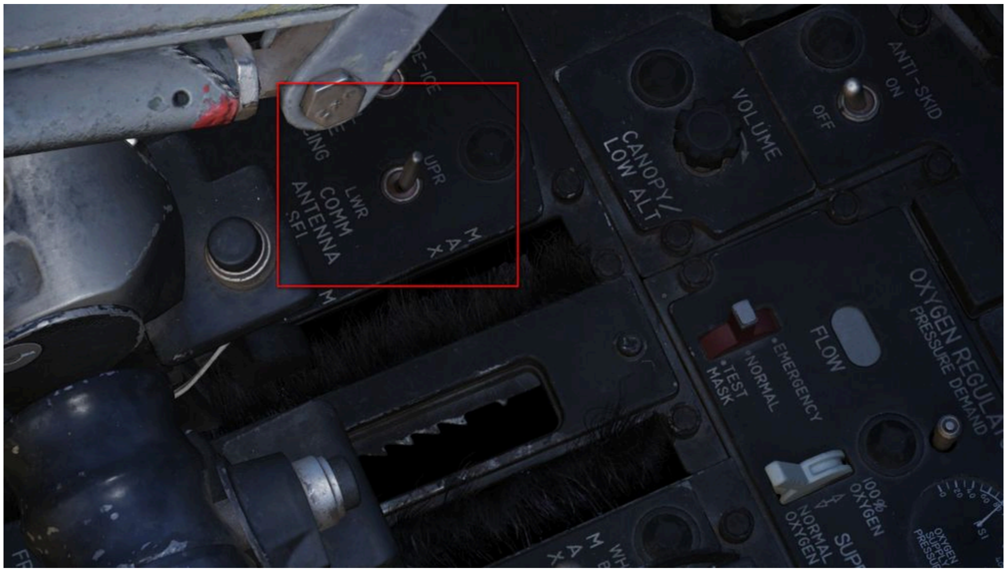
Lesson 04 - Tips & tricks

Here are some special tips for lesson 04:

- Trim the jet: Pitch trim is best done in a number of quick pulses instead of one long press to avoid over-trimming.
- Autopilot: Use the autopilot modes "attitude hold" and "altitude hold" whenever you think you need your hands free. The system is a great assistant, so use it!
- DME distances: DME distance information is shown on the lower left corner of the HSI.

- HSI course settings: The course setting can be changed with the COURSE SET KNOB on the lower right corner of the HSI:

- Task 1 > Step 4: If you can't reach the COMM Antenna Select Switch, move the throttles back for a moment.



- Task 1 > Step 8: The transition altitude in this particular region is 4,000m (13,120 ft), and the transition level is flight level 140 (FL140, which is 14,000 feet). When you descend through 14,000 feet, you have to set your altimeter to the value of the local QNH (which today is 29.84 in/HG). It's no big deal if you forget about that, it is not relevant for the outcome of the lesson.
- PENETRATION / DESCENT: Follow the instructions as good as possible. You may engage the attitude hold autopilot during descent and focus on airspeed and power management. Don't forget to set the QNH once passing the transition level (in this case 14,000 feet).
- PENETRATION / TURN: Fly a shallow left turn. If you have already reached 2,500 feet altitude, good. If you are still higher, continue descending during the left turn until reaching 2500 feet. Keep an eye on your sink rate. Fly smoothly, and don't work hard on the stick. Intercept radial 064 as good as you can in order to align on the runway heading. Treat her like a lady, and think ahead! Use the F-10 map if you got lost in space. Don't rush into Batumi airspace. Landing permission is already given. You are the last flight approaching the airfield for the next two hours.
- Task 2: Remember these five items by heart: GEAR / FLAPS / HYDRAULIC PRESSURE / WARNING LIGHTS / ANTI SKID
- Task 3: If you fly correct airspeeds, all instructions can be heard until the end. If you rush, the timeline becomes compressed and the sequence of events then may become overwhelming. During the approach continuously cross check Pitch / Power / Trim. Look out for the runway, adjust your heading with slight roll maneuvers if necessary. Rise the seat in case you have troubles seeing the runway at higher angles of attack. Fly gently, follow the instructions, and think ahead!
- Go-around: In case you have the slightest doubt that you cannot manage a safe landing: GO AROUND. Fly the missed approach procedure by entering a short left hand traffic pattern at 1500 feet at 250 knots. Take your time, be patient with yourself, don't rush and keep an eye on airspeed and altitude!
- Landing / flare: The aircraft was certified for carrier landings. If you don't flare before touchdown at a 2° to 3° approach path, you WILL

slam the aircraft into the runway. This causes wear to the wheels and the landing gear legs, but nothing more. You may decide on your own if you want to flare just a bit to decrease the sink rate slightly. Sink rates above 3 to 4 m/s (600 to 700 ft/min) depending on weight, might damage the landing gear though.

- Landing / touchdown: Make sure to stay aligned with the centerline using rudder only. Prepare yourself to deploy the drag chute, which stabilizes the aircraft during the landing roll. Taxi to the end of the runway and then leave it to the right side!
- Taxi: Follow the marshaller after leaving the runway. If you struggle performing the "After landing procedure " while taxiing, you may stop the aircraft on the taxi way for that. The car though will not stop. When finished with the procedure, continue taxiing to your initial parking position, nose pointed towards shelter "25", and stop there.

Modding

The Phantom encourages modding and allows the community to modify various parts of the simulation and experience.

Players can enjoy their creations either in Singleplayer or even in Multiplayer on servers that disabled their file-integrity-check.

> 💡 Let us know if you create a cool mod that you think should make its way into the module!

Jester

Jester is fully open to modding. Please see the Jester API for details.

Manual

This manual is open-source at GitHub.

If you found a typo or want to improve a section, please let us know or also feel free to contribute yourself directly at GitHub.

Integrated Websites

Several features of the aircraft make use of integrated websites, which are displayed in-game with a built-in web-browser.

The code for the websites can be found in the Mod-Folder, for example:

`G:\DCS World OpenBeta\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\UI`

The browser supports full HTML/CSS/JS and even allows loading external sites, such as visiting YouTube and watching some tutorials.

Feel free to enhance any of the existing sites, such as the Jester Wheel or Grease Pencil UI, if desired.

Explain-Me

To quickly find out what a switch does, the embedded manual allows holding a hotkey (`M` by default), then clicking any switch in the cockpit and the manual opens scrolled right to the spot explaining the corresponding switch.

On the technical side, this feature is setup in the lookup-table located in the Mod-Folder, for example:

`G:\DCS World OpenBeta\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Input\explain_table.csv`

This file links pointer/connector names of the model to relative URLs of the manual.

```
# in explain_table.csv
PNT_Pull_Up_Light;cockpit.html#pull_up_system
PNT_FIRE_TEST_BUTTON;cockpit.html#fire_test_button
PNT_Marker_Beacon;cockpit.html#marker_beacon
PNT_VOR_Light;cockpit.html#vor_light
```

The URL, for example `cockpit.html#fire_test_button`, is then loaded in the Manual-Browser.

Jester

Jester is fully open to modding via a Lua-API. Any feature and functionality of Jester has been written by using this API.

The Jester AI primarily consists of:

- logic - written with the Lua-API
- user interface - embedded websites for the Wheel and Dialogs
- sounds - see Voice Files

> 💡 Let us know if you create a cool Jester mod that you think should make its way into the module!

Voice Files

Jesters entire library of phrases can be found in the Mod-Folder, for example:

`G:\DCS World OpenBeta\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Sounds\Jester`

When editing sounds, it is necessary to restart DCS. Just reloading the mission is not enough for changes to take effect.

sdef

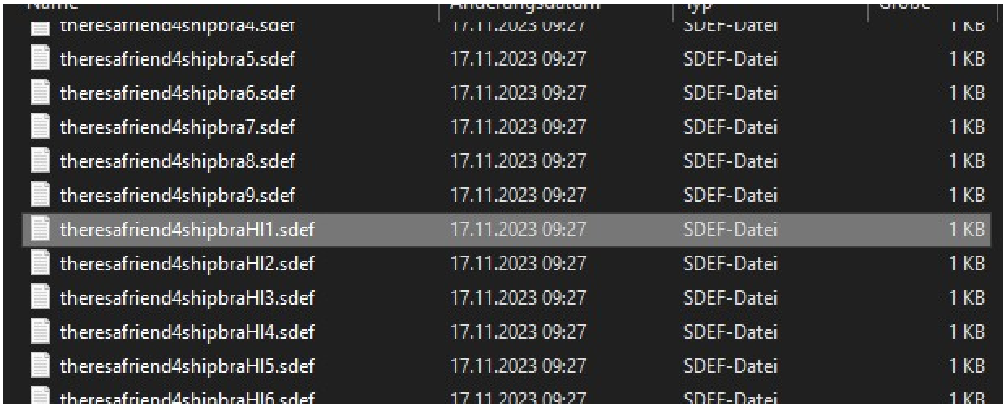
For DCS to understand the files, sound-definition-files (sdef) are located in:

`G:\DCS World OpenBeta\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Sounds\sdef\Jester`

A sdef-file is a plain text-file that can be edited with any text-editor. Next to locating the actual sound file, it can define properties such as gain or fade-in/-out effects, as well as positioning the sound effect within the world when played.

```
wave = "Jester/Contacts/theresafriend4shipbraHI1"
inner_radius = 10
outer_radius = 100
position = {0.0, 0.0, 0.0}
gain = 2
streaming = false
preload = false
```

Variations



When placing multiple sound files with the same name, suffixed by an incrementing number, DCS will automatically play any of the files randomly.

That way, variations can be created, to prevent always playing the exact same sound.

Mood

Jester sounds can be suffixed with `HI` to indicate variants that should only be played when Jester is in a stressed mood. `HI` files might for example have Jester screaming instead of talking calm.

Lua API

This gives a quick overview of Lua, which Jester is primarily coded in; and explains the Jester API itself.

Get started with Lua

Useful links:

- Lua Doc: https://www.lua.org/docs.html

Tables

Lua in itself is a fairly simple language with not too many features. It primarily revolves around the use of tables. Tables can be compared to arrays, lists and dictionaries, or maps.

```lua
-- dictionary
local person = {
  name = "John",
  age = 20,
}

-- array/list
local fruits = { "Orange", "Apple", "Lemon" }
```

Arrays also implicitly decay to dictionaries with ascending keys `1`, `2`, etc.

Access can be either in a lookup-style `person["age"] = 21`, or like fields `person.age = 21`.

In Lua, indices start **counting at 1:**

```lua
print(fruits[1]) -- Orange
```

The length of a table can be accessed using `#`:

```lua
-- appending to a table
fruits[#fruits + 1] = "Cherry"
```

Anything not explicitly set is given the value `nil`.

Syntax example

```lua
function ageCheck(name, age)
  if age < 18 then
    print("Sorry", name)
  else
    print("Okay", name)
  end
end
```

Classes

Lua itself does not provide classes. However, we created a framework to add class-like structures to Lua:

```lua
local Class = require('base.Class')

local Person = Class()
Person.name = nil -- fields
Person.age = nil

function Person:Constructor(name, age)
  self.name = name
  self.age = age
end

Person:Seal() -- Prevent adding/removing more
values/functions to it
```

The framework also supports inheritance:

```lua
local Class = require('base.Class')
local Behavior = require('base.Behavior')

local AssistAAR = Class(Behavior) -- inherits from
Behavior
```

Debugging

Unfortunately, we do not have any Lua debugger setup. One has to rely on caveman debugging with prints:

```
print("hello world")
print("Person:", person)
print("Check:", foo, bar, baz)
```

Which can then be seen in console. Note that it might be necessary to periodically call `io.flush()` to actually see the prints.

We also provide a Lua playground in `WizardJester.lua`, which is always executed directly on startup.

It is also possible to edit Lua files while DCS runs, without restarting the game. Simply edit a LUA file and then reload the DCS mission with CTRL + R and the new Lua file will be effective.

Jester API

Jesters logic is divided into 6 layers of abstraction:

- Intention (*WIP*)
- Plan (*WIP*)
- Situation
- Behavior
- Task
- Action

Code is placed in the Mod-Folder, for example:

`G:\DCS World OpenBeta\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\Jester`

Example

As an example that touches most of the layers, we want to create a feature that lets Jester report the current speed every couple of seconds

during flight.

Therefore, we start with a Situation. A situation needs an activation and deactivation **Condition:**

```
-- Airborne.lua
local Class = require 'base.Class'
local Condition = require 'base.Condition'

local Airborne = {}
Airborne.True = Class(Condition)
Airborne.False = Class(Condition)

function IsAirborne()
  -- details on observations later
  return GetJester().awareness:GetObservation("airborne")
or false
end

function Airborne.True:Check()
  return IsAirborne() -- activation condition
end

function Airborne.False:Check()
  return not IsAirborne() -- deactivation condition
end

Airborne.True:Seal()
Airborne.False:Seal()
return Airborne
```

Activation and deactivation conditions do not necessarily have to be the same.

Now, we can use this condition in our `Flight` situation and add our desired behavior:

```lua
-- Flight.lua
local Class = require 'base.Class'
local Situation = require 'base.Situation'
local Airborne = require 'conditions.Airborne'
local ReportSpeed = require 'behaviors.ReportSpeed'
-- behavior will be defined in the next step

local Flight = Class(Situation)

-- it simply expects a class with a :Check() method
Flight:AddActivationConditions(Airborne.True:new())
Flight:AddDeactivationConditions(Airborne.False:new())

function Flight:OnActivation()
  self:AddBehavior(ReportSpeed) -- start our behavior
end

function Flight:OnDeactivation()
  self:RemoveBehavior(ReportSpeed) -- stop our behavior
end

Flight:Seal()
return Flight
```

The situation also has to be registered in `F-4E_WSO.lua` (*WIP*):

```lua
-- in F-4E_WSO.lua
...
function CreateF4E_WSOJester()
  ...
  wso::AddSituations(Flight:new())
  ...
end
```

Now, we can define our behavior:

```lua
-- ReportSpeed.lua
local Class = require('base.Class')
local Behavior = require('base.Behavior')
local SaySpeed = require('tasks.common.SaySpeed')
-- Task will be defined in the next step

local ReportSpeed = Class(Behavior)

function ReportSpeed:Constructor()
  Behavior.Constructor(self)
end

function ReportSpeed:Tick()
  -- this is called periodically
  local task = SaySpeed:new(...) -- access to speed
explained later
  GetJester():AddTask(task)
end

ReportSpeed:Seal()
return ReportSpeed
```

Now, this would let Jester say something on every tick, a bit too verbose. To improve on this, the Urge-system has been created. We can wrap our task in an `Urge` and it will only be called on a set interval (which is automatically applied some variance based on Jesters fixation and stress level):

```
-- ReportSpeed.lua
local Class = require('base.Class')
local Behavior = require('base.Behavior')
local Urge = require('base.Urge') -- added
local StressReaction = require('base.StressReaction') --
added
local SaySpeed = require('tasks.common.SaySpeed')

local ReportSpeed = Class(Behavior)

function ReportSpeed:Constructor()
  Behavior.Constructor(self)

  -- logic of the behavior
  local say_speed = function ()
    -- very simple in this case,
    -- but could also trigger multiple tasks based on
conditions, if desired
    local task = SaySpeed:new(...)
    GetJester():AddTask(task)
    return {task}
  end

  -- define the urge
  self.urge = Urge:new({
    time_to_release = s(10), -- baseline interval (10s
now)
    on_release_function = say_speed, -- what to execute
    stress_reaction = StressReaction.ignorance, -- how
important is this to Jester
  })
  self.urge:Restart() -- start it
end

function ReportSpeed:Tick()
  -- we could also modify the urge now, if desired
  -- for example increasing the stress level
  self.urge:Tick() -- tick it
end

ReportSpeed:Seal()
return ReportSpeed
```

The next step is to create the actual Task that will take care of reporting the given speed:

```lua
-- SaySpeed.lua
local Class = require('base.Class')
local Task = require('base.Task')
local SayAction = require('actions.SayAction')

local SaySpeed = Class(Task)

function SaySpeed:Constructor(speed)
  Task.Constructor(self)

  local on_activation = function()
    if speed < kt(500) then
      -- see PhrasesList.txt for all supported voice
lines
      self:AddAction(SayAction('awareness/wereslow'))
    else
      self:AddAction(SayAction('awareness/werefast'))
    end
  end

  self:AddOnActivationCallback(on_activation)
end

SaySpeed:Seal()
return SaySpeed
```

The last part is the final `Action`, in our case `SayAction`. Actions are usually very generic and basic. In most cases, the existing `SayAction` will be all thats needed. Refer to `SayAction.lua` for how it works.

If a behavior has no extra need for a specific task and just wants to say a phrase, one can also directly use `SayTask`:

```lua
-- in a Behaviors logic
...
local task = SayTask:new('misc/outoffuel')
GetJester():AddTask(task)
...
```

LReal and units

A very common need is to work with real values and units, such as speed or time. Therefore, we have `LReal`s, with units defined in `LUnit`.

```
local time = min(15)
local speed = kt(500)
local fuel = lb(12000)

if time > s(10) then
  print("foo")
end

time = time - s(40)
```

Careful when doing scalar operations:

```
-- correct
time *= 2

-- incorrect
time *= s(2)
```

Latter would result in an invalid `LReal`, which can be checked for using `time:IsValid()`.

If necessary, values can be converted to another unit:

```
local timeInSeconds = time:ConvertTo(s)
print("Time:", timeInSeconds)
```

`time.value` would access the raw underlying number.

Accessing properties

Lua has full access to all `Property`s defined in our components and can access them easily with `GetProperty`:

```
function GetTotalFuelQuantity()
  local gauge_readout = GetProperty(
    "/Pilot Fuel Quantity Indicator/Fuel Meter", -- path
    "Internal Fuel Quantity Indication" -- property name
  ).value

  return gauge_readout or lb(10000)
end
```

`GetProperty` expects the full path to the component within the component-tree (that are all names of parent components), they must start with `/` to indicate an absolute path.

The returned value is a wrapper `Property` object. Access to the underlying value (in this case a `LReal` with unit `Pounds`) is given by `GetProperty(...).value`.

Observations and Senses

Additionally to direct property access, Jester has an Observation-System. The system allows to make frequently used data accessible in an easy way, or also to provide more complex data, i.e. coming from the DCS SDK.

Observations are part of `Sense`s, of which Jester has several (eyes, ears, ...). As of now, most of them are *WIP*.

```lua
local isAirborne =
GetJester().awareness:GetObservation("airborne") or false
```

Interactions

One key aspect of Jester is that he can interact with the cockpit by clicking switches, buttons and turning knobs.

Therefore, the API offers two approaches.

Component Interactions

The preferred way to interact with the cockpit is via the component system.

To allow interaction, a manipulator has to be registered at `F_4E_WSO_Cockpit.lua`:

```
-- ChaffMode: OFF, SGL, MULT, PROG
self:AddManipulator(
  "Chaff Mode",
  {component_path = "/WSO Cockpit/WSO Left
Console/AN_ALE-40 CCU/Chaff Mode Knob"}
)
```

After that, it can easily be interacted with, for example:

```
task:AddAction(SwitchAction:new("Chaff Mode", "MULT"))
-- or in short
task:Click("Chaff Mode", "MULT")
```

or reading its current value:

```
local cockpit = GetJester():GetCockpit()
local chaff_mode = cockpit:GetManipulator("Chaff
Mode"):GetState()
```

Raw Interactions

If the desired switch does not support the component interface yet, one can instead fall back on a raw interface that invokes DCS commands directly, as if the player would have triggered a bind manually.

```
-- sends value 1 via command WSO_EJECT_INSTANT to device
EJECTION_SEAT_SYSTEM
ClickRaw(devices.EJECTION_SEAT_SYSTEM,
device_commands.WSO_EJECT_INSTANT, 1)

-- sends the value corresponding to position 2 on a 7-
position knob
ClickRawKnob(devices.HUD_AN_ASG_26,
device_commands.HUD_SelectHUDMode, 2, 7)
```

See `devices.lua` for all available devices and likewise `command_defs.lua` for the commands.

In general, Knobs and 2-pos switches use the range `[0, 1]` for values, while 3-pos switches often (but not always) use `[-1, +1]`. For 3-pos switches `-1` is usually used to move a 3-pos switch down, `+1` to move it up - but some switches have a different orientation. See `default.lua`

and `clickabledata.lua` to learn more about a specific switch and how it reacts to values.

Events

Next to clicking switches, Jester can react to events send either from C++ or also from within Lua. The system follows a simple observer/listener pattern:

```
ListenTo("go_silent", function(task)
  task:Click("Radar Power", "STBY")
end)
```

with:

```
if is_aar then
  DispatchEvent("go_silent")
end
```

Task API

A core aspect of writing logic for Jester revolves around using the `Task` class. Tasks consist of a sequence of `Action`s. A task can be paused, resumed or cancelled entirely by the system if necessary.

Actions are, by design, executed asynchronously. Executing a click will take some time and not execute instantly. In particular, adding a click action to a task will not block the code, it simply gets added to the chain of actions to execute eventually.

This concept is similar to Future-APIs in other languages and `Task` offers a fluent-API to deal with it conveniently.

Consider the following example:

```
local task = Task:new()
task:Roger()
  :Click("Radar Power", "OPER")
  :Wait(min(4))
  :Click("Screen Mode", "radar")
  :Say("phrases/radar_ready")
  :Then(function()
    self.scan_for_bandits = true
  end)
```

Among other functions, the API offers:

- `AddAction` - any `Action`, basis for the API
- `Then` - anonymous function
- `Wait` - time
- `WaitUntil` - predicate
- `Say` - phrase
- `Roger`
- `CantDo`
- `Click` - name, state
- `ClickFast` - name, state
- `ClickShort` - name, state
- `ClickShortFast` - name, state

Refer to `Task.lua` for details.

UI

Jester provides two types of user interfaces. A wheel with selectable options and a dialog with questions and selectable answers that are shown on demand. See Wheel UI and Dialog UI for more.

Wheel UI

Jester Wheel consists of a web-based frontend and offers an API exposed to Lua for modifying its content and reacting to actions.

Frontend

The frontend is a Pixi JS based website defined in

`f-4e\ModFolders\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\UI\JesterWheel`

Opening `index.html` in a browser shows the wheel filled with the base content.

The website can be edited freely, changes are visible after reloading DCS (`SHIFT`+`R`).

The UI logic, such as animations are defined in `renderer.js`, while the interactions are handled in `main.js`.

`interface.js` declares the base content of the wheel, as well as all methods relevant for the C++ to JS communication.

The method `hb_send_proxy` is used to send commands to C++, such as notifying it that an action has been clicked.

Lua

The wheel is essentially a menu-tree. Each menu consists of up to 8 items. An item might be final or contain another sub-menu. Additionally, a sub-menu can also be spawned as outer-menu, which increases its item slots to 18.

Each item can be associated with an `action`, a string that is tied to the Event System and can hence be reacted to if invoked.

To interact with the menu, several methods are defined and exported to Lua:

```
Wheel.ReplaceMainMenu(main_menu)
Wheel.ReplaceSubMenu(sub_menu, menu_location)
Wheel.AddItem(item, menu_location)
Wheel.RemoveItem(item_name, menu_location)
Wheel.ReplaceItem(item, item_name, menu_location)
Wheel.RenameItem(new_item_name, current_item_name,
menu_location)
Wheel.SetMenuInfo(info_text, menu_location)
Wheel.NavigateTo(menu_location)
```

The following shows a simple example to add a new sub-menu to the `Navigation` menu:

```
local waypoint_menu = Wheel.Item:new({
  name = "Select Waypoint",
  menu = Wheel.Menu:new({
    name = "Select Waypoint",
    items = {
      Wheel.Item:new({ name = "TGT 1", action =
"select_tgt_1" }),
      Wheel.Item:new({ name = "TGT 2", action =
"select_tgt_2" }),
      Wheel.Item:new({ name = "Advanced", outer_menu =
Wheel.Menu:new({
        name = "More Waypoints",
        items = {
          Wheel.Item:new({ name = "RTB", action =
"select_rtb" }),
          Wheel.Item:new({ name = "Nearest Target",
action = "select_tgt" }),
        },
      })}),
    }
  }),
})

Wheel.AddItem(waypoint_menu, {"Navigation"})
```

The info text of the menu can then be updated using

```
local current_waypoint = "WP 2"
Wheel.SetMenuInfo(current_waypoint, {"Navigation",
"Select Waypoint"})
```

To react to a selected action, listen to the corresponding event:

```
ListenTo("select_tgt_1", function(task)
  -- Component interface
  task:Click("Nav Panel Function", "TARGET_1")

  -- or Raw interface
  task:Then(function()
    ClickRaw(
      devices.NavigationComputer_AN_ASN_46A,

device_commands.RIO_NAV_COMP_FUNCTION_SELECTOR_KNOB,
      3,
      5
    ) -- Target 1
  end)
end)
```

Dialog UI

Jester Dialog consists of a web-based frontend and offers an API exposed to Lua for modifying its content and reacting to actions.

Frontend

The frontend is a Pixi JS based website defined in

`f-4e\ModFolders\Mods\aircraft\F-4E\UI\JesterDialog`

Opening `index.html` in a browser shows the dialog filled with example content.

The website can be edited freely, changes are visible after reloading DCS (`SHIFT`+`R`).

The UI logic, such as animations are defined in `renderer.js`, while the interactions are handled in `main.js`.

`interface.js` declares the base content of the dialog, as well as all methods relevant for the C++ to JS communication.

The method `hb_send_proxy` is used to send commands to C++, such as notifying it that an action has been clicked.

Lua

Dialogs are shown on-demand and in-order. They are displayed for a certain time and the user is given a chance to engage in the dialog or ignore it - upon which it will expire and vanish.

A dialog consists of a question with up to 4 selectable options. An option is either final or triggers a follow-up question with new options to select from.

Dialogs are hold and shown from a queue. A new dialog can be pushed to the queue via:

```
Dialog.Push(dialog)
```

The following shows a simple example to add a new dialog:

```
local fuel_check_dialog = Dialog.Question:new({
  name = "Jester",
  content = "How is the fuel?",
  phrase = "dialog/fuel_check",
  label = "Fuel Check",
  timing = Dialog.Timing:new({
    question = s(5),
    action = s(10),
  }),
  options = {
    Dialog.Option:new({ response = "We are good", action
= "fuel_good" }),
    Dialog.Option:new({
      response = "Fuel is low",
      follow_up_question = Dialog.FollowUpQuestion:new({
        name = "Jester",
        content = "Okay, how do you want to proceed?",
        phase = "dialog/fuel_low_proceed",
        options = {
          Dialog.Option:new({ response = "Remain on
Mission" }),
          Dialog.Option:new({ response = "RTB", action =
"fuel_low_rtb" })
        },
      }),
    })
  },
})

Dialog.Push(fuel_check_dialog)
```

To react to a selected option, listen to the corresponding event:

```
ListenTo("fuel_low_rtb", function(task)
  -- Component interface
  task:Click("Nav Panel Function", "TARGET_1")

  -- or Raw interface
  task:Then(function()
    ClickRaw(
      devices.NavigationComputer_AN_ASN_46A,

device_commands.RIO_NAV_COMP_FUNCTION_SELECTOR_KNOB,
      3,
      5
    ) -- Target 1
  end)
end)
```

Liveries

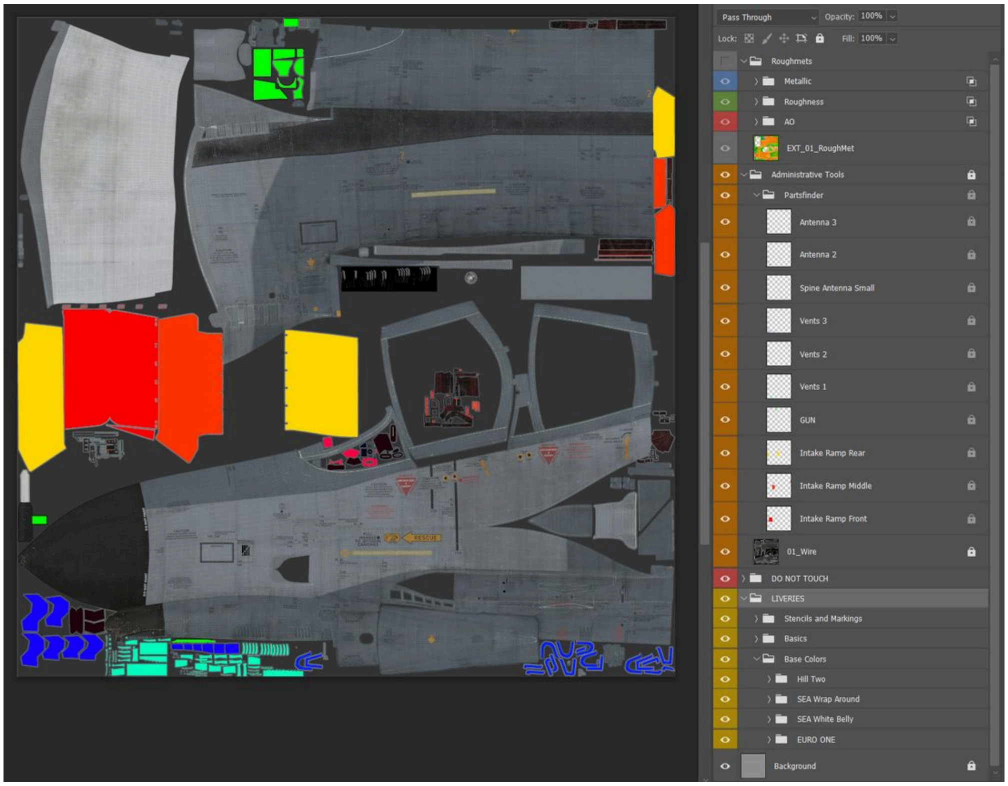
"We got them in two-tone gray. We got them in two-tone green. We can get them in hot fuchsia pink."

Creating Liveries for our F-4E can be tedious work.

Typically, the largest chunk of time goes into researching on the web and in books to provide the most accurate, realistic Liveries.

With the release of the F-4E Phantom II, we want to see what you have in store for the F-4. To support you in your creative ways of recreating your favorite Livery, there is a few things to learn regarding the jet and how it is represented in DCS.

Paintkit



The Paintkit has been created with ease of use in mind. It allows unwrapping the 3D Object onto a 2D space.

To provide the highest quality available, the Paintkit comes in **Linear Color Space** and **16 Bit Color depth**. Bear in mind that not every Graphics Suite will handle this correctly. The Paintkit was created using Adobe Photoshop. Saving in 16 Bit Color depth will take a while, so be patient when hitting *Save* in your Graphics Application.

The kit also provides a layer stack *Administrative Tools*, which also contains the *Wireframe unwrap* helping to aligning your art.

The folder called *Partsfinder* helps identify pieces that belong together on the *UV Unwrap* for certain parts. There is no padding applied there, so if you use them for your selection, you might want to expand your selection by a few pixels to get rid of artifacts on the seams.

> 💡 You can link files in Photoshop. This means you can create art, save it as a file and then link it in your Paintkit file. This makes for a non destructive workflow which allows you to changes things afterwards if you are not satisfied with your result.

PBR Rendering and RoughMet File

Next to your *Albedo File* which you create by exporting your custom Livery out of the Paintkit, you will need the *RoughMet File* to make the most out of your custom livery.

We provide you the uncompressed RoughMet files within the Paintkit files. DCS uses **Physical Based Rendering** to create the picture you see on your monitor or through your VR Headset.

The RoughMet files makes use of the three RGB Channels:

- Red -> Ambient Occlusion (pre baked Shadows)
- Blue -> Metallic (Defines if a Surface is metallic or not)
- Green -> Roughness (is the Surface super smooth or really rough)

Since the Roughmet File is in the **8Bit RGB Range of Colors**, per channel, you get 255 Values to define the named attributes. Visually this is represented per channel with a value of 0 for Black and a value of 255 for White.

Avoid bright or dark colors

Together with what is defined in the RoughMet, the DCS engine renders the picture. You must avoid using very bright or dark and 100% saturated Colors, as otherwise that leads to DCS not being able to create proper effects when the surface is hit by direct sunlight.

Mathematically, the engine can not render a color greater than the available color space. So if you want a bright yellow marking on your jet, reduce the saturation by around 15% as well as the brightness.

Ultimately you can check if your textures are withing the **PBR Spectrum** by loading up your Custom Livery in the DCS *Modelviewer* and hit `F8` which reveals the issue in the **Material Errors View**. If you see an orange or magenta color here, it means that the Renderer cannot draw the full effects on it since the base color (**Albedo**) is too bright or saturated.

> 💡 There are many great sources out there to learn more about Physical Based Rendering and you're always welcome to ask us directly in our Discord or on the Forum.

Character Customization

The Phantom features Character Customization.

Until the feature and its UI is fully available at a later point during Early Access, some of its features can already be accessed directly by modifying the `description.lua` file of your Livery.

Here's a snippet of the area you need to look at:

```
custom_args =
{
  [512] = 0.3, -- 0 is no mirrors, 0 - 0.4 is both
mirrors (mickey mouse) and 0.5+ is top mirror only.
  [2008] = 0.95, --WSO Helmet, 0.95 is HGU-55
  [2006] = 0.95, --Pilot Helmet, 0.95 is HGU-55 (expand
list of draw args)
}
```

Find the `custom_args` section which is usually towards the bottom of the file. The numbers inside `[]` represents the **Draw Argument** used by DCS to tell the model what your Pilot (and also the aircraft itself) wears.

Draw Argument `[512]` represents the **Mirrors on the WSO Canopy**. It can be set to a value between 0.0 to 1.0, representing the animation range of the Draw Argument.

This value is used to give your pilot a certain helmet, gloves or similar. Or even to define the gender of the pilot model.

`[2006]` is the Draw Argument for the Pilot Helmet. Set it to `0.1` and your pilot will wear an old school HGU-2 helmet. Set it to `0.95` and he will be wearing a more modern HGU-55.

Applying Custom Paints

To apply a custom texture to the jet, copy an existing and replace the files while keeping the names. You can find a small library of textures to cut

down on the overall size of a Livery in the *commons* folder under `\CoreMods\aircraft\F-4E\Liveries\F-4E-45MC\commons`.

Trying to keep folder depth shallow this at first might look a bit messy but it actually makes it easier to apply the texture in your `description.lua` and does not bloat it too much with long folder paths.

Example

The Folder *ALQ131_g* contains a Livery for the ALQ-131 Pod in Olive/Green colors. You can tell your `description.lua` to use this texture instead of the default white color from DCS when equipping the ALQ-131 to the Phantom in-game by putting the following line of code into your `description.lua` file for both the Albedo and the Roughmet Texture:

```
{ "ALQ_131", 0, "../commons/alq131_g/alq_131_diff", false
};
{ "ALQ_131", ROUGHNESS_METALLIC,
"../commons/alq131_g/alq_131_diff_roughmet", false };
```

The first value after the `{` in Brackets `""` is the Material Name, in this case the `"ALQ_131"`. It can be a bit tricky to find these Material names through DCS. Feel free to ask in our Discord in the **#liveries-lair** channel for help on this.

Using the same principle, you can apply custom Flight Suit textures to your Pilot as well as a HGU-2 Texture. Here is an example of a German Luftwaffe F-4F Pilot and the WSO being equipped with German Luftwaffe Flight Suits and Grey HGU-2 Helmets:

```
{ "PILOT_HGU-2_Helmet", 0, "../commons/HGU2_g/HGU-
2_Helmet", false };
{ "PILOT_HB_Char_RobinOlds_CWU", 0,
"../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_cwu", false };
{ "PILOT_HB_Char_RobinOlds_overall", 0,
"../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall", false };
{ "PILOT_HB_Char_RobinOlds_overall", NORMAL_MAP,
  "../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall_nrm", false
};
{ "PILOT_HB_Char_RobinOlds_roughmet", ROUGHNESS_METALLIC,
  "../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall_roughmet",
false };

{ "WSO_HGU-2_Helmet", 0, "../commons/HGU2_g/HGU-
2_Helmet", false };
{ "WSO_HB_Char_RobinOlds_CWU", 0,
"../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_cwu", false };
{ "WSO_HB_Char_RobinOlds_overall", 0,
"../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall", false };
{ "WSO_HB_Char_RobinOlds_overall", NORMAL_MAP,
  "../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall_nrm", false
};
{ "WSO_HB_Char_RobinOlds_roughmet", ROUGHNESS_METALLIC,
  "../commons/LGFS/hb_char_robinolds_overall_roughmet",
false };
```

Interesting Links

Pilots of F-4 Phantom II aircraft, 35th Tactical Fighter Wing, listen to a briefing on flight plans during exercise Team Spirit (Coronet Spray)

Heatblur deep dive videos

Episode I - Introduction

Episode II - Flight Model

Episode III - NAVIGATION

Episode IV - RADAR Pt. 1 - Basics and Theory

Historical documentaries and training videos

The Fabulous Phantom

The Record-Breaking Phantom II

F-4 Flight Characteristics

Ambassadors in Blue

Other

Cal Worthington F4s

Acronyms and Abbreviations

A

Abbreviation	Definition
AAR	Air-to-Air-Refueling
AC	Aerodynamic center
ACM	Air Combat Maneuvering
ac	Alternating current
ADCS	Air Data Computer Set
ADI	Attitude Director Indicator
AFC	Automatic Frequency Control
AFCS	Automatic Flight Control System
AGC	Automatic Gain Control
AHRS	Attitude Heading Reference System
AJB	Airborne, Electro-Mechanical, Bombing
AOA	Angle of Attack
APA	Airborne, Radar, Auxiliary Assembly
APN	Airborne, Radar, Navigational Aid
APQ	Airborne, Radar, Special Purpose
APU	Auxiliary Power Unit
AR	Air Refueling
ARI	Aileron Rudder Interconnect
ARC	Airborne, Radio, Control
ARR	Air Refueling Release (Button)
ASA	Airborne, Special Type, Auxiliary Assembly
ASE	Allowable Steering Error
ASN	Airborne, Special Type, Navigational Aid

Abbreviation	Definition
ASQ	Airborne, Special Type, Combination of Purposes
AVTR	Airborne Video Tape Recorder
AWRU	Aircraft Weapons Release Unit
AWW	Airborne, Armament, Control

B

Abbreviation	Definition
BDHI	Bearing Distance Heading Indicator
BIT	Built-In Test
BST	Boresight

C

Abbreviation	Definition
CAA	Computer Automatic Acquisition
CADC	Central Air Data Computer
CAP	Combat Air Patrol
CAS	Calibrated Airspeed
CG	Center of Gravity
CIT	Compressor Inlet Temperature
CNI	Communication Navigation Identification
CSD	Constant Speed Drive

D

Abbreviation	Definition
dc	Direct current
DSCG	Digital Scan Converter Group

Abbreviation	Definition
DCU	Douglas Control Unit
DMAS	Digital Modular Avionics System
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
DR	Dead Reckoning
DVST	Direct View Storage Tube

E

Abbreviation	Definition
EAS	Equivalent Airspeed
ECM	Electronic Countermeasure(s)
EGT	Exhaust Gas Temperature

F

Abbreviation	Definition
FL	Flight Level

G

Abbreviation	Definition
G	Gravity
GCA	Ground Control Approach
GCI	Ground Control Intercept
gpm	Gallon per minute

H

Abbreviation	Definition
Hangfire	A delay or failure of an article of ordinance after being triggered
Hang Start	A start that results in a stagnated rpm and temperature
Hot Start	A start that exceeds normal starting temperatures
HSI	Horizontal Situation Indicator
Hz	Hertz

I

Abbreviation	Definition
IP	Identification Point
IAS	Indicated Airspeed
IFF	Identification Friend or Foe
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IMC	Instrument Meteorological Conditions
IR	Infrared
I/P	Identification of Position

J

Abbreviation	Definition
JP	Jet Propulsion

K

Abbreviation	Definition
KTS	Knots

L

Abbreviation	Definition
LABS	Low Altitude Bombing System
LCOSS	Lead Computing Optical Sight
LE	Leading Edge
LOX	Liquid Oxygen
Lpm	Liters per minute

M

Abbreviation	Definition
MAC	Mean Aerodynamic Chord
MIL	Military
Misfire	A permanent failure of an article of ordinance being triggered
MSDG	Multiple Sensor Display Group
MSL	Mean Sea Level

N

Abbreviation	Definition
N/A	Not applicable
N/E	Not established
NMPP	Nautical Miles Per Pound

O

Abbreviation	Definition
OAT	Outside Air Temperature

P

Abbreviation	Definition
P	Pilot
PC	Power Control
PDVL	Pull Down Vent Line
PLB	Personnel locator beacon
prf	Pulse repetition frequency
psi	Pounds per square inch

Q

Abbreviation	Definition
q	Dynamic Pressure, psf

R

Abbreviation	Definition
RADAR	Radio Detection and Ranging
RBL	Radar Boresight Line
rf	Radio Frequency
RIP	Radar Identification Point
rpm	Revolutions Per Minute
RWR	Radar Warning Receiver

S

Abbreviation	Definition
SID	Standard Instrument Departure
SPC	Static Pressure Compensator

T

Abbreviation	Definition
TACAN	Tactical Air Navigation
TAS	True Airspeed
TE	Trailing Edge
TISEO	Target Identification System Electro-Optical
TMN	True Mach Number

U

Abbreviation	Definition
UHF	Ultra High Frequency

V

Abbreviation	Definition
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VHF	Very High Frequency
VIP	Visual Identification Point
VMC	Visual Meteorological Conditions
Vn	Velocity Acceleration Relationship
VORTAC	Very High Frequency —- Omni Range and Tactical
	Air Navigation

W

Abbreviation	Definition
WSO	Weapons System Officer

Imprint

Heatblur Simulations™
Ulica Wrzosowa 11, 72-602, Świnoujście, Poland

Contact: support@heatblur.se

https://store.heatblur.com/

The Heatblur F-4E Team

Nicholas Dackard, Creative Director and Lead Artist
Krzysztof Sobczak, Technical Director and Lead Programmer
Aleksander Studen-Kirchner, Lead Producer and Narrative Lead
Daniel Tischner, Senior Programmer (UI, Systems and AI)
Dominik Głowacki, Senior Programmer (Systems, Avionics, AI)
Szymon Skarzyński, Senior Programmer (Systems, Avionics, AI)
Andrew O'Donnell, Senior Programmer (Flight Dynamics and Engines)
Joshua Nelson, Senior Programmer (Weapons, Radar and Systems)
Terje Lindtveit, Programmer (Flight Dynamics and Engines)
Zander Labuschagne, Programmer (Systems and Avionics)
Will Harradine, Programmer (Systems and Avionics)
Igor Własny, Programmer (Systems and Avionics)
Yannis Leon Bößmann, Junior Programmer, Manual Editor
Nicola Faggiani, Artist, 3D Model
Davi Bernardino, Artist, 3D Model and Textures
Leon Foty, Artist, 3D Model
Ben Mährlein, Liveries and Art
Kenneth Ellis, Lead Author Manual
Andreas Sandin, Lead Design and Web-Design
Adrian Caparzo, Video Editing and Trailers
Grayson Frohberg, Voice of the JESTER-AI
Jonathan Williams, Voice of the CREW CHIEF
Gabriel Stangl, Training Missions and Lessons
Daria Kurhuzova, Administrative Assistant

See You In The Skies